This ilke worthy knyght' had ben also
Somtyme with the lord of Palatye
Ayeyn an othir hethen in Turkye
And euere more he haddo a soucreyne pry
And though þat he was worthy he was wys
And of his port' as meke as is a mayde
He neuer yet no velonye no sayde
In al his lyf vnto no manere wight'
He was a verrey parfit' gentil knyght'
ffor to tellen yow of his array
His hors weren godo. but' he was not gay
Of fustyon) he werede a gepon
Al bismotered with his habirgeon)
ffor he was late ycome from his viage [leaf 2]
And wente for to don his pilgrymage
With hym þer was his sone a yong squyere
A louyere and a lusty bachelere
With lockes crulle as they were leyd in presse
Of twenty yere of age he was I gesse
Of his stature he was of' euene lengtne
And wondirly delyuere and gret' of' strengthe
And he hadde be somtyme in chyuachye
In fflaundres in Artoys and in Pikardye
And born him wel as of so litil space
In hope to stonde in his lady grace
Embroyded was he as it were a mede
All ful of fresshe floures white and rede
Syngynge he was. or floytynge al the day
He was also fressh as ys þe moneth of may
Short was his gowne with sleves longe *and* wyde
Wel koude he sitte on an hors *and* faire ryde
He koude songes make. and wel endite
Iuste and eke daunce and wel portrey *and* write.
So hote he louede. that by nygter tale
He slepte namore than doth a nyghtyngale
Corteys he was lowely and servisable

his fadir at the table
yeman hadde he *and* seruañtes na mo
that tyme. for hym lyst ryde so
And he was clad in coote *and* hood of grene
A sheef of pocok arewes bryght and kene
Vndir his belt he bar full thriftily
Wel couthe he dresse his takel yemanly
Hise arewes drouped noght with feþeres lowe
And in his hond he bar a myghty bowe
A not hed hadde he with a broun visage
Of wode craft wel couthe he al the vsage
Vppon his arme he bar a gay bracer
And by his side a swerd and a bokeler
And on that oþir syde a gay daggere
Harneysed wel *and* sharp as poynt of spere
A *Crist*offre on his brest of seluer shene [leaf 2, back]
An horn he bar the bawdrik was of grene
A foster was he sotly as I gesse
Ther was a nonne also a prioresse
That of hir smylynge was ful symple *and* coy
Hire grettest ooth was but by sey[n]te loy
And she was clepid ma dame Englentyne
fful wel she song the seruyse divyne
Entuned in hire nose ful semyly
And frenshe she spak ful faire and fetysly
Aftir the skole of Stratford atte bowe
ffor frensch of Parys was to hire vnknowe
At mete wel I-taught was sche with alle
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle
Ne wete hire fyngres in hire sause depe
Wel couthe she carye a morsel *and* wel kepe
That no drope ne fille vppon hire breste
In curtesye was set ful mochel hire leste
Hire ouer lippe wiped she so clene
That in hir cuppe ther was no ferthing sene
Of grece whan she dronken hadde hire draughte

Digitized with financial assistance from the Government of Maharashtra on 26 June, 2018

ffful semyly aftir hir mete she raughte
And sikerly schc was of gret' disporte
And ful plesaunt and amable of porte
And peyned hire to counterfete chere
Of court'. and to ben estatliche of' manere
And to be holden digne of' reuerence
But for to speken of' hir Conciense
She was so charitable and so pitous
he wolde wepe yif' that' she sauh a mous
augh[t] in a trappe yif' it were ded or bledde
' smale houndes had she that' she fedde
th rostid flessh or mylk' or wastelbrede
' sore wepte she yf oon of' hem were dede
f' men smoot yt' with a yerde smerte
l was conscience *and* tendre herte
eliche hire wympil pynchid was
e was streight'. hire eighen gray as glas
outh ful smal *and* therto softe and rede
erly she hadde a fair forhede
most a spanne brood I trowe
ly she was nouht vndirgrowe
was hir cloke as I was waar
ral aboute hir arme she baar
bedys gaudid al with greno
n hyng' a broche of gold ful shene
er was first' writen a crowned A
nor vincit' omnia
nne with hire hadde she
e chapeleyn. *and* prestes thre
was a fair for the maistrye
dere that' loued venerye
to ben an Abbot' able
ynte hors hadde he in stable
rood. men myhte his brydill here
whistelynge wynd as clere
e as dooth þe chapel belle

[leaf 3]

00043140

s keper of the selle
t' Maure or of seint Benet'
e þat yt was olde *and* somdel streit
This ylke monke leet olde þynges pace
And heeld aftir the newe world the space
He yaf nouht' of the text' a pulled hen
That' seith that' hunters be nouht' holy men
Ne that a monke whan he is recheles
Is likened tille a fisshe þat' is watirles
This is to seye a monke out' of his cloistre
But thilke text' held he nouht' worth an oystre
And I seyde his opynion' was good
What shulde he studie. and make hymself' wood
Vpon a book' alwey in cloistre to poure
Or swynke with his hondis and laboure
As Austyn bit. hou shal the world be serued
Lat Austyn haue his swynk' to him reserued
Therfore he was a [illegible]casour aright'
Grehoundes he hadde / as swift' as foule in flight'
Of prikynge *and* of huntynge for the hare
Was al his lust' for no cost wole he spare
I seigh hise sleves I-purfiled at' the hond'
With grys *and* that' the fynest' of a lond'
And for to festne his hood vndir the Chynne
He hadde of gold' wrought' a ful curious pynne
A loue knotte in the gretter ende þer was
His hed was ballyd that' shon as ony glas
And eke his face. as he hadde ben anoynt'
He was a lord' ful fat' and in good' poynt'
Hise eighen stepe and rollynge in his hede
That stemede as a fourneys of a lede
Hise botes souple his hors in grete estate.
Now certeynly he was a fair prelate
He nas nat pale as a forpyned goost'
A fat swan louede he best' of any roost'
His palfray was [as] broun as ys a berye

A ffrere ther was a wa[n]toune *and* [redacted]
A lymytour a ful solempne man
In alle the ordres foure is noon that can
So mochel of daliañce *and* fair langage
He hadde made ful many a Mariage
Of yonge wo*m*men at his owne cost
Vn to his ordre he was a noble post
ffful wel biloued *and* famulier was he
With frankeleynes oueral in his contre
And with worthy wo*m*men of the toun
ffor he hadde power of confessiou*n*
As seide hym self more than a Curat
ffor [of] his ordre he was lycenciat
ffful swetely herede he confessiou*n*
And plesaunt was his absolucio*n*
He was an esy man to yeue penañce
Ther as he wiste to han a good pitañce
ffor wnto a pore ordre for to yeue
Is signe that a man ys wel yshreve
ffor yf he yaf he dorste make avaun*t*
He wist bat a man was repentaunt
ffor many a man is so hard of his herte
[leaf 4]
He may noght wepe al þouh him sore smerte
Ther fore in stede of wepynge and preieres
Men mote yeue seluer / to the pore freres
His tipet was ay fassed ful of knyfes
And pynnes for to yeue faire wyfes
And certeynly he hadde a mery note
Wel coude he syngen and playen on a roote
Of yeddynges he bar vttirly the pryce
His necke white was as the flour delyce
Therto he was strong as a champiou*n*
He knew the tauernes wel in every tou*n*
And euericlie Osteller and tapestere
Bet than a lazer or a beggere
ffor vnto swich a worthy man as he

00043140

as by his faculte
with swich seke lazers aqueyntañce
s nouȝt honest / it may nouȝt avañce
ffor to delen with swich poraille
But al with riche and sillers of vitaille
And oueral ther as profite sholde aryse
Curtays he was and lowely of seruyse
Ther nas no man nowher so vertuous
He was the beste beggere in his hous
[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
ffor þouȝ a widewe hadde nouȝt a sho
So plesaunt was his Inprincipio
Yet wolde he haue a ferthyng or he wente
His purchace was wel bettere þan his rente
And rage he couthe as it were riȝt a whelpe
In louedaies ther coude he mochil helpe
ffor ther he was not liche a cloistrere
With a thredbare cope as a pore scolere
But he was lyke a maistir or a pope
Of double worstede was his semy cope
That rounded as a belle out of the presse
Somwhat he lipsede for his wantonesse
To make his englyssȝ swete vppon his tonge
And in his harpynge whan þat he had songe
Hise eyghen twynclede in his hede arighȝt [leaf 4, back]
As doon the sterres in a frosty nyȝt
This worthy lymytour was clepid hubert
A Marchant was ther with a longe berd
In motle and heyȝ on horse he satte
Vppon his heued a flaundrisshe beuer hatte
Hise botis clapsid faire and fetisly
His resouns he spak ful solempnely
Shewynge alwey the encres of his wynnynge
He wolde the see were kept for any thynge
Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle

Wel coude he in eschange sheldes selle
This worthy man ful wel his witte bisette
Ther wiste no wight' that' he was in dette
So estatly was he of' his gouernañce
With his bargaynes *and* *with* his cheuyssañce
fforsothe he was a worthy man with alle
But sothely to seyne I not' how men hy*m* calle
A Clerk þer was of' Oxenforde also
That' vnto logyk' hadde longe I-go
As lene was his hors as ys a rake
And he was not' right fat' I wndirtake
But lokede holewh̄ and þerto soburly
fful thredbare was his ouerest Courtepy
ffor he hadde yit' geten hi*m* no benefice
Ne was so wordly [for] to haue office
ffor hym was leuere haue at' his bed hede
Twenty bokes clad in blak' or rede
Of Aristotle and his philosophie
Then robes riche or fithel or gay sautrye
But' al be that' he was a philosofre
Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre
But al that' he myhte of his frendes hente
On bokes and on lernynge he it' spente
And besily gan for tho soules preye
Of hem that yaf hy*m* wharwith to skole-aye
Of studie took' he moost cure *and* most hede
Naught' a word spak' he / more than was nede /
And that' was seid in forme and reuerence [leaf 5]
And short' and quyk' and ful [of] hey sentence
Sownynge in moral vertue was his speche
And gladly wolde he lerne *and* gladly teche
A sergañt of' the lawe / war' *and* wys
That' often hadde ben atte parvys
That was also ful riche of excellence
Discret he was and of gret reuerence
He semed swich̄ hise wordis wern so wise

[redacted]iten in assise
[redacted]*nd* by pleyn co*m*myssiou*n*
[redacted]is science. and for his high renou*n* 316
Of fees and robes hadde he many on
So gret a purchassour was nowher non
Al was fee symple to him in effecte
His purchassynge myht nouht ben infecte 320
Nowher so besy a man as he ther nas
And yet he semed bisiere than he was
In termes hadde he caas *and* domes alle
That from the tyme of kyng' william were falle 324
Therto he cowde endite and make a thyng'
Ther couthe no wight' pynche at' his writyng'
And euery statute couthe he pleyne by roote
He rood but homely in a medle coote 328
Gert' with a sent' of selk' wip barres smale
Of his array telle I no lenger tale
Affrankeleyn was in his compaignye
Whit' was his berd' as is the daieseye 332
Of his complexiou*n* he was sangwyne
Wel louede he by the morewe a soppe in wyne
To lyuen in delite euere was his wone
ffor he was Epiournes owne sone 336
That helde opynyon' þat pleyn delite
Was verrey felicite parfite
An houshaldere and that' a greet' was he
Seint Iulyan he was in his contre 340
His bred his ale was alleweys aftir oon
A bettir envyned man / was nowher noon /
With oute bakemete was neuere his hous [leaf 5, back]
Of fissche and fleisshe *and* þat so plentevous 344
It snewede in his hous of' mete and drynke
Of alle deyntethes that' men couthe thinke
Aftir the sondry sesons of the yere
So changed he his mete and his sopere 348
ffull many a fat' partrich hadde he in Mewe

And many a breme *and* many a luce in st[illegible]
Wo was his cook' but' [if] his sauce were
Poynant' and sharpe and redy al his gere
His table dormant in his halle al way
Stood redy couered al the longe day
At sessiõs ther was he lord and sire
ffful often tyme he was knyght' of the shire
An anelas and a gypsere al of' silke
Heng' at his girdel white as morne mylke
A sherreff' had he ben / *and* a comptour
Was nowher swich a worthy vauasour

AN habirdasshere and a Carpenter
A Webbe. a Diere and a Tapecere
And they were clothid alle in o̓o lyuere
Of' a solempne and a greet' fraternyte
ffful fressh and newe here gere apiked was
Here knyfes nere chap[ed] nouht' with bras
But al with syluer wrought ful clene *and* wel
Here gerdelles and her pouches euery del
Wel semed ech of' hem a fair burgeys
To sitten in a yeldhalle on a deys
Eueriche for the wisdom that' he can
Was shaply for to bene an Aldirman
For catell hadde they I-nouñ and Rente
And eke her wifes woldo it' wel assente
And elles certeyn[ly] they were to blame
It' is ful fair to be clepid Madame
And gon to vigilies al be fore
And haue a mantel rialliche I-bore

A Cook' they hadde / with hem for the nones
To boille the chikenes with þe maribones
And poudre Marchañt' tart' of Gallyngale
Wel kowde he knowe a drauht of london ale
He Couthe roste *and* sethe *and* broyle *and* ffrye
Maken Mortrews and wel bake a pye
But gret ha[r]m was it' / as it thouhte me

ne a mormal hadde he
manger' that made he with the beste
A Shipman was ther / wonyng' fer bi weste
For ouñt I woot' he was of' Dertemouthe
He rood vppon a Rouncy as he couthe
In a gowne of' ffaldyng' to the kne
A daggar' hangynge in a lace hadde he
Aboute his necke vndir his arme doun
The hote somer hadde made his hiew al broun
And Certeynly he was a good felawe
fful many a drauñt of wyn hadde he drawe
ffrom burdeux ward' while the chapmen slepe
Of nyce conscience took' he no kepe
Yif that' he fauñt' / and hadde the heiñere hond'
By watir he sente hem home to euery lond'
But of his craft / to rikene wel his tydes
His stremes and his daunger hi*m* bisydes
His herberuñ. his moone *and* his lodmanage
Ther nos noon suchñ from hulle to Cartage
Hardy he was / and wys to vndirtake
With many a tempest' had his berd be shake
He knew alle the hauenes as they were
ffro gutlond to the cape de fynystere
And euery cryke in bretaygne *and* in Spayne
His barge y-clepid was the maudeleyne
With us ther was a doctour of' ffisik'
In al this world' ne was ther none hy*m* lik'
To speke of fisike and of surgerye
ffor he was grounded in astronomye
He kepte his pacient' a ful greet' del
In houres by his magik' naturel
Wel couthe he fortune the assendent'
Of' his ymages for his pacient'
He knew the cause of' euery maladye [leaf 6, bac
Were it' of hoot' or cold' or moyst' or drye
And wher engendred and [of] what humour

He was a verrey parfit' practisour
The cause I-knowe and of his harm the roote
Anoon he yaf the sike man his boote
fful redy hadde he hise apotecaries
To sende hem drugges / and his letuaries
ffor ech of hem made othir for to wynne
Her frendshipe nas nat newe to bigynne
Wel knew he the olde Escalapius
And diascoride and ek' Rufus
Old ypocras Hayly and Galien
Serapion Rasis and Auysen
Aueroys Damascien and constantyne
Bernard and Gatisden *and* Gilbertyne
Of' his diete mesurable was he
ffor it was of' no superfluyte
Bot of' gret' norshinge and digestable
His studie was but' litel on the bible
In sangweyn and in perce he clad was al
Lyned with Taffata and with sendal
And yet he was but esy of' dispense
He kepte that' he wan in pestilence
ffor gold in Phisik' is a cordeal
Therfore he louede gold' in special
A Good wiff' ther was of besides bathe
But she was somdel def' and þat was scathe
Of cloth makynge sche hadde such an haunt
She passid hem of ypres and of Gaunt
In alle the parisch wif' ne was ther noon
That to the offrynge toforn hir shulde goon
And yf ther dide / certeyn wroth was she
That she was out of al[le] charite
Hir couerchefes ful fyne were of ground'
I durste swere they weyeden ten pound'
That on a Sonday weren vpon hire hede
Hir hosen weren of' fyne scarlet' rede
fful streight I-teied / and shoes ful moist' *and* newe [leaf 7]

[redacted]ace and faire / *and* red of hiewe
[redacted] a worthi wo*m*man al hir lyue
Housbondes atte chirche dore she hadde fyue 460
With outen othir companie in youthe
But ther of nedith nouht to speke as nouthe
And thries hadde she bene at Ierusalem
She had[de] passed many a strange strem 464
At Rome sche had ben / *and* at boloyne
In Galice at saint Iame *and* at Coloigne
She koude moche on wandrynge bi the weye
Gat tothid was she sothely for to seie 468
Vp on an Amblere esily she satte
I-wympled wel and on hir heed an hatte
As brood as is a bokellere or a targe
A fot mantel abouten hire hipes large 472
And on hire feet a paire of spores sharpe
In felaschipe wel couthe sche lawhe *and* carpe
Of remedies of loue she kneuh parchau*n*ce
ffor she couthe of that art the daunce 476
A Good man was there of religiou*n*,
And was a pore persou*n* of a tou*n*
But riche he was of holy thouht *and* werk
He was also a lerned man *and* a clerk 480
That Cristes gospel treuly wolde preche
His parisschens deuoutly wolde he teche
Benyngne he was and wondir diligent
And in aduersite / ful pacient 484
And swich he was [i]preued ofte sithes
fful looth were hi*m* to cursen for his tythes
But rather wolde he yeuen out of doute
Vnto his poure parisshens aboute 488
Of his offrynge and of his substañce
He couthe in litil thing han suffisañce
Wide was hise parisshe *and* houses fer asondir
But he ne lafte nouthir for rayne ne for thu*n*dir 492
In sikenesse nor in meschief to visite

The ferrest in his parisch myche and lite
Vp on his fete / and in his hond a staff' [leaf 7, back]
This noble ensample to his shepe he yaf'
That' ferst' he wroughte. and aftirward' þat he tauht̃e
Out' of the gospel he þo wordes cauht̃e
And this figure he addede ek' therto
That' yf gold ruste / what' shal Iren do
For if' a prest' be foul on whom we triste
No wondir is a lewed man to ruste
And shame it is yf' a prest take kepe
A shiten sheperde and a clene shepe
Wel ouhte a preest ensample for to yeue
By his clennesse hou that' his sheepe shulde lyue
He set' nauht̃ his benefice to hire
And leet' his sheep acombred in the myre
And ran to london vn to seint Poules
To seke hym a chañterye for soules
Or with a bretherhede to bene with holde
But' duelte at' home / *and* kepte wel his foldo
So that' the wolf ne made it' not' myscarye
He was a shepperde *and* not' a mercenarie
And thouh̃ he holy were and vertuous
He was nouht̃' to synful mèn dispitous
Ne oñ his speche daungerous ne digne
But in his techynge discret' *and* benygne
To drawen folk' to heuene by fairnesse
By good ensample / this was his bisynesse
But' it' were eny person obstynate
What' so he were of' heigh̃ or lowh̃ estate
Hym wolde he snebbe sharply for the nones
A bettre prest I trowe þat nowher noon es
He waitede aftir no pompe *and* reuerence
Ne maked hym a spiced conscience
But cristes lore / *and* hise apostles tuelue
He tauhte / but ferst he folewed in hymselue
With hym ther was a plouh̃man / was his broþir

That' hadde I-lad of dong ful many a fothir
And a trewe swynkere *and* a good was he
Lyvynge in pees / and parfit' charite
God loued he best' with al his hole herte [leaf 8]
At' alle tymes thouh he gamed or smerte
And than his neighbure rih̄t as hymselue
He wolde thresshe and therto dike *and* delue
For cristes sake / for euery pouere wight
With oute hire / yif hit lay in his myght
Hise tythis payed he ful faire and wel
Bothen of his propre swynke and his catel
In a tabbard he rood vp on a mere
Ther was also a Reve and a Mellere
A somenour and a Pardoner also
A Maunciple and my self' ther nar na mo
The mellere was a strong' carle for the nones
ffful bigge he was / of brawne and ek' of bones
That proued wel / for oueral thare he cam
Atte wrastelynge / he wolde haue a-wey the ram
He was short shuldred a thicke knarre
Ther was no dore that he ne wolde heue of barre
Or breke it at' a rennynge with his heed
His berd as any sowe or fox was reed
And therto brood as þouh it' were a spade
Vp on the cop right' of his nose he hade
A werte and þeron stood a tuft of' heres
Rede as the brysteles of' a sowes eres
His nose þrilles blake were and wyde
A swerd and a bokelere bar he be his side
His mouthe as greet' was as a greet' fourneys
He was a iangelere and a goliardeys
And that' was moost' of' synne *and* of' harlotryes
Wel couthe he stele corn / and tolle thryes
And yit' he hadde a thombe of gold parde
A white cote and a blewe hood wered he
A bagge-pipe wel couthe he blowe *and* sowne

And þerwith al he brouht' us out' of towne
A Gentil mañciple was þer o[f] a temple
Of' which a catour myghte take ensample 568
ffor to ben wise in biynge of vitaille
ffor whe|ir þat he payed / or toke by taille
Algate he waitede so in his achate [leaf 8, back]
That he was ay beforn and in good estate 572
Now is not' þat' of god a ful fair grace
That such a lewed mannes wit shal pace
The wysdom of an hepe of lerned men
Of maystres hadde he mo þan thries ten 576
That were of lawe expert' an Curious
Of wich ther was a doseyn in that' hous
Worthy to bene stywardes of Rente *and* lond'
Of any lord that is in Ingelond' 580
To make hym lyue by his propre good'
In honour detteles but' if that' he were wood
Or lyue als skarsly as hy*m* lyst desire
And able for to helpen al a shire 584
In any cas that myhte falle or happe
And yit this Maunciple sette ther althir cappe
The Reue was a sclendre colerik' man
His berd was shaue / as ny|ie as euer he can 588
His heer was by hise eres ful roundc yshorne
His toppe was docked like a prest byforne
fful longe were his legges and ful lene
I-like a staf' / ther was no calf' ysene 592
Wel couthe he kepe a Garner or a bynne
Ther was none auditour couthe on hy*m* wy*n*ne
Wel wiste he / by the drought *and* by the reyne
The yeldynge of' his seed / and of' his greyne 596
Hise lordes sheepe / hise neete / hise dayerie
His swyne / his hors / his stoor / *and* his pultrye
Was hoolly in this reues gouernynge
And by his covenañt' / yaf' the rekenynge 600
Syn that his lord was twenty yeer of age

Ther couthe no man brynge hym in a-rerage
Ther nas baylyf' ne herde nor othir hyne
That he ne knew his sleighte *and* his covyne
They were a-drad of hym / as of the deth
His wonynge was ful faire vpon an hetħ
With grene trees / shadewed was his place
He couthe bettre than his lord purchace
ffull riche he was astored pryuely [leaf 9]
His lorde he coupe wel plese *and* sub[t]ily
To ȝeue and lene him of his owne goode
To haue a ponke and yit' a cote and hode
In ȝoupe he had lered a good mistere
He was a wel good wriȝt' a Carpentere
This Reue satte vpon a wel good stot'
That' was al pomel grey *and* hight*e* scot'
A longe Surcote of Peers vppon he hadde
And by his side he bare a rusty blade
Of Northfolk was þis Reue of whicħ I telle
Besides a toune men clepen it' Baldewelle
Tukked he was as is a frere aboute
And euere he rode þe hynderest' of o*ur* route

A Somno*ur* was ther wiþ vs in that place
That' had a fury cherubynes face
ffor Sauseflewme he was wiþ eyen narowe
Als hote he was and leccherous as a sparowe
With scalled browes. blak' and pilled beerde
Of his visage children weren a-ferde
Ther nas quyk' siluer' litarge or bremstoñ
Boras orsure no oyle of tartre nōōn
Ne oynement' þat' wold[e] clense *and* byte
That him myght' helpe of his whelkes white
Ne of [the] knobbes sitting' in his chekes
Wel loued he garlike. oynyoñs *and* eke lekes
And for to drink strong' wyne rede as blode
Than wolde he speke and cry as he were wode
And whan [that] he wel dronken had þe wyne

Than wolde he speke no worde but' latyne
A fewe teermes had he two or thre
That' he had lerned out' of som decree
No wonder is he herd' to al þe day
And eke ȝe knowen it' wel how þat a Iay
Can clepe watt' as wel as can þe pope
But' who so coupe in oþer þing' hym grope
Than had he spent' al his Philosophie [leaf 9, back]
Ay questio quid iuris wold he crye
He was a gentile harlot' and a kinde
A better felawe shul[de] men not' fynde
He wolde suffre for a quarte of wyne
A good felawe to haue his concubyne
A twelue monthꝫ and excuse him ate fulle
ffull' p*r*iuely eke a ffynche coupe he pulle
And if he fonde owhere a good felawe
He wolde techen hym to han noon awe
In suchꝫ caas of þe archedekens curs
But' if [a] ma*n*nys soule were in his purs
ffor in his purs he shuld[e] punshed be
Purs is þe erchedekenes Helle seide he
But' wel I wote he lyed riȝt' in dede
Of cursing' ouȝt' eche gilty man to drede
ffor curs wil slee riȝt' as assoyling saueth
And also war hym of a significauith
In daunger had he at his owne gyse
The yonge Geerles of þe diocise
And knewe her counsaile *and* what was al her rede
A Gallonde had he sette vpon his hede
As grete as it were for an ale stake
A Bokelere had he made hym of a Cake
With hym þer rode a gentile *Pardoner'*
Of rouncyuale his frende and his comper'
That' streght' was co*m*men from þe courte of Rome
ffull lowde songe he come hider' loue come
This somno*ur* bare to hym a stif burdoñ

Was neuere trumpe of half so gret' a souñ
This *Par*doner had heer as ȝelowe as wexe
But smoth̃ it' henge. as doþ a strike of flexe
By ounces henge his lockes þat' he had
And þerwiþ he his shulders ouersprad
But' thyn it lay by culpons oon and oñ
But' hode for Iolite wered he noon
ffor it' was trussed vp in his walette [leaf 10]
Hym þouȝt' he rode al of þe newe gette
Discheuele sauf his cap he rode al bare
Suche glaryng' eyen had he as an hare
A vernycle had he sewed vpon his cappe
His walet' [lay] biforn him in his lappe
Bret ful of *par*doñ co*m*men from Rome al hote
A voyce he had as smal as a[ny] goote
No beerde ne had he. ne neue*re* shuld haue
As smoth̃ it' was as it' were late shaue
I trowe he were a gelding' or a mare
But' of his craft' from Barwik' into ware
Ne was þer suche a noþer *par*doner*e*
ffor in his male he had a pilowbere
Which̃ þat he seide was oure lady vaile
He seide he had a gobet' of þe saile
That' seynt' Peter had whan þat he went'
Vpon þe see to Ih*es*u crist hym hent'
He had a croys of laton ful of stones
And in a glas he had[de] pigges bones
But' wiþ þise relikes whan þat' he fonde
A poor[e] person dwellyng' vpon londe
Vpon a day he gate hym more money*e*
þan þe the persone gate in Monþes tweye
And þus wiþ feyned flateryng *and* Iapes
He made þe Person *and* þe puple his apes
But' trew[e]ly to tellen at' þe laste
He was in chirche a noble eccle*s*iaste
Wel couþe he rede a lesson̄ or a storye

But' alþerbest he song' an offertorie
ffor wel he wist' whan þat' songe was songe
He moste preche and wel afile his tonge
To wynne siluer as he [right] wel cowde
Therfore he songe so merily *and* lowde
Now have I tolld' 3ou soþly in a clause
The astaat'. þe aray. þe nombre *and* eke þe cause
Why þat' assembled was þis companye [leaf 10, back]
In Suthwerk at' þis gentil hostrye
That' hight' þe Tabard' faste by þe belle
But' nowe is tyme to 3ou forto telle
Howe þat' we beren vs þat ilke nyght'
Whan [we] were in þat' Hostrie a-light'
And after wil I tellen of our viage
And al þe remenaunt of our Pilgrymage
But' furst' I prey 3ou of 3oure curtesie
That 3e ne rette it' not' my vilanye
þoo þat' I pleynly speke in þis matere
To telle 3ou her wordes *and* her chere
Ne þou3e he speke her wordes *proprely*
ffor þis 3e knowen as wel as I
Who so shal telle a tale after a man
He mote reherce as nyghe as euer he can
Eue*r*iche word if' it' be in his charge
Al speke he neuere so rudely and large
Or ellis he mote telle his tale vntrewe
Or feyne þinggis or fynde wordes newe
He may not' spare al þough he were his broþer'
He mot' also wel say. oo word' as another'
Crist' spak him self ful brode in holy writte
And wel 3e wote no vilanye is itte
Eke Plato seiþ who so can *hym* rede
The wordes mote be cosyn *to* þe *dede*
Also I prey 3ou [to] for3eue it' me
Al haue I not' sette folk in her degre
Here in þis tale as þat' thei shulde stonde

My witte is short' ȝe may wel vnderstonde
Grete chere made oure hooste vs eu*e*rechoñ
And to þe soper sette he vs anoñ 748
He serued vs witħ vitailles at þe best'
Stronge was þe wyne and wel [to] drink' vs lest'
A semely man our hooste was wiþ alł
ffor to [han] bene a marshal in an halł 752
A large man he was witħ yen stepe [leaf 11]
A fairer Burges is [ther] none in chepe
Bold of his speche. and wise *and* wel ytauȝt
And of manhode hy*m* lacked[e] right' naught' 756
Eke þerto he was right' a mery man
And after sopere pleyen he bygan
And spak of myrtħ amonge oþer þinges
Whan that' we had[de] made our rekenyngges 760
And seide þus. now lordingges trewly
ȝe bene to me welcome riȝt' hertely
ffor be my trouþe if þat' I shal not lye
I seegħ not' þis ȝere so mery a companye 764
At' ones in þis harborowe as is nowe
ffayne wold I do ȝou merthe wist' I howe
And of a merþe I am right' now by-þought'
To doñ ȝou ease and it shal coste nouȝt 768
Ȝe gone to canterbery god ȝou spede
þe blisful martir'. quite ȝou ȝour' mede
And wel I wote. as ȝe goon by þe way
ȝe shapen ȝou to talen and to pley 772
ffor trewly conforte ne myrthe is nōn
To riden by þe wey dombe as a stone
And þerfor wil I. make ȝou disporte
As I seide erste and don ȝou som conforte 776
And if ȝou likeþ alle by oon assente
[Now] fforto stonden at my Iuggemente
And forto worchen as I shal ȝou seie
To morowe whan ȝe riden by þe weie 780
Now be my faders soule þat' is dede

But' ȝe be mery. I wil ȝeue ȝou my hede
Holde vp ȝoure hondes wiþ out' more speche
Our counsaile was not longe for to seche
Vs þouȝt' it was not / worþe to make to wis
And graunted hym wiþ oute more avis
And bad him scie his veredit as him lest'
Lordingges quod he nowe herkeneþ for þe best'
But' take it' not' I prei ȝou in disdeyne [leaf 11, back]
This is þe point' to speke short' and pleyne
That' eche of ȝou to shorte wiþ our waye
In þis viage shal telle tailles twaye
To Caunterbery ward' I mene it so
And homwardes he shal telle oþere twoo
Of auentures þat' han whilom bifalle
And whicñ of ȝou þat' bereþ hym best' of alle
þat' is to sey þat' telleþ in þis cas
Tales of best' sentence and most' solas
shal haue a sopere at' our alder cost'
Her in þis place sitting' by þis post'
Whan þat' we commen ageyn from Canterburye
And forto make ȝou þe more merye
I wil my seluen goodly wiþ ȝou ride
Right' at myne owne cost' and be ȝour' gide
And who so wil my Iugement' wiþseye
Shal pay' al þat' we spenden by þe weye
And if ȝe vouche sauf þat' it' be so
Telle me anoon wiþ outen wordes moo
And I will' erly shape me þerfore
þis þinge was graunted and our oþes swore
Wiþ ful glad hert' and preien hym also
þat' he wolde vouchesauf so to do
And þat' he wolde be our gouernour'
And of our tales Iugge and roportour'
And sette a sopere at' a certeyn price
And we wold rewled bene at his deuice
In heghe and lough and þus by' on assent'

We bene accorded to þe Iuggement'
And þer vpon þe wyne was fette anon
We dronken and to reste wente echoñ
Wiþ oute eny lenger tariynge
On morowe whan þe day [bi]gan to sprynge
Vp roos oure hooste and was oure alder' Cok
And gadered vs to gidere in a flok.
And forþ we riden a litel more þan paas [leaf 12]
Vnto þe watering' of Seynt' Thomas
And þer our hooste gan his hors areste
And seide lordes harkeneþ if yow leste
3e wote 3oure forward' and I it 3ou record'
If euensonge and morowsonge accord'
Lat' see nowe who. shal telle þe first' tale
As euer mote I drinke wyne or ale
Who so be rebell' to my Iuggement
Shal paye for al þat' by þe way is spent'
Now draweþ Cut' er þat' we ferþer twynne
Whichñ þat' haþ þe shortest shal bygynne
¶ Sir' knyght' quod he my maister and my lorde
Now droweþ Cutte for þat' is myn accorde
Commeth nere quod he my lady prioresse
And 3e sir Clerk lat' be 3oure shamfastnesse
Ne stodieth nou3t' lay honde to euery man
Anoñ to drawe every wight' bygan
And shortely forto tellen as it' was
Were it' be auenture or sort' or cas
The soþe is þis þe Cut' fille to þe kny3t'
Of which full glad and bliþe was euery wi3t'
And tellen he most his tale as it' was resoñ
By forward' and by compo[si]cioñ
As 3e han herde what' neded' wordes moo
And whan þis good man seegñ þat' it' was soo
As he þat' wise was and obedient
To kepen his forward' by his fre assent'
He seide siþen I shal bygynne þe game

What welcome be þe Cutte a goddis name
Now lat vs ride *and* harkeneþ what I saye
And wiþ þat word we riden forþ our waye
And [he] byganne wiþ riȝt a mery chere
His tale anoñ and seide as ȝe may here

¶ **Iam que domos patrias scithice post aspera gentis: Prelia laurigero &c. Thus endeþ þe Prologe of þis Boke.**

¶ ffabula militis. Here bygynneþ the knyghtes tale.

Whilom was / as olde stories tellen vs [leaf 12, back]
A worþi duk' hight' theseus
Of Athenes he was lord *and* gouernour
And in his tyme suche a Conquerour'
That gretter was [ther] noon vnder þe sunne
fful many a riche contre had he wonne
What' wiþ his wisdom and his chyualrye
He conquered al þe regne of femynye
That' whilom was ycleped Sithia
And wedded[e] þe quene ypolita
And brouȝt' her home wiþ hym to his cuntre
Whith̄ moch̄ glorie and gret' solempnite
And eke her ȝenge suster Emelie
And þus with̄ victorie and with̄ melodye
Lat I þis noble Duke to Athenes ride
And al his hooste in armes hym beside
And certes if it' nere to longe to here
I wold' haue tolde fully þe manere
Howe wonnen was þe Reaume of ffemyny
By Theseus and by his Chiualrye
And of þe grete bataille for þe nones
Bytwyxen Athenes and amazones
And howe asseged was ypolita
The faire ladye qune of Scithia
And of þe feest' þat' was at her weddinge
And of þe tempest' at her home commynge
But' al þat' þing' I mot' as nowe forbere
I haue god wote a large feelde to ere
And weike bene þe oxen in my plough̄
The remenaunte of þe tale is long ynogh̄
I wil not' letten eke noon of þis route

Lat' euery felawe telle his tale aboute
And lat se nowe who shal þe soper wynne
And þer I lafte: I wil azein bygynne [*A brȅak in the MS. with*] Incipit' narracio plena Militis.
This Duk of whom I make mencioun [leaf 13]
Whan he was commen almost' to þe toun
In al his wele and his most Pride
He was war as he cast' his eyen atside
Where þat' þer kneled in þe highe waye
A companye of ladys twey and tweye
Eche after oþer clad in cloþes blake
But' suche a crye and suchꝑ a woo þei make
That' in þis worlde [n]is creature lyuynge
That' herde suche a-noþer wamentinge
And of þis crie þei nolde neuere stynte
Til þei þe Reynes of his bridel hente
What' folk bene ȝe þat' at' myn home commynge
Pertourben so my feest[e] wiþ criynge
Quod Theseus haue ȝe so grete envie
Of myn honour þat þus compleyn and crye
Or who haþ ȝou mysdone or offended
Telleþ me if it' may be amendet'
And whi þat' ȝe bene cloped þus in blak
The eldest lady of hëm al[le] spak
Whan she had swowned wiþ a dedly chere
þat' it' was rauthe forto sene and here
She seide lordꝑ to whom fortune haþ ȝeuen
Victorie and as a conquerour to lyuen
Nat' greueþ vs ȝoure glory and ȝour honour
But' we biseke mercy *and* socour
Haue mercy on our woo and our distresse
Some drope of Pite þorgh þi gentelnesse
Vpon vs wrecched wommen lat' nowe falle
ffor certes lordꝑ þer is noon of vs alle
That' she ne haþ bene a doches or a quene
Nowe bene we Catyues as it' is wel sene
Thonked be fortune and her fals[e] qwhele

þat noon estate ensureþ forto bene wele
Now certes lordꝛ to abide ȝour presence
Here in þis temple of þe goddes clemence
We han be wayting' al þis fourt[e]nyȝt' [leaf 13, back]
Helpe[þ] vs lord siþ it' is in þi myght
I wrecche whicħ þat' wepe *and* weile þus
Whilom was wif to king' Cappaneus
That' starfe at' Thebes cursed be *þat* day
And alle we þat' bene in þis araye
And maken al þis lamentacio*u*n
We losten alle our husbondes at' *þat* to*u*n
While þat' þe assege þer aboute lay
And ȝit' nowe þe olde Creon weillaway
That' lord is nowe of Thebes Cite
ffulfilled of yre and of iniquite
He for despite and for his tyrannye
To doon þe dede bodys vilenye
Of al our lordes whicħ þat bene sclawe
Haþ al þe bodies on an hepe ydrawe
And wol not' suffre hem by noñ assent'
Neiþere to bene yburied neiþer brent'
But' makeþ houndes ete hem in despit'
And wiþ þat' word' *with*outen more respit'
þei fillen a Gruf' and criden pitously
Haue on vs wrecched women som mercy
And lat' oure sorowe synken in þi hert'
¶ This gentel duke doune from his courser' stert'
Wiþ herte pitous whan he herde he*m* speke
Him þouȝte þat' his hert' wold' alto-breke
Whan he seegħ hem so pitous *and* so mate
þat whilom were[n] of so grete astate
And in his armes he hem alle vp hente
And hem conforteþ in ful good entente
And swore his oþe as he was trewe knyȝt'
He wolde done so ferforþly his myȝt'
Vppon the Tirant Creon hem to wreke

þat alle þe puple of Grece shuld speke
How Creon was of Theseus yserued
As he þat had his deþ ful wel deserued
And right anoñ *with*outen more abode [leaf 14]
His baner he displeied and forþ rode
To Thebes ward and al his hooste beside
No ner Athenes wold he goo ne ride
Ne take his ease fulli half a day
But onward on his way þat nyȝt he lay
And sent anoon ypolita the quene
And Emelye hir yonge sustre Shene
Vnto þe toune of Athenes to dwelle
And forþe he ritte þer is no more to telle
The rede statue of Mars wiþ spere *and* targe
So shyneþ in his white baner large
þat alle the feeldes glyteren vp *and* doun
And by his baner born is hys pynyoun
Of gold ful riche in which þer was ybete
þe Mynataur which þat he wan in Crete
Thus riȝt þis duk. thus riȝt þis conquerour
And in his ooste of Chyualrye þe flour
Til þat he come to Thebes and alight
ffaire in a felde þer as he þouȝt to fiȝt
But shortely forto speken of þis þing
With Creon whiche þat was of Thebes king
He faught and sclowgh him manly as a knyght
In pleyn bataille and put þe folk to flight
And by assaut he wan the Cite after
And rent adoun boþ walle spare and rafter
And to þe ladies he restored ageyñ
þe bones of her frendes þat were sleyñ
To done obsequies as was þe gyse
But it were al to longe forto devise
The grete clamour and þe wamentynge
þat þe ladies made at þe brennynge
Of þe bodies and þe grete honour

That' theseus þe noble conquerour'
Doþ to þe bodies whan þei ffrom hym went'
But' shortely to telle is myn entent' 1000
Whan þat þis worþi Duke þis theseus [leaf 14, back]
Haþ Creon sclayn and wonne Thebes þus
Stille in þat' felde he toke al nyȝt' his rest'
And did wiþ al þe contre as hym lest' 1004
To Ransake in þe caas of þe bodies dede
Hem for to stripe of harneyes and of wede
The pilours dyden bysynesse *and* Cure
Aftere þe bataille and þe discomfiture 1008
And so bifelle þat' in þe caas þei founde
þorgh̄ girt' wiþ many a greuous blody wounde
Two yonge knyghtes ligging' by and by
Bothen in armes same wrouȝt' ful richelie 1012
Of whiche two Arcita hight' that' oon
And þat' opere knyȝt' hight' Palamon
Not' fully quyk ne fully dede þei were
But by her cote armours *and* by her gere 1016
The herowdes knewe hem self in special
As þei þat' were[n] of þe blood Riall
Of Thebes. and of sustren two yborn
Out of þe caas þe Pilours han hem torn 1020
And han hem caried soft' vnto þe tent'
Of Theseus and he ful sone hem sent'
To Athenes to dwellen in Prisoñ
Perpetuelly hem nolde he not' raunsoñ 1024
And whan this worþi Duke haþ þus ydoñ
He toke his ooste and home he ritte anon
Wiþ laurere corowned as a conquerour'
And þer he lyueþ in Ioie and in honour' 1028
Teerme of his lif. what' nedeþ wordes moo
And in a toure in anguissh̄ *and* in woo
Dwellen þis Palamon and eke arcite
ffor euermore þer may no gold' hem quyte 1032
This passeþ yere by yere *and* day by day

Till it' fille onys in a morowe of May
That Emely þat' fairer was to sene
Than is þe lyle vpon his stalke grene
And fressher þan þe may wiþ floures newe [leaf 15]
ffor wiþ þe roos colour strof hir hwe
I not' whicħ was þe fairer of hem twoo
Er it' were day as was her wone to doo
She was a-risen and al a redy dight
ffor May wil haue no scloggardy on ny3t'
The seson pricketh euery gentile hert'
And makeþ hit' out' of his slepe to stert'
And sithen arise and doo May obseru*aunce*
This makeþ Emely to haue remembr*aunce*
To doñ honour to May and forto rise
Yclo þed was she fressħ forto devise
¶ Her 3elowe heer was breided in a tresse
Behynde her bak. a 3eerde longe y gesse
And in þe gardyne at' sonne vprist'
She walkeþ vp and doun and as her list'
She gadereþ floures p*a*rtie white *and* rede
To make a subtile garlonde for her hede
And as an aungel heuenly she songe
The grete toure þat was so þikke *and* stronge
Whicħ of þe castel was þe chief dongeoñ
There as þe knyghtes weren in p*r*isoñ
Of whicħ I tolke 3owe and telle shall
Was euene Ioynant' to þe gardyñ wall
Ther as þis Emely had her pleying'
Bri3t' was þe sonne and cleer in þat mornyng'
And palamon þis woful prisonere
As was his wo*n*ne by lieue of his Gaillere
Was rysen and romed in a chamber on higħ
In whicħ he al þe noble Cite segħ
And eke þe gardyne ful of braunches grene
Ther as þe fressħ emelye þe shene
Was in her walk and romed vp *and* doun

This soriful prisoner þis Palamoun
Goþ in þe Chambre romyng to and froo
And to him self compleynyng of his woo
That' he was born ful ofte seide allas [leaf 15, back]
And so byfelle by auenture or caas
That þorowe a wyndowe þikke of mony a barre
Of yren grete and square as eny sparre
He cast' his eyen vpon Emelia
A[nd] þerwiþ al he bleynte and cried A
As þouȝe he stongen were vnto þe hert'
And wiþ þat crie Arcyte anoñ vp stert'
And seide Cosyn myne what' eileþ þe
That' art' so pale and dedly on to see
Whi cridest' þowe who haþ þe doñ offence
ffor goddis loue. take al in pacience
Our' prisoñ for it' may noon other be
ffortune hath ȝeue vs þis aduersite
Som wikke aspecte or disposicion
Of Saturne by som constellacion
Haþ ȝeuen by þis al þouȝe he had hit' sworñ
So stode þe heuene whan þat' we were borñ
We mote endure it þis is short' *and* playn
This Palamon answerd' and seide agayñ
Cosyn forsoþ of þis opynyoñ
Thow hast' a veyn ymagynacioñ
This prison caused me not' [for] to crie
But I was hirt riȝt' nowe þorgh out' myn ye
Into myn hert' þat' wil my bane be
The fairnesse of þat' lady þat' I see
ȝonde in þe gardyne romyng' to and fro
Is cause of al my criyng and my woo /
I not' where she be wo*m*man or goddesse
But Venus is it soþly as I gesse
And þerwiþal on knees doun he fille
And seide Venus if it be þi wille
ȝowe in þis gardyne þus to t*r*ansfigure

Bifore me soriful wrecched creature
Out' of þis Prison helpe þat' we mowe scape
And if so be my destany be shape
By eterne worde to dyen in *prisoñ* [leaf 16]
Of oure lynage haue som *com*passion
That is so lowe ybrou3t' by tyrannye
And wiþ þat' word arcite gan aspie
Where as þis lady romed to and froo
And wiþ þat' si3t' her bewte hurte hy*m* soo
þat' if þat' Palamon was wounded sore
Arcite is hurte as moche as he or more
And wiþ a sighe he seide pitously
þe fresshe bewte sleeþ me sodeynly
Of hur' þat' romeþ in 3onder place
And but' if I haue her mercy and her grace
þat' I may seen hir' atte leeste way
I ne am but' dede þer nys no more to say
This Palamon whan he þise wordes herde
Dispitously he loked and answerde
Wheder seist' þou þis in ernest or in pleye
Nay quod Arcite in ernest' be my feye
God helpe me so me lest' ful euel play
This Palamon gan knytte his browes tway
It were to the quod he no gret' honour'
ffor to be fals ne for to be traito*ur*
To me þat am þi Cosyn *and* þi broþer
Isworne ful depe and eche of vs to oþer
That' neuere for to dyen in þe peyñ
Til þat' þe deþe departe shal vs tweyñ
Neiþer in loue to hynder oþer'
Ne in noon oþer caas my lief broþer'
But' þat' þou shuldest trewly ferþermore
In euery cãas and I shal forther þe þore
þis was þine othe and myn also certeyñ
I wote ri3t' wele þow darst it not wiþseyñ
Thus art þow of my counsel out of doute

And nowe þou woldest falsly ben aboute
To loue my lady whom I loue *and* serue
And euer shal to þat' myn herte sterue
Now certes fals Arcite þow shalt' not' so [leaf 16, back]
I loued her first' and tolde þe my woo
As to my counsaile and my broþer sworn
To forþere me as I haue tolde biforn
ffor which þow art' ybounden as a knyght'
To helpe me if it' lay in þi myght'
Or ellis art' þou fals I dar wel sayn
This arcite ful prudently spak agayn
Thow shalt' q*uo*d he þe raþer fals þan I
But' þou art' fals I telle þe witterly
ffor p*ar*amour I loued her first þan þou
What' wilt' þow seyn. þou wist' it' not' 3it nowe
Whedere she be a wo*m*man or goddes
Thyne is affeccioñ of holynes
And myne is loue as to a creature
ffor which I tolde þe myñ auenture
As to my cosyn and to my bro*þer*e sworñ
I pose þat' þou louedest' hur' biforñ
Woost' þow not' wel þe olde clerkes sawe
þat who shal 3eue a louer eny lawe ¶ Quis legem dat amantibus
Loue is a gretter lawe by my pan
þan may be 3eue to eny erþely man
And þerfor positif lawe and swich decree
Is broke al day for loue in eche degre
A man mote nedes loue mawgre his hede
He may not' fleen it': þou3e he shuld be dede
Al be she mayde or widowe or ellis wif
And eke it is not' likly al þi liff
To stonden in her grace no more shal I
ffor wel þou woost þi self[e] v*er*rely
þat þou and I bene dampned to pr*i*soñ
P*er*petuelly vs geyneth no raunsoñ
We stryuen as [did] houndes for þe boon

þei foughten alday and ȝit' her parte was noñ
þere come a kite while þat þei were so wrothꝫ
þat bare away þe boon bitwene hem bothꝫ
Ak þerfore at þe kingges courte my brother' [leaf 17]
Eche man for him self þer is noon oþer'
Loue if þe list. for I loue and ay shal
And soþly leue broþer þis is allꝫ
Here in þis prison mote we endure
And euerichñ of vs take his auenture
Grete was þe strif and longe bytwix hem tweye
If þat' I had leisere for to seye
But to þis effect I[t] hapned on a day
To tellen yowe as soþly as I may
A worþi duc' þat' hight' Perotheus
þat' ffelawe was vnto duc Theseus
Siþ þilk day þat' þei weren children lite
Was commen to Athenes his felawe to visite
And forto pley as he was wont' to doo
ffor in þis worlde he loued no man soo
And he loued him also tenderly ageyn
So wel þei loued as olde bokes seyn /
That' whan þat oon was dede soþly to telle
His felowe went' and souȝt him doun in helle
But of þat storie list' me not' to write
Duc' Perotheus loued wel arcite
And had him knowe at Thebes yere by yere
And fynaly at' þe request' and preiere
Of Perotheus wiþ out' ony raunsoñ
Duc' theseus him lete out' of Prisoñ
ffrely to goon wher þat' him list oueral
In suche a gise as I you telle shallꝫ
This was þe forward pleynly for to endite
Bitwene Theseus and hym iercite
That' if so were þat' arcite were founde
Euer in his lif be day or nyȝt or stounde
In eny cuntre of this theseus

And he were kaught' it was acorded' þus
That' wiþ a swerde he shuld lese his hede
þer nas non oþer remedye ne rede
But takeþ his leue and homward' he hym spedde [leaf 17, back]
Lat' hym be war his nek lith to wedde
How grete a sorowe suffreþ nowe arcite
The deth̄ he feleþ þorgh̄ his herte smyte
He wepeþ *and* weileþ and crieþ pitously
To sleen hym self he waiteth p*ri*uely
He saide Allas þat day þat I was born̄
Now is my p*ri*son̄ wors than [was] beforn̄
Nowe is me shape eternaly to dwelle
Nou3t' in purgotorye. but' in helle
Allas þat' euere I knewe P*e*rotheus
ffor ellis had I ydwelled with theseus
Yfetered in his prison euermoo
Than had I bene in blisse and not' in woo
Only þe sight' of her' whom þat I serue
Thoow þat I neuere hir' grace may deserue
Wold haue ysuffised right ynowe for me
Oo dere Cosyn Palamon quod he
Thine is þe victorie of þis auenture
fful blisfully in prison my3t' þou dure
In prison certes nay but p*a*radis
Wel hath̄ fortune turned þe the dys
þat hast þe sight' of hur' and I þe absence
ffor possible is siþ þou hast her p*r*esence
And art' a knyght an worþi and an able
That by som caas siþ fortune is chau*n*geable
Thowe maiste to þi desire somtyme atteyn̄
But' I þat' am exiled and bareyn̄
Of al[le] grace and in so gret' despeir'
That þer nys erþe water' fuyr' ne eire
Ne creature þat' of hem maked is
þat' may me helpe or done co*m*fort in þis
Wel ou3te I sterue in wanhope and distresse

ffare wele my lif' my lust and my gladnesse
Allas whi pleynen men so in comune
Of *pur*ueaunce of god and of fortune
That' ȝeueþ hem ful oft' in mony a gyse [leaf 18]
Wel bet[ter] þan þei can hem self devise
Som man desireþ forto haue richesse
That' cause is of his mordere and gret' siknesse
And som man wolde out' of his prisoñ fayñ
That' in his hous is of his mayne sclayñ
Infinite harmes bene in þis matiere
We wote not what' þinge þat we preien here
We faren as he þat' dronken is as mous
A dronken man wote wele he haþ an hous
But he ne woote whicñ þe riȝt way is þidere
And to a dronken man þe way is sclydere
And certes in þis world' so faren wee
We sechen fast' aftere felicite
But' we goon wronge ful oft' trewly
Thus may we seie alle and namelicñ I
That wende and had a grete opynyoñ
That if I myȝte skapen from *pri*soñ
þan had I be in Ioie and *par*fite hele
þer nowe I am exiled fro my wele
Siþ þat I may not' seen ȝou Emelye
I am but dede þer nys no remedye
Vppon þat oþer side Palamon
Whan þat he wist' þat' arcite was agoñ
Swicñ sorowe he makeþ þat þe grete tour
Resouneþ of his ȝellinge *and* clamour
The pure fettres of his shynes grete
Were of his bitter salte teeres wete
Allas quod he Arcita cosyn myne
Of al our strif god wote þe fruyte is þine
Thow walkest now in Thebes at þi large
And of my woo. þou ȝeuest litel charge
Thow maist siþ þou hast wisdom *and* manhede

Assemble alle þe folk of our kinrede
And make a werre so sharpe on þis Cite
þat by som auenture or som trete
Thow maist' haue hir' to lady and to wiff' (leaf 18, back)
ffor whom þat I most nedes lese my liff
ffor as by way of possibilite
Siþ þou art' at' þi large of prison free
And art a lorde grete is þine au*a*untage
More þan is myne þat sterue here in a kage
ffor I mote wepe and weile while þ*a*t I lyue
Wiþ al þe woo þat' prison may me 3eue
And eke wiþ peyn þat' loue me 3eueþ alsoo
þat' doubleþ al my torment' and my woo
þer wiþ þe fire of gelesie vpsterte
Wiþ in his brest' and hente hy*m* by þe herte
So woodly þat' he like was to biholde
The box-tre or þe asshen dede and colde
That' seide he .o. cruel goddes þat' gouerne
This world' wiþ byndinge of 3oure worde eterne
And writen in þe table of Athamaunt'
3oure p*ar*lement' and 3oure eterne gr*a*unt'
What' is mankinde more vnto 3ou holde
þan is the shepe þat' roukeþ in þe folde
ffor sclayn is man riȝt' as an oþer beest'
And dwelleþ eke in pr*i*son and in arest'
And haþ siknesse and grete aduersite
And oft' tymes giltlees parde
What' gouern*au*nce is in þis prescience
That' giltlees tormenteþ Innocence
And encreseþ þis al my penaunce
þat man is bounden to his obseru*au*nce
ffor goddes sake to letten of his wille
Ther as a beest may al his list fulfille
And whan a beest' is dede he hath no peyn
But' aftere his deth̄ man mote wepe and pleyn
Thogh̄ in þis world' he haue care *and* woo

Wiþ outen doute it' may stonden soo
The answere of þis lete I to dyuynes
But' wel I wote þat' in þis world' gret' pyne es
¶ Allas I se a serpent' or a theef' [leaf 19]
þat mony an trewe man haþ done meschief'
Goon at' his large and where hym list may tur'ne
But I mote bene in prisoñ þorgh̄ Saturne
And eke þorghe Iuno Ialous and eke wode
þat haþ destroied wel nygh̄ al þe blode
Of Thebes wiþ his waaste walles wide
And Venus sleeþ me on þat' oþer side
ffor Ialousy and fere of him Arcite
Now wil I stinte of Palamon a lite
And lat' hym in his prison stille dwelle
And of Arcite forþ I wil 3owe telle
The somer passeþ and þe ny3tes longe
Encresceþ double wise. þe peynes stronge
Boþen of þe louer and of þe prisoner'
I not' whiche haþ þe woofuller' myster'
ffor shortely for to seyn of þis Palamōn
Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoñ
In cheynes and [in] fettres to þe dede
And Arcite is exiled vp[on] is hede
ffor euermore as out' of þat' cuntre
Ne neuere ne shal his lady see
¶ 3ow louyers aske I now þis questiōn
Who haþ þe wors Arcite or Palamōn
That' oon may se his lady day by day
But in Prison mot he dwelle alway
That' oþer wher hym list' may ride *and* goo
But' seen his lady shal he neuer moo
Now deyuneþ as 3ou list' þat 3e can
ffor I wil telle forþ as I byganne

¶ Whan þat Arcite to Thebes commen was
fful often a daie he swelt' and seide alas
ffor seen his lady shal he neuere moo
And shortely to concluden all his woo
So mykel sorowe had neuere creature
þat is or shal while þat' þe world may dure
¶ His slepe his mete. his drink is hym byraft' [leaf 19, back]
þat' lene he wexeþ and drye as is a shaft'
His eyen holowe and grisly to biholde
His hwe falowe *and* pale as asshen colde
And solitarye he was and euer allone
And waillinge al þe ny3t' making his mone
And if he herde songe or instrument
Than wolde he wepe he my3t' not' stent'
So feble eke were his spirites / and he lowe
And chaunged so þat' no man can knowe
His speche neiþer his voys þou3e men it herde
And in his gere for al þe worlde he ferde
Not' comly liche to louers maladye
Of heres but' rather like manye
Engendred of humour malancolike
Byforn his celle fantastike
And shortely turned was al vp and doun
Both habite and disposicioun
Of him þis wooful louer' Daine[1] Arcite [1 *or* Dame]
What' shuld' I alday of his woo endite
Whan he endured had a 3ere or two
This cruel torment *and* þis peyn *and* woo
At Thebes in his courte as I seide
Vpon a nyght' in slepe as he hym leide
Hym þou3t' howe þat the wenged god Mercurye
Biforn him stode and bad hym to be merye
His slepy yeerde in honde he bare vpri3t'
An hatte he wered vpon his heres bri3t'

Araied was þis god as hè toke kepe
As he was whan þat Argus toke his slepe
And seide him þus to Athenes shalt þou wende
Ther is þe shapen of þi woo an ende
And wiþ þat' worde Arcite woke *and* stert
Nowe trewly howe sore þat euer me smert
Quod he to Athenes nowe wil I fare
Ne for þe drede of deþe shal I not spare
To see my lady þat' I loue and serue [leaf 20]
In her presence I ne recche þoughⁿ I sterue
And wiþ þat' word he kaught' a grete myrour
And seeghⁿ þat chaunged was al his colour
And seeghⁿ his visage al in anoþer kinde
And right' anoⁿ it' ranne him in his mynde
That siþen his face was so disfigured
Of malady þe whichⁿ he had endured
He myghte wel if þat' he bare hym lowe
Lyue in Athenes euermore vnknowe
And seen his lady wel nye day be day
And right' anon he chaunged his aray
And clad him as a poor labore[er]
And [al] alon sauf oonly a sqwiere
That' knewe his priuete *and* al his caas
Whiche was disgised poorly as he waas
To Athenes is he gon þe nexte way
And to þe courte he went' vpon a day
And at þe gate he profered his seruyse
To drugge and drawe what' so men wil deuise
And shortely of þis mater forto seyⁿ
He felle in office wiþ a chamberleyⁿ
The whiche þat was dwelling' wiþ Emelye
ffor he was wise and sone couþe aspye
Of euery seruaunte whichⁿ þat serueþ here
Wel couþe he hewen wode and water' bere
ffor he was yonge and myghty for þe nonys
And þerto he was stronge and bigge of bonys

To done þat eny wi3t' him can deuise
A 3eer or two he was in þis seruyse
Page in þe Chambre of Emely þe bri3t
And Philostrate he seide þat he hi3t'
But' half so wel biloued a man as he
Ne was þer neuer in courte of his degre
He was [so] gentil of Condicioun
þat' þorowe out al þe court' was his renoun
Thei seide þat' it' was a charite [leaf 20, back]
That' theseus wolde enhaunce his degre
And putten hym in worshipful seruyse
þer as he myght' his vertue exercise
And þus wiþ in a while his name is spronge
Bothen of his dedes and of his good tonge
That' Theseus haþ taken hym so nere
þat of his chambere he made hym a squyere
And 3aue him gold' to meyntene his degre
And eke men brou3t' hym out' of his cuntre
ffro 3ere to 3ere ful priuely his rente
But' honestly and slei3ly he it' spente
That' no man wondred. how þat' he it hadde
And thre 3ere in þis wise his lif he ladde
And bare hym so in pees and eke in werre
þer is no man þat' Theseus hath̄ derre
And in þis blisse lete I nowe Arcite
And speke I wil of Palamon a lite
¶ In derknesse in horrible and strong' prisoñ
This vij. 3ere hath̄ sitten Palamon
ffor-pyned what' for woo *and* for distresse
Who feleth̄ double soor and hevynesse
But Palamon þat' loue destreyneþ so
That' wode out' of his wit' he goþ for woo
And eke þerto he is a *pri*sonere
*Per*petuelly not' oonly for a 3ere
Who cowde ryme in englissh̄ *pro*prely
His martierdome for soþ it am not' I

Therfor I passe as liȝtly as I may
¶ It felle þat' in þe vij. ȝere of May
The .iij. nyght' as olde bokes seyñ
þat' al þis story telleþ more pleyñ
Were it by auenture or be destynye
As whan a þing' is shape it' shal be
That sone aftere the mydnyȝt' Palamoñ
By helpinge of a frende brak prisoñ
And fleeþ þe Cite fast' as he may goo / [leaf 21]
ffor he had ȝeue his gaylere drink so
Of a Clerrey made of a certeyn wyne
Wiþ vercotiks and opy of Thebes fyne
þat' al þat' nyȝt' þough þat men wold' hym shake
þe Gailler sclepte and myȝte not' awake
¶ And þus he fleeþ as fast as euer he may
þe nyȝt' was short' and fast[e] by þe day
þat' nedes cost' he most' him self hiden
And til a groue faste ther besiden
Wiþ dredful foote þan stalkeþ Palamoñ
ffor shortely þis was his opynyoñ
That' in þat' groue he wolde hym hide alday
And in þe nyght' þan wolde he take his way
To Thebes ward' his frendes forto prey
On theseus to helpe hym to werrey
A[nd] shortely eiþer he wold lese his liff'
Or wynnen Emely to his louely wiff'
This is þeffeste and his entente pleyñ
¶ Nowe wil I turne vnto Arcite ageyñ
That' litel wist' howe negh̄ þat' was his care
Til þat' fortune had kauȝt' hym in his snare
The bysy larke massagere of day
Saluep in her songe þe morowe gray
And ffiry Phebus riseþ vp so briȝt
þat' al þe Orient laugheth̄ of his siȝt'
And wiþ his stremes drieþ in þe greues /
The siluer dropes honging' in þe leues

¶ And Arcita þat' in þe courte Royall
With̄ Theseus his squyer' pryncipall
Is risen and lokeþ on þe mery day
And forto don̄ his obseruaunce to Maij
Remembring' þe point' of his desire
He on his coursere sterting' as þe fire
Is riden into þe feeldes him to pley
Out' of þe courte were it' a myle or twey
And to þe Groue of which̄ þat I ȝou tolde [leaf 21, back]
By auenture his way by-gon to holde
And maken hym a garlond' of þe greues
Were it' of wodbynde or hawthorn leues
And loude he songe aȝeinst þe sonne shene
May wiþ all þi floures and þi grene
Welcome be þowe faire fresshe May
I hope þat I somme grene gete may
And from his courser wiþ a lusty herte
Into þe Groue ful hastely he sterte
And in a path̄ he romeþ vp *and* doun
þer as by auenture of þis Palamoun
Was in a busshe þat no man myȝt' hym see
ffor soor afferd' of his deþ was he
¶ No þinge ne knewe he þat' it was Arcyte
God wote he wold' haue trowed it ful lite
But' soþ is seide goon sithen mony ȝeres
That' feelde hath̄ yen *and* þe wode haþ eeres
It' is ful faire a man to bere hym euene
ffor alday meten men at' vnsef' steuene
fful litel wote Arcite of his felawe
þat' was so nygh̄ to harken of his sawe
ffor in þe busshe he sitteþ now ful stille
Whan þat' Arcite had romed al his fille
And songen at' the roundel lustely
Into a stody he felle sodeynly
As don þise louers in her queynt[e] geres
Now in þe croppe now doun in þe breres

Now vp nowe doune as Boket' in a welle
Riȝt as þe friday soþly forto telle
Now it shyneþ nowe it reyneþ faste
Riȝt so gan gery Venus euer caste
The hertes of her folk riȝt as hir' day
Is Gerful. riȝt' so chaungeþ she aray
Selde is þe friday al þe weke ylike
¶ Whan þat Arcite had ysonge he gan to sike
And sette hym doune with oute[n] eny more [leaf 22]
Allas quod he þat' day þat' I was bore
Howe longe Iuno þorgh̄ þi cruelte
Wiltow werryen Thebes þe Citee
Allas ybrought' is to confusioñ
The blood Roial of Cadme and Amphiõn
Of Cadmus whiche þat' was þe first man
That Thebes bilt. or first' þe toune bygan
And of þe Cite first' was corowned kinge
Of his lynage am I and of his of-springe
By verrey lyne as of þe stok Roiall
And nowe I am so Catif and so thral
That' he þat' is my mortal enemye
I serue him as his sqwier poorlye
And ȝit doþ me Iuno wel more shame
ffor I dar not' be-knowe myn owne name
But þer [as] I was wonte to hiȝt' Arcite
Now hight' I Philostrate not' worþe a myte
¶ Allas þou felle Mars allas þou Iuno
Thus haþ ȝoure Ire our lynage alfordo
Sauf oonly me *and* wrecched Palamoñ
That Theseus martereþ in prisoñ
And ouer al þis to sleen me vtterly
Loue haþ faire his darte so brennyngly
Istiked þorgh̄ my trewe careful herte
That shapen was my deþ arst þan my sherte
ȝe sleen me wiþ ȝoure yen Emelye
ȝe ben þe cause wherfore þat' I dye

1536 1540 1544 1548 1552 1556 1560 1564 1568

Of al the remenant' of myn oþer care
Ne sette I nouȝt' the mountance of a tare
So þat I cowde do' ouȝt' to ȝour plesaunce
And wiþ þat' word' he feile doun in a traunce 1572
A longe tyme and afterward' he vp stert
þis Palamon þat' þouȝt' þat þorgh̄ [his] herte
He felte a colde swerde sodeinly glide
ffor Ire he qwoke no lenger wold he bide [leaf 22, back. MS. repeats 'He felt a swerde sodeynly Glide']
¶ And whan þat' he had herde Arcites tale
As he were wode wiþ face dede *and* pale
He stert' hym vp out' of the buskes thikke
And seide Arcite fals traitour quykke 1580
Now art' þou hent' þat' louest' my lady soo
ffor whom þat' I haue al þis peyn *and* woo
And art' my blood and to my counsel sworne
As I ful oft' have tolde þe here to forn 1584
And hast' by-iaped here Duke Theseus
And falsly chaunged hast þi name þus
I wil be dede or ellis þou shalt dye
Thowe shalt' not' loue my lady Emely 1588
But I wil loue hir' oonly and no moo
ffor I am Palamon þi mortel ffoo
And þouȝe þat' I no wepen haue in þis place
But out' of prisoñ am I-stert' by grace 1592
I drede nouȝt' but' eiþer þou shalt' dye
Or þou ne shalt' not' loue Emelye
Chese which̄ þou wilt' or þou shalt' not' asterte
¶ This Arcite wiþ ful dispitous herte 1596
Whan he hym knewe and had his tale herd'
As feers as a lyon pulled out' a swerd'
And seide þus by god þat' sitteþ aboue
No it were þat' þou art seke and wode for loue 1600
And eke þat' þou no wepen hast in þis place
Thow shuldest neuere out' of þis groue pace
þat' þou ne shuldest dyen of myn honde
ffor I defie þe swerte and þe bonde 1604

Whicñ þat þou seist' I haue made to þe
What' verrey fool þenk wel þat' loue is free
And I wil loue hir' mawgre al þi myȝt'
But' for as moche as þou art a worþi knyȝt'
And willest' to darreyn hir' by bataille
Haue here my trouþe to morwe I nyl not' faille
Wiþ outen witting' of eny o*þer*e wight'
That' here I wil be founden as a knyght'
And bringen harneis riȝt' ynoughñ for þe
And chese þe best' and leue þe worst' for me
And mete and drink þis nyghte wil I bringe
Ynough for þe and cloþes for þi beddynge
And if so be þat' þou my lady wynne
And sclee me in þis wode þ*er* I am Inne
Thow maist wel haue þi lady as for me
This Palamon answerd' I graunte it' þe
And þus þei bene departed til a morowe
Whan eche of hem had leide his feiþ to borowe
¶ O cupide out' of al charite
O regne þat wold' no felawe haue wiþ þe
fful soþ is seide þat' loue ne lordship
Wil not' his þonkes haue no felawship
We fynde þat' of Arcite and Palamo*un*
Arcite is riden anoñ into the to*un*
And on þe morowe er it' were day liȝt'
fful p*r*iuely two harneys haþ he diȝt'
Both suffisaunt' and mete to darreyñ
The bataille in þe feelde bytwix hem tweyñ
And on his hors allone as he was borñ
He cariep al his harneys hy*m* biforñ
And in þe Groue at' tyme *and* place ysette
This Arcite and þis Palamon ben mette
To chaungen gan þe colour in her face
Right' as þe hunters in [the] reyne of trace
That' stondeþ atte gap[pe] wiþ a spere
Whan hunted is þe lyon or þe bere

[leaf 23]

And herep him come russhing' in pe Greues
And brekep both̄ [the] bowes and pe leues
And penkep here commeth my mortal enemyo
Wip oute faile he mote be dede or I
ffor eiper I moot' scleen him atte gappe
Or he moot sclee me if pat' me myshappe
So feerden [thei] in chaungyng' of here hwe [leaf 23, back]
As fer as euerich̄ of hem oper knewe
Ther nas no good day ne no saluynge
But streizt' wip oute worde or rehersinge
Euerich̄ of hem helpep forto arme oper'
As frendly as he were his owne broper'
And after pat' with sharpe speres stronge
They foynen eche at' oper wonder longe
Thow myztest' wene pat' pis Palamon
In his fightinge were a wood lyon̄
And as [a] cruel tigre was Arcite
As wilde boores gon pei to-gider' smyte
That' frothen white as fome for yre woode
Vp to pe Ancle fought' pei in her bloode
And in pis wise I lete hem fighting' dwelle
And forp I wil of Theseus zou telle
¶ The destanye minister' generall
That' executep in pe world ouer all
The purueaunce pat god hap say bifore
So stronge it' is pat' pei pe world had it swore
pe contrarie of a pinge be ye or nay
zit' som tyme it shal falle on a day
That' fallep nouzt eft wip in a pousand yere
ffor certeynly our appetites here
Be it' of werre or pees. or hate or loue
Al is pis rewled by pe sight aboue
This mene I nowe by myghty Theseus
That' forto hunte is so desirous
And namely atte grete hert' in Maij
That' in his bed per dawep hym no day

That' he nys cladde and redy forto ride
Wiþ hunte and horn and houndes hym biside
ffor in his hunting haþ he swich delite
That' it' is al his ioye and appetite
To bene hym self þe grete hertes bane
ffor after Mars he serueþ nowe Dyane
Cleer was þe day as I haue told' er þis / [leaf 21]
And Theseus wiþ al[le] Ioie *and* blis
Wiþ his ypolita þe faire quene
And Emely[e] cloþed al in grene
On huntinge bene þei riden rially
And to þe Groue þat' stode ful fast' by
In which per was an herte as men hym tolde
But' Theseus þe streighte way haþ holde
And to þe launde he rideþ hym ful riȝt'
ffor þider was þe hert' wonte to haue his fliȝt'
And ouer a broke and so forþ on his way
This duke wil haue a cours at' hym or tway
Wiþ houndes swich as þat' him list comaunde
And whan þis duke was come vnto þe launde
Vnder þe sonne he loked anon
He was ware of Arcite and Palamon
That' fouȝten breme as it' were boles two
The brigte swerdes wenten to and fro
So hidously þat' wiþ þe leest[e] stroke
It semeþ þat it wold' fellen an oke
But' what' þei were no þing' he ne wote
This duke his courser wiþ his spores smoote
And at' a sterte he was atwixe hem twoo
A pulled out' a swerde and cried hoo
No more vp peyn of lesing' of ȝour hede
By myghty mars he shal anon be dede
That' smyteþ eny stroke þat' I may sene
But' telleþ me what' myster men ȝe bene
That' ben so hardy forto fiȝten here
Wiþ oute Iugge. or oþer officere

¶ As it were in litel liste ryaſſy
This Palamon answerde hastily
And seide Sir' what' nedeþ wordes moo
We han þe deþe deserued boþ twoo
Two woful wrecched be we two catyfes
þat bene encombred of oure owne lifes
And as þow art' a riȝtful lorde and Iuge [leaf 21, back]
Ne ȝeue vs neiþer mercy ne refuge
But' scle me furst' for seinte Iarite
But' slee my felowe eke as wel as me
Or slee hym [first] for þoughⁿ þo[u] knowest lite
This is þi mortal ffoo þis is arcite
That' from þi londe is banshed on his hede
ffor whiche he haþ deserued to be dede
ffor þis is he þat' come vnto þi gate
And saide þat' he hight' Philostrate
Thus haþ he Iaped þe ful mony a ȝere
And þou hast' made him þi chief squyere
And þis is he þat' loueþ Emelye
ffor siþ þat' day is commen þat' I shal dye
I make pleynly my confessioⁿ
That' I am þilk[e] wooful Palamoⁿ
That' haþ þi prison broken wikkedly
I am þi mortal foo and it' am I
That' loueþ so hote Emely þe briȝt'
That' I wil dye present' in her siȝt'
Wherfore I axe deþ and my Iwes
But' scle my felawe in þe same wise
ffor boþe we han deserued forto be sclayⁿ
This worþi duke answerd' anon agayn
And saide þis is a short' conclusioⁿ
ȝoure owne mouþe be ȝoure confessioⁿ
Haþ dampned þer ȝou and I wil it' record*e*
Hit nedeþ not' to pyne ȝou wiþ acorde
He shul be dede by myȝty mars þe rede
The quene anoon for verrey wo*m*manhede

Gan [for] to wepe and so seide Emelye
And al þe ladis in þe companye
Grete pite was it' as it þouȝt' hem alle
That' euere such a chaunce shuld byfalle
ffor gentil men þei were of grete astate
And no þinge but' for loue was þis debate
And seegh̄ her blody woundes wide and sore [leaf 25]
And alle criden boþ[e] lasse and more
Haue mercy vpon vs wommen alle
And on her bare knees doun þei falle
And wold han kissed his fete þer he stoode
Til at' þe last' a-sclaked was his moode
ffor pite renneþ sone in gentile herte
And þoughe he first' for ire quoke *and* sterte
He haþ considered shortly in a clause
The trespase of hem both[e] and þe cause
And al þouȝe his Ire her gilt' accused
ȝit' in his reson he hem both excused
And þus he þouȝte wel þat' euery man
Wol helpe him self in loue if þat' he can
And eke delyuere him self out' of p*r*isoñ
And eke him self had compassioñ
Of wo*m*men for þei wepen eue*r*e in oon
And in his gentile hert' he þouȝt' anōn
And soft' vnto him self he seide fye
Vpon a lord þat' wil haue no mercy
But' be a lyon boþe in word' and dede
To hem þat' bene in repentaunce *and* drede
As wel as to a prowde dispitous man
That wil mey[n]tene þat' he first bygan
That' lord haþ litel in discreccion
That' in such caas can no diuisioñ
But weieþ pride and humblenesse after' oon
And shortely whan his Ire was þus agon
He gan to loken vp wiþ eyen light'
And spake þise same wordes al on hight'

The god of love. o Benedicite
How myghty and howe grete a lord is he
Aȝeinst his myght' þer ȝeyneþ noñ obstacles
He may be cleped a god for his myracles
ffor he can maken at is owne gyse
Of euerich̄ hert' as þat' hym list' devise
Lo here þis arcite and þis Palamon [leaf 25, back]
That quietely were out' of prisoñ goñ
And myght' haue lyued in thebes Rially
And weten I am her mortal enemye
And þat' her deþ is in [my] myght' also /
And ȝit' haþ loue mawgre her eyen two
[I-]Brouȝt' him hidere boþ[e] forto dye
Now lokeþ is not' þis a grete folye
Who may be a fool but' if he loue
Biholde for goddes loue þat' sitteþ aboue
See howe þei blede bene þei not' wel araied
Thus haþ her lorde þe god of loue *hem* paied'
Her wages and her fees for her seruise
And ȝit' þei wenene for to bene ful wise
That' seruen loue for ouȝt' þat' may bifalle
But' ȝit' is þis þe beste game of alle
That' she for whom þei haue þis Iolite
Can hem as moche thonke as me
Shee wote no more of al þis hote fare
By god þan wote an Cuckowe or an hare
But' al most' be assaied hote and cold'
A man mote be a fool or ȝonge or old'
I wote it' by my self for yore agone
ffor in my tyme a seruaunte was I oone
And þerfor sith̄ I knowe of loues peyne
And wote howe sore it can a man distreyne
As he þat' haþ oft bene cauȝt' in his laas
I ȝou forȝiue al holy þis trespaas /
Atte request' of þe quene þat' kneleþ here
And eke of Emelye my suster' dere

And 3e shul boþe vnto me swere
That' neuermore 3e shul my cuntre dere
Ne make werre vpon me ny3t' ne day
But bene my frendes in al þat' 3e may
I nowe for3eue þis trespase euery dell
And þei hym swore his axing' fair' and well
And him of lordship and of mercye preide [leaf 26]
And so hem graunteþ grace and þus he seide
To speke of Rial lynage and ricches
Thoo þat she were a quene or a princesse
Eche of 3ou boþe is worþi doutelees
To wedden whan tyme is but' naþeles
I speke as for my suster' Emelye
ffor whoom 3e haue þis strif and Ielosie
3e wote 3oure self ze may not' wedden two
At' ones þou3e 3e fi3ten euermoo
þat' oon of 3ou be he loþ or liefe
He mot' go pipen in an yve liefe
This is to say she may not' nowe haue both̄
Ne be 3e neuere so Ielous and so wroth̄
And for-þi þer nowe put' in þis degre
That' eche of 3ou shal haue his destanie
As him is shape and harkeneþ in what' wise
Lo here 3oure ende *and* þat' I shal devise
¶ My wille is þis for plat' conclusion̄
Wiþ oute[n] eny replicacion̄
3if þat' 3ou likeþ take it' for þe best'
That' euery of 3ou shal go wher hy*m* lest'
ffrely wiþ outen raunson [or] daungere
At þis day fifty wekes fer ne nere
Euerich̄ of 3ou shal bryng' an .C. kny3tes
Armed for listes vp al rightes
Al redy to darreyn hir' by batayle
And þis bihote I 3ou wiþ outen faile
Vpon my trouþe and as I am a kny3t'
þat wheder of 3ou boþ[e] þat' haþ my3t'

This is to seyn þat' whedere he or þowe
May wiþ his hundred as I haue spoke of nowe
Slee his contrary or out' of lystes drive
Than shal I 3eue hym Emely to wyve
To whom þat fortune haþ 3eue so faire a grace
The listes shal I do maken in þis place
And god so wisly on my soule rwe [leaf 26, bad]
As I shal euene Iuge be and trwe
3e shal non oþere ende wiþ me make
þat' oon of 3ou shal be dede or take
And if yow þenke þis is wel yseide
Say 3oure avice and holde 3ou wel apaide
This is 3oure ende and 3our conclusiõ
Who lokeþ lightly now but' Palamon
Swo springeth vp for Ioie but' Arcite
Who coude telle or who coude it' endite
The Ioie þat' is made in þat' place
Whan Theseus haþ doñ so faire a grace
But' doune on knees went' euery manere wi3t'
And thonked hym wiþ al her hert' and my3t'
And namely þise Thybeanes mony sithñ
And þus wiþ hope and herte blithñ
Thei take her leue and homward' gan þei ride
Tho Thebes-ward' wiþ olde walles wide
[. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
¶ I trowe men wolde deme it' necligence
If I forȝete to telle þe dispence
Of Theseus þat' goþ so bisily
To maken vp þe listes rially
That' suche a noble theatre as it' was
I dar wel seyn in þis world' ther nas
The circuyte a myle was aboute
Walled wiþ stone and dicched al wiþ oute
Rounde was þe shappe in manere of a compas /

fful of degrees þe heght' of sixty paas
That' whan a man was sette on oon degre
He lette not' his felawe forto see
Estward' þer stode a gate of Marbel white
Westward' right' such a noþer in þe opposite
And shortely to conclude such a place
Was non in erþe as in so litel space
ffor in þe londe þer nas no crafty man
That' Geometrye or arsmetrike can
Ne purtraiour' ne keruer' of ymages [leaf 27]
That' Theseus ne ȝaue him mete *and* wages
The theater to make and to devise
And forto doon his riȝt' and his sacrifise
He Estward' haþ [up]on þe gate aboue
In worship of wenus goddes of loue
Done maken an awtere and an oratorie
And on þe westward' side in memorie
Of Mars he haþ maked riȝt' such anoþere
þat' cost' largely of gold a ffoþere
And norþward' in a *tou*rett' on þe wall'
Of Alabaster white and rede Corall'
An oratorie riche forto see
In worship of Diane of chaastite
Haþ Theseus done wrouȝt' in noble wise
But' ȝit' had I forgete forto devise
That' noble kervingges *and* þe pourtratures
þe shappe þe counten*aun*ce and þe figures
þat' weren in þe oratories thre
ffirst' in þe temple of Venus maist þou see
Wrouȝt' on þe walle ful pitous to biholde
þe broken slepes and þe sighes colde
þe sacred teeres and þe waymentynge
þe firy strokes of þe desiringe
þat' loues seru*aun*tes in þis lif enduren
þe Oþes þat' her con*aun*tes assuren
Plesaunce and hope. desire fool-hardynesse

Beaute and þouȝt. bawdry richesse
Charmes and force. lesingges and flaterye
Dispence bysynesse and Ielowsie
þat wered of ȝolowe goldes a garlonde
And a Cukkowe sitting on her honde
ffeestes instrumentes Carolles daunces
Iuste and array and al þe circumstaunces
Of loue whiche I rekened *and* reken shall
By ordere were peynted on þe wall
And mo þan I con [make] of menciōn [leaf 27, back]
ffor soþly al þe mōnt of Citharōn
Ther Venus haþ her principal dwellinge
Was shewed in þe walle in purtraiynge
Wiþ al þe Gardeyne and þe lustynesse
Not was forȝeten þe porter ydelnesse
Ne narcisus þe faire of yore agone
Ne ȝit þe ſoly of king salamon
Ne ȝit þe grete strengthe of hercules
þe enchauntementz of Medea and certes
Ne of Turnus wiþ þe hardy fires corage
þe riche Cresus catif in seruage
Thus may ȝe sene þat wisdom ne ricchesse
Bewte ne scleighte. strengthe hardynesse
Ne may with Venus holde chaumpartie
ffor as her list þe world þan may she gie
¶ Loo alle þise folk so caught were in her las
To þei for woo ful often seide alas
Suffiseþ here oon ensample or two
And þoughe þer coude rekne a thousand moo
The statue of Venus glorious to see
Was naked fletinge in þe large see
And from þe nauel doun al keuered was
Wiþ wawes grene and briȝt as eny glas
A Citole in hire riȝte hond had she
And on her hede ful semely to see
A Rose garlonde fresshe an wel smellinge

Aboue her hede her dowues flateringe
Byfore hir' stode hir' sone Cupido
Vpon his shulders wenges had he two
And blynde he was as it' is ofte sene
A bowe he bare and arowes brizt' *and* kene
¶ Whi shuld' I not eke as wel telle zou alle
The p*our*trature pat' was vpon pe walle
Wip in pe temple of myzty mars pe rede
Al peynted was pe walle in lengthe *and* brede
Like to pe Estres of pe grisly place [leaf 28]
pe hight' pe gr[e]te temple of Mars in trace
In pilk[e] colde frosty Regyõn
Ther as Mars hap his souereyñ manciõn
¶ ffirst' on pe walle was peynted a foreste
In which per wonnep neiper man ne beste
Wip knotty knarry bareyn trees olde
Of stubbes sharpe and hidous to biholde
In whicñ per was a rombled and a swoghe
As pougñ a storme shuld breke euery bouze
And dounward / from an hille vnder a bent'
There stode pe temple of Mars Armypotent'
Wrought' of al of burnyd steel of whicñ pe entent'
Was longe and streit' *and* goostly forto sent'
And per out' came a rage in sucñ a wise
pat' it' made al pe gates forto rise
Til norperon lizt' in at pe doores shoõñ
ffor wyndowe on pe walt pan was *per* nõñ
porowe whiche men myzt eny light' discerne
pe door was al of Athamant' eterne
Yclenched ouertwert' and endelonge
Wip Iren towe forto make it' stronge
Euery piler pe temple to sustene
Was tonne grete of yren brizt' *and* shene
Ther seghe I furst' pe [derk] ymagynyng'
Of felowny and al pe compassing'
The cruel Ire rede as eny gleede

þe Pikpurs and eke þe pale drede
þe smyler wiþ þe knyf vnder þe cloke
þe shippen brennyng' wiþ þe blak[e] smoke
þe tresoñ of þe morþering' in þe bedde
þe open werre wiþ woundes al by-bledde
Conteckte wiþ blody knyff *and* sharpe manace
Al ful of chirkinge was þat' sory place
þe scleer of him self ȝit' segh̃ I þere
His herte-bloode haþ baþed al his here
The nayle ydryuen in þe shode a nyȝt' [leaf 28, back]
Wiþ colde deþe wiþ mouþe gaping' vp riȝt' 2008
Amyddes of þe temple satte a meschaunce
Wiþ discomfort' and sori countenaunce
ȝit' saughe I woodnesse laughing' in his rage
Armed compleint' outhees and fires corage 2012
þe Careyn in þe bussh̃ wiþ þrote ycorve
A thousand sclayne and not' of qualme ystorue
This tyraunt' wiþ þe pray by force yrafte
þe toune destroied þer nas no þing' ylafte 2016
ȝit' seghe I brent' þe shippes Hoppesteres
The hunte strãngled wiþ þe wilde beres
The sowe fretinge þe childe riȝt' in þe cradell
The Coke yscalded for al his longe ladell 2020
Nouȝt was forgeten by þe infortune of Marte
The Carter ouer-riden wiþ þe Carte
Vndere þe whele ful lowe he lay adoun
þere were also of Martes dyuysioun 2024
þe Barboure þe bochere and þe Smyth̃
þat' forgeþ sharpe swerdes on þe stith̃
And al aboue depeynted in a toure
Saughe I conquest' sittinge in grete honoure 2028
Wiþ þe sharpe swerde ouer his hede
Hanginge by a sotile twyned þrede
Depeinted was þe the sclauughter' of Iuliu
Of grete Nero and of Anthoneus 2032
Al be þat' þilke tyme þei were vnborn̄

3it was her deþ depeinted þer biforn̄
By manasingꝫ of Mars riȝtꝫ by figure
so was itꝫ shewed in þe purtrature
As is depeinted in þe certres aboue
Who shal be ded or slayne for loue
Suffiseþ oon ensample in stories olde
I may notꝫ rekne hem al[le] þouȝe I wolde
þe statue of mars vpon a cartè stode
Armed and loked grymme as he were wode
And ouer his hode *per* shyneþ two figures [leaf 29]
Of sterres þatꝫ bene cleped in figures
Thatꝫ oon Puella thatꝫ oþer rubeus
This god of armes was araied þus
A wolf þer stode to forn him atꝫ his fete
Wiþ eyen rede and of a man he ete
Wiþ sotel pensel was depeynted þis storie
In recordinge of Mars and [of] his glorie
¶ Nowe to þe temple of Dyane þe chaste
As shortely as I can I wil me haste
To telle ȝou al the descripcioun
Depeynted was þe walle vp *and* doun
Of huntinge and of shamfast chastite
þer saughe I how wooful calistope
Whan þatꝫ Dyane agreued was [with] here
Was turned from a wo*m*man to a bere
And after was she made þe lode-sterre
Thus was she peynted I can say ȝou no farre
Her sone is eke a sterre as ȝe may see
þer saughe I dane turned to a tree
I mene notꝫ þe goddes Dyane
Butꝫ Penneus doughter which̄ þat hiȝte dane
þer saugh I Attheon an hertꝫ ymaked
ffor vengeaunce þatꝫ he segh̄ diane al naked
I saugh̄ þatꝫ how his houndes haue hym caughte
And freten him for þei knewe hym nauȝte
3itꝫ ypeynted was a litel ferþermore

Howe Atthelaunt' hunted þe wilde bore
And maleagre and mony oþer moo/
ffor whiche diane wrouȝt' hym care *and* woo
Ther seghe I many anoþer worþi story
Whiche men list' not' to drowe to memory
This goddes vpon an hert' ful wel she sette
Wiþ smale houndes al about' her fete
And vndernepe her fete she had a mone
Wexing' it' was and shal wany sone
In gaudy grene her statue cloþes was [leaf 29, back]
Wiþ bowe in honde and arowes in a cas
Her eyen keste she ful lowe a doune
Ther Pluto haþ his derke regioun
A woman travailing' was hir' biforn
But' for her child was so longe vnborn̄
fful pitously lucyna can she calle
And seide helpe for þou maist' best' of alle
Wel coude he peynte lyvely þat' it wrouȝt'
Wiþ mony a floreyne he þe coloures bouȝt'
¶ Now bene þise listes made and theseus
That' at his grete cost' araied þus
þe temple and þe theatre euery dele
Whan it' was done him liked wonder' wele
But' stint' I wil of Theseus a lite
And speke of Palamon and [of] arcite
The [day] approcheþ of her retournynge
þat' eueriche shuld an C. knyghtes bringe
The bataille to darrey as I you tolde
And to Athenes her couenaunte forto holde
Haþ euery of hem brouȝt' an .C. knyghtes
Wel armed for þe werre at' al[le] rightes
And sikerly þer trowed many a man
That' neuere siþ þat' þe world bygan
That' forto speke of knyghthode of her honde
As fer as god haþ maked see or londe
Nas of so fewe so noble a companye

ffor euery wight' þat' loued chivalrye
And wold his þonkes haue a passaunte name
Haþ preide þat' he myght' be of þat' game
And wel was him þat' þerto chosen was
ffor if þer felle to morow such a caas
3e knowen wel þat' euery lusty kny3t
þat' loueþ *par*amours *and* haþ [his] my3t'
Were it' in engelonde or ellis where
þei wolden fayne wilnen to be þere
To fight' for a lady O *bene*dicite [leaf 30]
It were a lusty sight*e* forto se
And right' so feerden þei wiþ Palamoñ
Wiþ hym þei wenten knyghtes mony oñ
Som wol be armed in an haberiōn
And a brest' plate and a litel gippōn
And some wil haue a peire plates large
And some wil haue a Spruse plate sheeld or targe
Som*m*e wil [be] armed on his legges welle
And haue an axe and some a mace of stele
þer nas no newe gyse þat' it' nas olde
Armed were þei as I haue 3ou tolde
Euerich̄ after his opynyōn
Ther maist' þou see co*m*myng' w*ith* Palamon
Ligurge hym self þe grete king' of trace
Blak was his visage and manly was his face
þe Cercles of þe eyen in his hede
þei glowden bitwix 3elowe *and* rede
And liche a lyon loked he aboute
With kempte heeres on his browes stoute
His lymes grete his brawnes stronge
His sholdres brode his armes rounde *and* longe
And as þe Gyse was in his cuntre
ffull heghe vpon a chare of gold stode he
Wiþ .iiij. white boles in þe trais
In stede of cote armur*e* and his harnais
Wiþ nailles 3elowe and bri3t' as eny gold

He had a berres skyn coleblake for olde
His longe heer was kempte behinde his bak
As eny rauens feþere itt shoon for blak
A wreþe of goldē. arme briȝtt of huge wiȝtt
Vpon his hede sette ful of stonys briȝtt
Of fyne Rubies and of dyamauntz
Aboutt his chare þer wentt white alauntz
xxtti and moo as grete as ony stert
To hunten att þe lyon or þe deer
And folowed hym wiþ mosel fastt ybounde [leaf 80, back]
Colers of golde and torrettes philed rounde
An C. lordes had he in his route
Armed ful wel wiþ hertes steerne and stoute
¶ Witħ Arcite in stories as men fynde
The grete Emetreus þe kingt of ynde
Vpon a stede bay trapped in stele
Couered wiþ a cloþe of gold diapred wele
Come ridingt liche þe god of armed Mars
His cote armure was a cloþe of tars
Couched wiþ peerles . white. rounde *and* grete
His sadel was of brent goldē newe ybete
A mantel vpon his shulder hongynge
Bretful of rubies rede as fire spar[c]linge
His Crispe here liche rynges was yronne
And þatt was ȝelowe and glitteringt as þe sonne
His nose was heghe his eyen briȝtt citryn
His lippes rounde his colour was Sangwyn
A fewe frakens in his face spreyntt
Bitwix ȝelowe and somdele blakt ymeyntt
And as a lyon he is eyen caste
Of xxvtti ȝere his age y caste
His beerd was wel bygonne forto springe
His vois was as a trompett þondringe
Vpon his hede he wered a laurer grene
A garlond fresshe and lusty forto sene
Vpon his honde he bare for his delite

An Egle tame as eny lylye white
An .C. lordes had he wiþ hym þere
Al armed sauf her hedes in al her gere
fful richely in al[le] maner þingges
ffor trusteþ wel þat' dukes Erles kyngges
Were gadered in þis noble companye
ffor loue and for encrees of chyualrye
Abou't' þis kny3t' þer ranne on euery part'
fful mony a tame lyon and leopart'
And in þis wise þise lordes al and some [leaf 81]
Bene on þe sonday to þe Cite come
Aboute prime and in þe toun alight'
This Theseus þis duke þis worþi kny3t'
Whan he had brou3t' hem into his Cite
And Inned hem [ech] after her degre
He feesteth hem and doþ so gret' labour̃e
To esen hem and done hem al honour̃e
That' 3it' men wenen þat' no mannys witte
Of noon astate ne cowde amenden it'
The mynstralsy þe servise at' þe feest
The grete 3iftes to þe most' and leest'
The riche aray of Theseus palays
Ne who sat' first' and laste vpon þe dees
What' ladies fairest bene or best' daunsinge
Or whiche of hem can beste daunce or singe
Ne who most' felingly speke þ of loue
What' hawkes sitten or perche aboue
What' houndes liggen on þe floor a-doun
Of al this nowe I make no mencyoun
But' al þe effecte þat' þenkeþ me þe best'
Nowe co*mm*eþ þe poynt' herkneþ if 3ou lest'
¶ The sonday nyght' er day gan to springe
Whan Palamon þe larke herd singe
Al þou3e it' ner not' day by howres two
3it' songe þe larke and Palamon ri3t' þoo
Wiþ holy hert' and wiþ an highe corage

He roos vp to we[n]den on his pilgrymage
Vnto þe blisful Cithera benygne
I mene Venus honurable and digne
And in her houre he walkeþ forþ apaas
Vnto þe listes þer þe tempel was
And doune he kneleþ and wiþ humble chere
And herte sore he seide as ȝe shal here
¶ ffairest'. o faire . o. lady myne Venus
Douȝtere to Ioue and spouse to Vlcanus
Thow glader of þe mounte of Citheroun [leaf 31, back,
ffor þilk[e] loue þou haddest' to a-doun
Haue pite on my bitter teeres smerte
And take myn humble preier at' þine herte
Alas I ne haue no langage to telle
þe effecte ne þe tourment' of myn helle
Myne herte may myn armes not' be-wreye
I am so confused þat' I can not' seye
But' mercy lady briȝt' þat' woost wele
My þouȝt' and seest' what' harmes I fele
Considere al þis and rwe vpon my sore
As wisly as I shal for euermore
Hensforþ my myȝt' þi trewe seruaunte be
And hole werre alwaie wiþ chaastite
That' make I myne avowe so as ȝe may helpe
I kepe not' of armes for to ȝelpe
Ne I ne axe not' to morowe to haue victorie
Ne renoun in þis caas ne veynglorie
Of price of armes blowen vp and doun
But I wold haue fully possessioun
Of Emelye and dye in her seruise
ffynde þou þe manere howe *and* in what' wise
I recche not' but' it' may better be
To haue victorie of hem or þei of me
So that' I haue my lemman in myn armes
ffor þouȝe so be þat' mars is god of armes
ȝoure vertue is so grete in heuene abouo

þat' if þe lest I shal wel haue my loue
Thy tempel shal I worship euermoo
And on þine awtere wher I ride or goo
I wil doon sacrifise and fires bete
And ȝif ȝe wil not' so my lady swete
þan prey I ȝou to morowe wiþ a spere
þat' Arcita me þorghe þe herte bere
Then rekke I not' whan I haue lost' my lif
þouȝe Arcita wynne her to his wiff
This is þe effecte and eende of my priere [leaf 32]
ȝeue me my lady þou blisful lady dere
¶ Whan þe orison was dōn of Palamōn
His sacrifise he did and þat' a-nōn
ffull pitously wiþ al[le] circumstau*n*ces
Al telle I not' as nowe his obseru*au*nces
But' atte laste þe statue of Venus shoke
And made a signe wherby þat' he toke
þat' his preier accepted was þat' day
ffor þouȝe þe signe shewed a delay
ȝit wist' he wele þat' graunted was his bone
And wiþ glad hert' he went' awaie ful sone
¶ þe iij. houre in-equal þat' Palamoñ
Byganne to venus temple forto goñ
Vp roos þe sonne and vp roos Emelye
And to þe temple of Dyane gan she hie
Hir maidens þat' she þider wiþ hir ladde
ffull redily wiþ hem þe fire þei hadde
þe encense þe cloþes and þe remen*au*nte alt
þat to þe sacrifise longen shalt
þe hornes ful of meth as was þe gise
þer lacked nouȝt' to don her sacrifise
Smoking' þe temple ful of cloþes faire
This Emelie wiþ herte debonaire
Hir' lady wasshe wiþ water of a welle
But howe she did hir riȝt' I dar not' telle
But' it' be eny þing' in generalt

And ȝitꝫ itꝫ were a game to here it allꝫ
To him þatꝫ meneþ wel itꝫ were no charge
Butꝫitꝫ is good a man be atꝫ his large
Hir briȝtꝫ heres were kempte vntressed allꝫ
A corone of a grene oke seriallꝫ
Vpon her hede was sette ful faire and mete
Two fires on þe awter gan she bete
And did her þingges as men may biholde
In stace of Thebes and þise bokes olde
Whan kindeled was þe fire wiþ pitous chere [leaf 32, back]
Vnto Diane she spake as ȝe may here
¶ O chaaste goddes of þe wodes grene
To whoom boþ heuene and erþe and see is sene
Quene of [the] regne of Polute derk and lowe
Goddes of maydenes þatꝫ myn hertꝫ hastꝫ knowe
fful mony a ȝere and woostꝫ whatꝫ I desire
As kepe me from þi vengeance and þine Ire
Thatꝫattheonabouȝte cruelly
Chaastꝫgoddeswelwoostꝫ þou thatꝫ I
Desire to be a maiden al my liff
Ne neuere wil I be [no] loue ne wiff
I am þou woostꝫ ȝitꝫ of þi companye
A maide and loue huntyngꝫ and venerye
And for to walke in þe wodes wilde
And notꝫ to be a wiff and be wiþ childe
NatꝫwilI knowe company of man
Now helpe me lady siþ ȝe may *and* can
ffor þoo þre formes þatꝫ þou hastꝫ in þe
And Palamon þatꝫ haþ suchꝫ loue to me
And eke Arcite þatꝫ loueþ me so sore
This grace I prei þe wiþ out more
And sende loue and pees ytwyx hem twoo
And fro me turne away her hertes so
ThatꝫalherhoteloueandherdesireAnd al her bysy tormentꝫ and her fire
Be queyntꝫ or turned in an o*þ*er place

And if so be þou wilt do me no grace
Or if it be my destany be shaped soo
That I shal nedes haue oon of hem two
As sende me him þat most desireþ me
Biholde goddesse of clene chaastite
The bitter teeres þat on my chekes falle
Siþ þou art maide and keper of vs alle
My maydenhode þou kepe *and* wel conserue
And while I lif a maiden I wil þe serue
þe fires brenne vpon þe Auter clere [leaf 33]
While Emely was þus in his preiere
But sodeynly she seghe a þinge queynt
ffor right anoon oon of þe fires queynt
And quicked ageyn and after þat anōn
That oþer fire was queynt *and* al agōn
And as it queint it made a qwistelinge
As done þise wete brondes in her brennynge
¶ And at þe brondes eende out ranne anōn
As it were blody dropes mony ōn
ffor whicħ so sore a-gaste was Emelie
þat she was wel nyghe madde *and* gan to crye
ffor she ne wiste what it signified
But only for þe fire þus she criede
And wepte þat it was pite for to here
And þer wiþ al Diane gan to apere
Wiþ bowe on hond right as an huntere̊sse
And seide douȝtere stint of þine heuynesse
And monge the goddes higħ it is affermed
And by eterne worde writt *and* confermed
þow shalt be wedded vnto oon of þoo
þat han for þe so moche care *and* woo
But vnto whicħ of hem I may not telle
ffare wele I may no leinger dwelle
þe fire whiche þat on myn awter brenne
Shal þe declaren er þat þou go henne
Thine aventure of loue as in þis caas

And *with* þat' worde þe Arowes in þe caas
Of þe goddes clateren fast and ringe
And forþ she went' and made a vanysshinge
ffor whiche þis Emely a-stonyed was
And seide what' mounteth þis alas
I put' me in þi protectiõn
Diane *and* in þi disposiciõn
And home she goþ þe neste way
This is þe effecte þer is no more to say
þe nexte houre of Mars folowing' þis [leaf 33, back]
Arcite vnto þe temple ywalked is
Of feers mars to done his sacrifise
Wiþ al þe myghtes of his peynymes wise
Wiþ pitous' hert' and heghe deuociõn
Riȝt' þus to Mars he seide his Orisoñ
¶ O stronge god þat' in the regnes colde
Of taars honoured art and lord yholde
And hast' in euery regne *and* eue*r*y londe
Of armes al þe bridel in þine honde
And hem fortunest' as þe list' devise
Accepte of me my pitous sacrifise
If so be my þouȝte may deserue
And þat' my myght' be worþi forto seruo
Thi godhede þat' I may be oon of þĩne
þan preie I þe to rwe vpon my pyne
ffor þilk peyn and þat' hoote fire
In whicĥ þou brentest' whilom for desyre
Whan þou vsedist' the beaute
Of faire yonge fresshe venus free
And haddest' hure in armes at' þi wille
Aff þoughe þe onys on a tyme mysfelle
Whan vlcanus had kauȝt' þe in his laas
And foonde þe ligging' be his wif alaas
ffor thilk[e] sorowe þat' was in þine herte
Haue rauthe as wel vpon my peynes smerte
I am ȝonge and vnkonyng' as þou wooste

And as I trowe wiþ loue offended moste
þat' euere was eny lyues creature
ffor she þat' doþ me al this woo endure
Ne recheþ neuere wher I sinke of flete [MS. "flete of sinke]
And wel I wote ere she me mercy hete
I mote wiþ strengthe wynne her in þis place
And wel I wote wiþ outen helpe or grace
Of þe ne may my strengthe not' availe
Than helpe me lord' to morowe in my bataile
ffor þilk[e] fire þat' whilom brente þe [leaf 34]
As wel as þat' fire now brenneþ me
And do þat' I to morowe haue victorie
Myne be þe travaile and þine be þe glorie
þi soucreyn temple wil I most' honouren
Of eny place and alway most' labouren
In þi plesaunce and in þi craftes stronge
And in þi temple I wil my baner' honge
And all þe armes in my companye
And euermore vnto þe day I dye
Eterne fire I wil byfore þe fynde
And eke to þis awowe I wil me bynde
My lorde my here þat hongeþ lowe a dow[n]e
þat' neuere 3it ne felt' offencio*un*
Of rasoure ne of shere I wil þe 3eue
And bene þi trewe seru*aun*te while I lyue
Now lord' haue rouþe vpon my sorowes sore
3if me þe victorie I axe þe no more
The preier stint' of Arcita þe stronge
The Ryngges on þe tempel door 3it' honge
And eke the door[e]s clateren ful fast'
Of whiche Arcita somwhat' hy*m* a-gast'
The fires brennen vpon þe auter bri3t'
That it' gan al the temple for to light'
And swete smelle anoon þe grounde vp 3af
And Arcita anoñ his honde vp haf
And more ensense vnto þe fire he cast'

Wiþ oþer riȝtes moo and atte last'
The statue of Mars bygan his hauberk rynge
And wiþ þat' soune he herde a *mur*murynge
fful lowe and dym þat' seide þus victorie
ffor whicħ he ȝaue to mars hono*ur' and* glorie
An þus wiþ Ioie and hope wel to fare
Arcita is [y]brouȝt' of Moche care
As fayn as foule is of þe briȝte so*n*ne
And riȝt' anon suchħ strif is bygo*n*ne
ffor þilk[e] g*r*auntyng' in þe heuene aboue [leaf 34, back]
By-twix venus þe goddes of Ioue
And Mars þe steerne god armypotent'
þat Iubiter was bysy.it' to stent'
Til at' þe [last] Pale Saturnus þe colde
þat' knewe so many of auentures olde
ffonde in his bolde exp*er*ience and & [1] art' [1 so]
þat' he ful sone haþ plesed every part'
And sooþ is seide elde haþ grete au*aun*tage
And elde is boþ[e] wisdome and vsage
Men may þe olde attenne but not atrede
Saturne anōn to stinten strif and drede
Al be it' þat' it' is aȝeinst' his kinde
Of al his strif he can remedye fynde
My dere doughter Venus quod sat*ur*ne
My cours þat' haþ so wide forto t*ur*ne
Haþ more powere þan wote eny man
Myne is þe drenchinge in þe see so wan
Myne is þe prison in þe derke cote
Myn is þe stranglinge and þe hanging' by þe þrote
þe murmur' and þe chirles rebellinge
þe Gonynge and the privey enpoysenynge
I do vengeaunce and pleyn correctiōn
While I dwelle in þe signe of the lyōn
Myne is þe Ruyne of [t]he heghe halles
þe fallinge of þe toures and of þe walles
Vpon þe mynour' or vpon þe carpentere

I slowgh̄ Sampson shaking' þe pilere
And myn[e] be þe maladies colde
The derk tresounes and þe castes olde
My lokinge is þe fader of Pestilence
Nowe wepe no more I shal do my diligence
That Palamon þat' is þine owne kny3t'
Shal haue his lady as þou hast' [him] hi3t'
Thou3e Mars shal helpe his kny3t' 3it naþeles
Bytwix 3ou tweyne þer mot be somtyme pees
Al be 3e not' of oon complexiōn [leaf 35]
That' causeþ al day such̄ dyuysioñ
I am þine eile redy at' þi wille
Wepe no more I wil þi lust' fulfille
Now wil I stinten of þise goddes aboue
Of Mars and of venus goddes of loue
And pleynly I wil telle 3ou as I can
þe grete effecte for which̄ þat' I biganne
[. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
Grete was þe feest' in Athenes þat' day
And eke þat' lusty seson in [that] may
Made euery wight' to be in suche plesaunce
And al þat' day Iusten þei and daunce
And spenden it' in Venus high̄ seruyse
But' by þe cause þat' þei shulden rise
Erly forto seen þe grete fight
Vnto her reste went' þei atte nyght'
And on þe morowe whan day gan to springe
Of hors and harnays noyse *and* clateringe
þer was in hostelrye aboute
And to þe palaies rode þer mony a route
Of lordes vpon stedes and palfreis
þer maist' þou see dyvising' of harneis
So vncouþe and so riche *and* wrou3t so weil̄
Of Goldsmythrie of browding' *and* of steell̄

The sheeldes briȝte teesteers and trappures
Gold-hewen helmes hauberkes *and* cote armures
Lordys in parementis on her coursers
Knyghtes of retenue and eke swiers
Nailinge þe speres and helmes bokelinge
Sigyng' of sheeldes wiþ layvers lasinge
Ther as nede is þei were no þing' ydelꝭ
þe ffomynge steedes on þe golden bridelꝭ
Snavyng' and fast' þe armurers also
Wiþ file and hamure riding' to and froo
ȝemen on foote and comons many oñ
Wiþ shorte staues þikke as þei may goñ
Pipes trompettes nakerns and clarioun*s* [leaf 35, back]
þat' in þe bataille blewen blody sownes
þe paleis ful of puple vp *and* dou*n*
Here þre þer ten holdinge her questio*un*
Dyuynyng' of þise thibeanes knyȝtes twoo
Some seide þus. some seide it' shal be so
So*m*me helde wiþ him wiþ þe blake berde
So*m*me wiþ þe balled some with þe þikke hered
Some seide he loked gry*m*me *and* he wold' fight'
He haþ a spa*r*þe of xx^ti^ pounde wight'
þus was þe halle ful of dyuynynge
Longe aftere þe'sonne gan to springe
þe grete Theseus of his slepe gan wake
Wiþ mynstralcie and nois þat' þei make
Heelde ȝit' þe chambre of his palais riche
Til þat' þe thebeane knyghtes boþ yliche
Honoured weren into þe place fette
Duke Theseus is at' þe wyndowe sette
Araide riȝt' as he were a god in trone
The puple presed þidere-ward' ful sone
Him forto seen and done him higñ reuerence
And eke to harken his heest' and his sentence
An herowde on a scaffold' made an oo /
Til al þe noise of þe puple was doo

And whan he see þe puple of noise al stille
Thus shewed he þe myȝty dukes wille
þe lord haþ of his heghe discrecion
Considered þat it were destruccion
To gentel blood to feghten in þis gise
Of mortall bataile now in þis emprise
Wherfore to shapen þat þei shal not die
He wille his firste purpoos modefie
No man þerfor vp peyne of losse of liff
No maner shotte. ne pollax ne short knyff
Into þe listes sende or þidere bringe
Ne shorter swerd forto stoke wiþ poynt bitinge
No man ne drawe ne bere it be his side [leaf 86]
Ne no man shal vnto his felawe ride
But oon cours wiþ a sharpe grounden spere .
ffoyn if hym list on foote hym self to were
And he þat is at meschief shal be take
And not sclayn but be brouȝt to a stake
þat shal be ordeyned on eiþer side
But þidere he shal be foorce and per abide
And if so falle þe Chevetayn be take
On eiþer side or ellis sclayn his make
No lenger shal þe tornamente laste
God spede ȝou goo and leye on faste
Wiþ swerdes and longe maces fiȝteþ ȝour fille
Go nowe ȝoure way þis is þe lordes wille
The vois of puple touched heuene
So loude cried þei wiþ mery steuene
God saue suche a lord þat is so good
He wilneþ no distruction of blood
Vp goþ þe trompes and þe melody
And to þe listes ritt þe company
By ordinaunce þorghe out þe cite large
Honged wiþ cloþes of gold and not wiþ sarge
ffull like a lorde þis noble duc gan ride
Thise two Thebeanes on eiþer syde

And aftere rode þe quene *and* Emelye
And after þat' a nother companye
Of oon and oþer after her degre
And þus þei passen þorgh̄ out þe Cite
And to the listes come þei be tyme
It nas not' of þe day 3it' fully pryme
Whan sette was Theseus ful riche *and* hie
Ypolita þe quene and Emely
And oþer ladies in degrees aboute
Vnto þe setes preesen al þe route
And westward' þorgh̄ þe gates vnder mart /
Arcite and eke þe hundred of his part'
With̄ banere rede is entred rigt' anōn [leaf 36, back]
And in þat self[e] moment Palamōn
Is vnder venus estward' in þat' place
With baner' white and hardy chere *and* face
And in al þe worl'd to seken vp and doun
So euene wiþ out' variacioun
þer nere suche company[e]s tweye
ffor þer nas noon so wise þat' coude seie
That eny had of oþer auauntage
Of worthynesse ne of estate ne age
So euen were þei chosen forto gesse
And in to ringges faire þei hem dresse
Whan þat' her names redde were euerechoñ
þat' in her nombre gile were þer nōn
Tho were þe gates shette and cried was loude
Do now 3oure devoire yonge kny3tes proude
The herawdes left' her prikking' vp and doun
Now ryngen trompes loude and claryoun
þer is no more to seyn [but] est' and west'
In goon þe sharpe speres ful sadly into þarest'
In goþ þe sharpe spere into þe side
þere seen men who can iuste *and* who can ride
þere shyueren shaftes vppon sheeldes þikke
He fileth þorgh̄ þe herte spone þe prikke

Vp springen speres xx^{ti} fote on hight^{e}
Out^{e} goon þe swerdes as þe siluer^{e} white
þe helmes þei to-hewen and to-shrede
Out^{e} bresteþ þe blode *with* sterne stremes rede
Wiþ myȝty maces þe bones þei to-brest^{e}
And þorgh^{ñ} þe thikkest^{e} of þe throng^{e} gan threst^{e}
þere stomblen stedes stronge and doun goñ alle
He rolleþ vnder fote as doþ a balle
He foyneþ on his foote wiþ his tronchoun
And he hym hurteþ wiþ his hors a-doun
He þorgh^{ñ} þe body is born *and* siþ is take
Maugre his hede and brouȝt^{e} vnto þe stake
As forward^{e} was [riȝt] þer he most^{e} abide [leaf 37]
Anoþer lad is on þat^{e} o*þ*er side
And somtyme doþ hem theseus forto rest^{e}
Hem to refresshe and drink[e] ȝif hem lest^{e}
fful of[te] a day han þise thybeanes two
To-gidere mette and wrouȝt^{e} eche o*þ*er woo
Vnhorsed haþ eche o*þ*ere of hem twey
þer was no tigre in vale of Galgopleye
Whan hir^{e} whelpe is stole whan it^{e} is lite
So cruel on þe hunte as is Arcite
ffor Ielous hert^{e} vpon þis Palamoñ
Ne in Belmerie þer is so felle a lioñ
þat^{e} hunted is or for his hunger wode
Ne of his pray desireþ so þe bloode
As Palamon to sclee his foo Arcite
þe Ielous strokes on her helmes bite
Out renneþ blood of boþ her sides rede
Somtyme an ende þer is on euery dede
ffor or þe sonne vnto þe reste went^{e}
þe Stronge king^{e} Emet*r*ius gan hent^{e}
This Palamon as he fauȝt^{e} wiþ Arcite
And made his swerde depe in his flesshe bite
And by [the] force of xx^{ti} is he take
Vnȝolden and drowen to þe stake

And in þe Rescowe of þis Palamoñ
The stronge kingꝰ ligurge is born down
And kinge Emetrius for al his grete strengthꝫ
Is born outꝰ of his sadel his swerdes lengthꝫ
So hitꝰ hym Palamon er he were take
Butꝰ al for nouȝtꝰ he was brouȝtꝰ to þe stake
His hardy herte may hym helpe nouȝtꝰ
He mote abide whan þatꝰ he is ykauȝtꝰ
By force and eke by composicioñ
Who soroweþ now butꝰ woful Palamon
They mote no more go ageyn to fiȝtꝰ
And whan þatꝰ he had sene þatꝰ siȝtꝰ
He cried Hoo no more for itꝰ is doñ [leaf 37, back]
Ne noon shal lenger to his felawe goñ
I wil be trewe Iuge and notꝰ partie
Arcite of Thebes shal haue Emelye
Thatꝰ by his fortune haþ hirꝰ faire wonnen
Anon þer is a vois of puple by-gonne
ffor Ioie of þis so loude and highꝫ wiþ-alle
It semed þatꝰ þe listes shulden falle
Whatꝰ can nowe faire Venus do aboue
Whatꝰ seiþ she now whatꝰ doþ þis quene of loue
But wepeþ so for wantingꝰ of her wille
Til þatꝰ her teeres in þe listes fille
She seide I am ashamed doutelees
Saturnus seide doughterꝰ holdꝰ þi pees
Mars haþ his wil his knyghtꝰ haþ al his bone
And by myne hede þou shaltꝰ be esed sone
The trompours wiþ þe loude mynstralsie
The harawdes þatꝰ ful loudé ȝelle *and* crye
Bene in her wele for Ioie of daun arcyte
Butꝰ harkeneþ me and stinte vois a lite
Swiche a myracle þer bifelle anōn
This ferce Arcite haþ of his helme ydoñ
And on a courcere forto shew his face
He prikkeþ endelonge þe large place

Loking' vpward' vnto Emelye
And she a3ein him cast' a frendly ye
ffor wo*m*men as to speken in comune
Thei folowen al þe fauo*ur* of fortune
And was al his [in] chere as in his herte
Out' of þe grounde a fyre Infernal sterte
ffrom Pluto sent'. at þe request' of Saturne
ffor which̄ his hors for fere gan to turne
And lepe a-side and foundred as he lepe
And or þat' Arcyte may taken kepe
He pight' him on þe pomel of his heued
þat in þe place he laie as he were dede
His brest' to-broste wiþ his sadel bowe [leaf 38]
As blak he lay as eny cole or crowe
So was þe blood yronne in his face
Anon he was [y]brou3t' out' of þe place
Wiþ herte sore vnto Theseus palays
þo was he coruen out' of his harnays
And in a bedde ybrou3t ful faire *and* blyue
ffor he was 3it' in memorie *and* on lyue
And alway cryng' after emelie
Duke Theseus wiþ al his companye
Is co*m*men home to Athenes Cite
With alle blisse and grete solempnite
Al be it' þat' þis auenture is falle
He wolde not' discomforte[n] hem alle
Men seide eke þat' Arcide shuld not' dye
He shal be heled of his maladye
And of anoþer þinge þei were as fayne
þat' of hem alle þer nas no man slayne
Al were þei sore ybete and namely oñ
þat' wiþ a spere was þrelled þe brest boñ
Two oþer woundes and two broken armes
Som*m*e had salue and some had charmes
ffermacies of erbes and eke saue
þei dronken for þei wold' her lyues haue

ffor whicℏ þis noble duke as he wel can
Conforteþ and honoureþ euery man
And made Reuel al þe longe nyȝt'
Vnto þe straunge lordes as it was riȝt'
Ne þere was holde no discomforture
[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
ffor fallinge is by an awenture
Ne to be lad by force vnto a stake
Vnȝolden and wiþ xx^{ti} knyȝtes take
A *per*sone alon wiþ oute moo
And haried forþ by arme fote *and* too
And eke his stede dryven forþ *with* staues
With fote men boþ ȝemen *and* [eke] knaues
It was aretted him no vilanye [leaf 38, back]
þer may no man clepe[n] it' cowardye
ffor whiche a-non duke Theseus lete crye
To stynten al rancour and [al] envie
Gree þei as wel of on side as of oþer [MS. þei "Gree."]
And eiþer side ylike as oþeres broþer
And ȝaf hem ȝiftes after her degre
And fulli heelde a feeste daies þree
And conueyed þe kingges worþely
Out' of his toune a Iourne largely
And home went' euery man þe riȝt[e] way
þer was no more but' fare wel & haue good day
¶ Of þis bataille I wil no more endite
But' speke of Palamon *and* of Arcyte
Swelleþ þe brest' of Arcyte and þe sore
Encreseþ at' his herte more *and* more
The clotered blood for eny leche craft'
Corrumpeþ and is in his body laft'
þat' neiþer veyn[e] blood ne ventowsinge
Ne drinke of herbes may be [him] helpinge
By vertue expulsif or anymalt
ffro þilk[e] vertu cleped naturalt

Ne may þe venyme voide ne expelle
The pipes of his longges gan to swell
And euery lacert in his hert adoun
Is shent wiþ venyme *and* corrupcioun
Hym Geyneþ neiþer forto gete his lif
Vomyte vpward ne dounward laxatif
Al is to-brosten thilk[e] regiõn
Nature haþ no d*omi*naciõn
And certeinly þer nat*ure* wil not wirche
ffarewel Phisik go bere þe man to chirche
This is all and some þat Arcita most die
ffor whicħ he sendeþ after Emelie
And Palamon his cosyne dere
þan seide he þus as 3e shal after here
Not may my woful spirite in myn hert [leaf 39]
Declare a poynt of my sorowes smert
To 3ou my lady þat I loue moste
But I biqueth̄ þe seruise of my gooste
To 3ou abouen euery creature
Siþ þat my lif[e] may no lenger dure
Allas þe woo allas þe peynes stronge
þat I for 3ou haue suffred and so longe
Alas þe deþe alas myn Emelie
Alas departinge of our companye
Alas my hertes quene alas my lief wif
Myn hertes lady endere of my lif
What is þe world what axen men to haue
Now wiþ his loue nowe in his cold[e] graue
Allone wiþ oute[n] eny companye
ffare wel my foo fare wel myn̄ Emely
And softe take me in 3oure [armes] twey
ffor loue of god herkeneþ what I seie
I haue here wiþ my Cosyn Palamon
Had strif and rancoure mony day agoñ
ffor loue of 3ou and for my Ielousie
And Iubiter so wis my soule gye

To speken of a seruaunt' *pr*oprely
Wiþ circumstaunces al trewly
þat' is to seyn trouth̄. honure *and* kny3thede
Wisdom humblesse estat *and* high̄ kynrede
ffredom and al þat' longeþ to þat' art'
So Iubiter haue on my soule part'
As in þis worlde ri3t' now know I none
So worþi to be biloued as Palamon
þat' serueþ 3ou and wil do. al his liff
And if þat 3e shal euer bene a wif
fforȝete not' Palamon þe gentile man
And wiþ þat' worde his speche faile bygan
ffor from his fete vnto þe hert' was come
þe colde of deþ þat had him ouercome
And 3it' more ouer for in his armes twoo [leaf 39, back]
þe v[i]tal strength̄ is lost' and al ago
Only þe intellecte wiþ oute more
þat' dwelled in his herte sik *and* sore
Gan failen whan þe herte felte deth̄
Dusken his eyen two *and* faileþ breþe
But' on his lady 3it cast he his ye
His laste word was mercy Emelye
His spirit' chaunged hens and went[e] þere
As I cam neuere I can not' telle where
Therfor I stint' I am no dyvynystre
Of soules fynde I not' in þis registere
Ne me ne list' þilk opynyons to telle
Of hem þou3e þat þei writen wher þei dwelle
Arcite is colde þat' mars his soule gye
Now wil I speken forþ of emely
Shrite Emely an halowen Palamon
And Theseus his suster' toke anōn
Swownyng' and bar hir' fro his cours away
What' helpeþ it' vs to tarien forþ þe day
To tellen howe she wepte boþ euen *and* morowe
ffor in suche caas wo*m*men han suche sorowe

Whan þat' her husbondes bene fro hem a-goo
[That] ffor þe more parte þei sorowen soo
Or ellis fallen in suchꝫ Maladie
þat' at' þe laste certeynly þei die
Infinite harmes bene *and* eke þe teeres
Of olde folk and folk of tendere ȝeres
In alꝫ þe toun for dethꝫ of þis Thebean
ffor him þer wepen boþ[e] childꝫ *and* man
So grete weping' was þer [non] certaynꝫ
Whan Ector was [y]brouȝt' *and* fressꝫ yslaynꝫ
To Troy allas þe pite þat' was þere
Cracching' of chekes renting' eke of here
Whi woldest' þou be dede þise wommen crie
And haddest' goldꝫ ynoghe and emelye
No man myght' glade Theseus [leaf 10]
Sauyng' his olde fadere Egeus
That' knewe þis worldes *transmutacioun*
As he had sene it' vp and doũn
Ioie after woo and woo aftere gladnesse
And shewe þ hem ensample and liknesse
Riȝt' as þer dyed neuer man quod he
þat' he ne lyued in erþe in som degre
Riȝt' so ther lyued neuere man he seide
In al þis worldꝫ þat' somtyme he ne deyed
þis worldꝫ is nouȝt' but' a þorght' fare ful of woo
And we bene pilgrymes passing' to and froo
Deþ is an ende of euery worldly sore
And ouer al þis ȝit seide he mychel more
To þis effecte ful wisely to enhorte
þe puple þat þei . hem shul recomforte
Duke Theseus wiþ al his bisy Cure
Taste þ nowe where þat' þe sepulture
Of good Arcite may best' ymaked be
And eke most' honurable of degre
And atte last' he toke conclusioꝫ
That' þer as first' Arcite and Palamon

Had for loue þe bataile hem bitwene
þat in þe self groue swete and grene
þer as he had his Amerous desires
His compleynt' and for loue his hote fires
He wold[e] make a fire in whicħ þe office
ffuneral he myȝt' hem aⁿ complice
He lete anon comaunde to hakke *and* hewe
þe okes olde and leye hem on a rewe
In colpons wel araied forto brenne
His Officers *with* swift[e] fote thei renne
And riȝt' anon at' his comaundement'
And aftere Theseus haþ ysent
Aftere a beer' and it' al ouer spradde
Wiþ cloþ of gold' the richest' þat' he hadde
And of þe same sute he cloþer Arcite [leaf 40, back]
Vpon his hondes [were] his gloues white
Eke on his hede a croune of laurere grene
And in his hand a swerde ful briȝt' *and* kene
He laide him bare þe visage vnto þe bere
Ther wiþ he wepte þat' pite was to here
And for þe puple shulde sene hym aⁿ
Whan it' was daie he brouȝt' hym to þe haⁿ
þat' roreþ of þe crie and of þe sorowe sone
þoo gan þis woful Thebean Palamon
Wiþ flotery berd' and ruggy asshy heres
In cloþes blake dropped al wiþ teeres
And passing oþer of weping' Emelie
She rewfullest' of al þe companye
In as moche as þe seruyse shuld be
þe more noble and riche in his degre
Duke Theseus lete forþ þe stedes bringe
That' trapped were in steel al gliteringe
And keuered wiþ þe armes of Dame Arcite [or Dain]
Vppon þise stedes grete and white
Ther stoden folk of whicħ oon bare his sheelde
Anoþer his spere vpon his hondes heldo

The iij. bare wiþ him bowe turkeys
Of brentꝫ gold was þe caas *and* eke þe harneys
And riden forþ a paas wiþ sory chere
Towardes þe groue as ȝe shul afterꝫ here
The noblestꝫ of þe Grekes þatꝫ þer were
Vpon her shulders cariden þe bere
Wiþ sclak[e] paas and yen rede *and* wete
þorgh̄ out þe Cite by þe maister strete
þat sprad was al wiþ blak and wonder hye
Riȝt of þe same is þe strete ywrie
Vpon þe Riȝt honde wentꝫ olde Egeus
And on þatꝫ oþer side Duke Theseus
Wiþ vesselles in her hondes of goldꝫ ful fyne
Al ful of hony. mylk. [and] blood. *and* wyne
Eke Palamon with ful grete companye [leaf 41]
And aftere þatꝫ come wooful Emelie
Wiþ fire in hand as was þatꝫ time þe Gyse
To do þe office of funeral seruise
Higĥ labour / and ful grete apparaillinge
Was atꝫ þe seruyse and atꝫ þe fire makinge
Thatꝫ wiþ his grene top þe heuene raught
And xxtiꝫ fadmes in bredę þe armes raughtꝫ
This is to seine þe bowes were so brode
Of strawe first þer was leide mony a lode
Butꝫ howe þe fire was maked vp[on] hiȝtꝫ
Ne eke þe names howe þe trees hiȝtꝫ
As Oke. fir. birch̄. asp. alder. Elme. popelere.
Wilowe. holme. playn. assh̄. box. Chesteyn. hynd̄. laure.
Mapel. þorne. becche. ewe. haseł̄. wypultre.
How þei were felled shal notꝫ be tolde for me
Ne howe þe goddes ronnen vp *and* doun
Disherites of her habitacioun
In whiche þei wonden in restꝫ *and* pees
Nymphes. ffawnes *and* amadries
Ne howe þe beestes ne þe briddes alle
ffledden for fere whan þei were falle

Ne howe þe grounde agast' was of þe liȝt'
That' was not' wonte to se þe sonne briȝt'
Ne how þe fire was couched first wiþ stre
And þan wiþ drie stikkes clouen a þree
And þan wiþ grene wode and spiceric
And þan wiþ clo þe of gold' and [wiþ] perric
And Garlondes honging' wiþ mony a floure
The myrr' þensence with swete odoure
Ne how arcite lay among' al þis
Ne what' richesse aboute his body is
Ne howe Emely as was þe Gise
Put' in þe fire of funeral seruise
Ne howe she swowned whan made was þe fire
Ne what' she spak ne what' was her desire
Ne what' Ielous men in þe fire cast' [leaf 11, back]
Whan þat þe fire was grete and brente fast'
Nowe howe some cast' her sheelde *and* some her spere
And of her vestementes which þei were
And Coppes ful of mylke and wyne *and* blood
Into þe fire þat' brent' as it' were wode
Ne howe þe greges wiþ an huge route
Thrise riden al þe fire aboute
Vpon þe lift' honde wiþ a loude shoutinge
And thries wiþ her speres clateringe
And thries how þe ladise gan crie
Ne howe þat' lad was homward' Emely
Ne how arcyte is brent' in asshen colde
Ne how þe liche-wake was [y]holde
Al þat' nyght' ne howe þe Grekes pleye
The wake-plaies kepe I not' to seie
Who wrasteleþ best' naked *with* oile anoynt'
Ne who [that] bare him best' in no dysioynt'
I wil not' tellen all howe þei [ben] gone
Home til Athenes whan þe play is done
But' shortely to þe point' þan wil I wende
And make[n] of my longe tale an ende

By processe and by length of ȝeres
Al stinte is þe mo*ur*nyng and þe teeres
Of Greges by oon general assent
Than semed me þer was a p*ar*lement
At Athenes vpon a certeyn point *and* caas
And amonge pointes [ther] yspoken waas
To haue wiþ certeyn contrees alliance
And haue of Thebeanes fully obeisañce
ffor whicℏ this noble theseus anōn
Lete sende[n] after gentile Palamon
Vnwist of him what was þe cause *and* whi
But in his blake cloþes sorowfully
He come at his comaundement in hie
Tho sente Theseus for Emelye
Whan þat þei were sette and huyst was al þe place [leaf 42]
And Theseus abiden haþ þe space
Or eny worde come fro his wise brest
His yen sette he þer hy*m* lest
And suchℏ a saḍ visage he sighed stille
And after þat riȝt þus he seide his wille
The firste mouer of þe cause aboue
Whan he first made þe faire cheyn of loue
Gret was þe effecte and highℏ was his entent
Wel wist he why and what þerof he ment
ffor wiþ þat faire cheyne of loue he bonde
The fuyre. þe. Eire þe water and þe londe
In certeyn boondes þat þei may not flee
That same prince and þat same mouer q*uo*d he
Haþ stablesshed in þis wrecched world adoun
Certeyn days and Dominacio*un*
To al þat is engendred in þis place
Ouer þe whiche day þei may not pace
Al mowe þei ȝit þe daies abregge
Ther nys noon autorite to legge
ffor it is proued by exp*er*ience
But that me lust declare my sentence

Than may men by þis order discerne
That þilk mouer stable is and eterne
Wel may men knowe but it be a fool
That euery part darrayueth fro his hool
ffor nature haþ not taken his bygynnyng
Of no partie or of catel of no þing
But oon þinge þat *parfit* is and stable
Descendinge so til it be corruptable
And þerfore of his wise purueaunce
He haþ so wel bysette his ordyn*aunce*
þat specifie of þingges and *progressiones*
Shullen endure by successiones
And not eterne wiþ oute eny lye
This maist þou vnderstond *and* see atte ye
Lo the Oke þat hath so longe a norshinge [leaf 12, back]
ffro þe tyme þat it bygynneþ furst to springe
And haþ so longe a lif as ȝe may se
ȝit at þe last*e* waasted is þe tree
Considereþ eke howe þat þe herd*e* stone
Vnder our fete on whicħ we treden and gone
ȝit .ȝ. wasteþ it as it lith in þe way
þe Brode Ryuer somtyme wexeþ dray
þe grete townes so wide wane and wende
Than þe see þat al þis þing haþ ende
And man and wo*m*man so we wil also
That nedeþ in oon of þe teermes twoo
þat is to sayn in youþe or ellis i*n* age
He mote be dede þe kinge as wel as page
Some in his bed some in þe depe see
Some in þe large felde as ȝe may see
Ther helpeþ nouȝt al goþ þat ilk waye
þan may I seie þat al þis þing wil deye
What makeþ þis but Iubiter þe king
þat is prince and cause of al þing
Couerting al vnto his p*ro*pre wille
ffrom whicħ it is darreyude soþ to telle

Aud here agayne no creature on lyue
Of no degre availleþ forto stryue
Than is it' wisdome as þenkeþ me
To make vertue of necessite
And take it' wel þat' we may not' eschew
And namely þat'. þat' to vs all is dwe
And who so grucheþ ouȝt' he doþ foly
And rebell is to him þat al may gye
And certeynly a man haþ most' honour
To dyen in his excellence and flour'
Whan he is siker of his good name
þan haþ he done his frende ne hym no' shame
And gladder' auȝt / his frende. ben of his deth̄
Whan wiþ honour' yȝolden is vp þe breeth̄
Than whan his name appalled is for age [leaf 48]
ffor al forȝeten is his vassalage
Than is þe best' as for a worþi fame
To dyen whan he is best' of name
The Contrarie of al þis is wilfulnesse
Why grucche we whi haue we heuynesse
That' goode Arcite of Cḥyualre þe flour'
Departed is wiþ dwete and wiþ honour'
Out' of þe foule prison of þis liff
Whi grucchen here his cosyn and his wiff
Of his welfare þat' loueþ hem so wel
Can he hem þonk. nay god wote neuer a dell
That' boþ his soule and eke hem [self] offende
And ȝit' þei mowe not' hir lustes amende
What' may conclude of þis longe serie
But' after woo I rede vs be merie
And þanken Iubiter of al his grace
And or we departen from þis place
I rede we made of sorowes twoo
Oo parfite Ioie lasting' euermoo
And loke nowe wher most' sorowe is her' Inne
þer at' wil I furst' bygynne

Suster quod he þis is my ful assent
Wiþ all thaues here of my parlement
That Gentile Palamon 3our owne knyg3t
þat seruep 3ou wiþ wille herte *and* my3t
And euer hap do sipen 3e first hym knewe
þat 3e shal of 3oure grace vpon hym rewe
And taken [hym] for husbonde and for lord
Lene me 3oure honde for þis is our accord
Lete se nowe of 3oure womanly pite
He is a kingges broþer sone parde
And þou3e he be a poor bachiler
Siþ he hap serued 3ou so mony a 3ere
And had for 3ou so grete aduersite
It most be considered leueþ me
ffor gentel Mercy ou3t to passen ri3t [leaf 43, back]
Than seide he þus to Palamon þe kny3t
I trowe þere nede litel sermonynge
To make 3ou assente to þis þinge
Commeþ nere and takeþ 3oure lady by þe honde
Bytwix hem two was made anoñ þe bonde
þat hi3te Matrimoyne or mariage
By all þe counsaile and [the] baronage
And þus wiþ al[le] blisse and melodye
Haþ Palamon ywedded Emelye
And god þat al þis world hap wrou3t
Send hym his loue þat hap it dere bou3t
ffor nowe is Palamon in al[le] wele
Lyuynge in al blisse in ricches and in hele
And Emely him loueþ so tenderly
And he hir serueþ so gentely
Was neuer no worde hem bitwene
Of Ielousie or eny oþer tene
Thus endeþ þe tale of Palamon and Emelye
And god saue al þis faire companye

¶ Here endeþ þe knyghtes tale

& here bygnneþ
þe Prologe of þe Milleres tale
¶ The Prologe

Whan þat' þe knyght' had þus his tale told'
In al the companye nas þer 3onge ne olde
þat' he ne seide it' was a noble storie
And worþi to be drawe in memorie
And namely the gentels euerechoñ
Our hooste loughe and swore so mot' I goñ
This goþ a ri3t' vnbokeled is þe male
Lat' se nowe who shal telle anoþere tale
ffor trewly þe game is wel bygonne
Now telleþ 3e sir' monke 3if 3e conne
Somwhat to quyte wiþ þe knyghtes tale
The Miller' þat' for-dronke was al pale
So þat' vnneþes vppon his hors he satte
He wold availe neiþe hode ne hatte
Ne abide no man for his curtesie [leaf 44]
But' in Pilates vois he bygan to crie
And swore by armes blode and bones
I can a noble tale for þe nones
Wiþ þe whicħ I wil now quyte þe kny3tes tale
Our' [hooste] seghe þat' he was dronke of ale
And seide abide Robyn leue brother'
Somme better man shal telle vs first' anoþer'
Abide and [let] us wirche thriftely
By goddes soule quod he þat wil not' I
ffor I wil speke or ellis go my way
Our hooste answerd' seye on a deuel way
Thou arte a fool þi witt' is ouercommen
Now harkeneþ quod þe myllere al and som
¶ But' first' I make a protestacioun
þat' I am dronke I knowe it' by my soun
And þerfore 3if I mysspeke or say
Wite it' þe Ale of suthwerk I 3ou pray

ffor I will telle a legend and a liff
Bop of a Carpenter and [of] his wiff
How þat a clerke reft the wriztes cappe
The reue answerd and seide stint of þi clappe
Lat be þi lewde dronken harlotrie
It is a synne and eke a grete folye
To appeyren eny man or hym diffame
And eke to bringe wives in such name
Pow maist ynowe of oþer þingges seine
þis dronken Millere spake ful sone ageyn
And seide leue broþer oswalde
Who haþ no wif. is no-kukwold
But I seie not þerfor þat þou art oon
Ther ben ful good[e] wyues mony on
[
no gap in the MS.]
Whi art þou angry wiþ my tale nowe
I haue a wiff parde as wel as þou
3it nolde I for þe oxen in my plogh
Take vpon me more þan ynogh
As demen of my seluen þat I were oone [leaf 44, back]
I wil bylieue þat þat I am none
An husbond shuld not be inquesitif
Of goddes priuete ne of his wif
So he may finde goddes foyson þere
Of þe remenant nedeþ nat to enquere
What shuld I more seie but þe Millere
He nyl his wordes for no man for-bere
But tolde his Chirles tale in his manere
Me forþenkeþ þat I shal reherce it here
And þerfore euery gentil wizt I preie
Demeþ not for goddes loue þat I seie
Of euel entent but for I mote reherce
Her tales alle be þei better or wors
Or ellis fals somen of my matere
And þerfore who list it not here

Torne ouer þe lef and chese anoþer tale
ffor 3e shul fynde ynow grete *and* smale
Of historial þinge þat touchep gentilnesse
And eke moralite and holynesse
Blame not me 3if þat ye chese amys
The Millere is a cheerle 3e knowe wel þis
So was the Reue eke and other moo
And harlotrie þei told hop two
Avise 3ou and put me out of blame
And eke men shal not make ernest of game
Thus endeþ þe prologe.

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here by-
gynneþ þe Millers Tale.
¶ Narracio

Whilom þer was dwelling' in Oxenford'
A riche gnof' þat' gestes helde to bord'
And of his craft' he was a Carpenter'
Wiþ him þer was dwelling' a pore scolere
Had lerned arte but' al his fantasie
Was turned forto lere Astrologie
And cowde a certeyn of conclusions
To demen by interrogacioñs.
ȝif þat' men axed him incerteyn houres [leaf 45]
Whan þat' men shuld' haue drouȝte of shoures
Or ȝif men axed him what' shuld' byfalle
Of euery þing' I may not' rekne alle
This tale was cleped hende Nicholas
Of derne loue and priue solas
And þerto he was sclegh̄ and ful priue
And liche to a maiden meke to see
A chambre had he in þat' ostelrie
Allone wiþ-out' eny companye
fful fetist' dight' wiþ herbes swote
And he hym self as swete as is þe rote
Of licorace or ony sytuale
His almagist' and bokes grete *and* smale
His aster-laboure longinge for his arte
His awgryme stones layen ful faire aparte
On shelues couched at his beddes heuede
His presse ykeuered wiþ a falding' rede
And al aboue þer lay a gay sautrie
On which̄ he made on nyghtes melodye
So swetely þat' al þe chambre ronge
And angelus ad virginem he songe
And after þat' he songe þe kingges note
fful ofte blessed was his mery þrote

And þus þe swete Clerk' his tyme spente
Aftere his frendes fynding' and his rente
This Carpentere had wedded newe a wiff
Which þat' he loued more þan his liff
Of xviij. ȝere she was of age
Ielous he was and kept' hir' streit' in cage
ffor she was wily and yonge and he was olde
And demed hym self to be like a Cukwolde
He knewe not' Caton for his wit' is rude
þat' bad man shuld' wedde his similitude
Men shul wedde aftere her estate
ffor ȝouþe and elde is oft' at' debate
But sith he was fallen in þe snare [leaf 45, back]
He most' enduren as oþer folk his care
ffair was þis yonge wif and þer wiþ all
As eny wesell her body gent' *and* small
A seynt' she wered barred al of silk'
A barmecloþe as white as morn[e] mylk'
Vpon her lendes ful of mony a gore
White was hir smok' and enbrauded al byfore
And eke be-hinde on her' coler' aboute
Of Cole-blak silk' with-Inne and eke wiþ-oute
The tapes of hir' white volipere
Were of þe same sute of hir colere
Hir' Philett brode of silk *and* sette ful hie
And sikerly she had a lykerous ye
ffull smal ypulled were her browes twoo/
And þoo were bent' and blake as eny sloo/
She was more blisful on to se
þan is þe newe *Per*ient' tree
And softer þan þe woll is of eiþer'
And by hir' girdel henge a purs of leder'
Tasshed wiþ silk and perled with latoun
In al þis worlde to seke vp and doun
Ther nys no man so wise þat' couþe þenche
So gay a popelot' or [such] a wenche

ffull brigt' was the shynyng' of her hwe
Than in þe toure þe noble forged newe
But' of her songe it' was as loude *and* 3erne
As eny swalowe sittinge on a beerne
þerto she couþe skippe and make a game
As eny kid or calf folowing' his dame
Her mouþe was swete as braket or metħ
Or horde of apples leide in hay or hetħ
Wynsinge she was as is a Ioly colt
Longe as a mast' and vpward' as a bolt'
A broche she bare on her loue coler'
As brode as is þe boos of a bokelere
Her shoes were laised on her legges hie [leaf 46]
She was a Primerolł a Pigges nye
ffor eny lorde to liggen in his bedde
Or 3it' for eny [good] 3eman to wedde
Now sir' and eft' sir'. and so bifelle þe caas
That' on a day þis heende Nicholas /
ffelle wiþ þis yonge wif forto rage *and* play
While þat' her husbonde was at' osenay
As clerkes bene ful subtile and ful queynte
And prively he kaught' hur' by' þe queynte
And seide ywis but' I haue my wille
ffor deerne loue of þe lemman I spille
And helde hure fast' by þe haunche bonys
And seide lemman my wiłł at' onys
Or I wil die as god me saue
And she spronge as a colt' in traue
And wiþ her hede sche wried fast' away
She saide I wil not' kisse þe by my fay
Wy labbe quod she latt be Nicholas
Or I wil crie out' harowe *and* alas
Do way 3oure hondes for 3our curtesie
This Nicholas gan mercy forto crie
And spake so faire *and* profred him ful fast
þat' she her loue *graunted hym* atte last'

And swoor hir' oope by seint' Thamas of kent'
That' she wolde bene at' his comaundement'
Whan þat' she may hir' laizere wel aspie
Myn husbonde is so ful of Ielousie
þat' but' ȝe waite wele *and* by prive
I woote riȝt' wel I ne am but' dede quod she
ȝe mote be ful deerne as in þis caas
Nay þerof care ȝou not' quod Nicholaas
A Clerk has liþerly bysettè his while
But' ȝif he couþe a carpenter' begile
And þus þei acorded and sworne
To awaite a tyme as I haue seide biforn̄
Whan Nicholas had' don̄ þus eu*e*ry dele [leaf 46, back]
And twakked her aboute þe lendes welle
He kisseþ her swete and takeþ his sautrie
And pleieþ fast' and makeþ melodye
þan fille it þus þat to þe parissh̄ chirche
Cristes werkes for to wirche
This good wif went' vpon an halyday
Hir' forhede shoon as bṛiȝt' as eny day
So was it' wasshe whan she left' her werk'
Now was þere of þe chirch̄ a parissh̄ clerk
þe which̄ was cleped absalon̄
Crulle was his heer' and as þe golde shone
And strouted as [a] fanne large *and* brode
ffull streite and euene laie his Ioly shode
His rudde was rede his eyen grey as goos
Wiþ Powles wyndowes corven in his shoos
In hosen rede he wente fetisly
I-clad he was ful smal and p*ro*prely
Al in a kirtel of light' wagett
ffull faire and þikke ben þe poyntes sette
And þer-vpon he had [a] gay surplise
As white as is þe blossom on [the] rise
A mery child' he was so god me saue
Wel coude he late blood [and] clippe and shaue

And make a chartere of londe or a quytaunce
In xx^{ti} maners coude he trippe *and* daunce
After the scole of Oxenforde þoo
And wiþ his legges casten to and froo
And pleyen songes on a small rybibe
Some he songe a loude quynybe
As as wel coude he pley on a gytern)
In al þe towne nas brewhous ne tauern̄
þat he ne viset' wiþ his solas
þer eny gailerd' tapster' was
But' soth to sayn he was somdele squeymous
Of fartinge *and* of speche daungerous
This Absolon þat' was Ioly *and* gay [leaf 47]
Goþ wiþ a sensure on þe sonday
Sensinge þe wyues of þe parissh fast'
And mony a louely loke on hem he cast'
And namely on þe Carpenters wiff
To loke on hyr' him þouȝt' a mery liff
She was so *pro*pre. swete. *and* likerous
I dar wel say and she had be a mous
And he a Catt' he wold' hire hent' anōn
This parissh̄ clerk' þis Ioly absolon̄
Haþ in his herte such̄ a loue longynge
That' of no wiff toke he non offringe
For curtesie he seide he wolde none
The mone whan it' was nyȝt' briȝt' shone
And absolon his gitern haþ [i]take
For *par*amours he þouȝte forto wake
And forþe he goþ Ielous and amerous
Til he come to þe Carpenter[e]s hous
A litel aftere þe Cok' had ycrowe
And dressed hym vnder a shette wyndowe
That' was vpon þe Carpenter[e]s walle
He singeþ in his vois gentile *and* smalle
Now dere lady ȝif þi wil be
I prei ȝou þat' ȝe wil rewe on me

Ful wel according' to his giternynge
This Carpentere a-woke and herd' hym singe
And spake vnto his wif and seide anoñ
What' alison herest' þou not' Absoloñ
þat' chaunteþ þus vndere our boures walt
And she answerd' her husbond' þer' wiþ all
3is god wote Ioñn I here it' euery dele
þis passeþ forþ what' wil ȝe than but wele
ffro day to day þis Ioly absoloñ
So woweþ hire þat' hym was woo-bygoñ
He wakeþ al þe nyȝt' and al þe day
He kembeþ his lockes brode and made hem gay
He woweþ hir' by menes and brocage [leaf 47, back]
And swoor he wolde bene her wne page
He Syngeþ brokking' as a nyghtyngale
He sent' her pyment' Methe and spised ale
And wafres pyping hote out' of þe glede
And to hir' often he profered mede
ffor some wil be wonnen for ricches
And some for strokes and some for gentilnesse
Somtyme to shewe his lightnesse and maisstrie
He pleieth herawdes vpon a scaffold' hie
But what' availleþ him as in þis caas
So loueth she þis hende Nicholaas
That' Absolon may blawe þe buke horñ
He ne had for his labour but' a scorñ
And þus she makeþ absolon her Ape
Al his eernest turneþ but' to a Iape
ffor soþe þis prouerbe it' is no lye
Men seien þus alway þe nyȝte sclie
Makeþ þe feer loue to be loth̃
ffor þouȝe þat' absolon be wode or wroth̃
By cause þat' he fer was from her siȝt'
This Niȝte Nicholas stode in his liȝt'
Nowe bere ȝou wel thou hende Nicholas/
ffor absolon may waille *and* singe allas

And so by-felle it' on a Saterday
This Carpentere was gone to Osnay
And hende Nicholas and Alisoñ
Accorded were to þis conclusioñ
þat' Nicholas shal shapen hym a wile
This sely Ielous husbonde to begile
And if so be þe game went' a riȝt'
She shulde sclepe in his arme al þat' nyȝt'
For þis [was] his desire and hers also
And riȝt' anon wiþ-oute wordes moo/
This Nicholas no lenger wold tarie
But' doþ ful softe into his chamber carie
Both̃ mete and drinke for a daye or tweye [leaf 48]
And to hir' husbonde bad hir' for to seie
If þat' he asked after Nicholas
She shulde seie she nyst' not' wher he was
Of al þat' day she see hym not' wiþ ye
She trowed þat' he was in maladye
ffor no crie her maide can calle
He nolde answere for nouȝt' that' may bifalle
This passeþ forþ al þe Saterday
That' Nicholas stille in his bed lay
And ete and slepte and [dede] what' hym lest'
Til sonday þat' þe sonne goþ to rest'
This sely Carpenter' haþ grete mervaile
Of Nicholas or what' þing' myȝt' hym aile
And saide I am a-drad by seynt' Thomas
It' stondeth not' a-riȝt' wiþ Nicholas
God shilde þat' he deyed sodenily
This world is nowe ful tikil sikerly
I seghe to-day a coors born to chirche
That' now on monday I segh̃ fast' wirche
Go vp quod he to his knaue anoñ
Clepe at' his door or knokke wiþ a stoñ
Loke howe it' is and telle me boldely
þis knaue went' him vp ful sturdely

And at the Chamber door while þat he stode
He cried an knokked as he were wode
What howe what do ȝe maister Nicholay
Howe may ȝe sclopen al þis longe day
But al for nouȝt he herd neuer a word
An hoole he foonde ful lowe vnder a bord
Ther as þe Catt was wonte forto crepe
And at þe hole he loked in ful depe
And atte last he had of him a siȝt
þis Nicholas satte euere gaping vp riȝt
As he had kiked on þe newe moone
And doune he goþ and told his maister sone
In what araie he seg̃ þat ilke man [leaf 48, back]
This carpentere to blissen hym by-gan
And seide helpe vs seint ffredeswyde
A man wote litel what shal hym betide
This man is fallen wiþ his astronomye
In some woodnesse or in some Agonye
I þouȝt wel howe it shuld be
Men shuld not knowe of goddis privete
ȝe blessed be alway þe lewde man
þat nouȝt but only his bileeue can
So ferde anoþer clerk with astronomye
He walked into þe feeldes for to prie
Vpon þe sterres to wit what shal by-falle
Til he was in a Marle pitte yfalle
He seighe noȝt but yit by seint Thomas
Me ruеþ soor hende Nicholas
He schal be rated of his stodying
If þat I may by Ihesu[1] heuene knyge [1 MS Ihc]
Gete me a staf þat I may vnderspore
While þat þou Robyn heuest vp þe dore
He shal out of his stodying as I gesse
And to þe Chamber dore he gan hym dresse
His knaue was a stronge Carle for þe nones
And by þe haspe he haue it vp at ones

Into þe floor þe door fille anoñ
This Nicholas satt ay stille as stoñ
And euere gaped vpwardꝰ into þe eire
þis carpenterꝰ wende he were in despeirꝰ
And hentt hym by þe shuldres myȝtely
And shoke him hardꝰ and cried spitously
Whatt Nicholay whatt loke adoun
A-wake and þenk on cristes passioun
I crouche þe from eveles and fro wiȝtes
þer-with þe nyȝtt spelle he seide anoñ riȝtes
On four halues of the hous aboute
And on þe thresshholdꝰ on þe dore without
Ihesu crisstt and seyntt Benedighttꝰ [leaf 49]
Blesse þis hous from euery wicked wightt
ffor þe nyghtes verye þe white pater noster
Where wentestowe . seyntt Peters sustert
And atte lastt þis hende Nicholas
Gan for to sighe sore and seide allas
Shal al þe world be loste eftsones nowe
This Carpentere answerde whatt seistt þowe
Whatt þenk on god as we doñ þatt swynkt
This Nicholas answerde focche me drinkt
And aftere I wil speke in privete
Of certeyn þingt þatt towcheþ þe and me
I wille telle itt noon oþer man cereteyne
This carpenterꝰ goþ doun and commeþ ageyne
And brouȝtt of myghty ale a large quarte
And whan þatt eche of hem had dronke his parte
þis Nicholas his door fastt shette
And doun þe Carpenterꝰ by hym he sette
And seide Iohñ myn hooste lief and dere
þow shalt vpon þi trouþ swere me heere
Thatt to no wightt þou shaltt þis counsell wrey
ffor itt is cristes counsaile þatt I sey
And if þu telle itt man þou arttꝰ forlore
ffor þis vengeannce þou shaltt haue þerfore

þat' if þow wrey me þou shalt' be wode
¶ Nay crist' forbede it' for his holy blood' 3508
Quod þoo þis sely man I ne am no labbe
Ne þoughⁿ I seie it' I ne am not' lief to gabbe
Sey what' þowe wolt' I shal it' neuer' telle
To Childe ne wif by hym þat' harowed helle 3512
Nowe Iohⁿ quod Nicholas I wil not' lie
I haue yfounden in myn astrologie
As I haue loked in þe mone briȝt'
þat' nowe on monday next' a quarter nyȝt' 3516
Shal falle a rayn and þat' so wild' *and* wode
þat' half' so grete was never noes flode
This world' he saide in lasse þan in an houre [leaf 49, back]
Shal al be dreint' so hidous is þe showre 3520
Thus shal mankinde drenche and lese her liff
This Carpentere answerd' allas my wiff
And shal she drenche allas myⁿ alisoun
ffor sorowe of þis he fille al-most' adoun 3524
And seide is no remedye in þis caas
Wy ȝis for god quod heende Nicholas
If þow wolte worchen aftere lore and rede
þowe maist' not' worchen after' þine owne hede 3528
ffor þus seith salomon þat' was ful trewe
Worche al by counsaile *and* þou shalt' not' rewe
And if þou worchen wolt' by good counsaille
I vndertake wiþ-outen mast' or saille 3532
ȝit' shal I saue hir' *and* þe and mee
Hast' þou not' herd' how saued was Noe
Whan þat' our lorde haþ warned hym byforn
þat' al the world' wiþ water' shuld be lorⁿ 3536
ȝis quod þis Carpenter ful ȝore a-goo
Hastowe not' herde quod Nicholas also
þe sorowe of Noe wiþ.his felawship
Or he myȝt' gete his wif to ship 3540
Hym had leuere I dar wel vndertake
At' þilke tyme þan alt his weþeres blake

43140

þat' she had a ship hure self allōn
And þerfor woostowe what' is best' to doñ
Thix axeth hast' and of an hastif þinge
Men may not' preche or make taryinge
Anoon go gete vs fast' into þis Inne
A knedinge trough̄ or ellis a kemelyne
ffor eche of vs but' loke þat' þei bene large
In whiche men mowe swymme as in a barge
And han her vitailles suffisaunt'
But' for a day fye on þe remen*aunt'*
þe water' shal a-slake and goñ a-way
Aboute pryme vpon þe nexte day
But' Robyne may not' wit' of þis þi knaue [leaf 50]
Ne eke þi maide Gill' I may not' saue
Axe not' why for þouȝe þou axe me
I wil not' tellen goddes p*riuete*
It' suffiseþ þe but' if þi wittes madde
To haue as grete a grace as Noe hadde
þi wif shal I wel saue out' of doute
Go nowe þi way and spede þe here aboute
But whan þou hast' for hir' *and* þe *and* me
ygeten vs þise kneding' treies þre
þan shalt' þou honge hem in þe roof' ful hie
þat' no man of oure p*ur*ueaun*c*e espie
And whan þou þus hast' doñ as I haue seide
And hast' oure vitaile faire in hem y-leide
And eke an axe to smyte þe cord' a two
Whan þat' þe water co*m*meþ þat' we may goo
And broke and hole on high̄ vpon the gable
Vnto þe gardyne ward' ouer þe stable
þat' we may frely passen forþ our waye
Whan þat' þe grete shoure is passed awaye
Than shalt' þou swy*m*me as mery I vndertake
As doþ þe wight' duk aftere þe drake
þan wol I clepe how alisoñ. howe Iohn̄
Be mery for þe flood wil passe anōn

And þowe wilt seyn heil Maister Nicholay
Good morowe I see þe wele for it is day
And þan shal we be lordes al oure lif
Of alle þe world as Noe and his wif
But þat of oo þing I warne þe ful riȝt
Be wel avised on þat ilk[e] nyȝt
þat we bene entred into þe shippes boord
þat noon of vs ne speke not a word
Ne Clepe ne crie but bene in his preire
ffor it is goddis owe heeste dere
Thi wif and þou mote honge fer atwynne
ffor þat bitwix ȝou shal be no synne
No more in loking þan þer shal in dede [leaf 50, back]
þis ordinaunce is seide so god þe spede
To morowe at nyght whan men bene all a-slepe
Into our kneding trowes wil we crepe
And sitten þer abidinge goddis grace
Go nowe þi way I haue no lenger space
To make of þis no lenger sermonyng
Men seyn þus sende þe wise *and* say no þinge
þou art so wise it nedede þe not teche
Go saue our lif and þat I þe biseche
¶ This sely Carpentere goþ forþ his way
fful oft he seide alas and wayleway
And to his wif he tolde his priuete
And she was war and knewe it bet þan he
What al þis queinte cast was for to saye
But nathelees she feerde as she wold deye
And saide alas go foorþ þi way añon
Helpe vs to scape or we bene dede echoñ
I am þi trewe verry wedded wiff
Go dere spouse and helpe to saue our lif
Lo swich a grete þing is affectiõn
Men may dye for ymaginaciõn
So depe may impression be take
This sely Carpenter bygynneþ quake

Hym þenkeþ verrely þat he may se
Noe flood come walking as þe See
To drenchen alison his hony dere
He wepeth weilleth and maketh sori chere
He sigheþ wiþ mony a sory swough
And gooþ and geteþ hym a kneding trough
And aftere a Tubbe and a kemelyne
And prively he sent hem to his Inne
And henge hem in þe roof in privete
His owne honde he made eke ledders þre
To clymben by þe ronges *and* þe stalkes
Vnto þe tubbes hongyng in þe balkes/
And hem vitailled boþ[e] trouȝe and tubbe [leaf 51]
Wiþ brede. wiþ chese wiþh good ale in a Iubbe
Suffisinge riȝt ynowe as for a day
But er he had made al þis aray
He sent his knaue and eke his wenche alsoo
Vpon his nede to Londoñ for to goo
¶ And on þe Monday whan it drouȝe to nyȝt
He shette his door wiþ-outen candel liȝt
And dressed al þing as it shuld be
And shortely clumben vp al þre
Þei seiten stille wel a forlonge way
Now Pat*er* n*oster* Clum seide Nicholay
And Clum quod Iohn. and clum seide Alisoñ
This Carpentere seide his devocioñ
And stille he sitte and biddeþ his preier
Awaitinge on þe reyne if he it here
The deþe sleep for wery bisynesse
ffille on þis Carpent*er* riȝt as I gesse
Aboute Curfewe tyme or litel more
ffor travaile of his goost he groneþ sore
But ofte he routed for his hede myslay
Doun of þe ledder stalkeþ Nicholay
And Alisoñ ful softe adoune she spedde
Wiþ-outen wordes moo þei goñ to bedde

þer as þe Carpenter' is wonte to lye
þer was þe reuel and þe melodye
And þus lith alison and Nicholas
In busynes of̃ myrth̃ *and* of solas
Til þat' þe belle of laudes gan to ringe
And freres in þe chaunsel gan to singe
¶ This Parissh̃ clerk þis amorous absolon̄
þat' is for loue alway so woo bygon̄
Vpon þe Monday was at' Osency
Wiþ Company him to disport' *and* ply
And axed vpon a caas a Cloystrere
fful prively after Iohn̄ þe Carpentere
And he drowe hym apart' out' of þe chirch̃ [leaf 51, back]
And seide I note I seghe hym here not wirch̃
Siþ saterday I trowe þat he be went'
ffor tymbre þer oure abbot' haþ hym sent'
ffor he is wonte for tymbre forto goo
And dwellen at' þe graunge a day or twoo
Or ellis he is at' his hous certeyn
Wher þat' he be I can not' soþly seyn
This absolon ful Ioly was *and* liȝt'
And þought' now is tyme to wake al nyght'
ffor sikerly I segh̃ hym not' stirenge
Abouten his door siþ day bygan to springe
So mote I thriue I shal atte Cockes crowe
fful priuely knokken at' his wyndowe
þat' stant' ful lowe vpon his bowres walle
To Alison now wil I tellen alle
My loue longyng' for þat' I shal not' mysse
þat' at' þe leeste wey I shal hir' kisse
Som manere comfort' shal I haue pa*r*fay
My moupe haþ icched al þis longe day
þat' is a signe of kissing' atte leest
Al nyght' me met' eek I was at' a fest'
þer-for I wil goo sclepe an hour or twey
And al þe nyght' þan wil I wake *and* pley

Whan þat' þe firste cok haþ crowe anoñ
Vp stert' þis Ioly louer absoloñ
And hym araied gay and poynt' devise
But' first' he shewe þ greyn *and* licorise
To smellen swote er he had kempt' his here
Vndere his tunge a trewe loue he bere
ffor þerby wende he to be gracious
He roomeþ to the Carpenters hous
And stille he stant' vndere þe shot' wyndowe
Vnto his brest' it' raught' it' was so lowe
And soft' he kougheþ wiþ a semy soune
What' do ȝe hony combe swete alisoun
My faire brid my swete Synamome
A-waikeþ lemman myne *and* spekeþ to me
fful litel þenken ȝe vpon my woo
þat' for ȝoure loue I swete as I goo
No wonder is þouȝe that' I swelt' or swete
I mourne as doþ þe lombe after þe tete
I-wis leuman I haue suc̃ loue-longyng'
þat' like a turtel trewe is my mournynge
I may not' eten no more þan a maide
Go fro þe wyndowe Iak fool she seide
So god me spede it' wil not' be compame
I loue anoþer and ellis I were to blame
Wel bet' þan þe by Ihesu absolon
Go forþ þi waie or I wil cast' a stoñ
And lat' me slepe a twenty deuelway
Alas quod absolon and weyloway
That' trewe loue was euere so euel bysette
Than kisse me siþ it' may be no bette
ffor Ihesus[1] loue and for þe loue of me
Wilt' þou þan go þi waie þer-with quod she
ȝe Certes lemman quod þis absolon
þan make þe redy quod she I come anoñ

[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]

This absolon doune sette hym on his knees

[1] MS Ihc

And seid I am a lord at' alle degrees
ffor aftere þis I hope þer co*mm*eth more
Lemman þi grace and swete brid þine ore
The wyndowe she vndoþ and þat' in haste
Haue doo quod she come of and spede þe faste
Lest' þat' our neighebоures þe espie
þis absolon gan wipe his mouþ ful drie
Derk was þe nyght' as picch̄ or as þe cole
And at' þe wyndowe out' she putt' her hole
And absolon him felle no bette ne wers
But' wiþ his mouþe he kissed her naked ers
fful sauourly er he was ware of þis
Abak he sterte and þought' it' was amys
ffor wel he wist' a womman haþ no berde [leaf 52, back]
He felt' a þing' al roughe and longe yherede
And seide fye alas what' haue I doo
Ti he quod she and clapt' þe wyndowe to/
And absolon goþ forþ a forþer paas
A beerd a beerd' seide hende Nicholaas
By goddes corpus þis goþ faire *and* well'
This sely absolon herde it' euery dell'
And on his lippe he gan for anger bite
And to him self he seide I shal' þe quyte
Who rubbeth nowe who freteth nowe his lippes
Wiþ dust' wiþ sonde wiþ strawe wiþ cloþ *with* chippes/
But' absolon that' seiþ ful oft' allas
My soule bitake I to Sathanas
But' me were leuere þan al þis toune q*uo*d he
Of þis despite a-wroken forto be
Allas quod he allas I ne had ybleynt'
His hote love is cold *and* al yqueynt'
ffor fro þat' tyme þat' he had kist' her ers
Of p*ar*amours he sette not' a kers
ffor he was heled of his malady
fful oft' p*ar*amours he gan defie
And wepeþ as doþ a child' þat' is ybete
A softe paas he went' ouer þe strete

Vnto a smyth̄ men clepen dann Gervase
That' in his forge smyteþ plowh harnase
He sharpeth share and culter bisily
This absolon knokkeþ al Esily
And seide vnto Gervays and þat' anon
What' who art' þou it' am I absolon
What' Absolon. what' cristes swete tre
Why rise ȝe so rathe .o benedicite
What' eileþ ȝou som gay gerle god it' wote
Haþ brouȝt' ȝou þus [up]on þe Vyritote
By seynt' Noet' ȝe whote wele what' I mene
þis Absolon ne rouȝte not' a bene./
Of al þis pley no word aȝein he gaf [leaf 53]
He had more towe on his dystaf
þan Gervais knewe and seide frende so dere
þe hote Cultere in þe Chymeney here
As lene it' me I haue þerwiþ to doñ
I wil bringe it' a-geyn ful sone
Gervais answerd' certes were it' gold'
Or in a poke nobles al vntold'
Thou shuldest haue as I am trewe smyth̄
A cristes foo what' wil ȝe do þerwith̄
Therof quod absolon be as be may
I shal tellen it' þe to morowe day
And caught' þe Culter' by þe colde stele
fful soft' out' atte door he gan stele
And went' vnto þe Carpentere walle
He koughed first' and knokked þer wiþ all
Vppon þe wyndowe right' as he did eere
þis Alison answerde who is þere
þat' knokkeþ so I waraunt' it a þeef
We nay quod he god wote my swete leef
I am þine absolon þine derlinge
Of gold' quod he I haue þe brouȝt' a ryngе
My modere ȝaue it' me so god me saue
fful fyn it' is and þerto wel ygraue

This wil I ȝeuen þe if þowe me kisse
þis Nicholas was risen forto pisse
And þouȝt' he wold' amenden al þe Iape
He shulde kisse his ers er þat' he scape
And vp þe wyndowe did he hastely
And out' his ers he putteþ *priuely*
Ouer þe buttok to þe haunche boñ
And þerwiþ spake þis clerk þis absolone
Speke sweto bridde I not' wher *þou* art'
þis Nicholas anoñ lete fleigh̃ a fart'
As grete as it' had bene a þonder dent'
þat' wiþ þe stroke he was almost' yblent'
And he was redy wiþ his yren hote [leaf 53, back]
And Nicholas in þe ers he smote
Of goþ þe skyn an honde brede aboute
þe hote culter brenned so his toute
And for þe smerte he wende forto deye
As he were wood for woo he gan to crye
Help water water-helpe for goddys hert'
This Carpenter' out' of his slomber stert'
And herde oon crien water' as he were wode
And þouȝt' allas now *com*meth noes flode
He sette hym vp wiþout[e] wordes moo
And wiþ an axe he smote þe cord' a two
And doun goþ alle he fonde neiþer to selle
Brede nor Ale til he com to þe selle
Vpon þe floor *and* ther a swoun he lay
Vp stert' hir Alison and Nicholay
And criden out' and horowe in þe strete
þe neighbours boþ smale and grete
Ronnen forto gawren on þis man
þat a swonn lay boþ pale and wan
ffor wiþ þat' falle he brusten haþ his arme
But' stonden he most' vnto his owne harme
ffor whan he spak he was anoñ born do*un*
Wiþ hende Nicholas and alisoun

Thei tolde euery man þat he was wode
He was agast so of þe Noes flode
þorgh fantasie þat of his vanyte
He had yboujt hym kneding tubbes þre
And had hem honged in þe roof aboue
And þat he preied hym for goddys loue
To sitten in þe roof par companye
þe folk gan laughen at his fantasie
And to the Roof þei kepen and þei gape
And turned al his harme vnto a Iape
ffor what so þis Carpenter answerd
It was for noujt no man his resoñ herd
Wiþ opes grete he was so sworn a doun (leaf 54)
That he was holden woode in al þat toun
ffor euere clerk anoon rijt helde wiþ oþer
þei seide þe man is wood my leue broþer
And euere wight gan laughen at his strif
Thus swyued was þe Carpenter[e]s wiff
ffor al his keping and his Ielousie
And Absalon haþ kissed her nethere ye
And Nicholas is scalded in his toute
This tale is doñ and god saue al þe route.
¶ Here endeþ þe mylers tale.

[*No break in the MS.*]

¶ And þus bygynneþ þe *Pr*ologe of þe Reues tale ¶ Cap. 3m.

Whan folk han laughen at' þis nyce cas
Of absolon and hende Nicholas
Dyuers folk dyuersly þei seide
But' for þe more parte þei lou3e *and* pleide
Ne at' þis tale I seghe no man hy*m* greue
But' it' were only Oswold' þe Reue
Bycause he was of Carpenter[e]s craft'
A litel Ire in his herte laft'
He gan to grucche and blamed it a lite
So thick quod he ful wele quouþ I þe quyte
Wiþ blering' of a proude Millers ye
If þat' me list' to speke of Ribawdye
But' ik am olde me list' not' pley for age
Gras tyme is done my foder is forage
This white top writeþ myn olde 3eeres
Myn hert' is al so mowled as myn hecres
But if I fare as doþ an open-ers
þat' ilke fruyte is euer lenger þe wers
Til it be roten in Mullok or in stre
We olde men I drede so fare we
Til we be roten can we not' be ripe
We hopen alway while þe hert' wil pipe
ffor in our wille þer stikketh euer a naile
To haue an hoor heer and a grene taile
As haþ a leke for þough our my3t be goñ [leaf 54, back]
Our wille desireþ foly euer in oon
ffor whan we may not' doñ þan wil we speke
3it' in oure asshed olde is fire yreke
ffour gledes han we whicħ I shal deuyse
Auaauntinge lying'. angre. and coueitise
Thise four sparkles longeþ vnto elde
Our olde lymes may wel bene vnwelde

But' wil ne shal not' faille þat' is soth̄
And 3it' haue I alwaye a coltes tooth̄
As mony 3ere as it' is passed henne
Sip þat' my tap of lif' byganne to renne
ffor sikerly whan I was born anōn
Dep drough̄ þe tappe of lif and lete it goñ
And euere sipen hap so þe tap yronne
Til at' almost' al empty is þe tonne
The strem of lif now droppep on þe chymbe
þe sely tunge may wel rynge and chymbe
Of wrecchednesse þat' passed is ful yore
Wip olde folk saue dotage is no more
¶ Whan þat' our ooste had herde þis sermonynge
He gan to speke as lordly as a kinge
He seide what' amountep al þis witte
What' shal we speke alday of holy writte
The deuel made a Reue forto preche
Or of a Souter' shipman or a lecche
Say forp þi take and tary not' þe tyme
Loo Depford and it' is almost' prime
Lo Grenwich̄ þat mony a shrewe is Inne
It' were hie tyme þi tale forto bygynne
¶ Now Sirs quod þis Oswold' þe Reue
I prei 3ou al þat' 3e 3ou not greue
þouȝe I answere and somdele sette hys houwe
ffor leeful it' is wip force. force of shouwe
This dronken Miller' hap ytolde vs here
Hou þat' bigiled was a Carpentere
*Per*auentu*re* in scorn for I am oon̄ [leaf 55]
And by 3oure leue I shal hy*m* quyte anoñ
Rigt' in his Cheerles teermes wil I speke
I prei to god his nekke mot' alto-breke
He can wel in myn ye seen a stalk
But' in his owne he can not' seen a balk'
¶ **Thus endep þe Prologe of þe Reue**

And here bygynneþ þe Reeues tale

At Trumpingtoñ not' fer fro Cauntebruge
Ther goþ a broke and over þat' a bruge
Vpon þe whiche broke þer stonte a melle
And ‡ is is verrey soþ þat' I ȝou telle
A Millere was þere dwelling' mony a day
As ony Pecok' he was proude and gay
Pipen he couþe an fisshen and nettes bete
And turne Coppes *and* wel wrastel and shete
Ny by his belt' he bare a longe panade
And of a swerd' ful trenchaūt was þe blade
A Ioly popper bere he in his pouche
Ther nas no man for perile durst' hym touche
A Sheffeld' thwytel bere he in his hose
Rounde was his face and camoyse was his nose
As pilled as an ape was his sculle
He was a market' beter atte fulle
þer nas no wight' þat durst' hond on hym legge
But' if he swore he shuld anoñ abegge
A theef he was forsoþ of corn and mele
And þat' a sleegh and vsaunt' forto stele
His name was hoten deyneȝouse Symkyn
A wif he hadde comen of nobel kyn
The personñ of þe toune her fader was
Wiþ hir he ȝaue ful mony a panne of bras
ffor þat' Symkyn shuld' in his blood allie
She was yfostred in a nonrie
ffor Symkyn wold[e] no wif as he seide
But' she were wel ynorshed and a mayde
To Sauen his Astate of ȝemanrie [leaf 55, back]
And she was proude and peert' as is a pie
A ful feire sight' was it' vpon hem twoo/
On holy daies byforn hir' wold he goo/

Wiþ his typet' bounden aboute his hede
And she come aftere in a gite of rede
And Symkyn had[de] hosen of þe same
þer durst no wi3t' clepe hur' but' dame
Was noon so hardy þat' went' by þe way
þat' wiþ hir' dorst' ones rage or play
But' if he wold be sclayn of Symkyn
Wiþ panade and wiþ knyf or boydekyn
ffor Ielous folk ben perylous euermoo
Algates þei wolde her wyues wenden soo
And eke for she was somdell smoterlich
She was as digne as water in a dich
As ful of hoker and of bismare
Hire þou3te þat' a lady shuld hir' spare
What' for her kynrede and her nortelrie
þat' she had lerned in þe Nonerie
A dou3tere had[de] þei bitwene hem twoo
Of xx^ti 3ere wiþ-outen ony moo/
Sauyng' a childe þat was of half 3ere age
In cradel it' lay and was a propre page
This wenche thik and wel ygrowe was
Wiþ Camoys nose and eyen as grey as glas
Wiþ buttokes brode and brestes round *and* hie
But' ri3t' faire was hur' heor I wil not' lye
¶ The person of þe toune for she was so faire
In purpoos was to make hir' his aire
Boþ of his Catell and of his messuage
And straunge he made it' of hur' mariage
His purpoos was to bystowe hir' hie
Into som worþi blood of Auncetrie
ffor holy churches good most' be despended/
On holy chirche blood þat' is descended/
Therfore he wold' his holy blood honoure [leaf 56]
þoo þat' he holy churche shuld' devoure
Grete soken haþ þis mellere out' of doute
With whete and malt of al þe londe aboute

And namely *þer* was a grete colege
Men clepen þe solere halle atte Cauntebrigge
Ther was her whete and eke her malt' ygrounde
And on a day it' happed in a stounde
Sik lay þe manciple on a maladie
Mon wenden wishly þat' he shuld[e] dye
ffor whiche þe Millere stale boþ mele *and* corn
An hundred tyme more þan byforn̄
ffor þer byforne he stale but' curteisly
But' nowe he was a þeef outrageously
ffor which̄ þe wardeyne chidde *and* made fare
But' þerof sette þe Millere not' a tare
He craked booste and swore it was not' soo/
þan were þere yonge scolers two
That' dwelten in þe halle of which̄ I seie
Teestif þei were and lusty forto pleye
And only for her merth̄ *and* reverye
Vpon þe wardeyn bisily þei crie
To ȝeue hem leue but' a litel stounde
To goo to melle and se her corn y-grounde
And hardely þei dorst' lay her nekke
þe Millere shuld' not' stele hem half a pekke
Of corn ne by sleight' ne by force hem reue
And at' þe last' þe wardeyn ȝaf hem leue
Iohn̄ hight' þat' oon an Aleyn hiȝt' þat oþer'
Of oon toune were þei born þat' hight[e] strother'
ffarre in þe norþe I can not' telle where
This Aleyn maketh redy al his gere
And on an hors þe sak he cast' anon
ffor̄þ goþ Aleyn þe Clerc' and also Iohn̄
Wiþ good swerde and bokeler' by her side
Iohn̄ knewe þe way hym neded no gyde
And atte Mille þe Sak a doune he laith̄ [leaf 56, back]
Alayn spake first' alhaille Symonde in faiþ
How fareþ þi fare douȝtere and þi wiff
Aleyn welcome quod Symkyn be my liff'

And Iohñ also how nowe what' do ȝe here
By god quod Iohn Symond' nede haþ no pere
Hym byhoueþ serue hym self þat' haþ no swayñ
Or ellis he is a fool as clerkes sayne
Our manciple I hope he wil be dede
Swa worchen hym ay þe wanges in his hede
And þerfore is I commen and eke Aleyñ
To Grynde our corn and carie hit' hom' ageyn
We prey ȝou spede vs hepen þat' ȝe may
It' shal be done quod Symkyn be my fay
What' wil ȝe done while þat' it' is in hande
By God riȝt' by the hoper wil I stande
Quod Iohn and see how gates þe corn goþ Inne
ȝit' sagh̄ I neuere be my fadere kynne
How þat' þe hoper waggeþ til *and* fraye
Aleyn Answerd' Iohan wiltowe swaye
þan wil I be byneþe by my croune
And se howe gate the melc falles adoun
Into þe trough̄ þat' shal be my disport'
Quod Iohñ in faath̄ I may bene of ȝour' sorte
I is as il̃ a Miller as is ȝe
This Millere smyled of her nycete
And þouȝt' al þis is doñ but' for a wile
þei wene þat' no man may hem bygyle
But' by my þrift' ȝit' shal I blere her ye
ffor al þe sleiȝt' in her philosophie
The more queynte Clerkes þat' þei make
þe more wil I stele whan I take
In stede of floure ȝit wil I ȝeue hem brenne
The grettest' clerkes ben not' þe wisest men
As whilom to þe wolf þus spake þe mare
Of alle her arte counte I nouȝt' a tare
Out' at' þe Dore he goþ ful priuely [leaf 57]
Whan þat' he seghe his tyme softely
He lokeþ vp and doune til he haþ founde
The Clerkes hors þer as he stode ybounde

Behinde þe mylle vndere a leueselle
And to þe hors he goþ hym faire and welle
He strepeþ of þe bridel riȝt anōn
And whan þe hors is louse he gynneþ to goñ
Toward þe fenne where wilde Mares renne
And forþe-wiþ þorgh̄ þikke and þorgh̄ þenne
This Mellere goþ ageyn no word he seide
But doþ his note and wiþ þise clerkes pleide
Til þat her corn was faire and welle ygrounde
And whan þe mele is sakked and ybounde
This Iohñ goþ oute and fonde her hors away
And gan to crie harowe and walowway
Our hors is lost aleyn for goddis banes/
Steppe on þi fete come of man / al at anes
Allas our wardeyn haþ our palfray lorñ
This Aleyn forgate boþ mele and corñ
Al was out of his mynde his husbondrie
What whilk way is he goñ he gan to crie
þe wif come lepinge inward at a renne
She seide alas ȝoure hors goþ to þe fenne
With̄ wilde mares as fast as he may goo
Vnþonke come on his honde þat bonde hym soo/
And he þat better shuld haue knette þe reyñ
Allas quod Iohñ Aleyn for cristes peyñ
Lay doune þi swerde and I wil myn alswaa
I is ful swift god wate as is a Raa
By goddes hert he shal not scape vs bathe
Whi ne had þou putte þe Capel in þe lathe
Ilhaile by god Aleyn þou is a fonne
Thise sely clerkes han ful fast yronne
Touard þe fenne boþen aleyñ an eke Iohñ
And whan þe Miller segh̄ þat þei were goñ
He half a busshel of her floure haþ take [leaf 57, back]
And bad his wif go knede it in a cake
And seide I trowe þe clerkes weren a-ferde
ȝit kan a Miller make a clerkes beerde

ffor al her arte 3it' lat' hem goñ her way
Lo wher þei gon 3e lat' þe children play
They gete him not' so lightly by my croun
Thise sely clerkes rennen vp and doun
With kepe. kepe. stonde. stonde. Iossa warderere
Ga qwistel 3ou I shal kepe hym here
But' shortely til it' was verrey ny3t
þei coupe not' þoughe þei did al her my3t'
þeire Capel cauche he ranne alway so fast'
Til in a dicche þei caught' him at þe last'
Wery and wete as beestis in þe reyne
Commeþ sely Iohñ and wiþ hym commeþ alcyñ
Allas quod Iohñ þe day þat' I was borñ
Nowe are we dryuen til heþing' *and* to scorñ
Our corn is stolle men wil vs foles calle
Boþ þe wardeyn and our felawes alle
And namely þe Meller' weylawaye
þus pleyneþ Iohñ as he goþ by þe waye
Toward' the Melle and baiard' in his honde
The Millere sitting' by þe fire he fonde
ffor it' was nyght' and ferþer myght' he nou3t'
But' for þe loue of god þei hym bisou3t'
Of harborowe and of ease as for her penye
þe Millere seide a3ein if þer be enye
Such̄ as it' is 3ete shal 3e haue 3oure parte
Myn hous is streite but' 3e han lerned arte
3e can by argumente make a place
A myle brode of xx^ti^ fete of space
Lat' se nowe if þis place may suffise
Or make it rowmer wiþ speche as is 3our gise
Now Symond' seide þis Iohñ be seynt' Cutberd'
Ay is þou mery . and þat is faire answerde
I haue herde seye men shal taken of two þingges [leaf 58]
Such̄ as he finț or take such̄ as he bringes
But specialy I prey þee hooste dere
Gete vs some mete and drink and make vs chere

And we wil paien trewly atte fulle
Wiþ empty hondes men may not' haukes tulle
Lo here our siluer redy forto spende
This Mellere to þe toune his douȝter sende
ffor Ale and brede and rosted hem a goos
And bonde her hors for he shuld no more go loos
And in his owne chambre he made a bedde
Wiþ shetes and wiþ chalons faire yspredde
Nouȝt' from his owne bedde .x. fete or xij.
His doughter had a bed al by hir' selue
Riȝt in þe same chambre by *and* by
It myghte be no bette and cause why
þer was no rommer herborowe in þe place
þei soupen and þei speken hem to solace
And drynken euere stronge ale atte beste
About' mydnyȝt' went' þei to reste
Wel haþ þis Mellere vernyssed his hede
fful pale he was for-dronken and not' rede
He ȝeskeþ and he spekeþ þorgh̄ þe nose
As he ware in þe quakke or on þe pose
To bedde he gooþ and wiþ hym goþ his wif
As eny Iaye he light' was and Iolif
So was her Ioly whistel wel ywette
þe Cradel at' her beddis fete is ysette
To Rokken and to ȝeue þe child' to souke
And whan þat' dronken was al in þe crouke
To bedde went' þe doughter riȝt' anōn
To bedde goþ Aleyn and also Iohn̄
þer nas no more hem neded no dwale
This Mellere haþ so wisly bebbed ale
þat' as an hors he snorteþ in his slepe
Ne of his tale behynde he toke no kepe
His wif bare him a Burdoñ a ful stronge [leaf 58, back]
Men myght' here þe routing' þens a forlonge
The wenche routeþ eek *par* companye
Aleyn þe Clerk þat' herd' þis melodye

He pouked on Iohñ and seide slepestowe
Herde pou eure selike a sang or nowe
Lo selike a conplinge is ytwix hem alle
A wilde fire on her bodies falle
Who herkened euere selike a ferly pinge
3e pei shal haue pe floure of euel endinge
This langé-ny3t per tydes-men no reste
But 3it na fors al shal be for pe beste
ffor Iohñ seide he as euere mote I prive
If pat I may 3on wenche pan wil I swyve
Some esement hap lawe shapen vs
ffor Iohñ *per*-is a lawe pat seip pus
That if a man in oon point be agreued
That in anoper he shal be releued
Our corn is stollen soply it is no nay
And we han had an euel fit to day
And syn I shal haue no amendement
Ageyn my losse I wil haue esement
By goddes saule it sal na noper be
pis Iohñ answerde Aleyn avise pe
The Mellere is a *per*ilous man he seide
And if pat he out of his sclepe abreide
He myghte don vs bop a vylenye
Aleyn answerd I counte hym not a flye
And vp he rist and by pe wenche he crepte
This wenche lay vpri3t and faste sclepte
Til he so nygh was er she my3te spie
pat it had bene to late forto crie
And shortely for to seie pei were at oñ
Nowe pleye Alayn for I wil speke of Iohñ
This Iohñ lith stille a forlonge way or two
And to hym self he makep wamenting *and* woo
Allas quod he pis is a wikke Iape [leaf 59]
Now may I seie pat I is but an ape
3it hap my felawe somwhat for his harme
He hap pe mellers dou3ter in his arme

He Auntreþ hym and haþ his nedes spedde
And I ly as a draf sak in my bedde
And whan þis Iape is tolde anoþer day
I shal be holde a daff a cokenay
I wil arise and aunter be my fath
Vnhardy is ynsely þus man sath
And vp he roos and softely he went
Vnto þe Cradel and in his armes hit hent
And bare it soft vntil his beddes fete
Sone aftere þe wif her rowting lete
And gan to wake and went her out to pisse
And come agein and gan her cradel mysse
And groped here and þere but she foond noon/
Allas quod she I had almost mysgoñ
I had almost go to þe clerkes bedde
Ey benedicite þan had I foule yspedde
And forþ she goþ til she þe cradel fonde
She gropeþ alway forþer wiþ her honde
And fond þe bed and þouȝt nouȝt but of good
By cause þat þe cradel by it stode
And nyste wher she was for it was derk
But faire and wel she crepte in to þe clerk
And liþ ful stille and wolde haue kauȝt a slepe
Wiþ-In a while þis Iohn þe clerk vp lepe
And on þis good[e] wif hee leiþ ful sore
So mery a fitte ne had she not ful ȝore
And prikeþ harde and depe as he ware madde [1 MS]
þis Ioly lif han þise two clerkes ladde
To þat þe iij. coke bygan to singe
Aleyn wexe wery. in þe daw[e]nynge
ffor he had swonken al þe longe nyȝt
And seide fare wel malyn sweete wiȝt
The day is come I may no lenger byde [leaf 59, back]
But euermo where so I go or ride
I am þine owne clerk so haue I sele
Now dere lemman quod she go fare wele

But' er þou goo. on þinge I wil þe telle
Whhan þat' þow wendest' homward' by þ^e^ melle
Right' at' þe entre of þe door be-hinde
Thow shalt' a Cake of half a busshel fynde
That' was ymaked of þine owne mele
Which̄ þat' I helpe my Sire forto stele
And good lemman god þe saue and kepe
And wiþ þat' word almost' she gan to wepe
Aleyn vprist' and þouȝt' er þat' it' dawe
I wol go crepen in by my felawe
And fonde þe cradel wiþ his honde anon̄
By god þought' he alwrong / I haue mysgon̄
Myn hede is toty of my swynk to nyght
þat' makeþ me þat' I go not' aright'
I wote wele by þe cradel I haue mysgo
Here lith̄ þe meller' and his wif also
And forþ he goþ on twenty delway
Vnto þe bedde þer as þe meller' lay
He wende haue cropen by his felawe Iohn̄
And by þe Meller' in he crept' anon̄
And kaught' him by þe nek and soft he spake
And seide þou Iohn̄ þou swyneshede awake
Of Cristes saule and here a noble game
ffor by þat' lord' þat' called is seint' Iame
As I haue þries in þis shorte nyȝt'
Swyved þe Mellers douȝter' bolt' vpriȝt
Whilst' þow hast' as a Coward' beñ agast'
Ye fals harlot' quod þe Mellere hast'
A fals traitour. fals clerk quod he
þow shalt' be dede by goddes dignyte
Who durste be so bolde to dispārage
My douȝter þat' is come of swich̄ lynage
And by þe þrote bolle he kauȝt' aleyn̄ [leaf 60]
And he him hent' dispitously ageyn̄
And on þe nose he smote hym with his fist'
Doune ranne þe blody streme vpon his brist'

And in' þe floor wiþ nose and mouþ to-broke
þei walowen as don two pigges in a poke
And vp þei goon and doune anoñ
Till þat' þe Mellere spurned at a stoñ
And downe he felle bakward' vpon his wiff
þat' wist' no þinge of þis nyce striff
ffor she was falle a slepe a litel wi3t'
Wiþ Iohñ þe clerk þat' waked had al ny3t'
And wiþ þe falle out' of her slepe she braide
Help holy crosse of bromholm she saide
In manus tuas lorde to þe I calle
Awake Symond' þe feend is on me falle
Myn hert' is broken help I ne am but' dede
þere lith̃ vpon my wombe *and* on myn hede
Helpe Symkyn for þise fals clerkes fi3t'
This Iohñ stert' vp as fast' as euere he my3t'
And grasped by þe walles to and fro
To fynden a staf and she stert' vp also
And knewe þe Eisters bet' þan did Iohñ
And by þe walle she fonde a staf anõn
And segh̃ a litel shymering' of a li3t'
ffor at' an hole in shone þe mone bri3t'
And by þat' li3t' she segh̃ hem boþ[e] two
But' sikerly she nyste who was who
But' as she seegh a white þinge in her eye
And whan she gan þis white þing' aspie
She wende þe Clerk had wered a volipere
And wiþ þe staf' she drough̃ ay ner and nere
And wende han hitte þis Aleyn atte fulle
And smote þe Mylere on þe pyled skulle
þat' doun he goth *and* cried harowe I dye
Thise Clerkes bette hym wel and lete hym lye
And Greieþ hem and toke her hors anoñ [leaf 60, back]
And eke her/ mele and on her way þei gõn
And at' the Melle 3it' þei toke her Cake
Of half a busshel floure ful wel ybake

Thus is þe proude Mellere wel ybete
And hath ylost' þe grynding' of þe whete
And paide for þe soper eu*e*ry dell'
Of aleyn and of Iohñ þat' bette hy*m* well'
His wiff is swyued and his douȝtere als
Lo such it' is a Miller' to be fals
And þerfor þis prouerbe is seide ful sothē
Hym ther not' wene wele þat' euel dothē
A Gilour shal hym self begiled be
And god þat' sitteþ hegh̄ in mageste
Saue al þe company grete *and* smale
Thus haue I quytte þe Meller' in my tale

¶ **Thus Endeth þe Reues Tale**

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ þe Cokes tale

The Coke of londoñ while þe Reue spak ¶ The Prologe
ffor Ioye him þouȝt' he clawed hym on þe bak'
Ha. ha. quod he for cristes passioñ
This Millere haþ a sharpe conclusioñ
Vpon his argument' of harbigage
Wel seide Salomon in his langage
Ne bringe not' euery man into þine hous
ffor herbowringe by nyght' is perilous
Wel ouȝt' a man avised forto be
Whoom þat' he brouȝt' into his pryvete
I prey to god so ȝeue me sorowe and care
If euer siþen I hight' hogge of ware
Herd I Meller better ysette a werke
He had a Iape of malice in þe derke
And þerfor if ȝe vouche sauf to here
But' god forbede þat' we stynt' heere
A tale of me þat' am a poor man
I wil ȝou telle as wel as euer I can
A litel Iape þat' felle in *our* Cite [leaf 61]
Our hooste answerd' *and* seide I *graunte* it' þe
Now telle on Rogg*er* and loke þat' it' be good
ffor mony a paast hast' þou laten blood
And mony a Iak of Douer hast' þou sold'
þat' haþ be twies hoote and twies cold'
Of mony a pilgryme hast' þou *cristes* curs
ffor of þi Persely ȝit' fare þei þe wors
þat' þei han eten wiþ þi stobel goos
ffor in þi shoppe is mony a flee loos
Now telle on gentil Rogger by þi name
But' ȝit' I prei þe be not' wroþ for game
A man may say ful soþ in game *and* play
þow seist ful soþ quod Rogg*er* be my fay

But soþ play quade play as þe flemmyng saiþ
And *per*fore henry balyf by þi feiþ
Be þow not wroþ er we departen here
þoughe þat my tale be of an ostylere
But naþeles I wil not tellen it ȝit
But er we part I-wis þou shalt be quyt
And þerwiþ al [he] lough and made chere
And saide his tale as ȝe shal after here
Þus endeþ þe prologe of þe cokes tale

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ þe Cokes tale ¶ The Cokes Tale.

A Prentis whilom dwelled in our Cite
And of a craft of vitalers was he
Gailard he was as gold-fynch in þe shawe
Broun as þe bery. a propre short felawe
Wiþ lockes blake ykempt ful fetisly
Daunce he couþe so wel and Iolily
þat he was cleped Perkyn reveilour
He was as ful of loue and paramour
As is þe hyve ful of hony swete
Wel was þe wenche wiþ him myȝt mete
And euery Bridale wold he sing and hoppe
He loued bette þe Tauern þan þe shoppe
ffor whan þer eny ridynge was in chepe [leaf 61, back]
Out of þe Shoppe þidere wold he lepe
Til þat he had al þe siȝt yseyn
And daunsed wel wold he not come ageyn
And gader hym a mayne of his sort
To hoppe and synge and make such disport
And þer þei setten steuen forto mete
To pleyn at þe dis in such a strete
ffor in þe toune nas þer no prentys
þat fairrer couþe cast a peire of dys
þan perkyn couþe *and* þerto he was free
Of his dispence in place of pryvete
That fonde his maister wel in his chaffare
ffor oft tymes he fonde his boxe ful bare
ffor sikerly a prentise Reveilour
þat haunteþ dis ryot and paramour
His maister shulde in his shop abye
Al haue he not part of þe mynstralcie
ffor þeft and riot þei ben conuertible
Al conne he pley on gitern or rubible

Reuel and trouþe as in a lough̄ degre
þei ben ful wroþ alday as men may see
þis Ioly Prentis wiþ his maister bode
Til he were nygh̄ out' of his prentisehode
Al were he snybbed erly or late
And somtyme ladde wiþ revel to Newgate
But' atte last' his maister hym byþou3te
Vpon a day whan he his paper sou3te
Of a prouerd' þat' seiþ þis same word'
Wel bette is roten appel out' of horde
þan þat' it rote al þe remen*aun*te
So fareþ it' by a ryotous *ser*u*aun*te
It is moche lasse harme to lat' hy*m* passe
þan he sheed alle þe' seru*aun*tes in þe place
Therfor his maister 3aue hy*m* a quyt*aun*ce
And bad hym goo wiþ sorowe and mesch*aun*ce
And þus þis prentise had his leue.
Now lat' him riot' al þe ny3t' or leue
And for þer is no þeef wiþ-out' a louke
þat' helpeþ hym to waasten or to souke
Of þat' he bribe can or borowe may
Anon he sent' his bedde *and* his aray
Vnto a conper of his owne sort'
þat' loued dys [and] reuel and disport'
And had a wif þat' helde for counten*aun*ce
A Shop and swyued for her susten*aun*ce

[*No break in the MS.*]

APPENDIX TO GROUP A.

[THE SPURIOUS TALE OF GAMELYN.]

[*Spurious Link.*]

But here-of I wil pas as nowe
And of yonge Gamelyn I wil telle 3ou. 2

[*Tale.*]

¶ Þe tale of yonge Gamelyne

Liþes *and* listneþ and harkneþ a-ri3t
And 3e shul here of a doughty kny3t
Sir Iohn of boundes was his name
He coude of Norture and of mochel game 4
Thre sones þe knyght had *and* wiþ his body he wan
The eldest was a moche schrewe and sone bygan
His breþer loued wel her fader *and* of him were agast
Þe eldest deserued his faders curs *and* had it atte last 8
Þe good knyght his fadere lyued so yore
Þat deþ was commen to hym . and handled hym ful sore
Þe Good knyght cared sore . sik þer he lay
How his children shuld lyuen after his day 12
He had ben wide where . but non husbonde he was
Al þe londe þat he had it was purchas/
ffayn he wold it were dressed among hem alle
That eche of hem had his parte as it my3t falle 16
Þoo sente he in to contrey after wise kny3tes
To helpen delen his londes ; *and* dressen hem to ri3tes
He sent hem word by letters ; þei shul hie blyve
Yf þei wolk speke wiþ hym ; whilst he was a lyve 20

Whan þe kny3tes harden sik þat' he lay
Had þei no rest' neiþer' : ny3t' ne day
Til þei come to hym : þer he lay stille
On his deþes bedde/ to abide goddys wille
Than seide þe good knyght' seke þer he lay (leaf 62, back)
Lordes I 3ou warne for soþ wiþ-out' nay
I may no lenger lyuen here in þis stounde
ffor þorgh goddis wille : deþ droueþ me to grounde
þer nas noon of hem alle : þat' herd hym ari3t'
þat' þei ne had routh : of þat' ilke kny3t'
And seide sir' for goddes loue : dismay 3ou nou3t'
God may doñ boote of bale : þat is now ywrou3t'
þan speke þe good kny3t' : sik' þer he lay
Boote of bale god may sende : I wote it' is no nay
But' I bisecche 3ou kny3tes for þe loue of me
Goþ and dresseþ my londes : among' my sones þre
And for þe loue of god deleþ not' amys
And forgeteþ not' Gamelyne : my 3ong' sonne þat is/
Takeþ hede to þat' oon as wel as to þat opere
Seelde 3e seen eny hier . helpen his brõpere
þoo lete þei þe knyght' lyen : þat' was not' in hele
And wenten into counsell his londes forto dele
Forto delen hem alle to oñ : þat' was her þou3t'
And for Gamelyñ was 3ongest' he shuld haue nou3t'
All þe londe þat' þer was : þei dalten it' in two
And lete Gamelyne þe 3onge : without' londe goo
And eche of hem seide to other ful loude
His breþeren my3t' 3eue him londe whan he good cowde
And whan þei had deled þe londe at' her wille
þei commen to þe knyght' . þer he lay stille
And tolde him anoon : how þei had wrou3t'
And þe knyght' þere he laye liked it' ri3t nou3t'
¶ Than seide þe kny3t' : be seint' Martyne
For al þat' 3e han done : 3it is the londe myne
ffor goddis loue neighbours . stondeþ alle stille
And I wil delen my londe : after myn owne wille

Iohñ myne eldest sone: shal haue plowes fyve
þat was my faders heritage: whan he was alyve
And my myddelest sone .v. plowes of londe
þat I halpe forto gete *with* my riȝt honde
And al myñ oþ*er*e p*ur*chace of londes *and* ledes [leaf 63]
þat I biqueþe Gamelyñ. and al my good stedes
And I biseche ȝou good men þat lawe co*n*ne of londe
For Gamelynes loue: þat my quest stonde
Thus dalt þe knyȝt. his londe by his day
Riȝt on his deþ bed sik þer he lay
And sone afterward he lay stoon stille
And deide whan tyme come: as it was cr*is*tes wille
Anoon as he was dede and vnder gras graue
Sone þ^e^ elder broþer: giled þe ȝonge knaue
He toke into his honde his londe *and* his lede
And Gamelyne him seluen to cloþe *and* to fede
He cloþed him and fedde him/ eueⁿ *and* eke wrothe
And lete his londes forfare: and his houses boþe
His Parkes and his wodes: and did no þing welle
And siþen he it abouȝt on his owne felle
So longe was Gamelyne in his broþers halle
ffor þe strengest of good wiⁿ þei douted hy*m* alle
þer was noon þer-Inne neiþer ȝonge ne olde
þat wold wrethe Gamelyñ. were he neu*er* so bolde
Gamelyne stood on a day: in his broþeres ȝerde
And bygáune wiþ his hond/ to handel his berde
He þouȝt on his landes þat lay vnsowe
And his fare okes þat doune were ydrawe
His Parkes were broken/ and his deer reued
Of alle his good stedes/ noon was hy*m* byleued
His hous were vnhilled/ *and* ful eueⁿ diȝt
Tho þouȝt Gamelyne/ it went not ariȝt
¶ Afterward come his broþer walking þare
And seide to Gamelyñ. is our mete ȝare
Tho wrathed him Gamelyñ/ *and* swore by goddys boke
þow shalt go bake þi self/ I wil not be þi coke

What broþer Gamelyne howe answerst þou nowe
þou spekest neuere suche a word as þou dost nowe
By feiþe seide Gamelyñ: now me þenkeþ nede
Of al þe harmes þat I haue: I toke neuere 3it hede. 96
My parkes bene broken: *and* my dere reued [leaf 63, back]
Of myn armes ne my stedes: nou3t is byleued
Alle þat my fader me byquaþe: al goþ to shame
And þerfor haue þou goddes curs: broþere be þi name 100
þan spake his broþer þat rape was and rees
Stond stille Gadlynge and holde þi pees
Thou shalt be fayn to haue: þi mete *and* þi wede
What spekest þow gadeling. of londe or of lede 104
Than seide Gamelyñ: þe child so 3ing
Cristes curs mote he haue: þat me clepeth Gadelinge
I am no wors Gadeling: ne no wors wi3t
But born of a lady and gete of a kny3t 108
Ne dorst he not to Gamelyñ neuere a foot goo
But cleped to hym his men: and seide to hem þoo/
Goþ and beteþ þis boye and reueþ hym his witte
And lat him lerne anoþer tyme: to answer me bette 112
Than seide þe Child 3onge Gamelyñ
Cristes curs mote þou haue: broþer art þou myñ
And if I shal algates be beten anon
Cristes curs mote þou haue: but þou be þat oñ 116
And anon his broþer in þat grete hete
Made his men to fette staues Gamelyn to bete
Whan euery of hem had a staf ynommen
Gamelyn was werre. whan he segh hem commen 120
Whan Gamelyne segh hem commen. he loked ouer alle
And was ware of a pestel: stode vnder þe walle
Gamelyn was li3t and þider gan he lepe
And droof alle his broþeres men ri3t sone on an hepe 124
And loked as a wilde lyon. and leide on good wone
And whan his broþer segh þat: he bygan ne to goñ
He fley vp into a loft: and shette þe door fast
þus Gamelyn wiþ his pestel. made hem al a-gast 128

Some for Gamelyns loue. *and* some for eye
Alle þei droughen hem to halues whan he gan to pleye
¶ What' nowe seide Gamelyñ ? euel mote 3e the
Wil 3e bygynne contecte ? and so sone flee
Gamelyñ sou3t' his bro*þer* ? whider' he was flowe [leaf 64]
And seghe where he loked out' a wyndowe
Bro*þer*e seide Gamelyñ. come a litel nere
And I wil teche þe a play at þe bokelere
His bro*þer*e him ansuerde. *and* seide by seint' Richere
þe while þat' pestel is in þine honde. I wil come no nere
Bro*þer* I wil make þi pees ? I swer by *cristes* oore
Cast' away þe pestel. and wreþe þe no more
I most' nede seide Gamelyn wreþ me at' onys
ffor þou wold make þi men. to breke my bonys
Ne had I hadde mayñ *and* my3t' in myn armes
To han hem fro me. þei wold haue doñ me harmes
Gamelyn seide his bro*þer* be þou not' wrothꝫ
Forto sene þe han harme. me were ri3t' lothꝫ
I ne did it' not' bro*þer* but' for a fondinge
ffor to loken wher þou art' stronge and art' so 3enge
Come a doune þan to me and graunt' me my bone
Of oon þing' I wil þe axe and we shal sau3t' sone
Doune þan come his bro*þer* þat' fikel was *and* felle
And was swiþ sore a-feerd of þe pestelle
He seide bro*þer* Gamelyn axe me þi bone
And loke þou me blame but' I it' gra*u*nte sone
þan seide Gamelyn bro*þer* I-wys
And we shul be at' oñ. þou most gra*u*nte me this
Alt þat' my fader me by-quaþ. whilst' he was alyue
þow most' do me it' haue. if we shul not' strive
þat' shalt' þou haue Gamelyn I swere bi *cristes* oore.
Al þat' þi fadere þe by-quaþe. þough þou wold' haue more
Thy londe þat' litꝫ ley. wel it' shal be sawe
And þine houses reised vp þat' bene leide ful lawe
Thus seide þe knyght. to gamelyn wiþ mouþe
And þou3t on falsnes as he wel couþe

þe kny3t' þou3t' on tresoñ. and gamelyn anoñ
And wente *and* kissed his bro*þer* *and* whan þei were at oñ
Alas yonge Gamelyn no þiñg' he ne wist
Wiþ suchñ fals tresoñ. his bro*þer* him kist' 168
Ly*þ*eneth̃ and listenc*þ* and holde*þ* *3our* tonge [leaf 64, back]
And 3e shul here talking' of Gamelyn þe 3onge
¶ Ther was þere bisiden cride a wrastelinge
And þerfore þer was sette a ramme *and* a ringe 172
And Gamelyn was in wille to wende *þer*to/
fforto preuen his my3t' what' he coude doo
Bro*þ*ere seide Gamelyn by seint' Richere
þow most' lene me to ny3t' a litel coursere 176
That' is fresshe fro þe spore on for to ride
I most' on an erand' a litel here beside
By god seide his bro*þ*er/ of stedes in my stalle
Goo and chese þe the best' spare noñ of he*m* alle 180
Of stedes and of coursers þat' stoden he*m* byside
And telle me good bro*þ*er whider þou wilt ride
Here beside bro*þ*er is cried a wrastelinge
And þerfore shal be sette a ram *and* a ringe 184
Moche worchip it were bro*þ*ere to vs alle
Might' I þe ram *and* þe ring' bring' home to þis halle
A stede ther was sadeled smertly an skete
Gamelyn did a peire spores fast' on his fete 188
He sette his foote in þe stirop þe stede he bistrode
And towardes þe wrasteling' þe yong' childe rode
¶ Whan Gemelyn þe 3onge was riden out' atte gate
þe fals kny3t' his bro*þ*er loked it' after' þate 192
And bysou3t' Ihesu *crist'* þat' is heuene kinge
He mygh*t*' breke his necke in þe wrestelinge
As sone as Gamelyn come *þer* þe place was
He light' doune of his stede *and* stood on þe gras 196
And þer he herde a frankeleyn weiloway singe
And by-gonne bitterly his hondes for to wringe
Good man seide Gamelyn: whi mast þou þis fare
Is þer no man þat' may. 3ou helpen out' of care 200

Allas seide þis frankeleyn þat' euere was I bore
ffor twey stalworþ sones ! I wene þat' I haue lore
A champion is in þe place. þat' haþ wrouȝt' me sorowe
ffor he haþ sclayn my two sones. but' ȝif god hem borowe
I wil ȝeue x. li. by Ihesu crist *and* more [leaf 65]
Wiþ þe nones I fonde a man wold' handel hym sore
Good man seide Gamelyn wilt' þou wele doñ
Holde my hors þe whiles my man ! drowe of my shoñ
And helpe my man to kepe/ my cloþes *and* my stede
And I wil to place goñ. to loke if I may spede
By god seide þe ffrankeleyn it' shal be doñ
I wil my self be þi man to drowe of þi shoñ
And wende þou into place Ihesu crist þe spede
And drede not' of þi cloþes. ne of þi good stede
Bare-foot' and vngirt'. Gamelyn Inne came
Alle þat' were in þe place. hede of him name
Howe he durst' auenture him to doñ his myȝt'
þat' was so doghty a champiõn in wrasteling' *and* in fiȝt
Vp stert' þe Champion rapely anõn
And toward' yong' Gamelyn byganne to gõn
And seide who is þi fadere *and* who is þi sire
ffor sothe þou art' a grete fool þat' thou come hire
Gamelyn answerd' þe Champioñ þo
Thowe knewe wel my fadere while he myȝt goo
þe whiles he was alyue by seynt' Martyn
Sir' Iohñ of Boundes was his name *and* I am Gamelyñ
¶ ffelawe seide þe Champiõn so mote I þrive
I knewe wel þi fadere þe whiles he was alyue
And þi silf Gamelyn I wil þat' þou it here
While þou were a ȝong' boy. a moch̃ shrewe þou were
Than seide Gamelyn and swore by cristes ore
Now I am older wexe þou shalt' finde me a more
By god seide þe Champion welcome mote þou be
Come þow onys in my honde. þou shalt' neuere the
It was wel wiþ-in þe nyȝt' *and* þe mone shone
Whan Gamelyn and þe Champioñ to-gider' gon gone

The Champion cast' turnes to Gamelyñ þat was prest'
. And Gamelyn stode and bad hym done his best'
Than seide Gamelyn to þe Champioun
þowe art' fast' aboute to bringe me adoun
Now I haue proued mony turnes of þine [leaf 65, back]
Thow most' he seide oon or ij. of myne
Gamelyn to þe Champioñ 3ede smertely anōn
Of alle þe turnes þat' he couþe he shewed hym but oñ
And cast' him on þe lift' side. þat þre ribbes to-brake
And þerto his owne arme þat' 3af a grete crake
Than seide Gamelyn smertly anōn
Shal it' bihold' for a cast' or ellis for nōn
By god seide þe Champion whedere it' bee
He þat' commeþ ones in þi honde shal he neuere the
¶ Than seide þe frankeley þat had þe sones þere
Blessed be þou Gamelyn þat' euere þou bore were
The ffrankleyn seide to þe Champioñ on hym stode hym
This is 3onge Gamelyñ þat' tau3t/ þe þis pleye [noñ eye
A3ein answerd' þe Champioñ. þat' likeþ no þing' wel
He is alþer maister and his pley is ri3t' fe11
Siþen y wrasteled first' it' is goon 3ore
But' I was neuer' in my lif handeled so sore.
Gamelyn stode in þe place anon wiþ-out' serk'
And seide 3if þer be moo lat' hem come to werk'
The Champion þat' pyned hym to worch sore
It' semeþ by his countenaunce þat' he wil no more
Gamelyin in þe place stood stille as stone
ffor to abide wrastelinge but' þer come nonē
þer was noon wiþ gamelyn þat wold wrastel more
ffor he handeled the Champioñ so wonderly sore
Two gentile men þat 3emed þe place
Come to Gamelyin god 3eue hym good grace
And seide to hym do on · þi hosen and þi shoone
ffor soþ at' þis tyme þis fare is done
And þan seide Gamelyn so mot' I wel fare
I haue not' 3ete haluendele sold my ware

þoo seide þe Champioñ: so broke I my swere
He is a fool þat' þerof bieþ þou selleþ it' so dere
Tho saide þe ffrankeleyñ þat' was in moch̃ care
ffelawe he saide whi lackest' þou þis ware
By sante Iame of Gales þat' mony man haþ souȝt [leaf 66]
ȝit' is it' to good chepe þat' þow hast' bouȝt'
Thoo þat' wardeynes were of þat' wrasteling'
Come and brouȝt' Gamelyn þe Ramme *and* þe rynge
[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
And Gamelyn biþouȝt' him it was a faire þinge
And went' wiþ moche Ioye home in þe mornynge
¶ His broþer see wher he came: wiþ þe grete route
And bad shitt' þe gate and hold' hym wiþ oute
The Porter of his lord' was soor a gaast'
And stert' anoon to þe gate and lokked it' fast'
¶ Now lithenes *and* listneþ boþ ȝonge *and* olde
And ȝe shul here gamen of Gamelyn þe bolde
Gamelyn come to þe gate for to haue come Inne
And it' was shett' fast' wiþ a strong' pynne
Þan seide Gamelyn Porter vndo þe ȝate
ffor good mennys sones stonden þer-ate
Þan answerd' þe porter and swore by goddys berde
Þow ne shalt' Gamelyñ come into þis ȝerde
Thow lixt' seide Gamelyñ/ so broke I my chyne
He smote þe wikett' wiþ his foote and broke awaie þ^e pynne
The Porter seie þoo/ it myȝt no better be
He sette foote on erth̃ and bygan to flee
By my feye seide Gamelyn þat' travaile is ylore
ffor I am of fote as light' as þou. if þou haddest' it swore
Gamelyn ouertoke þe porter'. and his tene wrake
And girt' him in þe nek' þat' þe boon to-brake
And toke hym by þat' oon arme/ and threwe hym in a welle
vij^c. fadme it' was depe/ as I haue herd' telle
¶ Whan Gamelyn þe yonge þus had plaied his playe
Alle þat' in þe yerde were. drowen hem awaye

þei dredden him ful sore for werk þat' he wrouȝt'
And for þe faire company þat' he þider brouȝt'
Gamelyn ȝede to þe gate/ and leté it' vp wide
He lete Inne all'. þat' goñ wold' or ride
And seide ȝe be welcome wiþ out' eny greue
ffor we wil be maisters here and axe no man leue
ȝusterday I left'/ seide ȝonge Gamelyñ [leaf 66, back]
In my broþers seler'/ v. tonne of wyñ
I wil not' þis company p*ar*tyn a-twynne
And ȝe wil done after me/ while sope is þ*er*-Inne
And if my broþer gruche or make foule chere
Eiþer for spence of mete and drink'/ þ*at* we spende here
I am oure Cato*ur* and here our alþer purs
He shal haue for his grucching' seint' Maries curs
My broþer is a Nigon! I swere be c*ri*stes oore
And we wil spende largely/ þat' he haþ spared yore
And who þat' make grucchinge þat' we here dwelle
He shal to þe porter in to þe drowe-welle
.Vij. dayes and vij. ny3tes Gamelyn helde his feest'
Wiþ moche solace/ was þer noon cheest'
In a litel torret' his broþer lay steke
And see hem waast' his good and dorst' no word' speke
Erly on a mornynge on þe viij. day
The Gestes come to Gamelyn and wolde goñ her way
Lordes seide Gamelyn wil ȝe so hie
Al þe wyne is not' ȝit' dronke! so brouke I myñ ye
Gamelyn in his hert'/ was ful woo
Whan his gestes toke her leue. fro hym forto go
He wolde þei had dwelled lenger. *and* þei seide nay
But' bytaught' Gamelyn. god and good day
Thus made Gamelyn his feest'. *and* brouȝt' wel to ende
And aftere his gestes. toke leue to wende
¶ Lythen and listen and holde ȝour' tunge
And ȝe shal here Game of Gamelyn þe ȝonge
Harkeneth lordingges and listeneþ ariȝt
Whan alle gestis were goon how gamelyn was diȝt'

Alle þe while þat Gamelyn heeld his Mangerye
His broþere þouȝt on hym be wroke/ *with* his trecherye
Whan Gamylyns gestes were riden and goñ
Gamelyn stood anon allone/ frend had he noñ
Tho aftere felle sone/ *with*-in a litel stounde
Gamelyn was taken/ and ful hard ybounde
ffor þ Come þe fals knyngh t: out of þe Solere [leaf 67]
To Gamelyn his broþer/ he ȝede ful nere
And saide to Gamelyn/ who made þe so bold
For to stroien þe stoor of myn household
Broþer seide Gamelyn wreþ þe riȝt nought
ffor it is many day gon siþ it was bouȝt
ffor broþer þou hast had by seint Richere
Of xv. plowes of londe. þis xvj. ȝere
And of alle þe beestes þou hast forþ bredde
That my fader me byquaþ on his deþes bedde
Of al þis xvj. ȝere I ȝeue þe þe prowe
ffor þe mete and þe drink þat we han spended nowe
Than seide þe fals knyȝt. euel mote he þee
Herken broþere Gamelyn what I wil ȝeue þe
ffor of my body broþer: here geten haue I none
I wil make þe myn heire I s ere by seint Ioñn
P*ar*fay seide Gamelyn: *and* if it so be
And þou thenk as þou seist: god ȝeeld it þe
No þinge wist Gamelyn of his broþer gile
Therfore he hym bygiled in a litel while
Gamelyn seide. oon þing I þe telle
þoo þou þrewe my porter in þe drowe-welle
I swore in þat wreþe and in þat grete moote
þat þou shuldest be bounde boþe honde *and* fote
[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
This most be fulfilled: my men to dote
ffor to holden myn avowe as I þe bihote
¶ Broþer seide Gamelyn as mote I þee
þou shalt not be forswore for þe loue of me

Tho maden þei Gamelyn to sitte and not' stonde
To þei had hym bounde boþ fote and honde
þe fals knyght' his broþer'. of Gamelyn was a-gast'
And sent' efter fetters to fetter' hym fast'
His broþer made lesingges on him *þer* he stode
And tolde hem þat' *com*men Inne þat Gamelyn was wode
Gamelyn stode to a post'. bounden in þe halle
Þoo þat' *com*men Inne. loked on hym alle
Euer stode Gamelyn euen vp-riȝt' [leaf 67, back]
But' mete and drink had ne noun. neiþer day ne nyȝt'
Than seide Gamelyn/ brother be myn hals
Nowe haue I aspied þou art' a party fals
Had I wist' þe Tresoñ þat' hast' yfounde
I wold haue ȝeue strokes or I had be bounde
Gamelyn stode bounde stille as eny stone
Tho daies and two nyȝtes mete had he none
Than seide Gamelyn: þat' stood ybound' stronge
Adam Spencer' me þenkeþ I fast' to longe
Adam Spencere now I biseche þe
ffor þe moche loue my fadere loued þe
If þou may come to þe keys/ lese me out' of bonde
And I wil part' wiþ þe of my free londe
Than seide Adam þat' was þe spencere
I haue serued þi broþer þis xvj ȝere
ȝif I lete þe gone out' of his boure
He wold saye afterwardes I were a tratour
Adam seide Gamelyn so brouke I myn hals
Thow shalt' finde þi broþer at' þe last' fals
Therfore broþer Adam lose me out' of boñdes
And I will parte wiþ þe of my free londes
Vp suchñ forward' seide Adam ywis
I wil do þerto al þat' in me is
Adam seide Gamelyn as mote I þe
I wil holde þe Conaunte and þou wil me [fre]
Anoon as Adams lord' to bed was goñ
Adam toke þe kayes and lete Gamelyn out' anoñ

He vnlocked Gamelyn boþ hondes *and* fete
In hope of auaunceme*n*t þat he hym byhete
Than seide Gamelyn þonked be goddis sonde
Nowe I am lose boþ fote and honde
Had I nowe eten and dronken ariȝt
þer is noon in þis hous shuld bynde me þis nyȝt
Adam toke Gamelyn as stille as eny stone
And ladde him into þe spence raply anone
And sette him to sopere riȝt in a p*ri*vey styde [leaf 68]
He bad hym do gladly and so he dide
Anoon as Gamelyn had eten wel *and* fyne
And þerto y-dronken wel of þe rede wyne
Adam seide Gamelyn what is nowe þi rede
Or I go to my broþer and Gerd of his his hede
Gamelyn seide Adam it shal not be so
I can teche þe a rede þat is worþ þe twoo/
I wote wel forsoþ þat þis is no nay/
We shul haue a Mangerye riȝt on sonday
Abbotes and Priours mony here shul be
And oþer men of holy chirch as I telle þe
þou shal stonde vp by þe post as þou were bo*u*nde fast
And I shal leue hem vnloke þat away þou may he*m* cast
Whan þat þei han eten and wasshen her handes
þow shalt biseche hem alle to bringe þe out of bondes
And if þei willen borowe þe þat were good game
þan were þou out of p*ri*son and [I] out of blame
And if ecche of hem saye to vs nay
I shal do anoþer I swere by þis day
þow shalt haue a good staf *and* I wil haue anoþ*er*e
And cristes curs haf þat on þat failleþ þ*at* oþ*er*e
3e for god seide Gamelyn I say it for me
If I faille on my side evel mot I þee
If we shul algate assoille hem of her synne
Warne me brother/ Adam whan we shul bygynne
Gamelyn seid Adam by seint charite
I wil warne þe biforn whan it shal be

Whan I winke on þe. loke forto gone
And caste away þi fetters and come to me anoñ
Adam seide Gamelyn blessed be þi bonys
þat' is a good counseile ȝeuen for þe nonys
ȝif þei warne me þe to bring' out' of bondes
I wil sette good strokes riȝt' on here lendes
Whan þe Sonday was commen and folk to þe feest
ffaire þei were welcomed. boþ leest' *and* mest'
And euer as þei at' þe haldore come Inne [leaf 68, back]
They casten her yen/ on ȝonge Gamelyñ
The fals knyȝt' his broþer ful of trecherye
Al þe gettes þat' þer were at' þe mangerye
Of Gamelyn his broþer he tolde hem wiþ mouþe
Al þe harme *and* þe shame þat' he telle couþe
Whan þei were yserued of messes ij. or thre
þan seide Gamelyn howe serue ȝe me
It' is not' wel serued by god þat' aƚƚ made
þat' I sitte fastinge and oþer men make glade
The fals knyȝt' his broþer þer as he stode
Told to aƚƚ þe gestes þat' Gamelyn was wode
And Gamelyn stode stille and answerd' nouȝt'
But' Adames wordes he helde in his þouȝt'
Thoo Gamelyn gan speke doolfully wiþ-aƚƚ
To þe grete lordes þat' seten in þe haƚƚ
¶ Lordes he seide for cristes passioñ
Helpe to bringe Gamelyn out' of *prisoñ*
þan seide an Abbot' sorowe on his cheke
He shal haue *cristes* curs and seint' Maries eke
That' þe out' of prison beggeþ or borowe
And euer worþ him wel þat' doþ þe moche sorowe
After þat' Abbot' þan speke anoþ*ere*
I wold' þine hede were of þoug̃ þ*ou* were my broþ*ere*
Aƚƚ þat' þe borowe foule mot' hem falle
Thus þei seiden alle þat' were in þe halle
¶ Than seide a Priour/ euel mote he preue
It' is grete sorowe and care boy þ*at* þou art alyue

Ow seide Gamelyn so brouke I my bone
Now haue I spied þat' frendes haue I noñ
Cursed mote he worþ. boþ flessh̄ and blood'
þat' euer doþ Priour or Abbot' eny good'
Adam þe Spencere toke vp þe cloth̄
And loked on Gamelyn and segh̄ þat' he was wroþe
Adam on the Pantry litel he þouȝt'
And two good staues to þe halle door he brouȝt'
Adam loked on Gamelyn and he was warre anoñ [leaf 69]
And cast' away þe fetters *and* bygan to goñ
Whan he come to Adam he toke *þat'* on staf
And bygan to worch̄ and good strokes ȝaf
Gamelyn come into þe halle and þe Spencer' boþe
And loked hem aboute as þei hadden be wroþe
Gamelyn spreyneþ holy watere wiþ an oken spire
That' some þat' stode vpriȝt' felle in þe fire
þer was no lewe man þat' in þe halle stode
þat' wolde do Gamelyn eny þing' but' *good'*
But' stoden bisides and lete hem boþ wirch̄
ffor þei had no rewþe of men of holy chirch̄
Abbot' or Priour monk or chanoun
That' Gamelyn ouertoke. anoñ þei ȝeden doun
Ther was noon' of alle *þat' with* his staf mette
þat' he ne made hem ouer-þrowe to quyte hem his dette
Gamelyn seide Adam for seint' charite
Pay good lyuere for þe loue of me
And I wil kepe þe door so euere here I masse
Er þei bene assoilled þer shal non passe
Doute þe not' seide Gamelyn whil we ben *in* fere
Kepe þowe wel þe door and I wil wirche here
Bystere þe good adam and lete non fle
And we shul telle largely how mony *þat þer* be
Gamelyn seide Adam do hem but' goode
þei bene men of holy church̄ drowe of hem no blode
Saue wel þe crownes. and do hem no harmes
But' breke boþ her logges/ and siþen her armes

Thus Gamelyn and Adam wrouȝt' ryȝt' fast'
And pleide wiþ þe monkes and made hem agast'
þidere þei come ridinge Ioly wiþ swaynes
And home aȝein þei were ladde in cartes *and* waynes
Tho þei hadden al ydo. þan seide a grey frere
Allas Sir' abbot' what' did we nowe here
Whan þat' we commen hidere it' was a cold' rede
Vs had be bet' haue be at' home. *with* water *and* brede
While Gamelyñ made orders of monke *and* frere [leaf 69, back]
Euere stood his broþer and made foule chere
Gamelyn vp wiþ his staf þat' he wel knewe
And girt' hym in þe nek þat' he ouer thrwe
A litel aboue þe Girdel þe Rigge-boon he brast
And sette him in þe fetters þer he sat' arst'
Sitte þer broþer seide Gamelyñ
fforto colen þi body/ as I did myñ
As swiþ as þei had wroken hem on her fooñ
þei asked water and wasshen anoñ
What' some for her loue and some for her Awe
Aſt þe seruaũntes serued hem on þe best' lawe
þe Sherreue was þennes but .v. myle
And aſt was tolde him in a lytel while
Howe Gamelyn and Adam had ydo a sorye rees
Bounden and wounded men aȝeinst þe kingges pees/
Tho bygan sone strif' for to wake
And þe shereff about' Gamelyn forto take
¶ Now liþen and listen so god ȝeue ȝou good fyne
And ye shul here good game of yonge Gamelyne
xxiijj'' ȝonge men þat' helde hem ful bold'
Come to þe shiref and seide þat' þei wold'
Gamelyn and Adam fette by her fay
The Sheref ȝaue hem leue soþ for to say
Thei hiden fast' wold þei not' lynne
To þei come to þe gate þere Gamelyn was Inne
Thei knocked on þe gate þe porter was nyȝe
And loked out' att' an hool as man þat' was sclȝe

þe Porter had bihold hem a litel while
He loued wel Gamelyn and was dradde of gyle
And lete þe wiket' stonde ful stille
And asked hem wiþ out' what' was her wille
ffor all' þe grete company/ speke but oōn
Vndo þe gate porter and lat' vs in goñ
þan seide þe Porter so brouke I my chyn
3e shul saie 3oure erand er 3e come Inne
Sey to Gamelyn and Adam/ if þeire wil be [leaf 70]
We wil speke wiþ hem two wordes or þre
ffelawe seide þe Porter stonde þer stille
And I wil wende to Gamelyn to wete his wille
Inne went' þe porter to Gamelyn anōñ
And saide sir' I warne 3ou here ben commen 3our' fooñ
The Shireues men bene at' þe gate
fforto take 3ou boþ 3e shul not' scape
Porter seide Gamelyn so mote I þe
I wil alowe þi wordes whan I my tyme se
Go ageyn to þe gate and dwelle wiþ hem a while
And þou shalt' se ri3t' sone porter a gile
Adam seide gamelyn hast' þe to goñ
We han foo-men mony and frendes neuere oñ
It' bene þe shireues men þat' hider bene commen
þei ben swore to-gidere þat' we shal be nomen
Gamelyn seide Adam hye þe ri3t' blyve
And if I faile þe þis day euel mot' I þrive
And we shul so welcome þe shyreues men
þat' some of hem shal make her beddes in þe fenne
At' a postern gate Gamelyn out' went'
And a good Cartstaf in his hondes hent'
Adam hent' sone anoþer grete staff
ffor to helpen Gamelyne and good strokes 3af
Adam felled tweyn and Gamelyn þre
þe oþer sette fete on erþe and bygan to flee
What' seide Adam so euere here I masse
I haue ri3t' good wyne drynk er 3e passe

Nay by god seide þei þi drink is not' goode
It wolde make a mannys brayn to lyen on his hode
Gamelyn stode stille and loked hym aboute
And seide þe Shyref commeþ wiþ a grete route
Adam seide Gamelyn what' bene nowe þi redes
Here commeþ þe sheref and wil haue our hedes
Adam seide to Gamelyn my rede is now þis
Abide we no lenger lest we fare amys
I rede we to wode goñ/ er we be founde [leaf 70, back]
Better is þer louse þan in þe toune bounde
Adam toke by þe honde yonge Gamelyn
And euery of hem dronke a drauȝt' of wyñ
And after token he cours and wenten her way
T[h]o fonde þe Shyrreue nyst' but' non aye
¶ The Shirreue liȝt/ doune and went' into halle
And fonde þe lord fetred fast' wiþ alle
The Schirreue vnfetred hym riȝt' sone anoñ
And sent' aftere a leche to hele his rigge-boñ
Lat' we nowe þe fals knyȝt' lye in his care
And talke we of Gamelyn. and of his fare
Gamelyn into þe wode stalked stille
And Adam Spensere liked riȝt' ille
Adam swore to Gamelyn by seint' Richere
Nowe I see it' is mery to be a spencere
ȝit' leuer me were kayes to bere
þan walken in þis wilde wode my cloþes to tere
Adam seide Gamelyn dismay þe riȝt' nouȝt'
Mony good mannys child' in care is brouȝt'
As þei stode talkinge boþen in fere
Adam herd' talking' of men. *and* riȝt' nygh̄ hem þei were
Tho Gamelyn vnder wode loked ariȝt'
vij^{xx}. of ȝonge men he seye wel ydiȝt'
Alle satte at' þe mete compas about'
Adam seide Gamelyn now haue I no dout'
Aftere bale commeþ bote þorgh̄ goddis myȝt'
Me þink' of mete and drynk' I haue a siȝt'

Adam loked þoo vnder wode bough̄
And whan he segh̄ mete was glad ynogh̄
ffor he hoped to god to haue his dele
And he was sore alonged after a mele
As he seide þat worde þe mayster outlawe
Saugh̄ Adam and gamelyn vnder þe wode shawe
3onge men seide þe maistere by þe good rode
I am ware of gestes. god sende vs goode
3one ben twoo 3onge men wel ydight' [leaf 71]
And paraventure þer ben mo who so loked ri3t
A-risep vp 3onge men and fette hem to me
It is good þat' we weten what' men þei be
Vp þer sterten .vij. from þe dynere
And metten wiþ Gamelyn and Adam Spencer'
Whan þei were nyghe hem þan seide þat oon̄
3eeldeþ vp 3onge men 3our bowes and 3our' floon
Þan seide Gamelyn þat' 3ong' was/ of// elde
Moche sorowe mote þei haue þat' to 3ou hem 3elde
I Curs noon opere but' right' my silue
Þoo 3e fette to 3ou .v. þan be 3e twelue
Whan þei hard' by his word' þat' myȝt' was in his arme
Ther was noon of hem þat' wold' do hym harme
But seide to Gamelyn myldely *and* stille
Comeþ a-fore our Maister and seiþ to hym 3our wille
3onge men seide Gamelyn be 3our lewte
What' man is 3our' maister þat' 3e wiþ be
Alle þei answerd' wiþ out' lesing'
Our maister is crowned of outlawe king'
Adam seide Gamelyn go we in cristes name
He may neiþer mete ne drink warne vs for shame
If þat' he be hende and come of gentil blood'
He wil 3eue vs mete and drink and do us som gode
By sein't' Iame seide Adam what' harme þat' I gete
I wil auenture me þat' I had mete
Gamelyn and Adam went' forth̄ in fere
And þei grette þe Maister' þat' þei fond' þere

Than seide þe Maister king' of outlawes
What' seche ȝe ȝonge men vnder þe wode shawes
Gamelyn answerd' þe king' *with* his croun
He most' nedes walk' in feeld' þat' may not' *in* toun
Sire we walk not' here no harme to doo
But' ȝif we mete a dere to shete *þer*to
As men þat' bene hungry *and* mow no mete fynde
And beñ hard' bystad' vnder wode lynde
Of Gamelyns wordes / þ^e^ maist*er* had reuþe [leaf 71, back]
And seide ȝe shul haue ynow haue god my treuthꝭ
He bad hem sitte do*un* forto take rest'
And bad hem ete and drink' and *þat* of þe best'
As þei eten and dronken wel and fyne
þan seide on to ano*þer*. þis is Gamelynꝭ
þo was þe Maistere outlawe into counseile nome
And tolde howe it' was Gamelyn *þat* þider was come
Anon as he herd' how it' was byfalle
He made him maister' vnder hy*m* ouer he*m* alle
*With*Inne þe iij. weke hym come tydinge
To þe Maistere outlawe þat' was her kinge
þat' he shuld come home his pees was made
And of þat' good tydinge he was ful glade
þoo seide he to his ȝonge men soþ forto telle
Me bene co*m*men tydinges ? I may no lenger dwelle
Tho was Gamelyn anoon wiþ out' taryinge
Made maister' outlawe and crowned her kinge
Whan Gamelyn was crowned king' of outlawes
And walked had a while vnder þe wode shawes/
þe fals knyȝt' bis broþer was sherif *and* sire
And lete his broþ*er*e endite for hate *and* for ire
þoo were his boond-men sory ! *and* no þing' glade
Whan Gamelyn her lord / wolfes hede was *cri*ed *and* made
And sent' out' of his men wher þei myȝt' hy*m* fynde
ffor to go seke Gamelynꝭ vnder þe wode lynde
To telle hym tyding' þe wynde was wente
And al his good reued and al his men shent'

Whan þei had hym founden on knees þei hem setten
And adoune with her hodes and her lord gretten
Sir' wreth 3ou not' for þe good rode
ffor we han brou3t' 3ou tydynggȩs but' þei be not' gode
Nowe is þi broþer Sherreue *and* haþ þe bayly
And haþ endited þe / and wolfes hede doþ þe crye
Allas seide Gamelyn þat' euere I was so sclak
þat' I ne had broke his nek whan I his rigge brak'
Goþ greteþ wel myn husbondes and wif [leaf 72]
I wil be at' þe next' shyre haue god my lif
Gamelyn come redy to þe next' shire
And þer was his broþer boþ lord and sire
Gamelyn boldely come into þe mote halle
And putt' a doun his hode / amonge þo lordes alle
God saue 3ou lordinggs þat' here be
But' broke-bak sherreue euel mote þou þee
Whi hast þou doñ me þat' shame and vilonye
fforto lat' endite me / and wolfeshede do me crye
þoo þou3t' þe fals kny3t' forto bene awreke
And lette Gamelyn most' he no þing' speke
Might' þer be no grace. but' Gamelyn atte last'
Was cast/ in prison and fettred fast'
¶ Gamelyn haþ a broþere þat' hi3t' sir Ote
Als good an knyght' and hende as my3t goñ on fote
Anoon 3ede a massager' to þat' good kny3t'
And tolde him al to-gidere how gamelyn was di3t'
Anoon whan sir' ote herd howe Gamelyn was di3t'
He was ri3t' sory and no þing' li3t'
And lete sadel a stede and þe way namme
And to his tweyne breþeren ri3t sone he camme
Sir' seide Sir' Ote to þe sherreue þoo
We bene but' þre breþeren shul we neuere be mo
And þou hast' prisoned þe best of vs alle
Suche anoþere broþer euel mote hym byfalle
Sir' Ote seide þe false knyght' lat' be þi cors
By god for þi wordes he shal fare þe wors

To þe kingges prison he is ynome
And *þer* he shal abide to þe Iustise come
*Par*de Seide Sir' Ote better it' shal be
I bid hym to maynprise *þat* þou gr*au*nte me
To þe next' sitting' of delyuer*au*nce
And lat' þan Gamelyn stonde to his chaunce
Bro*þere* in such a forward I take hy*m* to þe
And by þ^e^ fader soule þat' þe bigate *and* me
But' he þe redy whan þe Iustice sitte [leaf 72, back]
þou shalt' bere þe Iuggement' for al þi *gr*ete witte
I *gr*aunte wel seide Sir' Ote þat' it' so be
Lat' delyuere hym anoon and take hy*m* to me
Tho was gamelyn delyuered to Sir' ote his bro*þer*'
And þat' nyght' dwelled þe oon wiþ þe o*þer*'
On the morowe seide Gamelyn to Sir' Ote þe hende
Bro*þer* he seide I mote forso*þ* from 3o^n^ wende
To loke howe my 3onge men leden her liff
Whedere þei lyuen in Ioie or ellis in striff
By god seide Sir' ote þat' is a colde rede
Nowe I se þat' alle þe Carke shal fal on my hede
ffor whan þe Iustise sitte and þou be not' yfound'
I shal anoon be take and in þi stede I-bound'
Bro*þer* seide Gamelyn dismay 3ou nou3t'
ffor by seint Iame in Gales þat' mony men ha*þ* sou3t'
3if that god almy3ty holde my lif and witte
I wil be redy whan þe Iustice sitte
Than seide sir*e* Ote to gamelyn god shilde þ^e^ from shame
Come whan þou seest' tyme and bring' vs out' of blame
¶ Li*þene*þ and listene*þ* and holde 3ou stille
And 3e shul here howe Gamelyn had al his wille
Gamelyn went' vnder þe wode Ris
And fonde þer pleying' 3eng' men of p*ris*
þo was 3ong' gamelyn ri3t' glad ynou3e
Whan he fonde his men vnder wode bou3e
Gamelyn and his men talkeden in fere
And þei had good game her maist*er* to here

His men tolde him of auentures þat þei had found
And Gamelyn tolde hem aȝein howe he was fast bounde
While Gamelyn was outlawe had he no cors
þer was no man þat for him ferde þe wors
But Abbottes *and* Priours monk and chanone
On hem left he nouȝt whan he myȝt hem nome
While Gamelyn and his men made merþes ryve
þe fals knyght his broþer euel mot he thryve
ffor he was fast about boþ day and oþer [leaf 73]
ffor to hiren þe quest to hongen his broþer
Gamelyn stode on a day and byheeld
þe wodes and þe Shawes and þe wild feelde
He þouȝt on his broþere how he hym byhette
þat he wold be redy whan þe Iustice sette
He þouȝt wel he wold wiþ-out delay
Come to-fore þe Iustice to kepen his day
And saide to his ȝonge men dighteþ ȝou ȝare
ffor whan þe Iustice sitte we most be þare
ffor I am vnder borowe til þat I come
And my broþer for me to prison shal be nome
Be seint Iame seide his ȝonge men and þou rede þerto
Ordeyn̄ how it shal be and it shal be do
While Gamelyn was commyng þer þe Iustice satte
þ° fals knyȝt his broþer forȝate he not þat
To hire þe men of þe quest to hangen his broþer
þouȝe þei had not þat oon þei wold haue þat oþer
Tho come Gamelyn from vnder þe wode Ris
And brouȝt with hym ȝonge men of pris
I see wel seide Gamelyn þe Iustise is sette
Go a-forn adam and loke how it spette
Adam went into þe halle *and* loked al aboute
He segh̄ þer stonde lordes grete *and* stoute
And Sire Ote his broþer fetred ful fast
þoo went Adam out of halle as he were a-gast
Adam seide to Gamelyn and to his felawes all
Sire Ote stout fetered in þe mote hall

[. . . . . .

. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]

If gode ȝeue vs grace wel forto doo
He shal it' abigge þat' it' brouȝt' þerto /
þan seide Adam þat' lockes had hore
Cristes curs mote he haue þ*at* hy*m* bonde so sore
And þou wilt' Gamelyn do after my rede
þer is noon in þe halle shal bere away his hede
Adam seide Gamelyn we wil not do soo
We wil slee þe giltif and lat' þe o*þer*e goo/
I wil into þe halle and w*ith* þe Iustice speke [leaf 73, back]
Of hem þat' bene giltif I wil ben awreke
Late no skape at' þe door take ȝonge men ȝeme
ffor I wil be Iustise þis day domes to deme
God spede me þis day at' my newe werk'
Adam come w*ith* me for þ*o*u shalt' be my clerk
His men answerde hy*m*. and bad do*n*e his best'
And if þou to vs haue nede þ*o*u shalt' finde vs prest'
We wil stonde wiþ þe while þat' we may dure
And but' we worchen manly pay vs no*n*e hure
ȝonge men said Gamelyn so mote I wel þe
A trusty maister ȝe shul fynde me
Riȝt' þere þe Iustise satte in þe halle
Inne went' Gamelyn amonges hem alle
Gamelyn lete vnfetter his bro*þer* out' of bende
þan seide Sir Ote his bro*þer* þ*at* was hende
þow haddest' almost' Gamelyn dwelled to long*e*
ffor þe quest' is out' on me þat' I shuld' honge
Bro*þer* seide Gamelyn so god ȝeue me good rest'
þis day shul þei be honged / þ*at*' ben on þe quest'
And þe Iustise boþ þat' is þe Iuge man
And þe Sherreue also. þorgh̄ hym it bigan
Than seide Gamelyn to þe Iustice
Now is þi power don*e*. þe most' nedes rise
þow hast' ȝeuen domes þat' bene euel diȝt'
I wil sitten in þi sete and dressen/ he*m* ariȝt'

The Iustise satte stille and roos not' anone
And Gamelyn cleued his cheke bone
Gamelyn toke him in his armes *and* no more spake
But' threwe hym ouer þe barre and his arme brake
Dorst' noon to Gamelyn seie but' good
ffor feerd of þe company þat *with*-out' stoode
Gamelyn sette hym doun in þe Iustise sete
And Sire Ote his broþere by hym. and Adam at' his fete
Whan gamelyn was sette in þe Iustise sede
Herken of a bourde þat' Gamelyn dede
He lete fetter þe Iustise and his fals broþere [leaf 74]
And did hem come to þe barre þat' on *with* þat' oþere
Whan gamelyn had þus ydone had he no rest'
Til he had enquered who was on his quest'
ffforto demen his broþer sire Ote forto honge
Er he wist' what' þei were hym þou3t' ful longe
But' as sone as Gamelyn wist' where þei were
He did hem euerechone fetter in fere
And bringgen hem to þe barre & setten in rewe
By my feiþ seide þe Iustise þe sherrue is a shrewe
þan seide Gamelyn to þe Iustise
þou hast' 3oue domes of þe worst assise
And þe xij. Sesoures þat' weren on þe quest'
þei shul be honged þis day so haue I good rest'
Than seide þe sheref to 3onge Gamelyn
Lord I crie þe mercie broþer art' þou myñ
þerfor seide Gamelyn haue þou *cri*stes curs
ffor and þow were maist*er*. I shuld' haue wors
ffforto make short' tale and not' to longe
He ordeyned hym a quest' of his men stronge
þe Iustise and þe Sirreue boþ honged hie
To weyuen wiþ þe ropes and þe winde drye
And þe xij. Sisours sorowe haue þat' rekke
Alł þei were honged fast' by þe nekke
þus endeþ þe fals kny3t' wiþ his trecherye
þat' eue*r*e had lad his lif *in* falsnesse *and* folye

He was honged by þe nek and not' by þe purs
þat' was þe mede þat' he had for his faders curs
Sire Otes was eldest and Gamelyn was ȝenge
Wenten to her frendes / and passed to þe kinge
þei maden pees wiþ þe king' of þe best' sise
þe king' loued wel sir Ote & made hym iustise
And after þe king' made Gamelyn in est *and* in west
þe cheef Iustice of his free forest'
Alł his wiȝt' ȝonge men þe king' forgaf her gilt'
And siþen in good office þ^e^ king' haþ hem pilt'
Thus wanne Gamelyn his land and his lede
And wreke him on his enemyes. *and* quytte hem her mede
And Sire Ote his broþer made him his heire
And Siþen wedded gamelyn a wif good and faire
They lyued to-gidere þe while þat' *crist'* wold'
And siþen was Gamelyn grauen vnder mold'
And so shul we all: may þer no man fle
God bring' vs to þat' Ioye þat' euer shal be
here endeþ þe tale of þe Coke.)

[*The Prologue and Tale of the Shipman follow, without any break in the MS.*]

[NOTICE—As the order of the Tales after the *Man of Law's* in the Petworth MS differs from the order adopted for the Six-Text, no further issue of the separate print of the Petworth MS will take place until the *Squire's Tale* is issued in its proper order in the Six-Text, according to the following scheme :—

Six-Text	*Petworth MS.*
rest of Group **B** { *Melibeus*, *Monk*, *Nun's Priest*	*Group* **F** 1 *SQUIRE*
Group **C** { *Doctor*, *Pardoner*	*Group* **E** 2 *Merchant*
Group **D** { *Wife of Bath*, *Friar*, *Summoner*	*Group* **D** { *Wife*, *Friar*, *Summoner*
Group **E** { *Clerk*, *Merchant*	*Group* **E** 1 *Clerk*
Group **F** { *SQUIRE*, *Franklin*	*Group* **F** 2 *Franklin*
Group **G** { *Second Nun*, *Canon's Yeoman*	*Group* **G** { *Second Nun*, *Canon's Yeoman*
Group **H** *Manciple*	*Group* **C** { *Doctor*, *Pardoner*
Group **I** *Parson*	*rest of Group* **B** { *Thopas*, *Melibeus*, *Monk*, *Nun's Priest*
	Group **H** *Manciple*
	Group **I** *Parson*]

¶ And [*on leaf 74, back*]

Thus gynneþ þe prologe of þe shipman

Nowe frendes seide our hoost so dere ¶ The Prologe.
How likeþ 3ou by Iohñ þe pardonere
ffor he haþ vnbokeled wel þe male
He haþ vs tolde riȝt a thrifty tale
As touching of mysgouernaunce
I preye to god 3eue hym good chaunche
As 3e han herd of þise retoures þre
Now gentil Marynere hertely I preye þe
Telle vs a good tale and þat riȝt anoñ
It shal be done by god & by seint Iohñ
Seide þis marinere as wel as euer I can
And riȝt anoon his tale he bygan.

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe shipman.**

[*No gap in the MS.*]

GROUP B. (β. FRAGMENT III.)

§ 4. THE SHIPMAN'S TALE.

And here bygynneþ þe shipman tale [on leaf 74, back]

A Marchaunt' whilom dwelled in seynt' denys
Þat' riche was for whicħ men held hy*m* wys
A wif he had of excellent' bewte
And companable and reuerent' was she
Which is a þing' þat' causeþ more dispence
þan worþ is al þe chere and reuerence
þat' men hem done at' feestes and at' daunces
sucħ salutacions and counten*aun*ces
Passeþ as doþ þe shadowe vpoñ a waħ
But' woo is hym þat payen mote for aħ
The Sely husbond' algate he mot' paye
He mote vs cloþe and vs aray
ffor his owne worship richely [leaf 75]
In whicħ aray we dauncen Iolily
And if þat' he may not' per*auenture*
Or ellis list noon sucħ spence endure
But' þenkeþ þat' it' is waast' *and* ylost'
þan mote anoþer paien for þe cost'
Or lene vs gold and þat' is per*ilous*
This noble marchaunt' helde a noble hous
ffor whicħ he had alday grete repayre
ffor his largesse and for his wif was faire
þat' wonder is but' herkeneþ to my tale
Amonge aħ his gestis. grete *and* smale
Ther was a monk a faire man *and* a bold'
I trowe xxx^ti^. wynter he was olde
That' euer in oon was drowing' to þat' place
þis yonge monk þat' was so faire of face

Aqueynted was so wiþ þat' good man
[. 1220
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
And eke þis monke of' whicħ I byganne 1224
Were boþ twoo yborn in oo vilage
þe monke hym cleymed as for cosynage
And he aʒein seiþ not' ones nay
But' was as glad þerof as foule of day 1228
ffor to his hert' it' was a grete plesañce
Thus bene þei knyut' wiþ eterne aliance
And eche of hem gan oþer ensure
Of breþerode þe whiles her lif' may dure 1232
ffree was dañ Ioħn and namely of dispence
As in þat' hous and ful of diligence
To do plesaunce and also grete costage
He forʒate not' to ʒeue þe lest' page 1236
In alle þat' hous but' after her degre
He ʒaue þe lord' and siþen his Mayne
Whan þat' he came some maner honest þing'
ffor whicħ þei were as glad of his commyng' 1240
As foule is fayne whan þe sonne vpriseth
No more herof as nowe for þis suffiseþ
But' so byfelle þis marchaunt' on a day
Shope hym to make redy his aray [leaf 75, back]
Towarde þe toune of Brugges for to fare
To byen þer a porcioun of ware
ffor whicħ he haþ to Paris sent' anōn
A massagere and preied haþ dañ Ioħn 1248
þat' he shuld come to seynt' denys to pleyn
Wiþ hym and wiþ his wif a day or tweyñ
Or he to brugges went' in al wise
This noble monk of whicħ I ʒou devise 1252
Haþ of his abbot' as hym list' licence
Bycause he was a man of higħ prudence

And eke an officere out' forto ride
To seen her graunges and her beernes wide
And vnto seint denys he commeþ anoñ
Who was so welcome as my lord' dañ Ioñ̃ñ
Our dere cosyn ful of curtesie
With him brouȝt' he a Iubbe of Maluesie
And eke anoþer ful of fyñe vernage
As volatile as ay was his his vsage
And þus I lat' hem .ete. boþ drink' *and* playe
This merchaunt' and þis monk a day or twaye
The .iij. day þis Marchaunte vp ariseþ
And on his nede sadly hy*m* avisetñ
And vp into his counter hous goþ he
To rekne wiþ him self as wel may be
Of þilk ȝere hou þat' it' wiþ hy*m* stode
And how he despended had his good
And ȝif þat' he encresed were or noñ
His bokes and his bagges mony oñ
He leiþ to-fore him on his countyng' boord'
fful riche was his tresour and his hord'
ffor whiche ful fast' his counter door he shette
And eke he nold' þat' no man shuld' hy*m* lette
Of his acomptes for þe mene tyme
And þus he sitte til it' was passed p*rime*
Dan Iohñ was risen in þe morowe also
And in þe Gardyne walked to and fro
And haþ his þingges seide ful curteisly [leaf 76]
This good wif come walking' prively
Into þe Gardyne þer he walked soft'
And hym saluetñ as he haþ doñ ful oft'
A mayden childe cam in her companye
Which as hure lust' she may gouern and gye
ffor ȝit' vndere þe ȝeerd was þe mayde
O deer Cosyn myn dañ Iohñ she seide
What' eileþ ȝou so rathe to arise
Nece q*uo*d he it' auȝt' ynoughñ suffise

V. houres forto slepe vpon a nyȝt
But' it' were for an olde palled wiȝt'
As ben þise wedded men þat' lye *and* dare
As in a forme sitte a wery hare
Were al for-straught' wiþ houndes grete *and* smale
But' dere nece whi beñ ȝe so pale
I trowe certes þat' oure good man
Haþ ȝow labored siþ þe nyght' bygan
That' ȝou were nede to resten hastely
And wiþ þat' word he lough ful merely
And of his owne þouȝt' he wex al rede
This faire wif gan to shake her hede
And seide þus / ȝe god wote al quod she
Nay Cosin myne it' stont' not' so wiþ me
ffor by þat' god þat' ȝaue me saule *and* lif
In aH þe rewme of fraunce is *þer* no wif
þat' lasse lust' haþ to do þat' sorie play
for I may syngen alas and wele away
That' I was born but' no wiȝt' *quod* she
I dar not' tellen how it' stant' wiþ me
werfore I þenk' out' of þis lond' to wende
Or ellis of my self to make an ende
So ful I am of drede and eke of care
þis monk' bygan vpon þis wif to stare
A saide alas nay nece god forbede
þat' ȝe for eny sorowe or eny drede
fforto ȝoure self but' telleþ me ȝo*ur* greef [leaf 76, back]
Per*a*uenture I may in ȝoure meschief'
Conseile or helpe *and* þerfor telleþ me
Alle ȝour avis for it' shal be secre
ffor on my portoos I make an oþe
þat' neuere in my lif' for leef ne loþe
Ne shal I of no counsaile ȝou by-wrey
þe same aȝein to ȝou quod she I seie
By god and by þis portoos I swere
þei men me wold al into peces tere

Ne shal I neuer forto goo to helle
Bywrey a word' of þing' þat' 3e me telle
Nou3t' for no cosinage ne alliance
But' verrely for loue *and* affiance
Thus bene þei sworn and here vpon kist'
And eche of hem told' oþer what' he*m* list'
Cosyn quod she if I had a space
As I haue non namely in *þis* place
þan wold I tellen a legend' of my lif'
þat' I suffred haue siþ I was a wif'
With myn husbond' al þoug̃h he be 3o*ur* cosyñ
Nay quod þis monke by god & by seint' Martyn
He nys no more Cosyn vnto me
þan is þis leef' þat' hongeþ on þe tree
I clepe hy*m* so by seint' denys in ffraunce
To haue þe more cause of a-queynt*a*unce
Of 3owe þe which̃ I haue loued specialy
A-bouen al wo*m*men sikerly
þis swere I 3ou on my professio*un*
Telleþ 3our greef lest' he come ado*un*
And hasteþ 3ou and gooþ 3oure way anoñ
My dere loue quod she o dañ Ioh̃n
fful leef me were þis counsaile to hide
But out' it' mote / it' may no lengere bide
My husbond is to me þe worst' man
þat' euer was siþ þis world' bygan
But' siþen I am a wif it' sitte not' to me
To telle no wight' of our p*r*iuete
Neiþer in bedde ne in noon oþ*er* place
God shild' I shuld telle it' for his *grace*
A wif ne shuld not' seye of her husbond'
But' al honure as I can vnderstonde
Saue vnto 3ou þus moch*e* telle I shal
As helpe me god he nys not' worþ at' al
In no degre þe valewe of a flee
But' 3it' me greueþ most' his nygarde

[leaf 77]

And wel ȝe wote þat' wo*m*men naturelly
desiren þingges. sex as wel as I.
þei wolden þat' her husbond' shuld' be
Hardy and wi̊se. riche *and* þerto free
And boxom to his wif and fressh̄ abedde
But' by þat' ilk lord þat' for vs bledde
ffor his honour*e* my self to aray
A sonday next' I mote pay
An C. frankes or ellis am I lorn̄
ȝit' were me leuere þat' I were vnborn̄
þan me were done a sclaunder or vilanye
And if myn husbonde eke myȝt' espie
I nere but' lost and þerfor I ȝou prey
lene me þis som*m*e and ellis mote I dey
Danne Iohn̄ I seie lene me þise hundred frankes
P*ar*de I wold' not' faile þe my þonkes
If þat' ȝou lust to do þat' I ȝou pray
ffor a certeyn day I wil ȝow pay
And to do ȝou what' plesaunce *and* seruyse
þat' I may do right as ȝou list' devise
And but' I do god take on me vengeance
As foule as had genylon̄ of ffr*a*unce
This gentil monke answerd' in þis man*er*e
Nowe trewly myn owne lady dere
I haue quod he on ȝow so grete a rouþe
þat' I ȝowe swere *and* pliȝt' ȝou my trouþe
That' whan ȝoure husbonde is to fflaundres fare [leaf 77, back]
I wil delyuere ȝowe out' of þis worldes care
I wil bringen ȝou an C. frankes
And wiþ þat' he kaught' hure by þe shankes
And hir*e* enbrased hard*e* and kissed oft'
Goþ now ȝoure way quod he al stille *and* soft'
And lat' vs dyne as sone as eu*er*e ȝe may
ffor by my children it is prime of day
Goþ nowe and beþ as trewe as I shal be
Nowe ellis god forbede sir*e* quod she

And forþ she gooþ as Ielous as a pye
And bad þe Cokes þat' þei shuld hem hie
So þat' men myȝt' dyne and þat' anoñ
Vp to her husbond is þis wif goñ
And knokkeþ at' his counter boldely
Quy la quod he. Peter it' am I
Quod she what' howe longe wol ȝe fast'
How longe tyme wil ȝe rekken *and* cast'
Ȝoure sommes ȝoure bokes *and* ȝoure þingges
þe deuel haue part' on al suche rekenyngges
ȝe han ynogh̄ p*ar*de of goddes sonde
Come doune to day and lat' ȝoure bagge stonde
Ne be ȝe not' ashamed þat' dañ Ioh̄ñ
Shal fasting' al þis day elenge goñ
What' lat' vs here masse and go dyne
Wiff quod þis man litel canst' þou devyne
þe Curious bysynes þat' we haue
ffor of vs Chapmen so god me saue
And by þat' lord þat' called is seint' yve
Scarcely amonges .xij. tweyn shul þrive
Contynuely lasting' vnto our age
We may wel make chere and good visage
And drive forþ þe world' as it' may be
And kepen our astate in p*ri*uete
Til we be dede or ellis þat' we pleye
A pilgrymage or gon out' of þe weye
And þ*er*for haue I grete necessite
Vpon þis queynt' world' to avise me
ffor euermore we mote stonde in drede
Of happe and fortune in our chapmanhede
To fflaundres wil I goo to morowe at' day
And come aȝein as sone as eu*er*e I may
ffor which̄ my dere wif I þe biseke
As be to euery wight' buxom *and* meke
And forto kepe our good be Curious
And honestly gouerne wel oure hous

1400 1404 1408 1412 1416 1420 1424 [leaf 78] 1428 1432

Thow hast' nowe in euery maner wise
þat' to a þrifty husbonde may suffise
þe lackeþ noon araye ne no vitaile
Of siluere in þi purs þou maist' not' faile
And wiþ þat' worde his counter door he shette
And doune he goþ no lenger nold' he lette
And hastely a masse was þere saide
And spedely þe tables were ylade
And to þe dyner fast' þei hem spedde
And richely þis monke þe chapman fedde
And after dynere daun Iohn soberly
This Chapman toke a-part' al priuely
he seide him þus Cosyn it' stondeþ soo
þat' wel I see to brugges 3e wil goo
God and seint' Austyn speke 3ou and gide
I prei 3ou Cosyn wisly þat' 3e ride
Gouerneþ 3ou also of 3oure diete
And temperaly and namely in þis hete
Bitwix vs twey nedeþ no stronge fare
ffare wel Cosyn god kepe 3ou fro care
3if eny þinge þer be by day or by ny3t'
If it' ligge in my power and in my my3t'
þat' 3e me wil commaunde in ony wise
It' shal be doñ ri3t' as 3e wil devise
Oon þing' er þat' 3e goñ if þat 3it may be
I wold' prei 3ou forto lene me
An C ffrankes for a weke or twey
ffor certeyn beestes I mot' beye
To store wiþ a place þat' is owres [leaf 78, back]
God helpe me so I wolde it' were 3oures
I shal not' faile swerly of my day
Nou3t' for a M̃. frankes a myleway
But' lat' þis þinge be secre I 3ou prey
And god of heuene spede 3ou in 3oure weye
And fare nowe wele myn owne cosyn dere
Graunt' mercy of 3oure cost' & of 3oure chere

This noble Merchaunt' gentely anoñ
Answerde and seide. O cosyn dañ Ioħn
Nowe sikerly þis is a smal request'
My golt' is 3oures whan þat' 3ou lest'
And not' oonly my gold' but' my chaffare
Take what' 3ou lest' god shilde þat' 3e spare
But' oo-þinge is 3e knowe it' wel ynogħ
Of Chapmen þat' her money is her plou3e
We may creaunce while we haue a name
But' goldelees forto be is no game
Paye it' a3ein whan it' liţ in 3oure ese
Aftere 3oure my3t' fayn wold' I 3ou plese
Thise hundred ffrankes he fette forþ anoñ
And p*r*iuely he toke it' to dañ Ioħñ
No wi3t' in al þis world' wist' of þis lone
Sauyng' þis merchaunt' and dañ Ioħn allone
þei dronken and romen and goñ to pleye
Til þat' dañ Ioħn rideþ to his abbay
þe morn come and forþ þis merchaunte rideþ
To fflaundres ward' his prentis wel hy*m* gideþ
Til he came into brugges merely
Now goþ þis m*er*chaunt' fast' and bisily
Aboute his nede and bieþ and creaunseþ
He neiþer pleieþ at þe dis ne daunseþ
But' as a m*er*chaunt' shortely forto telle
he lad his lif and þer I lete hy*m* dwelle
¶ The sonday next' þe m*er*chaunt' was a-goñ
To seynt Denys y-co*m*men is dañ Iohñ
Wiþ croune and berde fressħ *and* newe yshaue
In al þe hous þer nas so lite a knaue [leaf 79]
Ne no wi3t' ellis þat' he nas fayñ
ffor þat' my lord daun Iohñ was come a3ayñ
And shortely to her poynt' forto goñ
This faire wif acordeþ to daun Ioħn
And for þise hundred frankes he shuld al ny3t'
Haue her in his armes bolt' vpri3t'

And þis acorde perfourmed was in dede
In myrth̄ al nyȝt' a bysy lif þei lede
Til it' was day þat' dañ Iohñ went' his way
And bad þe mayne fare wele and haue good day
ffor noon of hem ne no wiȝt in þe toun
Han of dañ Iohñ none suspecioun
And forþ he rideþ home to his abbaye
Or wher hym lust' no more of hym I saie
¶ This marchaunt' whan þat' ended was þe fare
To seint' Denys he gan forto repare
And wiþ his wif he makeþ feest' *and* chere
And telleþ her þat' chaffare is so dere
þat' nedes most' he make a cheuysance
ffor he was bounden in a reconysañce
To pay xx^ti. þousand' sheldes añon
ffor which̄ þis marchaunt' is wont' to goñ
To borowe of certeyñ frendes þat he hadde
A certeyn ffrannkes and somme with hym he ladde
And whan he was come into þe toũn
ffor greet' cheerte and grete affecciouñ
Vnto dañ Iohñ him first' he goþ to pley
Nouȝt' for to borowe of hym no money
But' forto witt' and see of his welfare
And for to tellen him of his chaffare
As frendes done whan þei ben mette in fere
Dañ Iohñ him makeþ feest *and* mery chere
And he him told' aȝein ful specialy
Howe he had bouȝt' ful wel & graciously
Thonked be god al hole his merchaundyse
Saue þat' he most' in al manere wise [leaf 79, back]
Maken a chevisaunce as for his beste
And þan shuld' he be in Ioye *and* reste
Dañ Iohñ answerd' Certes I am fayn
þat' ȝe in hele be commen home aȝeyñ
And if þat' I were riche as haue I blisse
Of xx^ti Mł. sheldes shuldest' þou not' mysse

ffor ȝe so kindely þis oþer day
Lent' me gold and as I can and maye
I þonke ȝou by god *and* by seint' Iame
But' naþelees I toke vnto our dame
ȝoure wif at' home þe same gold aȝein
Vpon ȝoure benche she wote it' wel certeyn
By certeyne tokens þat' I can her telle
Now by ȝo*ur* leue I may no lenger dwelle
Our abbot' wil out' of þis to*un* anon
And in his company I mot' gon
Grete wele our dame myn owene nece swete
And fare wele dere cosyn to we mete
¶ This Marchaunt' wiþ þat' was ful ware *and* wys
Creaunsed haþ and eke paide in Paris
To certeyn lumbardes redy in her handes
This some of gold' and gate of hem þe bandes /
And home he goþ mery as a popeniaye
ffor wel he knewe he stood in such araye
þat' nedes most' he wynne in such a viage
A þousand' frankes aboue al his costage
His wif ful redy mette hy*m* at' þe gate
As she was wont' of olde vsage algate
And all þat' nyȝt' in myrthe þei bysette
ffor he was riche and cleerly out' of dette
¶ Whan it' was day þis m*er*chaunt' gan enbrace
His wif al newe and kissed hir' on hir' face
And vp he goþe and makeþ it' wonder toogh
No more quod she by god ȝe haue ynogh
And wantonly aȝein wiþ hy*m* she pleide
Til at' þe last' þat' þis m*er*chaunt' seide [leaf 80]
By god quod he I am a litel wroth
Wiþ ȝou my wif al-þo it' be me loth
And wote ȝe why by god as þat' I gesse
ffor ȝe haue made a mane*re* straungenesse
Bytwixen me and my cosyn dau*n* Iohn
ȝe shuld' haue warned me er I had gon

þat' he had 3ou an hundred fraunkes paide
By redy token and he hym held' euel paide
ffor þat' I to him spake of cheuysance
Me semed so as by his countenañce
But' naþe-lees by god heuen kinge
I þou3t' not' to axe of hym no þinge
I prey þe wif ne do no more soo
Telle me alway er þat' I fro þe goo
If eny dettour haþ in myn absence
Ypaide þe lest' þorgh̄ þine negligence
I my3t' him axe as þing' þat' he haþ paide
This wif was not' afferd ne affraied.
Bot' boldely sche seide *and* þat' anoñ
Mary I diffie þat' fals monk dañ Iohn̄.
I kepe not' of his tokens neuer a dele
He toke me certeyn gold þis wote I wele
What' euel thedom on his monkes snoute
ffor god it' wote I went' wiþ-out' doute
þat' he had 3oue it' me by cause of 3owe
To do þer-wiþ myn honure *and* my prowe
ffor Cosynage and eke for bele chere
þat' he haþ hadde ful often tyme here
But' siþen I see I stonde in such̄ disioynt'
I wil answere 3ou shortely to þe poynt'
3e haue moo sclakker dettours þan am I
for I wil pay 3ow wel *and* redely
ffro day to day *and* if so be I faile
I am 3oure wif score it' on my taile
And I shal paye as sone as euer I may
ffor by my trouþe I haue on myn aray [leaf 80, back]
And nouht' on waast' bystowed euery dele
And for I haue bystowed it' so wele
To 3oure honour for goddes sake I say
As be not' wroþ but' lat' vs laugh̄ *and* play
3e shullen my Ioly body haue to wedde
By god I nyl not' paye 3ou but' abedde

ffor3eue it me myn owne spouse dere
Turne hiderward and make better chere
This Marchaunte seye þer was no remedye
And forto chide it ner but foly
Sybens þat þe þing may not amended be
Now wif he seide *and* I for3eue it þe
But be þi lif ne be no more so large
kepe bette my good þis 3eue I þe in charge
þus enden now my tale and god vs sende
Tailling y-nowe into our lyues ende.

¶ Thus endeþ þe shipmannys tale

[*No break in the MS.*]

¶ þe prologe.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe priores. [on leaf 80, back]

WEl seid by corpus dominus quod our hoste
Now longe mote þou saile by þe coste
Sire Gentile Maister gentyl marynere
God 3eue þe monk a Mŧ. last quade 3ere
A ha felowes beþ ware of such a Iape
þe Monk put in þe mannys hode an ape
And in his wyues eke by seint Austyn
Draweþ no mo monkes into 3our Ianę
But now passe ouer & lat vs seke aboute
Who shal now telle first of al þe route
Anoþer tale and wiþ þat word he saide
As curteisly as it had bene a Mayde
My lady Priores by 3oure leue
So þat I wist I shulde 3ou not greue
I wolde deme þat 3e telle shulde
A tale next if so be þat 3e wolde
Now wil 3e vouche sauf my lady dere
Gladly quod she and seide in þis manere. [leaf 81]

Thus endeþ þe prologe.

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ
þe *Pri*ores tale of Alma redemptoris mater.

[*The Prologue.*]

O lord our lord' þi name how m*er*veilous ¶ Domine dominus noster. þ° Priores tale } cap̄
Is in þis large world' ysprad q*uo*d she
ffor nouȝt' only þi laude precious
P*er*fourmed is by men of dignite
But' by þe mouþe of Children þi bounte
P*er*fourmed is for in our brest' soukinge
Somtyme shewen þei þine heryinge

¶ Wherfor in laude as I can best' *and* may
Of þe and of þe white lile floure
Which̄ þat' þe bare and art' a maide alway
To telle a storie I wol do my labour*e*
Nouȝt' þat' I may encrece her honour*e*
ffor she he[r] self is honure and þ*er*to rote
Of bounte next' her sone of soules bote

O Modere M'ayden o. maiden moder' fre
O bussh vnbrent' brennyng' in Moises siȝt'
But' vanysshe þ doune fro þe deite
þorgh̄ þine humblesse þe goost' þ*at* in þ° liȝt' 1660
Of whos vertue whan he in þine hert' aliȝt'
Conceyued was þe faders sapience
Helpe me to telle it' in þi reuerence

LAdy þi bounte and þine magnificence
þi vertue and þi grete hu*m*ilite
þer may no þing' expresse in no science
ffor somtyme lady er men preie to þe
þow gost' byforn of þi benignite
And getest' vs to liȝt' þorgh̄ þi preir*e*
To gyden vs vnto þi sonne so clere

My Conyngᵗ is to waike. o blesful quene •
fforto declare þi grete worþinesse [leaf 81, back]
þatᵗ I no may þe weghtᵗ notᵗ susteyne
Butᵗ asˢ a childe of xij monþe elde or lesse 1674
þatᵗ can vnneþes eny wordᵉ expresse
Riȝtᵗ so fare I and þerfore I ȝowe preye
Gideþ my songe þatᵗ I shal of ȝou seie 1677

[*THE TALE.*]

Ther was a childᵉ in a grete Cite
Amonges cristen folkᵗ in Iwerye
Susteyned by a lord of þatᵗ cuntre
ffor foule vsure & lucre of vilany 1681
Hatful to Cristᵗ and to his companye
And þorghe þe strete men myȝtᵗ ride & wende
ffor it was fre and open atᵗ euery ende 1684

A litel scole of Cristen folk þer stode
Doune atᵗ þe ferþer ende in which þer were
Children an hepe ycome of cristes blode
þatᵗ lerned in þatᵗ scole ȝere by ȝere 1688
Suchⁿ manere doctrine as men vsed þere
þis is to saie to syngen and to rede
As smale children done in her childhede. 1691

Amonges þise children was a widowes sone
A litel Clergioun .vij. ȝere of age
þatᵗ day by day to scole was his wone
And eke also wher he seghⁿ þe ymage 1695
Of cristes modere had he in vsage
As him was tauȝt to knele adoun *and* seie
His Aue marye as he goþ by þe weye 1698

Thus haþ þis widowe her litel childe tauȝt
Our blesful lady cristes moder dere
To worship ay *and* he forgate it nouȝt
ffor sely child wil alday sone lere
But ay whan I remembre me on þis matere
Seint Nicholas stant euere in my presence [leaf 82]
ffor he so ȝonge to crist did reuerence

This childe his litel boke lernynge
As he satte in þe scole at his prymere
He **Alma redemptoris** / herd singe
As Children lered her antiphonere
And as he durst he drow hym ner *and* nere
And harkened ay þe wordes *and* þe note
Til he þe first vers couþe al by rote

Nouȝt wist he what þe latyn was to say
ffor he so ȝonge and tender was of age
But on a day his felawe gan he pray
To expoune hym þe songe in his langage
Or tellen him whi þis songe was in vsage
This preide he hym to construe *and* declare
fful ofte tyme vpon his knees bare

His felawe which þat elder was þan he
Answerd him þus þis songe I haue herd say
Was maked of our blisful lady fre
Her to salue and eke her forto pray
To bene our helpe and socour whan we dey
I Can no more expounde in þis matere
I lerne songe I can but smal gramere

And is þis songe ymade in Reuerence
Of Cristes modere seide þis Innocent
Now certes I wil done my diligence
To conne it er cristmas be went

þoo þat' I for my *primere* shal be shent'
And shal be beten þries in an houre
I wil it' konne our lady to honoure

His felawe tauȝt' hy*m* homward' *priuely*
ffro day to daye til he couþe it' by rote [leaf 82, back]
And þan he songe it wel *and* boldely
ffro word to word acording' to þe note
þrise on a day it' passeþ þorgh̄ his þrote
To scoleward' and hamward' whan he went'
On cristes modere sette was his entent'

As I haue seide þorgh̄-oute þe Iwerye
þis childe as he came to and froo
fful merely þan wold' he singe *and* crye
On **alma redemptoris** euermoo
The swetnesse haþ his hert' perced so
Of cristes modere þat' to hir to prey
he can not' stint' of syngyng' by þe wey

Our furst' foo þe serpent' Sathanas
þat' haþ in Iwes his waspes nest'
Vpswal and seide o Ebraike puple alas
Is þis a þing' to ȝou þat' his honest'
þat' such̄ a boy shal walken as hym lest'
In ȝoure despite and singgyng' of such sentence
Which̄ is aȝeinst' ȝoure lawes reuerence

From þennes forþ þe Iwes han conspired
This Innocent' out' of þis world' to chace
In homycide þerto han þei hured
þat' in a Aley had a prive place
And as þe childe gan forby forto pace
þis cursed Iwe him hent' *and* helde fast'
And kitte his þrote and in a pitte hy*m* cast'

I say þat' in a wardrobe þei hym drwe
Wher þat' þise Iwes purgen entraile
O cursed folk of herawdes al nwe/
What' may 3oure euel tent' 3o^{u} availe
Mordere wil out' it' wil not' faile.
And namely þer honure of god shuld' sprede [leaf 83]
þe blood out' crieþ of 3oure cursed dede

O Matir sounded to virginite
Now maist' þow syngen folowing' euere in oñ
þe white lombe celestial quod he
Of whicñ þe grete euaungelist' seynt' Ioñn
In Pathmos wrote whicñ seyn þei þat gõn
Byfore þis lombe and singe a songe al nwe
That' neuer flesshly wommen þei knewe

This poor widowe waiteþ al þat' ny3t'
After this litel childe. but' home cam he nou3t'
ffor whom as sone as it' is daies li3t'
Wiþ face pale for drede and bisy þou3t'
She haþ atte scole and ellis whe[re] him sou3t'
Til fynaly she gan so fer espie
þat' he was sene last' in þe Iwerye

Wiþ moders pite in her brest' enclosed
She goþ as þou3e she were half out' of mynde
To euery place wher she haþ supposed
By liklihede her child' to fynde
And euere on cristes modere meke and kynde
She cried and at' þe last' þus she wrou3t'
Amonge þe cursed Iwes she him sou3t'

She freyneþ and she preieþ pitously
To euery Iwe þat' dwelte in þilk place
To telle her if her child went' hem bye
þei seiden nay but' Ihesus of his grace

ȝaue in her þouȝt' inwiþ a litel space
That' in þat' place after her sone she cried/
Ther he was cast' in a pitte beside 1796

O grete god þat' *perfourmed* þi lawde
By mouþe of Innocence lo here þi myȝt' [leaf 88, back]
This Gemme of chastite þis emeraude
And eke of Marterdom þe rubie briȝt' 1800
Ther he wiþ þrote y-corue lay vpriȝt'
He **alma redemptoris** gan' to singe
So longe þat' al þe place gan to rynge 1803

The Cristen folk' þat' þorgh þe strete went'
Inne comen forto wondren on þis þinge
And hastely þei for þe prouost' sent'
He come anone wiþ-out' tariynge 1807
And heriep crist' þat' is of heuen kynge
And eke his modere honoure of man kynde
And after þat' þe Iwes lete he bynde 1810

This child' wiþ pitous lamentacioñ
Vptaken singyng' his songe alway
And wiþ honure of grete processioñ
þei Carien hym to þe next' abbay 1814
His modere swownyng' by þe bere lay
Vnneþes myȝt' þe puple þat' was þere
þis new RacheH bring' fro his bere 1817

Wiþ torment' and *with* shameful deþ ilkoñ
This prouost' doþ þise Iwes to sterue
þat' of þis mordre wist' and þat' anōn
He nolde none suchi cursednesse obserue 1821
Euel he shal haue þat' euel wol deserue
þerfore wiþ wilde hors he did hym drawe
And after þat' he henge him by þe lawe 1824

¶ Vppon þis bere ay lith̄ þis Innocent'
Byforn þe chief autere whiles masse last'
And after þat' þe Abbot' wiþ his Couent'
had spedde hem forto bury hym fast'
And whan þei holy water on hym cast'
ȝit' spake þe child' whan spreynt' was þe holy watere (1784)
And songe .O alma redemptoris matere

This Abbot' which̄ þat' was an holy man
As monkes be or ellis ouȝten to-be
þis ȝonge childe to coniure þei bygan
And saide good child' I hailse þe
Be vertue of þe holy trinite
Telle me what' is þi cause to singe
Siþen þat' þi' þrote is kitte at' my semynge

My þrote is kitte vnto my nek' bone
Saide þis child' and as be way of [k]ynde
I shuld haue deied longe tyme a-gone
But' Ihesu crist' as ȝe in bokes fynde
Wol þat' his glorie last' *and* be in mynde
And for þe worship of his moder dere
ȝit' may I singe .O Alma. loude *and* clere

This welle of me[r]cye cristes modere swete
I loued alway as aftere my connynge
And whan þan I my lif shuld' lete.
To me she cam and bad me for to singe
þis Anteme verrely in my mynd' deyinge
As ȝe han herd'. and whan þat' I had songe
Me þouȝt' she leide a greyn vpon my tonge

Wherfore I singe and singe mote certeyn
In honure of þe blisful martere fre
Til of my tunge of taken is þe greyn̄
And aftere þat' þus seide she to me

My litel childe now wol I fecche þe
Whan þat' þe greyn is fro þi tunge ytake
Be not' agast' I wil þe not' forsake 1859

This holy monke þis abbot' hym mene I
His tunge out' kaught' and toke away þ° greyn/ [leaf 84, back]
And he ȝaue vp þe goost' ful softely
And whan þe abbot' had þis wonder seyn 1863
His salte teeres striked doun as reyn/
And gruf he fille al plat' to þe ground
And stille he lay as he had bene ybound 1866

The Couent' eke lay vpon þe payment'
Weping' and herying' cristes moder dere
And after þat' þei rise *and* forþ bene went'
And toke away þis martere fro his bere 1870
And in a toumebe of Marble stonys clere
Enclosen þei his litel body swete
Ther he is nowe god leue vs forto mete 1873

O yonge hugh of lyncoln sclayn also
With cursed Iwes as it' is notable
ffor it' nys but' a litel while agoo
Prei eke for vs we sinful folk vnstable 1877
þat' of his mercy god so merciable
On vs his grete mercy multiplie
ffor reuerence of his modere marye. 1880

¶ **Here endeþ þe priores tale.**

[*The Man of Law's Prologue and Tale follow in the MS.*]

GROUP B. (α. FRAGMENT II.)

§ 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

¶ *Prologus viri legis* **And here by-gynnes þe prologe of þe man of lawe** [*on leaf* 84, *back*]

Oure hoost' segh wel þat' þe briȝt' sonne
þe arke of þis artificial day hadde ronne
þe feerþ part' and half an houre or more
And þough he were not' depe expert' in lore
He wist' it' was þe xviij. day
Of Aprile þat' is massagere to may
And seghe wel þat' þe shadowe of eu*e*ry tre
Was as in length̄ þe same quantite
þat' was þe body erecte þat' caused it'
And þerfore by þe shadowe he toke his witte
þat' Phebus which̄ þat' shoon so clere *and* briȝt'
Degrees was xlv. clombe on hight'
And for þat' day as in *þat'* latitude [leaf 85]
Hit' was .x. of þe clok' he gan co*n*clude
And sodeynly he pliȝt' his hors about'
Lordingges quod he I warne ȝow al þis route
þe feer party of þis day is goon̄
Now for þe loue of god and of seint' Iohn̄
Leseþ no tyme as ferforþ as ȝe may
Lordingges þe tyme it' wasteþ boþ nyȝt' *and* day
And steleþ from vs what' p*r*iuely slepinge
And what' þourgh̄ neglygence in our wakinge
As doþ þe streme þat' turneþ neu*e*re agayn /
Descending' from þe mounteyn into playn̄
Wel can Senec' and many a philosophre
Byweillen tyme more þan gold i*n* Cofre
ffor losse of Catel may recouered be
But' losse of tyme shendeþ vs q*uo*d he

It' wil not' come a3ein wi þ-oute'n drede
No more þan wil Malkyns Maidenhede
Whan she haþ lost' it' in her wantonesse
Lat' vs nout' mowlen þus in Ydelnesse
Sire man of lawe quod he so haue I blesse
Telle vs a tale anoon as forward' es
3e bene submitted þourgh 3our fre assent'
To stonden in þis cas at' my Iuggement'
Aquiteþ 3ou nowe of 3oure biheest'
þan han 3e done 3oure devoire at' þe leest'
Oost quod he depardeux ich assent'
To breke forward' is not' myn entent'
Biheest' is dette and I wil holde fayne
Al my biheest' I can no better seyne
ffor such lawe as a man 3eueþ anoþer wi3t'
He shuld hym self vsen it' by ri3t'
Thus wil our text' but' naþeles certeyne
I can ri3t' now no trusty tale seyne
þat' chaucere þou3t' he can but' lewdely
On meters and in rymyng' craftely
Haþ seide hem in such englissh as he can [leaf 85, back]
Of olde tyme as knoweþ mony a man
And if he haue nou3t' seide hem leue broþer'
In oo boke he haþ seide in a-noþer
ffor he haþ told' of louers vp *and* doun
Moo þan Ovide made mencioun
In his Epistels þat' bene ful olde
What' shuld I tellen hem siþ þei be tolde
In 3ouþe he made of Ceys *and* Alcione
And siþ haþ he spoke of euerychone
Thise noble wyues and þise louyers eke
Who so þat' wol his large volom seke
Cleped þe Seintes legende of Cupide
þer may he see þe large woundes wide
Of lucresse and of Babylan Tysbe
þe swerd' of Dido for þe fals ene

The tre of Phillis for hir dēmophon
þe pleynte of Dyanyre *and* of Hermyon
Of Andrian and of ysiphilee
þe barayn Isle stondingⁿ in þe see
þe dreyntⁿ leander for his erro
The teres of Elyne and eke þe woo
Of Brixseidⁿ and of þe ladomya
The cruelte of quene Medea /
þe litel children honging^e^ by þe hals
ffor þe Iason þatⁿ was of loue so fals
Of ypinistra penolope Alceste
3oure wivehode he co*m*mendeþ wiþ þe bestⁿ
Butⁿ certeynly no worde ne writeþ he
Of þilk wicke ensample of canace
þatⁿ luffed her oune broþe*r*e synfully
Of such*e* cursed storis I seie fye
Or ellis of Tiro Appolloneus
How þatⁿ þe cursed kingⁿ Antiocus
Biraftⁿ his dou3ter of her maydenhede
þatⁿ is so horrible a tale for to rede
Whan he her drewe þorgh-outⁿ þe pamentⁿ [leaf 86]
And þerfor he of ful avisementⁿ
Nold neuer write in none of his se*r*mons
Of suchⁿ vnkinde abhomynacions.
Ne I ne wil none reherce if þatⁿ I may
Butⁿ of my tale how shal I done þis day
Me were lothⁿ be likned doutlees
To muses þatⁿ men clepen pieriades
Methanorphoseos wote whatⁿ I mene
Butⁿ naþelees I recche notⁿ a bene
þou3e I come after hym wiþ hawe bake
I speke in prose and latⁿ hy*m* rymes make
And wiþ þatⁿ wordⁿ he wiþ a sobre chere
Bygan his tale as 3e shal after here

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe** [*no break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ þe Mannys of lawe Tale ¶ Incipit fabula

[*Prologue.*]

O hateful harme condicioñ of pouert' 99
Wiþ þrust' wiþ cold' with hunger so confounded'
To asken help þe shamest' in þine hert'
If þowe now aske wiþ nede art' þou so wounded' 102
Þat' verrey nede vnwrappeþ al þi wonud hed
Maugre in þine hede þou most' for indigence
Or stele or begge or borowe þi dispence 105

Thow blamest' crist' and seist' ful bitterly
He mysdepartep ricches temporal
þi neighbour þow witest' sinfully
And saist' þou hast' to litel and he haþ aH 109
Parfay seist' þou somtyme he rekne shaH
Whan þat' his tale shal brenne in þ^e glede
ffor he nouȝt' helpeþ nedeful in her nede 112

Herken what' is þe menyng' of þe wise
Bett' is to dyen þan haue indigence
þi self neighboure wil þe despise
If þou be poor fare wele þi reuerence. 116
ȝit' of þe wise man take þis sentence [leaf 86, back]
Al þe daies of poor men ben wikke
Be war þerfore er þou come in þat prikke 119

ȝif þou be poor þi broþer hateþ þe
And alle þi freendes fleen fro þe alas
O riche marchauntes ful of wele be ȝe
O noble prudent' folk as in þis cas 123
ȝoure bagges bene not' filled with ambees aas
But' wiþ sise cynk þat' renneþ for ȝour chance
At' Cristes mas mery may ȝe daunce 126

3e seken londe and ffe for 3o*ur* wynnyngges
As wise folk þat' knowen al þe state
Of regnes 3e bene fadere of Tithenges
And tales boþen of pees & debate
I was ri3t' nowe of tales desolate
Ner þat' a marchaunt' gone is mony a 3ere
Me taught' a tale which þ*at* 3e shal here
[*Only the usual stanza-gap of a line in the MS.*]

[*As there is no room in this print for the Latin notes in the margin of the MS, they are put here, with the numbers of the lines to which they refer.*]

l. 197. ¶ Ceptra pharonei fr*atrum* discordia thebe
¶ fflam*mam* phetentis deutalionis aque
¶ In stellis p*ri*ami. spec*ies* audacia t*urni*
¶ Sens*us* vlixeus herculies q*ue* vigor [MS, leaf 87, back.]

l. 295. ¶ Vn*de* Philome*us* li*bro* .j°. c°. 8°. p*rimi* motus celi duo s*unt* q*uorum* vn*us* est qui mouet totu*m* semp*er* ab oriente & occidente vno mo*do* sup*er* orbes & *cetera*. Ita alit*er* ver*o* m.otus e*st* q*ui* mouet orbe*m* stellar*um* c*urrencium* co*ntra* motu*m* p*rimum* viz ab occidente in orient*em* s*uper* alios duos polos & *cetera*. Omn*es* .e*nim*. co*n*cordati sunt q*uod* elocc*iones* sint debiles n*isi* in di*vitibus*. h*abent* .e*nim*. isti licet debilitent*ur* eor*um* electiones radicem .i. nativitates eor*um* q*uæ* co*n*fortat omnem planeta*m* debilem in Itinere. Hec. Ph*ilosophus*. [MS, leaf 89.]

l. 421. ¶ Semp*er* mu*n*dane leticie tristicia repentina succedit. Mundana *er*go felicitas multis amaritudinib*us* est resp*er*sa Extrema gaudii. luct*us* occupat. Audi *er*go salubre consiliu*m* i*n* die bo*n*or*um* ne i*n*memor sis malor*um*. [MS, leaf 91.]

l. 771. ¶ Quid t*ur*pius ebrioso cui fetor in ore. tremor i*n* corp*ore*. qui p*ro*mit stulta. p*ro*dit occulta Cui mens alienat*ur* facies t*ra*nsfor*ma*tur nullu*m* e*nim* latet secretu*m*. vbi regnat Eb*r*ietas. [MS, leaf 96, back.]

l. 925. ¶ O ext*re*ma libidinis turpitudo que non solum mente*m* effeminat. s*ed et* corpus ene*r*uat semp*er* sequ*un*t*ur* dolor & penitencia p*ost* &*cetera*. [MS, leaf 99.]

l. 1127. ¶ A mane vs*que* ad vesper*am* mutabitur te*m*pus. tenent tympanu*m* & gaude*n*t ad sonu*m* organi. [MS, leaf 102, back.]

l. 1134. Q*u*is vnq*uam* vnica*m* die*m* totam duxit in sua delectacione iocu*n*da*m* que*m* in aliq*ua* parte die reatus consciencie vel impetus ire vel mot*us* co*n*cupiscencie inde no*n* turbauerit que*m* liuor invidie vel ardor auaricie vel ti*m*or sup*er*bie no*n* vexaue*r*it. q*uem* aliq*ua* iactura vel offensa vel passio no*n* co*m*mouerit & c*etera*. [MS, leaf 102, back.]

[*TALE. PART I.*]

In Surry whilom dwelt' a companye
Of Chapmen riche *and* þerto sadde *and* trewe
þat' wide where setten her spicerie
Clopes of golde and saten riche of hue
Her chaffare was so þrifty *and* so nwe
þat' euery wi3t' haþ deynte to chafare
Wiþ hem and eke to sellen hem her ware

Nowe fille it' þat' þe maisters of þat' sort'
Han shapen hem to Rome forto wende
Were it' for chapmanhode or for disport'
Noon oþer massage wold þei þider sende
But' commen hem self to Rome þis is þe ende
And in suche place as þou3t' hem auauntage
ffor her entent' þei taken her herbergage

Soiourned han þise merchaundes in þat' toun [leaf 87]
A certeyn tyme as fille to her plesaunce
But' so byfelle þat' þe excellen renoun
Of þe Emperour dou3tere Dame Castaunce
Reported was with euery circumstaunce
Vnto þise Surryen merchauntz in such wise
ffro day to day as I shal 3ou deuise

This was þe comon vois of euery man
Our Emperour of Rome god hym see
A doughter haþ þat' siþe þe world bygan
To rekne as wel her goodnes as bewte
Nas neuere such anoþer as is she
I prei to god in honure hir sustene
And wolde she were of al Europe þe quene ¶ Europia est' tercia / pars mundi

In hure is hegh bewte wiþ-oute pride
3ouþe wiþ-out' grenehode or folye
To aH her werkes vertue is her gide
Humblesse haþ 'sclayn in hire al tyrannye
She is a myrour of al Curtesie
Hire herte is verrey chambere of holynesse
Her hand mynystre of fredam for almesse

And al þis vois was soþ as god is trewe
But' nowe to purpoos lat' vs turne ageyn
þise Merchauntz han do fraught her shippes ñewe
And whan þei han þis blisful Maiden seyñ
Howe to Surrey ben þei went' ageyñ
And done her nedes as þei han do 3ore
And lyuen in wele I can say 3ou no more

Now fille it' þat' þise marchauntes stoden in grace
Of hym þat' was þe Sawden of Surrye
ffor whan þat' þei came from eny strañge place
He wolde of his benygne Curtesie.
Make hem good chere and bysilie ãspie [leaf 87, back]
Tiþingges of sondry rewmes forto lere
þe wondres þat' þei my3t' se or here

Amonges oþere þingges specialy
Thise marchauntes han hym tolde of dame custaunce
So grete noblesse in ernest' ceriously
þat' þis sowden haþ caught' so grete plesaunce
To han her figure in his remembraunce
And al his lust' and al his bysy cure
Was forto loue her' þe whilis his lif may dure

Perauenture in þe þikke large book
Whicñ þat' cloped is heuene ywriten was
Wiþ sterres whan þat' he his birthñ toke
þat' he for loue shuld' han his dethñ allas

ffor in þe sterres clerer þan is þe glas /
y-writen god wote who coude it' rede
þe deþe of euery man *with*-outen drede 196

In Sterris mony a wynter þer byforn̄ [*Latin note*, p. 133.] 133
Was writen þe deþ of Ector achilles
Of pompe Iulius er þei were born̄
þe strif' of Thebes and of hercules / 200
Of sampson turuno *and* of Soc*r*ates
þe deþ but' mennys wittes ben̄ so dulle
þat' no wi3t' can wol rede it at' þe fulle 203

This souden for his p*r*ive counseH sent'
And shortly of þis matere forto pase
He haþ to hem declared his entent'
And seide hem certeyn but' he my3t' haue g*r*ace 207
To haue custance wiþ-Inne a litel space
He nas but' dede *and* charged hem in hie
To shapen for his lif' som*m*e remedye 210

Dyuers men dyuers þingges seiden
þe argumentz Custen vp and Doun̄ [leaf 88]
Mony a sotele resoñ forþ þei leiden̄
þei speken of magik' and abusioñ 214
But' fynaly as in conclusioñ
þei can not' seen in þat' noñ au*a*untage
Ne in noon oþer way sauf mariage 217

Than segH̄ þei þere in suc̄h difficulte
Be way of reson forto speke al playñ
By cause þat' þer was suc̄h dyuersite
Bytwene hor boþ lawes þat' þei seyñ 221
þei trowe þat' no cristen p*r*ince wold' fayn)
Wedden his childe vnder oure lawes so swete
þat' vs was taught' be Mahoun our p*r*ophete 224

And he answered raþer þan I lese
Custance I wil be Cristened doutlees
I mote bene hers I may non oþer*e* chese
I prei 3ou holde 3oure argumentes in pees
Saueþ my lif and beþ not' rechelees
To geten hur*e* þat' haþ my lif in cure
ffor in þis woo I may not' longe endure

What' nedeþ gretter dilataciõ
I saye by tretis and Embassadrye
And by þe popes mediaciõ
And alle þe cherch̃ and aH̃ þe Chivalrye
þat' in destruccioñ of Mawmetrie
And in encrees of cristes lawe dere
þei bene acorded so as 3e shal here

Now þat' þe Sawden and his Baronage
And al his lieges shuld yc*r*istened be
And he shal haue custance i*n* mariage
And certeyn gold' I note what' quantite
And herto founden sufficient' suerte
This same accorde was sworn in eiþer side [leaf 88, back]
Now faire custaunce almy3ty god þe gyde

Now wold' som*m*e men waiten as I gesse
þat' I shulde tellen al þe purviaunce
That' þe Emp*e*rour of his noblesse
haþ shapen for his dou3ter dame Custa*u*nce
Wel may men knowe þat' so grete ordyna*u*nce
May no man telle in a litel clause
As was araied for so hie a cause

Bisshopes bene shapen wiþ hur*e* forto wende
Lordes ladys kny3tes of reno*u*n
And oþer folk ynow þis is þe ende
And notified is þorgh-out' þe toun

That' euery wi3t' *with* grete deuocio*un*
Shulde preye crist' þat' he þis mariage
Resceyue in gre and spede þis viage

The day is co*m*men of her dep*ar*tinge
I seie þe wooful day fatal is come
That' þer may be no lenger tariynge
But' forþward' þei hem dressed al and some
Custance þat' *with* sorowe is al ouercome
fful pale arist' and dresseþ hur*e* to wende
ffor wel shee seeþ þer is noon oþ*er*e ende

Allas what' wondere is it' þou3e she wepte
þat' shal be sent' to straunge naciõñ
ffro frendes þat' so tenderly her kepte
And to be bounden vnder subiecciõñ
Of oon she knoweþ nou3t' his *con*diciõñ
Husbondes bene all good and han ben 3ore
þat' knowen wives I dar seie 3ou no more

Fadere she seide þ' wrecched child custance
Thi 3onge dou3tere fostred vp so soft' ¶ Cap. 9 [leaf 80]
And 3e my modere my souereyn plesaunce
Ouer al þinge outaken *crist* aloft'
Custaunce 3oure child' hire recomanndeþ oft'
Vnto 3oure grace for I shal to Surrye
Ne shal I neuere seyn 3ow more wiþ ye

Allas vnto þe Barbarye naciõñ
I most' anoon siþ it' is 3oure wille
But' crist' þat' starf' for oure redempciõñ
So 3eue me grace his heestes to fulfille
I wrecched wo*m*m*a*n no-fors þou3e I spille
Wo*m*men ben borũ to thraldom and pen*aun*ce
And to bene vnder mannes gou*er*n*aun*ce

I trowe at' Troye whan purrus brak þe wall
Or ylyon þat' brent' Thebes þat' Cite.
Nor Rome for þe harme þorgh Hanyball
þat' Romaynes han venqwisshed tymes þre
Nas herd' such tendere weping' for pite
As in þe Chambere for her departinge
But' forþ she mote wher she wepe or singe

O first' mouynge cruel firmament' [*Latin note*, p. 133.] 182
Wiþ þine dyurnal sweigh þat crowdest' aye
And hurlest' al from east' to occident'
That' naturelly wold' hold' anoþer waye
þi Crowding' sette þe heuene in such araye
At' þe bygynnyng' of þis feers viage
That' cruel mars haþ sclayn þis mariage

Infortunat' ascendent' tortuous
Of which þe lord is helplees falle allas
Out' of his Angle in to þe derkest' hous
O Mars o Atazir in this caas
O feble mone vnhappy bene þi paas./
þow knettest' þe þer þou art' not' receyued [leaf 89, back]
Ther þou were wele fro þennes now art' þou weyued

Imprudent' Emperour of Rome alas ¶ Inspirant
Was þer no Philisophre in al þi toun
Is no tyme bette þan oþer in such cas/
Of viage is þer non election
Namely to folk of high condicion
Nat' whan a roote is of a birþ yknowe
Allas ȝe bene to lewde or to sclowe

The shippe is brouȝt' þis woful faire mayde
Solempnely wiþ euery circumstaunce
Nowe Ihesu crist' be wiþ ȝou al she seide
Ther is no more but' fare wel faire Custaunce

She peyneþ hure to make good countenaunce
And forþe I lete hire saile in þis manere
And turne I wil ageyn to my matere

The modere of þe Sowden welle of vices
Espied haþ her sones pleyn entent
Howe he wil lete his olde sacrifises
And riȝt anone she for her counsel sent
And þei ben commen to knowe what she ment
And whan assembled was þis folk in fere
She sette her doune and seide as ȝe shal here

Lordes quod she ȝe knowe euerichoñ
Howe þat my sone in poynt is forto lete
þe holy lawes of our akkaroñ
ȝeuene by goddes massagere Makamete
But oñ avowe to grete god I hete
þe lif shal raþer out of my body sterte
Or makametes lawe out of myñ herte.

What shuld vs tyden of þis newe lawe
But þraldome to our bodies and penaunce [leaf 90]
And afterward in helle to ben drawe
ffor we reveied Mahonne our creaunce
But lordes wil ȝe maken assurance
As I shal sein assenting to my lore
And I shal make vs sauf for euermore

¶ Thei sworen and assenten euery man
To lyve and dye wiþ hure and by hure stonde
And euery in þe best wise he can
To strengthen hure shal al his freendes fonde
And she haþ þis emprise taken on honde
Which ȝe shal here þat I shal devise
And to hem alle she spak in þis wise

We shul first' feyn vs *cri*stendom to take
Cold watere shal not' greue vs but' a lite
And I shal suche a reuel and feest' make
þat' as I trowe I shal þe Sowden quite
ffor þou3e his wif be cristned neuer so white
She shal haue nede to wassh̄ awaye þe rede
þough̄ she a font' ful of water wiþ her lede

O Sawdenesse Roote of Iniquite
Virago þou Semyram þe Second'
O Serpent' vnder femyninete
Like to þe Serpent' depe in helle ybound'
O feyned wo*m*man al þat' may confound'
Vertue and Innocence þorgh̄ þi malice
Is bredde in þe as nest' of euery vice

O Sathan envious siþ þilk day
þat' þou were chased fro *our* heritage
Wel knewest' þou to wo*m*men þ^e^ old' way
þou madest' Eva to bringe in seruage
Thow wilt' fordone cristen mariage
Thyn̄ Instrument' so wele away þe while
Makestowe of wo*m*men wham þou wilt' begile [leaf 90, back]

This Sowdonesse whom I *þus* blame *and* warye
Lat' prively her counsel gone her way
What' shuld I in þis tale lenger tarye
She rideþ to þe Sawden on a daye
And seide him þat' she wold renoye her laye
And Cristendom of preestes hondes fonge
Repenting' she heþen was so longe

Biseching' him to done her þat honour*e*
þat' she most' han þ^e^ cristen folk to feest'
To plesen hem I wil do my labo*ur*
þe Sawden seiþ I wil don̄ at' 3o*ur* heest'

And knelinge þonkeþ hure of þat' request'
So glad he was he nyst' what' to seye
She kist' her sone and hom she goþ her way

[*PART II.*]

Arriued bene þise *cri*sten folk to londe
In Surrye wiþ a grete solempne Route
And hastely þis Sowden sent' his sonde
ffurst' to his modere and al þe regne aboute
And seide his wiff was *com*men out' of doute
And preide hure forto riden ageyn þe quene
The honure of his regne to sustene

Grete was þe prees and rich̄ was tharray
Of Surriens and romaynes met' yfere
The modere of þe Sowden riche *and* gay
Resceyueþ her' wiþ as glad a chere
As eny modere myȝt her douȝter' dere
And to þe next' Cite þer beside
A soft' paas solempnely þei ryde

Naught' trowe I þe *tri*umphe of Iulius
Of which̄ þat' lucan makeþ such̄ a boost'
Was ryallere ne more curious [leaf 91]
Than was þe assemple of þis blisful hoost'
But' þis scorpion þis wikke goost'
þe Sawdenesse for al her flateringe
Cast' vnder þis ful mortally to stynge

The Sowden *com*meþ hy*m* self' sone after' þis
So Rialli þat' wonder' is to telle
He welcommeþ hure *with* alle ioye *and* blis
And þus in merþe and Ioie I lete he*m* dwelle

þe froyte of þis matere þat I telle
Whan tyme come men þouȝt it for þe best
That reuell stint and men goñ to her rest

The tyme come þis olde Sawdenesse
Ordeyned haþ þis feest of which I told
And to þe fest cristen folk hem dresse
In general boþ ȝenge and old
Here may men feest and rialte bihold
And deyntes moo þan I can ȝou devise
But al to dere þei bouȝt it er þei rise

O sodeyn woo þat euer art successoure [*Latin note*, p. 133.] 182
To worldly blisse sp[r]ayned is wiþ bitternesse
þe end of þe ioye of our worldely laboure
Woo occupieþ þe fyne of our gladnesse
Herk þis counsaille for þi sikernesse
Vppon þi glade day haue in þi mynde
þe vnwar woo or harme *þat commeþ* behinde

For shortely forto tellen at oon word
The Sowden and þe *cristen* euerechone
Bene al to-hewe and stikked at þe bord
But it were oonly dame custance allone
þis olde Sawdenes *þis* cursed krone
haþ wiþ her frendes done þis cursed dede
ffor she her self wold al þe cuntre lede [leaf 91, back]

NE þer nas Surrien noon þat was *conuerted*
þat of þe counsaille of þe Sawden wote
þat he nas al to-hewe er he asterted
And Custaunce han þei take anoñ fote hoot
And in a shippe al steerless god woote
þei han hure sette and bidden her lerne saile
Out of Surry ageynward to ytaile

A certeyn tresour þat' she þider' ladde
And soþe to seyn vitaile grete plente
They han her ȝeuen and cloþes eke she hadde
And fforþ she sailleþ in þe salt' see
O my custaunce ful of benygnyte
O Emperours ȝonge douȝtere dere
He þat' is lord of fortune be þi stere

She blesseþ and wiþ ful pitous voys
Vnto þe Crois of crist' þus seid she
O cleer o. welful autere holy croys
Rede of þe lambes blood ful of pite
That' wessh̄ þe world' from þe olde iniquyte
Me from þe feende and from his clawes kepe
þat' day þat' I shal drenche in þe depe

Victorious tree protectiō of trewe
That' oonly worþi were for to bere
The king' of heuene wiþ his woundys newe
The white lombe þat' hirte was with̄ a spere
fflemer of feendes out' of hym and here
On which̄ þi lyues feiþfully extenden
Me kepe and ȝeue myght' my lyf tamenden

Yeeres and daies fleet' þis Creature
Thorgh̄-out' þe see of Grece vnto þ^e strayte
Of Marrok as it' was hir' aventure [leaf 92]
O mony a sory mele nowe may she baite
After her deth̄ ful oft may she wayte
Er þat' þe wilde wawes wil her dryve
Vnto þe place þere she shal aryue

MEn myghten axen whi she was not' sclayn
Eke atte feeste who myght' her body saue
I Answere to þat' demannde agayn̄
Who saued Danyel in þe horrible caue

Ther euery wiȝt saf he maister or knaue
Was wiþ þe leon frette or a-sterte
No wight but god þat hem bare in his herte

GOd list to shewe his wonderful myracle
In hir? þat shee shulde seen his myȝty werkes
Crist which þat is to euery harme triacle
By certayne meenes oft / as knowen clerkes
Doþ þing for certeyn ende þat ful derk es
To mannys witt? þat for our ignoraunce
Ne kon not knowe his prudent puruyaunce

Now siþ she was not at þe feest ysclawe
Who kepte her from þe drenching in þe see
Who kepte Ionas in þe fisshes mawe
Til he was spowted vp at Nynyve
Wel may men knowe it was no wiȝt but he
What kept puple Ebrayk from drenchinge
Wiþ drie feet þorgh out þe see passinge

Who bad þe foure spiretes of tempest
That power han boþ annoyen londe *and* see
Boþ norþe and souþe *and* also west *and* Eest
Annoyeþ neiþer See londe ne tree
Soþly þe Comannder of þat was he
That from þe tempest ay þis wo*m*man kept
As wel whan she woke as whan she sclepte [leaf 92, back]

Where myȝt þis wo*m*man mete or drynk haue
Thre ȝere or more how lasteþ hir vitaille
Who fedde þe Egipcien mary in þe Caue
Or in desert noon but Crist saunz faille
V. Mł. folk it was as grete m*er*vaille
Wiþ loues .v. and fisshes two to fede
God sent his foysen at her grete nede

She dryueþ forþ into our Occiān
Thorgh-out oure wilde See to atte laste
Vnder an holde þat nempne I ne can
ffor in Nourth humberlonde þe wawe hire caste
And in þe sonde her shipp stiked so fast
þat þennes wold it not of al a tyde
The wille of Crist was þat she shulde abide

The Constable of þe Castel doun is fare
To seen þis werk and al þe ship he souȝte
And fonde þis wery womman ful of care
He fonde also þe tresoure þat she brouȝte
In her langage mercy she bysouȝte
The life out of her body forto twynne
Hire to delyuere of woo þat she was Inne

A Manere latyn̄ corrupte was her speche
But algates þer-by was she vnderstonde
The Constable whan he liste no lengere seche
This wooful womman brouȝte he to þe londe
She kneleþ doune *and* þonkeþ goddys sonde
But what she was she wolde no man seye
ffor foule ne faire þouȝe þat she shulde deye

She seide she was so mased in the See
þat she forgate hure mynde by hure trouþe
The Constable of hire haþ so grete pite [leaf 98]
And eke his wiff þat þei wepen for rouþe
She was so diligent wiþ-outen slouþe
To serue and plese euerech̄ in þat place
That al her louen þat loken on her face /

The Constable and dame Ermengelde his wiffe
Were paynymes and þat contray eue*r*ywhere
But Hermengilt loued hure riȝt as hir liffe
And Constance haþ so longe soiou*r*ned þere

In Orisons wiþ mony a bitter tere
Til Ihesu haþe conuerted þorgh̄ his grâce
Dame hermengild̄ Constablesse of þat place

In all̄ þat' londe durst' none cristen route
Alle Cristen folk' ben fledd̄ fro þat' cuntre
Thorgh̄ paynymes þat' conquered þer aboute
þe plages of þe north̄ by lond *and* see
To wales fledde þe Cristiante
Of olde Bretoynes dwellin in þe Ile
Ther was hure refute for þe mene while

But' 3it' nas neuere cristen Bretoyne so exiled
That' þer nas somme in her priuetee
Honoured Crist' and heþen folk' begyled
And ny3e þe Castel such̄ þer dwelled thre
That' oon of hem was blynde *and* my3t' not' see
But' it' were wiþ þilk yen of his mynde
With̄ which̄ men seen after þat' þei bene blynd̄

Bri3t' was þe sonne as in þat' somers day
ffor whiche þe constable and his wif also
And Custance han ytake þe ri3t' way
Toward þe see a forlonge way or two
To pleien and to romen to *and* froo /
And in her walk' þis blynde man þei mette
Croked and olde wiþ fast' eyen yshett' [leaf 93, back]

In þe name of crist' cried þis blynd Bretoun
Dame hermegild̄ 3eue me si3t' agayn
This lady wexe a-fraied of þe soune
Lest' þat' her husbond̄ shortely forto seyne
Wold hure for Ihesu cristes loue haue slayn̄
Til Custance made hure bold *and* bad hire wirche
The wille of crist' as dou3ter' of his chirche

The constable wexe abasshed of þat' sight'
And seide what' amounteþ al þis fare
Custance answerd' Sire it' is cristes myȝt'
þat' helpeþ folk out' of þe fendes snare
And so ferforþ she can our lay declare
þat' she þe constable er it was eve
Conuerteþ and on crist' made hym byleue

This Constable nas no þing' lord' of þis place
Of whicħ I speke þer he Custaunce fonde
But' kepte it' strongly mony a wynter' space
Vnder Alla king' of aħ Norþhumberlonde
þat' was fuħ wise and worþi of his honde
Ageyne þe scottes as men may wel here
But' turne I wil ageyn to my matere

Sathan þat' euere vs waiteþ to begile
Seghe of Custance al hure perfeccioun
And cast' anone howe he myȝt' quyte her while
And made a yonge knyght' þat' dwelt' in þe toun
Loue hire so hoot' of foule affeccioun
þat verrely hym þouȝt' he shulde spille
But' he of hire' ones myȝt' haue his wille

He woweþ hure but' it' availleþ nouȝt'
She wolde do no synne by no weye
And for despite he compased in his þouȝt' [leaf 94]
To make hure a shameful deeþ to dye
He waiteþ whan þe constable was away
And priuely vpon a nyȝt' he crept'
In hermengildes Chambre while she slept'

Wery for-waked in her Orisons
Slepeþ Custance and hermengild' also /
This knyght' þourgħ Sathanas temptacioñs
Al softly is to þe bed y-goo

And kitte þe þrote of hermengild' atwoo ,
And laide þe blody knyf by dame Custa*un*ce
And went' his waye þer god ȝeue hy*m* meschau*n*ce

Sone after Co*m*meþ þis Constable home agayn̄
And Eke Alla þat' kinge was of þat' londe
And segh̄ his wiff dispitously slayn̄
ffor whiche ful oft' he wepte and wronge his hondo
And in þe bedde þe blody knyf he fonde
By dame Custau*n*ce allas what' myȝt' she say
ffor verry woo her witte was al away

So kinge Alla was tolde al þis meschau*n*ce
And eke þe tyme and where and *in* what wise
þat' in a shipp was founden þis Custau*n*ce
As here byforn ȝe han herde devise
The kingges hert' of pite gan agrise
Whan he seye so benigne a creature
ffalle in dissese and in mysauenture

For as þe lombe toward' þ^e^ deth is brouȝt'
So þis Innocent' stant' to-fore þe king'
þis fals knyȝt' þat' haþ þis tresoñ wrouȝt'
Bereþ hure on honde þat' she haþ do þis þing'
But' naþelees þer was grete mo*u*rnyng'
Amonge þe puple and seie þai can not gesse
Tha[t] she had done so grete a wickednesse [leaf 91, back]

For þei han seyn her' eue*r*e so ve*r*tuous
And louyng' hermengile riȝt' as her liff
Of þis bare witnesse eue*r*ich̄ in þat' hous
Saue he þat' hermengild' slowe *with* his knyff
This gentile kinge haþ kauȝt' a gret' motiff
Of þis witnesse and þouȝt' he wold' enquere
Depper in þis caas trouþe forto lere

Allas Custañce þow nast' no champyoñ
Ne fighte Canstowe nat' so wele away
But' he þat' for oure redempcioñ
And bonde Sathan and lyeþ hym *per* he lay
So be þi strong' Champioñ þis daye
ffor but' *Cr*iste on þe miracle kitħ
Wiþ-owten gilt' þou shalt' be slayn as swiþe

She sette her doune on knees and *per* she seide
Immortal god þat' sauedest' Susanne
ffro fals blame and þou merciful maide
Marye I mene douȝter to seint' Anne
Byforn whoos childe aungels sing' Osanne
If I be giltlees of þis felonye
My socoure be for ellis shal I dye

Haue ȝe not' sene somtyme a pale face
Among' a prees of him þat' haþ be ladde
Toward' þe deþe where as he gete no grace
And swicħ a coloure in his face haþ hadde
Men myȝt' knowe his face þat' was bistadde
Amonge alle þe faces of þat' route
So stant Custañce and lokeþ hire aboute

O quenes lyuynge in prosp*er*ite
Duchesses and ȝe ladies euerechon*e*
Haue some rouþe on her adu*er*site [leaf 95]
An Emp*er*ours douȝtere stant' allone
She haþ no wiȝt' to whom to make her mone
O blood real þat' stondest' in þis drede
ffer bene þi frendes at' þi grete nede

This Alla king' haþ swicħ compassio*un*
As Geltile hert' is fulfilled of pite
þat' from his eyen ranne þe water do*un*
Now hasteli do feeche a boke quod he

And if þis knyghtˈ wil swere howe þat she.
þis womman sclowe ȝitˈ wil we vs avise
Whom þatˈ we woldˈ shuld be our Iustise

A breton booke writen with euangelics
Was fette and þer-on he swore anone
She giltif was in þe mene whiles
An honde him smote vpon þe nekke bone
þatˈ doune he felle atˈ ones as a stone
And boþe his eyen brastˈ outˈ of his face
In siȝtˈ of euery body in þat place

A voys was herde in general audience
And seide þou hastˈ disslaundered giltelees
þe douȝter of holy churchē in highē presence
Thus hastowe done and ȝitˈ I motˈ holdˈ my pees
Of þis mervaile agastˈ was alˈ þe prees
As mazed folkˈ þei stoden euerechone
ffor drede of wreche sauf Custance alone

Grete was þe drede and eke þe repentaunce
Of hem þatˈ hadden wrongˈ suspecioun
Vppon þis cely Innocentˈ Custaunce
And for þis miracle in conclusioun
And by Custance Mediacioun
þe kinge and mony anoþer in þat place
Conuerted were þonked be goddis grace [leaf 95, back]

This fals knyghtˈ was sclaynē for his vntrouþe
By Iuggementˈ of Alla hastifly
And ȝitˈ Custance haþ of his deþ gretˈ rouþe
And after þis Ihesus of his mercye
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely
This holy maiden þatˈ is so briȝtˈ and shene
And þus haþ cristˈ made Custance a quene

But who was wooful if I shal not lye
Of þis wedding but donegild *and* no moo /
The kingges modere ful of Tyrannye
Hire þouȝt her cursed hert brast a two
She wold not her sone had done so /
Hire þouȝt a despite þat he shulde take
So straunge a creature vnto his make

ME list not of þe Chaf ne of þe stre
Make so longe a tale as of þe corne
What shuld I tellen of þe Rialte
Of mariage or which cours goþ byforne
Who bloweþ in trompe or in an horne
þ^e^ ffrwte of euery tale is forto seye
þe[i] and drinke. þei daunce singe or pley.

Thei gone to bedde as it was skil *and* riȝt
ffor þouȝe þat wives bene ful holy þingges
þei most take in pacience a nyght
Such manere necessaries as ben plesingges
To folk þat han ywedded hem *with* ringges /
And laye a litel her holynesse aside
As for þe tyme it may none oþ*er*e betide

On hire he gate a knaue child anone
And to a bisshope and his Constable eke
He toke his wif to kepe whan he is gone [leaf 96]
to scotlond ward his foomen for to seke
Nowe faire Custance þat is so humble *and* meke
So longe is goon wiþ child til þat stille
She halt her chambere abiding *cr*istes wille

The tyme is come a knaue child she bere
Mauricius atte fontstone þei hym calle
þis Constable doþ forþ come a massagere
And wrote to his kinge þat cleped was Alle

Howe þat' þis blisful tydyngg*es* is byfalle·
And oþer tydingges spedeful forto seye
He takeþ þe l*ett*re and forþ he goþ his waye

This Massagere to done his au*aun*tage
Vnto þe kingges mode*re* rideþ swiþe
And salweþ hire ful faire in his langage
Madame quod he. ȝe may be glad *and* bliþe
And þonkeþ god an hundred þousand' siþe
My lady quene haþ child' wiþ-outen doute
To Ioie and blisse of al þis regne aboute

Lo here þe l*ett*res seled of þis þinge
þat' I mot' bere wiþ al þe hast' I may
If ȝe wil ouȝt' vnto ȝoure sone þe kinge
I am ȝoure serv*aun*te boþ nyȝt' *and* day
Dongild' answerd' not' not' at' þis tyme
But' here al nyȝt' I wil þou take þi rest'
To morowe wil I saye what' me lest'

This Massagere dronk' sadly ale *and* wyne
And stollen were his l*ett*res prively
Out' of his boxe whilst' he slepte as a swyn
And counterfeted was ful subtily
A noþ*er*e lett*re* wrouȝt' ful synfully
Vnto þe kinge directe of þis matere
ffrom his Constable as ȝe shal after here [leaf 96, back]

The lett*re* spak' þe Quene delyuered was
Of so horrible a fendlich creat*ur*e
That' in þe Castel noon so hardy was
þat' eny while dorst' þ*er*-Inne endure
The modere was an Elf by auent*ur*e
Ycome by Charmes or by sorcerye
And euery wight' hateþ her companye

WOo was þis kinge whan he þis *lettre* had seyne
But to no wiȝt' he tolde his sorowes sore
But' of his owne honde he wrote ageyne
Welcome þe sonde of *crist'* for euermoore
To me þat' am nowe lered in his lore
Lord welcome be þi lust' and þi plesaunce
My lust' is putte al in þine ordyn*aun*ce

Wepeþ þis child' al be it' foule or feire
And eke my wiff vnto myn home co*mm*ynge
Crist' whan him list' may sende me an heire
More a-greable þan þis is to my likinge
This letter he celeþ prively wepinge
Whiche to þe massagere was take sone
And forþ he goþ þer nys no more to done

O Massagere fulfilled of dronkenesse [*Latin note*, p. 133.] 182
Stronge is þi breþ þi ly*mm*es flateren ay
And þou by-wreiest' al sikernesse
Thy mynde is lorn þou Iangelest' as a Iaye
Thi face is turned in a newe aray
Ther dronkenesse regneþ in ony route
Ther nys no counseH hidde wiþ-out*e* doute

O Donegild' I ne haue noon englissh̄ digne
Vnto þi malice and þi tyrannye [1] [1 *line repeated in MS, with* tirannye, *as the first line of* leaf 97]
And þerfore to þe fende I þe resigne
Lat' hym enditen of þi traterye
ffy ma*nn*yssh̄ fy. o nay by god I lie
ffy feendissh̄ spirit'. for I dar wel telle
Thowe þou here walk' þi spirit' is in helle

This massagere co*mm*eþ fro þe feende agayn̄
And at' þe kingges moders court' he liȝt'
And she was of this massagere ful fayn̄
And plesed him in al þ*at* eu*er*e she myȝt'

He drank wel his girdel vnder pi3t'
He sclepeþ and he ffronteþ in his gise
Al nyght' to þe sonne gan arise

Ofte were his *lett*res stolle eu*e*rec̃ion*e*
And counterfeted *lett*res in þat' wise
þe kinge co*m*maundeþ his constable anon*e*
Vp peyn of hongyng' on an higħ Iwyse
That' he ne shulde suffre in no wise
Custance wiþ-Inne his regne forto abide
Thre daies and a quarter of a tyde

But' in þe same ship as he hir*e* fonde
Hur*e* and her yonge sone and al her gere
He shulde putte and croude fro þ^e^ londe
And charge hure þat' she neuere eft come þere
O my Custañce wel may þi goost' haue fere
And sleping' in þi dreme bene in pen*au*nce
Whan donegil cast' aH hir ordin*au*nce

This Massagere on morowe whan he woke
Vnto þe Castel halt' þe next' waye
And to þe Constable he þe *lett*re toke
And whan þat' he þis pitous *lett*re saye
fful oft he seide allas and walawaye
lord Crist' quod he howe may þis *lett*re endure [leaf 97, back]
So ful of synne is mony a creature

O my3ty god if' þat' it' be þi wille
Siþ þou art' ri3t'ful Iuge how may it' be
þat' þou wilt' suffren Innocentz to spille
And wicked folk regnen in prosp*e*rite
O good Custance allas so woo is me
þat' I mote be þi turmento*ur* or deye
On shames deth̃ þer nys noon o þ*e*re waye

Wepen boþ 3onge and olde in al þat' place
Whan þat' þe kinge þis cursed *lettre* sent'
And Custance wiþ a dedly pale face
þe ferþe day toward' her ship she went'
But' naþelees she takeþ in good entent'
þe wille of Crist' and kneling' in þe stronde
She saide lorde o. welcome be þi sonde

He þat' me kept' from þe fals blame
While I was in þe londe amonges 3ou
He kan me kepe from harme *and* eke fro sham
In salt' See al-þou3e I se not' howe
As stronge as euer he was he is ri3t' nowe
In hym trust' I and in his modere dere
þat' is to me my saille and eke my stere

Hire litel child' lay weping' in her Arme
An kneling' pitously to him she seide
Pees litel sone I wil do þe noon harme
Wiþ þat' her keerchef of her hede she breide
And ouer' his smale yen she it' leyde
And in her Arme she lulleþ it' ful fast'
And in to heuene her yen vp she cast'

Modere quod she and maide bri3t' marie
Soþe is þat' þorowe wo*m*me*n*nys eggement' [leaf 98]
Mankinde was lorn and dampned ay to dye
ffor which̄ þi child' was on croys yrent'
þi blisful eyen segh̄ al his turment'
þan is þer no comparison bytwene
þi woo and any woo man may sustene

Thowe seghe þi sone yslayn bifore þine eyen
And 3it' now lyueþ my litel child *par*fay
Now lady bri3t' to whoom al woful crien
Thowe glory of wo*m*manhode þou faire may

þow hauen of refute briȝt' sterre of day
Rewe on my childe þat' of þi gentilnesse
Rewest' on euery Rwefull in distresse

O litel' child allas wat' is þi gilt'
þat' neuer wrouȝtest' synne as ȝit' parde
Why wil þine harde fadere haue þe spilt'
O mercye dere constable quod she
As lat' my litel childe dwelle here with þe
And ȝif þou darst' not' fauour hym for blame
So kisse him onys in his faders name

Therwiþ she lokeþ bacwarde to þe lande
And saide fare wel husbonde rewthlees
And vp she rest' and walkeþ doun þ^e^ stronde
Towarde þe shippe hire foloweþ al þe prees
And euere she preieþ her childe to holde his pees
And takeþ her leue and with an holy entent'
She blesseþ hire and into ship she went'

Availed was þe ship it' is no drede
Abundantly for hire a longe space
And oþer necessaries þat shulde nede
She had ynowe heryed be goddes grace
ffor wynde and weder almyȝty god purchase
And bringe hure home I can no better seye [leaf 98, back]
But' in þe See she driveþ forþ her weye

[*PART III.*]

Alla þe kynge commeþ home sone after' þis
Vnto his Castel of þe which I tolde
And axeþ wher his wif' and his childe is
The Constable gan about' his hert' colde

And pleynly al þe manere he hym told
As 3e han herde I can telle it no bettere
And shewep þe kinge his seele *and* his lettere

And seide lord as 3e commaunded me
Vp peyn of depe so haue I done certeyne
This massagere tormented was til he
Most be-knowen and tellen plat *and* pleyne
ffrom nyght to ny3t in what place he had leyne
And þus by witte and subtil enqueringe
Ymagened was by whom þis harme can sprynge

The honde was knowen þat þe lettere wrote
And al þe venyme of þis cursed dede
But in what wise certeynly I note
þe effecte is þis þat Alla out of drede
his modere sclowe þat mony men pleynly rede
That for she tratour was to her legeaunce
Thus endep old donegild with meschaunce

The Sorowe þat þis Alla ny3t *and* day
Makep for his wif and for his child also
Ther nys no tunge þat it telle may
But now wil I vnto Custance goo
That fletep in þe See in peyn *and* woo
V. 3ere and more as liked cristes sonde
Er þat her shippe approched vnto londe

Vnder an hethen Castell atte last
Of which þe name in my tixt no3t I fynde [leaf 99]
Custance and eke þe child þe see vp cast
Almy3ty god þat saueþ al man kinde
Haue on custaunce and her childe som mynde
þat fallen is in hethen hand eft sone
In poynt to spille as I shal telle 3ou sone

Downe fro þe Castell comþe þere mony a wiȝt
To gawen on þis ship and on custance
But shortely from þe Castel on a nyȝt
The lordes steward god ȝeue hym meschaunce
A theef þat had reyned our creaunce
Come into shipp allone and seide he shuld
Her lemman be where so she wold or nold

Woo was þis wrecched womman þoo bygone
Her childe cried and she cried pitously
But blisful mary halpe hure riȝt anone
ffor wiþ her strogelinge wel *and* myȝtely
þe theef fille ouer bord al sodeynly
And in þe See he dreynt for vengeance
And þus haþ crist vnwemmed kepte custance

O foule lust of luxurie lo þine ende [*Latin note*, p. 133, 182]
Not only þat þou fayntest mannys mynde
But verrely þou wilt his body shende
þe ende of þi werk or of þi lustes blynde
Is compleynyng how mony one may men fynde
þat nouȝt for werk somtyme but for þentente
To done þis synne bene eiþer slayn or shente

How may þis weike womman han þis strength
Hire to defend aȝeinst þis Renegat
O Golyas vnmesurable of length
How myȝt dauid make þe so mat
So yonge and of armure so desolat
How durst he loke vpon þi dredful face [leaf 99, back]
Wel may men seen it was but goddes grace

Who ȝaf Iudith corage or hardynesse
To scleen hym Olesphernus in his tent
And to delyuere out of wrecchednesse
The puple of god I seye for þis entent

That' riȝt' as god spirit' and vigor sent'
To hem and saued hem out' of meschaunce
So sent' he myȝt' and vigor to Custaunce

Forþ goþ þe shippe þorowe-out' þe narow mouþe
Of Iubaltar and scepte dryuyng aye
Som tyme west' and somtyme nourþe *and* souþe
And somtyme Este ful mony a wery daye
Til Cristes modère blessed be ȝe aye
haþ scapen þorgh̄ her endelees goodnesse
To make an ende of al her hevynesse

Now lat' vs stynt' of Custance but' a throwe
And speke we of þe Romayn Emperour
þat' out' of Surry haþ by letters knowe
þe sclaughter of Cristen folk and dishonoure
Doon to his douȝter by a fals tratour
I mene þe Cursed wicked Sowdenesse
That' at þe feest' leta scleen boþ more *and* lesse

For which̄ þe Emperour haþ sent' anoñ
His Senatour wiþ real ordynaunce
And oþer lordes god wote mony oñ
On Surriens to taken hie vengeaunce
They brennen sleen *and* bringgen hem to meschaunce.
fful mony a day but' shortely þis is þende
Homword' to Rome þei shapen hem to wende

This senatour repaireþ *with* victorye
To Romeward' saillinge ful Rially [leaf 100]
And mette þe Shippe dryuyng' as seiþ þe storye
In which̄ Custance *sitte ful pitously*
No þing' ne knewe *what' she was ne why*
She was *in* such̄ aray. *ne she nyl sey*
Of her astaat' þough̄ þat' she shulde deye

HE bringeþ her to Rome and to his wiff
He ȝaue hure and her ȝonge sone also
And wiþ þe Senatoure she lad her liff
Thus can our lady bringen out' of woo
Wooful Custance and mony an o*þer* moo
And longe tyme dwelled she in þat' place
In holy werkes euer as was hir*e* grace

The Senato*ur*s wif her Aunte was
But' for al þat' she knewe her neue*re* þe more
I wil no lenger tarien in þis cas
But' to kinge Alla whicħ I spake of yore
þat' for his wiff wepeþ and sigheþ sore
I wil retorne *and* lete I wil Custance
Vnder þe Senatours gouern*aun*ce

Kynge Alla whicħ þat' had his modere sclayñ
Vpon a day felle in suchħ repentaunce
þat' if I shortely tellen shal *and* playñ
To Rome he co*mm*eþ to resceyuen his penañce
And putte him in þe Popes ordinañce
In by and lowe and Ihesu crist' bysouȝt'
fforȝeue his wicked werkes þat' he wrouȝt'

The fame anon þorowe Room toune is born
How Alla þe king' shal co*mm*en in pilg*ri*mage
By herberiours þat' wenten hy*m* biforn
ffor whicħ þe Senatoure as was vsage
Rode hym aȝein and mony of his lynage
As wel to shewen his hie magnificence [leaf 100, back]
As to doon eny king' a Reuerence

Grete chere doþ þis noble Senato*ur*
To kinge Alla and he to hym also
Euerechħ of hem doþ o*þer*e grete hono*ur*
And so byfelle þat' in a day or twoo

This Senatour is to kingꝰ Alla goo /
To feestꝰ and shortely if I shal notꝰ ly
Custance sone in his Companye

Sommᵉ men woldꝫ seyn atte requestꝰ of Custance
This Senatour haþ ladde þis childꝫ to festꝰ
I may not tellen euery Circumstance
Be as be may þer was he atte leestꝰ
Butꝰ soþe is þis þatꝰ atꝰ his moders hestꝰ
Byforn alla duringe þe metes space
The Childe stode lokingꝰ in þe kingges face

This Alla kinge haþ of þe childꝫ gretꝰ wonder
And to þe Senatoure he seide anoon
Whoos is þatꝰ fáire childe þatꝰ stondeþ ȝonderꝰ
I nootꝰ quod he by god and be seyntꝰ Ioh̃n
A modere he haþ butꝰ fadere haþ he noñ
þatꝰ I of wote and shortly in a stounde
He toldꝫ Alla how þatꝰ þis childꝫ was founde

Butꝰ god wote quod þis Senatour also
So vertuous a lyuere in my liff
Ne segh̃ I neuere as she ne herd of mo
Of worldly wommen / mayde ne wiff
I darꝫwel seide she had leuerꝰ a knyff
þorowe-outꝰ her brestꝰ þan bene a womman wicke
þer is no man coupe bringe hire to þatꝰ prikke

Now was þis Childe as like vnto custance
As possible is a creature to be [leaf 101]
This Alla haþ þe face in remembrañce
Of Dame Custance *and* þeron mused he
If þatꝰ þe childes modere were ouȝtꝰ she
þatꝰ is his wif and priuely he siȝtꝰ
And spedde hym fro þe table þatꝰ he myȝtꝰ

Perfay he þouȝt þe fantom is in myn hede
I ouȝt demen of skilful Iuggement
That in þē salt se my wif is dede
And afterward he made his argument
What wote I ȝif þat crist hap hider sent
My wiff by see as wel as he her sent
To my cuntre from þennes as she was went

And aftere anoon home wip þe Senatoure
Gop alla forto see þis wonder chance
This Senatour dop Alla grete honoure
And hastifly he sent aftere Custance
But trusteþ wel her lust nouȝt to dance
Whan þat she wist wherfor was þat sonde
Vnnepes on her fete she myȝt stonde

Whan Alla segh his wif faire he her grette
And wepte it was reuþe forto see
ffor atte first loke he on hir sette
He knewe wel verrely þat it was she
And for sorowe as dombe stant as a tre
So was hert shette in her distresse
Whan she remembred his vnkindenesse

Twise she swowneþ in his owne siȝt
He wepte and him excuseþ pitously
Nowe god quod he and his halowes briȝt
So wisly on my soule haue mercy
þat of ȝoure harme as giltelees am I
As is Maurice Mi sone so lik ȝoure face [leaf 101, back]
Ellis þe feend me fecche out of þis place

Longe was þe sobbyng and þe bitter peyne
Er þat her wooful hertes myȝten cese
Grete was þe pite forto here hem pleyne
þorgh whiche pleyntes gan her woo encrees

I prei 3ou aH my labour to releës
I may not tellen her woo vntil to morowe
I am so wery to speke of her sorowe 1071

But fynaly whan þat þe sope is wist
That Alla giltlées was of her woo
I trowe an C. tymes ben þei kist
And suche a blisse is þer ytwix hem twoo 1075
þat saue þe Ioie þat lesteþ euermoo
þer is non like þat eny creature
Haþ seyne or shal while þe world may dure 1078

Tho preied she her husbond mekely
In relief of her longe pitous pyne
þat he wolde prei hure fadere specialy
þat of his maieste he wold enclyne 1082
To vouche sauf with him som day to dyne
She preied him eke he shulde by no way
vnto her fader no word of hire say 1085

Somme men wold seyn how þat þe childe Maurice
Doþ þis massage vnto þe Emperour
But as I gesse alla was not so nyce
To him þat was of so souereyn honour *1089*
As he þat is of cristen folk þe flour
Sent eny childe but it is bette to deme
He went him self and so it may wel seme 1092

This Emperour haþ graunted gentilly
To come to dyner as he hym bysou3t [leaf 102]
And wel rede I he loked bisily
Vpon þis child and on his dou3ter þou3t 1096
Alla goþ to his Inne and as hym ou3t
Arraied for þis feest in euery wise
As ferforþ as his conyng may suffice 1099

The morowe come and Alla can hym dresse
And eke his wif þis emperour forto mete
And forþ þei ride in Ioie and in gladnesse
And whan she segh̄ her fadere in þe strete
She liʒt' a-doune and falleþ hym to fete
ffadere quod she ʒoure ʒonge childe Custance
Is nowe ful clene out' of ʒoure remembrance

I am ʒoure douʒtere Custance quod she
þat' whilom ʒe sent' vnto Surray
It' am I fadere þat' in þe salt see
Was putte allone and dampned forto dye
Good fader now I yow mercye crye
Send me no more vnto noon heþenes
But' þonke my lord here of his kindenes

Who can þe pitous Ioye tellen alle
Bitwixe hem þre siþ þei ben þus ymette
But' of my tale make an ende I shal
The day goþ fast' I wil no lenger lette
This glad folk to dyner þei hem sette
In Ioye and blisse at' mete I lat' hem dwelle
A þousand' fold' wel more þan I can telle

This child' Maurice was siþen Emperour
Made by þe pope and lyued cristenly
To cristes churche he did grete honour
But' I lat' al þis story passen by
Of Custance is my tale specialy
In olde romayn Gestes may men fynde [leaf 102, back]
Mawrices lif I bere it' not' in mynde [*Latin note*, p. 133.] 182

This king' Alla whan he his tyme say
Wiþ Custance his holy wif so swete
To Engelond ben þei come þe riʒt' way
Wher as þei lyve in Ioie and in quiete

But litel while it lasteþ I ȝou hete
Ioie of þis world for tyme wil not abide
ffrom day to nyȝt it chaungeþ as þe tyde 1134

Who lyued euere in suche delite a day [*Latin note*, p. 138.] 182
þat ne meued eiþer conscience
Or Ire or talent or somkyn affray
Envie or pride or passiōn or offence 1138
I ne seie but for þis ende þis sentence
þat litel while in Ioye or in plesaunce
Lasteþ þe blisse of alla wiþ Custaunce 1141

For deþ þat taketh of high and lough his rente
Whan passed was a ȝeer euene as I gesse
Out of þis world þis kinge alla he hente
ffor whoom Custance haþ ful grete hevynesse 1145
Now lat vs preien god his saule blisse
And Dame Custance fynally to seye
Toward þe towne of Rome goþ her weye 1148

TO Rome is come þis holy creature
And fyndeþ her frende hool and sound
Now is she scaped all hure auenture
And whan she her fadere haþ yfounde 1152
Doune on her knees falleþ she to grounde
Weping for tendernesse in hert blith
She herieþ God an C. thousand siþe 1155

In vertue and holy Almesdede
þei lyuen all and neuere a sondrie wende [leaf 103]
Til deþ departe hem þis lif þei lede
And fareþ now wel my tale is at an ende 1159
Now Ihesu crist þat of his myȝt may sende
Ioye after woo gouerne vs in his grace
And kepe vs all þat ben in þis place 1162

¶ Here endeþ þe tale of þe man of lawe

[*The Squire's Prologue follows in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe sqwiere [*on leaf* 103]

Oure hoost vpon his stiropes stood anoñ ‖ þe prologe
And seide good men herkeneþ euerychoñ
This was a prifty tale for þe nones
Sire parissh preest quod he for goddes bonys
Telle vs a tale as was þi forward yore
I se wele pat 3e leerned men in lore
Can moche good by goddes dignyte
þe Parsone hym answered benedicite
What eileþ þe man so synfully to swere
Oure hoost answerd O Iankyn be 3e þere
I smelle a lollard in þe wynde quod he
Howe good men quod our hoost herkneþ me
Abideþ for goddis digne passioñ
ffor we shal haue a predicacioñ
þis lollard here wil prechen vs somwhat
Nay by my fader soule þat shal he nat
Seide þe Sqwier here shal he nat preche
He shal no gospel glosen here ne teche
He leueþ al in þe grete god he
He wolde sowen som difficulte
Or springeh Cokel in oure clene corn
And þerfore hoost I warne þe byforn
Mi Ioly body shal a tale telle
And I shal Clynken 3ou so mery a belle
þat I shal waken al þis companye
But it shal not bene of Philosophie
Ne Phislyas ne teermes queynt of lawe
þer is but litel latyn in my mawe

[The Squire's Tale follows in the MS.]

DRAWINGS OF THE 23 TELLERS

OF THE

24 CANTERBURY TALES,

COPIED FROM THE ELLESMERE MS,

AND CUT ON WOOD,

Mr. W. H. Hooper.

In this first issue, 1871, *only* 14 *of the Cuts are given. The other* 10 *will follow in* 1872. *When the print of each MS is bound, the cut of each Teller of a Tale can be put at the beginning of his Tale, as in the Ellesmere MS, or by his description in the General Prologue, to contrast the artist's hand with the poet's; or, all the cuts can be put together before or after the Prologue, or at the end of the volume (as not part of the MS), according to the fancy of each Member.*

THE MILLERE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 38, *back.*

THE KNYGHT.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 14.

(The brand on the horse's hip—M, ? for *Miles*—
is in ink, and probably by a later hand.)

THE COOK.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 51.

THE REVE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 46.

THE WYF OF BATHE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 76.

THE MAN OF LAWE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 54, back.

THE FRERE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 80, *back.*

THE SOMONOUR.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 85, *back.*

THE CLERK OF OXENFORD.

Ellesmere MS, leuf 92.

THE SHIPMAN.

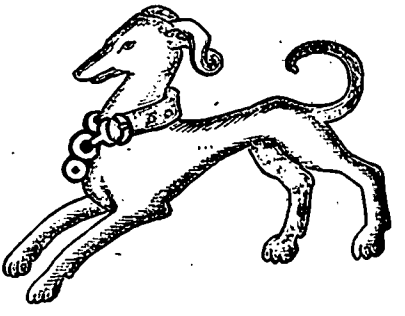
Ellesmere MS, leaf 147, *back.*

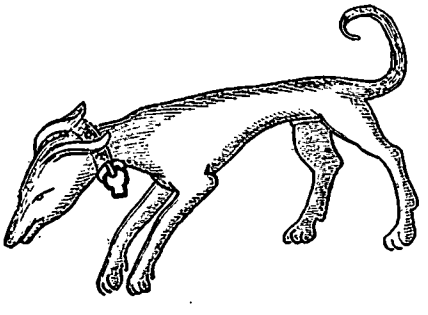
THE PRIORESSE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 152, *back.*

CHAUCER.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 157, *back.*





THE MONK.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 173.

THE NONNES PREEST.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 183.

¶ The Sqwiers Tale. [*headline*]
[leaf 108, back]

And here by-
gynneþ þe Sqwiers talɇ. /

At Sarray in þe land of Tartarye ¶ ffabula Armigeri
Þer dwelt a kyng þat werried Russye
Þorgh which þer deyed mony a dughty man
Þis noble king was cleped Cambynskan
Which in his tyme was of so grete renoun
Þat þer nas nowhere in no regioun
So Excellent a lord in al þinge.
Hym lacked nouȝt þat longed to a kynge
As of þe secte of which þat he was born
He kepte his lay to which þat he was sworn
And þerto he was hardy wise *and* riche
And pitous and Iust alway ylich
Soop of his worde benygne *and* honurable
Of his corage as ony centre stable ¶ centrum circuli
ȝong fresshe and stronge in Armes desirous
As eny bachilere in al his hous
A faire persone he was and fortunat
And kept alway so wel rial astat
Þat þer nas nawhere such a noþer man
This noble kinge þis tartre Cambynskan
had two sones on Eltheta his wiff
Of which þe eldest hight Algarsiff
Þat oþer was cleped Camballo
A doughtere had þis worþi kinge also
Þat ȝongest was and hiȝt Canace
But forto telle ȝou al her beute
It liþe not in my tunge ne in my connynge
I dar not vndertake so hye a þinge

Myn engelissh eke is insufficient'
It' most bene a ritther' excellent'
þat' koupe his colours longyng' for þat' arte
If he shuld here discryve eny part'
I am noon suche I most speke as I can
And so byfelle þat' þis Cambynskan
Hath xx^ti wyntere born his diademe [leaf 104]
As he was wonte fro 3ere to 3erè I deme
He lete þe feest' of his natiuite
Done Crien þorgh Sarray his Cite
þe last' Idus of March after' þe 3ere
Phebus þe sonne ful Iolyf was *and* clere
ffor he was nye his exaltacioñ
In Martes face and in his mancioñ
In Aries þe Colerik þe hote signe
fful lusty was þe weder' *and* benigne
ffor which þe fowles a3einst' þe sonne shene
What' for the seson and þe 3onge grene
fful loude songe hir' affeccioñs
Hem semed han geten hem proteccioñs
A3einst' þe swerd' of wynter kene and cold'
This Cambynskan of which I haue 3ou told'
In Rial vestement' sitte vpon his des
Wiþ dia[de]me ful high in his paleys
And halt' his feest' so solempne *and* so riche
þat' in þis world' ne was *per* noñ it liche
Of which if I sal telle al þe araye
Than wold it' occupie a somers daye
And eke it' nedeþ nat' to devise
And euery cours þe order' of her' seruise
I wil not' telle of her strañge sewes
Nè of her swannes ne her heron-sewes
Eke in þat' londe as tellen kny3tes olde
There is som mete þat' is for deynte holde
That' in þis londe men recche but' smalt
þer nys no man þat' may reporten alt

I wil not tary 3ou for it is pryme
And for it is no frute but losse of tyme
Vnto my furst I wil haue my recours
And so byfell þat after þe þred recours
Whil þat þis kinge sitte þus in his nobleye
Herkenyng his menstralles her þingges pleye
Byforn him at þe boord deliciously [leaf 104, back]
Inne atte halle door so sodeynly
Ther cóme a knyght vpon a stede of bras
And in his honde a brood myrour of glas
Vpon his þombe he had of gold a rynge
And by his side a naked swerd hangynge
And vp he rideþ to þe heigh boord
In al þe halle ne was þer spoke nó word
ffor merveile of þis knyght hym to biholde
fful bisily þei wayten 3onge and olde
This stronge knyght þat come þus sodeynly
Al armed saue his hede ful richely
Salued þe king þe quene and lordes alle
By ordere as þei seten in þe halle
Wiþ so high reuerence and obeysance
As wel in speche as in his countenance
þat Gawayne wiþ his olde curtasie
þou3 he come ageyn out of ffarye
Ne coude him nou3t amende with no word
And after þis bifore þe highe bord
He wiþ a manly vois saide his massage
After þe forme vsed in his langage
With-out vice of sillable or of lettre
And for his tale shulde seme þe bettere
Accordant to his wordes was his chere
As techeþ arte of speche hem þat it lere
Al be it þat I can not sowne his styele
Ne can not clymben ouer so hi3e a styele
3it say I þis þat as to comune entente
Thus moche amounteþ al þat euere he ment

If it so be þat I haue it in my mynde
He seide þe kynge of Arabye and of ynde
My liege lord on þis solempne day
Salweþ 3ou as he best can *and* may
And seendeþ 3owe in honur of 3*our* feste
By me þat am redy al at 3oure heeste
This stede of bras þat esily & well [leaf 105]
Can in a space of a day naturel
This is to saye in *four and twenti*[1] houres [1 MS xxiij.]
Wher so 3ou lust in drou3t or in sho*u*res
Beren 3oure body in to euery place
To which 3oure hertes wilneþ forto pace
Wiþ-oute wemme of 3ou þorow foule or fare
Or if 3ow list to flee as hie in þe Eire
As doþ an Egle whan him list to sore
This same stede shal bere 3ou euermore
Wiþ-outen harme til 3e be where 3ou list
þow þat 3e sclepen on his bak or rest
And turne a3ein wiþ wriþing of a pynne
He þat it wrou3t cowde ful mony a gynne
He waited mony a constellacioñ
Or he had doo þis operacioñ
And knewe ful mony a seal *and* mony a bonde
This myroure eke þat I haue in myn honde
Haþ suche a my3t þat men may in it see
whan þer shal fallen eny aduersite
Vnto 3our regne or vnto 3*our* self also
And openly who is 3oure freend or ffoo /
And ouer al þis if eny lady bri3t
Haþ sette her hert in eny man*er* wi3t
If he be fals she shal his tresoñ see
His newe loues *and* al his subtilite
So openly þat þer shal no þing hide
wherfore ageyn þis lusty somers tyde
This myrour and þis ryng þat 3e may see
He haþ sent to my lady Canacee

3oure excellent' dou3tere þat' is here
þe vertue of þis rynge if 3e wil here
Is þis: þat' if her list' it' forto were
Vpon her thombe or in her purs it bere
þer nys no fowle þat' fleeþ vnder þ^e^ heuene
þat' he ne shal vnderstond' his steuene
And knowe his menyng' openly *and* pleyne [leaf 195, back]
And answere him in his langage ageyne
And euery gras þat' groweþ vpon rote
She shal wel knowe *and* whome it wil do bote
And be his woundes neuere so depe *and* wide/
This naked swerd þat' hongeþ by my side
Suchi vertue haþ þat' what' man so 3e smyte
þorowe-out' his armure it' wil kerue *and* bite
were it' as thikke as is a braunched oke
And what' man þat' is wounded *with* þe stroke
Shal neuere be hool til þat 3ou list' of grace
To stroke him *with* þe plat' in þilk place
Ther he is hirt' þis is as moche to seyn
3e mote *with* þe plat' swerde ageyn
Stroke hym in the wounde *and* it' wil close
This is a verrey sope wiþ-outen glose
It' failleþ nou3t' þe whilis it' is in 3*our* holde
And whan þis kny3t' haþ þus þis tale tolde
He rideþ out' of þe halle *and* doun he li3t'
His stede whichi þat' shoon as sonne bri3t'
Stant' in þe courte stille as eny stoon
This knyght' is to his chambre lad anoon
And is vnarmed and to þe mete I-sette
þe presentes bene ful richely fette
This is to seyn þe swerd' and þe Mirr*our*
And born anoon vnto þe hie toure
Wiþ certeyn officers yordeyned þerfore
And vnto Canacee þe ryng' is bore
Solempnely þer she sitte atte þ^e^ table
But' sikerly wiþ-oute eny fable

þe hors of bras þat' may not' be remewed
It' stant' as it' were to þe grounde yglwed /
þer may no man out' of þe place it' drive
ffor noon engyn of wyndas or polyve
And cause whi for þei can not' þe craft'
And þerfore in þe place þei han it laft'
Tyl þat' þe kny3t' haþ tau3t' hem þe manere [leaf 106]
To voyden him as 3e shal after here
Grete was þe prees þat' swarmed to *and* froo
To Gowren on þis hors þat' stondeþ soo /
ffor it' so hegh̄ was . and so brode *and* long'
So wel proporciond forto be stronge
Ri3t' as it' were a stede of lumbardye
Ther-wiþ so horsly and so quyke of eye
As it' a ge[n]til poyleis coursere were
ffor Certes from his tale vnto his ere
Nature ne art' ne koude hy*m* nou3t' mende
In no degre as al þe puple wende
But' euer-more hir' most' wonder was /
Howe þat' it' cowde gon and was of bras
It' was of fayre as þe puple semed
Dyuers folk dyuersly han demed
As mony hedes as mony wittes *þer* bene
þei Mormured as don a swarme of been
And mede skilles after her fantasies
Rehersinge of þe olde poetries ¶ .i. equus pedasdus.
And seide it' was lik' þe Pegasee
þe hors þat' had wenges forto fle
Or ellis it' was þe Gr[e]kes hors Synon
That' brou3t' Troy to destructiō
As men in þise olde Geestes rede
Myne hert' quod oon is eue*r*e more in drede
I trowe som*m*e men of armes bene þer-Inne
That' shapen hem þis Cite forto wynne
It' were ri3t' good þat' al suchī þing' were knowe
Anoþer rowned to his felawe lowe

And seide he lieþ for it is raþer like
An apparence ymade by som̄ magike
As Iogelours pleyen at' þise feestes grete
Of sondry þou3tes þus þei Iangle *and* trete
As lewde puple demen comonly
Of þingges þat' bene made subtily
Than þei can in her lewdenesse comprehende [leaf 106, back]
þei demen gladly to þe badder ende
An som*m*e of hem wondren on þe myro*ur*
þat' born was vp vnto þe maister tour'
How men my3t' in hit' suche þingges see
Anoþer answerd' *and* seide it' my3t' wel be
Naturelli by composiciōns
Of Angeles and of scley reflexiōns
And seide þat' in rome was such̄ oon
þei speke of Alocen and Vitilioñ
And of Aristote þat' writ in her lyues
Of queynt' Mirours *and* of p*ro*spectyues
As knowen þei þat' han her bokes herde
And oþer folk han wondred on þe swerde
þat' wold perce þourgh̄ euery þinge
And fille in speche of Thelophus þe kinge
And of Achilles for his queint*e* spere
ffor he kouþe wiþ it' boþ hele *and* dere
Ri3t' in such̄ wise as men may *with* þe swerd*e*
Of which̄ ri3t' nowe 3e han 3oure seluen herde
þe[i] speken of sondry hardyng of Metall
And speken of medecynes þer-wiþ-all
And howe *and* whan it' shuld harded be
which̄ is vnknowe algate vnto me
¶ Tho speke þei of Ganaces rynge
And seiden all þat' such̄ a wondere þinge
Of craft' of ryngges had þei neuere noñ
Saue þat' he Moyses and kyng' Salomon
Had a nane of Conyng' in swich̄ arte
Thus seyn þe puple and drawen hem a parte

But' naþelees somme seide þat' it was
wonder to maken of feerne Asshen glas
And ȝit' is glas not' like asshen of feerne
But' for þei han knowen it' so ȝerne
Therfore Ceseþ her Iangelinge *and* her wonder'
As sore wondren some on cause of þondere
On ebbe on flood on gossomer *and* on myst' [leaf 107]
And al þing' to þe cause is wist'
Thus Iangelen þei and demen and devise
Til þat' þe kinge can from his bord' arise
Phebus haþ laft' þe angle Meredyonal
And ȝit' ascending' was þe beest' Royal
þe gentil leon wiþ his Aldrean
Whan þat' þis tartre kinge Cambynskan
Roos from his boord' þer as he satte ful hie
Byforne him goþ þe lowde Mynstralcye
Til he come to his Chambre of paramentys
Ther as þei sownen dyuers Instrumentys
That' is like an heuene forto here
Now daunsen lusty venus children dere
ffor in þe ffissñ hir' lady satte ful hie
And lokeþ on hem wiþ a frendly ye
This noble kinge is sette vpon his trone
þis straunge knyght' is fette to hym ful sone
And on the Daunce he goþ wiþ Canace
Here is þe reuel and þe Iolite
þat' is not' able a dulle man to deuyse
He most' han knowe loue and his seruyse
And be a feestlicñ man as fressñ as may
That' shulden ȝou deuysen swicñ array
Who couþe tellen ȝou þe forme of daunces
So vncouþe and sucñ fressñ countyn*aun*ces /
Sucñ Subtile lokingges and dyssymulynges
ffor drede of Ialowsie men*n*ys ap*per*ceyuynges
No man but' launcelett' *and* he is dede
þerfor I passe ouer of al þis lustihede

I say no more but in þis Iolynesse
I lete hem to men to soper hem dresse
þe Steward bit spices forto hie
And eke the wyne in al þis melodye
þe vsshers and þe sqwiers ben ygoñ
þe Spices and þe wyne is come anōn
Thei ete and drinke and whan þis had an ende [leaf 107, bk]
Vnto þe temple as reson was þei wende
¶ The servise done / þei soupen al by day
whatt nedeþ 3ou rehersen her array
Eche man wote wel þat at a kingges feest
Haþ plente to þe mest *and* to þe leest
And deyntees moo þan be in my knowinge
And aftere sopere goþ þis noble kynge
To sene þis hors of bras *with* al a route
Of lordes and ladys hym aboute
Suchñ wondring was þer on þis hors of bras
þat siþen þe grete sege of Troye was
þer as men wondren on an hors also
Ne was þer suchñ a wondering as was þoo
By fynaly þe kinge axeþ þe kny3t
þe vertue of þe Coũrsere *and* þe my3t
And preide hym to telle his gou*er*nañce
þe hors anon gan forto trippe and dañce
whan þat þis knyght leide hond vpon his reyne
And seide Sir þer is to more to seyne
b*ut* whan þe list to ride owhere
3e moot trille a pynne stonde in his ere
whichñ I shal telle 3ou bytwene vs twoo
3e mote nempne hym to what place also
Or to what cuntre þat 3ou list to ride ./
And whan 3e come þere as 3ou list to abide
Bidde hym descende and trille ano*þer*e pynne
ffor þer-Inne lithñ þeffecte of al þat gynne
And [he] wol doune descende and done 3oure wille
And in þat place he wille abide stille

þoughⁿ al the worldᵉ had þe contrary swore
He shal notᵗ þennys by throwe ne ybore
Or if þou listᵉ bidde hym þennes gōōn
Trille þis pynne and he wil vanyssh anōn
Outᵗ of þe siȝtᵗ of euery maner wiȝtᵗ
And come aȝein be itᵗ day or nyghtᵗ
whan þatᵗ ȝou listᵉ to clepen hym ageynⁿ [leaf 108]
In swichⁿ a gise as I shal to ȝou seyn /
By-twixen ȝou and me and þatᵗ ful sone
Ride whan ȝou listᵉ þer is no more to done
¶ Enformed whan þe kyngᵉ was of þe knyȝtᵗ
And haþ conceyued in his wittᵗ ariȝtᵗ
The manere *and* þe forme of al þis þinge
fful glad and bliþe þe noble douȝty kynge
Repeyringᵉ to his reuel as byfornⁿ
þe bridel is into þe toure bornⁿ
And kepte amonge his Iwels leef *and* dere
þe hors vanysshed I note in whatᵗ manere
Outᵗ of her siȝtᵗ ȝe gete no more of mee
Butᵗ þus I lete in lustᵗ and Iolite
This Cambynskan is lordes feestinge
Til wel nyghⁿ þe day bygan to springe

¶ **Explicitᵗ. prima pars./**

¶ **The Stagᵉ of an hertᵗ**

The norice of digestioⁿ is sclepe
Gan on hem wynke and bad hem take kepe
þatᵗ mochⁿ mete and labour wil haue restᵗ
And wiþ a galpingᵉ mouþe hem albycastᵗ
And seide patᵗ itᵗ was tyme to lye adoune
ffor blood was in his domynacioun
Cheresshеþ blood natures frende *quod* he
þei þonken hym galpingᵉ by two or þre
And euery wightᵗ gan drowen hym to his restᵗ
As sclepe hem bad þei toke itᵗ for þe bestᵗ

Her dremes mow not' be tolde for me
fful were her hedes of ffumosite
þat' causet' dreem of which̄ þer is no charge
þei sclepen til it was pryme large
þe moste parte but' it' were Canacee
She was ful mesurable as wo*m*men be
ffor of her fadere had she take her leue
To goo to rest' sone after it was Eue
Her list' not' appalled forto be [leaf 108, back]
ffor on þe morowe vnfeestlich̄ forto see
And sclepte hure first' sclepe and awoke
ffor such̄ a Ioie she in her herte toke
Boþ of her queynt' rynge and of her myro*ur*
þat' xx^ti^ tyme she chaunged her colo*ur*
And in her sclepe riȝt' for impressioñ
Of her myrour she had a visioñ
wherfore er þat' þe sonne vp gan glide
She cleped vpon her maistresse here beside
And seide þat' hir' list' forto arise
þise olde wo*m*men þat' bene gladly wise
As is her maistresse answerd' hir' anōn
And seide Madame whidere wold' ȝe gōn
þus erly for folke bene al in rest'
I wil quod she arise for me lest'
No lenger slepen but' walken aboute
Her Maistresse clepeþ wo*m*men a grete route
And vp þei risen wel . ten or twelue
Vpriseþ fresshe Canace her selue
As roddy and briȝt' as þei þe ȝonge sonne
þat' in þe Ram is ten degrees vp ronne
Noon hier was he whan she redy was
And forþ she walked esily a pas
Arraied aftere þe lusty seson sote
liȝtly forto prey and walk on fote
Nat' but' .v. or .vj. of her mayne
And in a trenche fer in þe park/ gooþ she

The vapour whicħ þat' fro þe erthe glode
Makeþ þe sonne to seme rody *and* brode
But' naþelees it was so faire a siȝt'
þat' it' made aH her hertes *forto* liȝt' 396
What' for þe seson and þe mowrnynge
And for þe fowles þat' she herde synge
ffor riȝt' anoon she wist what þei ment'
Riȝt' by her songe and knewe al her entent' 400
¶ The knotte whi þat' euery tale is told' [leaf 109]
ȝif it' be taried til lust' be cold'
Of hem þat' han it' herkened after' ȝore
þe Sauour passeþ euer lenger þe more 404
ffor ffulsomnesse of prolixite
And by þis same reson þenkeþ me
I shuld vnto þe knotte condescende
And maken of her walking' sone an ende 408
¶ Amydde a tree for-drye as white as chalke
As Canacee was plaiyng' in her walke
þer satte a fawcoñ ouer her hede ful hie
þat' wiþ a pitous vois so gan to crie 412
þat' alle in þe wode resed of her crie
And beten had her self so pitously
Wiþ bothe her wenges to þe rede blode
Ranne endelonge þe tre þer as she stode 416
And euer in oon she cried alway *and* shright'
And wiþ her beke her seluen so she piȝt'
þat' þer ne was Tigre ne cruel beest'
þat' dwelleþ eiþer in wode or in forest' 420
þat' ne wold haue wepte if þat' she wepe couþe
ffor sorowe of hir' she shright' alway so louþe
ffor þer nas neuere ȝit' man on lyue
If þat' I coude a fawcon wel discryve 424
þat' herd of sucħ anoþer of fairnesse
As wel of plummage as of gentilnesse
Of shappe of al þat' myȝt' rekned be
A ffawcon peregryne þan semed she . 428

Of fremde londe and eu*er*emore as she stode
She swowned nowe and nowe for lakke of blood
Til wel nygh is she fallen fro þe tre
This faire kynggcs doughter þis Canace
þat on her fynger bere þe queynte rynge
þorgh which she vnderstode wel euery þinge
þat eny foule may in his ledne seyne
And coude answere him in his ledne ageyne
Haþ vnderstonde þat þis fawcon seide [leaf 109, back]
And wel nygh for þe rouþe almest she deide
And to þe tree she goþ ful hastely
And on þis faucon lokeþ ful pitously
And helde her lappe abrood for wel she wist
þe faucon most falle from þe twist
Whan þat it swouned next for lacke of blode
A longe while to waite her she stode
Til atte last she spake in þis manere
Vnto þe hawke as ȝe shal after here
¶ What is þe cause if it be forto telle
þat ȝe bene in þis furial peyn of helle
Quod Canacee vnto þis hawke aboue
Is þis for sorowe of deth or losse of loue
ffor as I trowe þise bene causes two
þan causen most a gentil hert woo /
Of other harme it nedeþ not to speke
ffor þi ȝoure self vpon youre self ȝou wreke
Which þat proueth wel þat eiþere ire or drede
Mote bene encheson of ȝoure crüel dede
Siþ þat I see noon oþer wiȝt ȝou chace
ffor loue of god so doþ ȝo*ur* self grace
Or what may be ȝoure helpe for west nor este
Ne seghe I neuere er nowe ne brid ne beste
þat ferde wiþ him self so pitously
ȝe sclee me wiþ ȝoure sorowe verreyly
I haue of ȝou so grete co*m*passio*un*
ffor goddes loue come fro þe tree adoun

And as I am a kingges dou3thter trewe
If þat I verrely þe causes knewe
Of 3oure dis[e]se if it lay in my my3t
I wold amende it er þat it were ny3t
As wisly helpe me grete god of kindo
And Erbes shal I ri3t ynow fynde
To hele wiþ 3oure hirtes hastely
þoo shright þis fawcon 3it more pitously
þan euere she did and fille to grounde anōn [leaf 110]
And lith a swowne dede as is þe stoñ
Til Canacee haþ in hure lappe her take
Vnto þat tyme she gan of swowne awake
And after þat she of swowne gan vpbreide
Ri3t in hire hawkes leodene þus she seide
¶ þat pite renneþ sone in gentil herte
ffeling his symilitude in peynes smerte
Is proued alday as men may it see
As wel be werk as be auctorite
ffor gentil hert kepeþ gentillesse
I se wele þat 3e han on my distresse
Compassion my faire Canacee
Of verrey wommanly benignyte
That nature in 3oure principles haþ sette
But for noon hope forto fare þe bette
But forto obeye vnto 3oure herte free
And forto maken oþer be ware by me
As by þe whelpe chastised is the lyōn
Ri3t for þat cause and for þat conclusioñ
While þat I haue a leisere and a space
Myn harme I wil confessen er I pace
And euere while þat she her sorowe told
þat oþer wepte as she to water wold
Til þat þe ffaucon bad hir to be stille
And wiþ a sighe þus she seide hir tille
Ther I was bredde allas þat ilk daye
And fostred in a roche of Merbel graye

So tenderly þat no þing eiled me
I ne wist not what was aduersite
Til I coude flee ful hie vndere þe skie
Tho dwelled a tercelet me fast by
þat semed welle of al gentilnesse
Al were he ful of treson and falsnesse
It is wrapped vnder humble chere
And vnder hwe of trouþe & in suc̄ manere ./
Vndere plesaunce and vnder bisy peyne [leaf 110, back]
þat no wight coupe han wende he coude feyne
So depe in greyne he dyed his coloures /
Rizt as a serpent hyd hym vnder floures
Til he may se his tyme forto bite
Rizt so þis god of loue ypocrite
Doþ so his serymonijs and obeysances
And kepeþ in semblaunt al his obseruaunces /
That sowneþe into gentilnesse of loue
As in a tompe is al þe faire aboue
And vnder is þe cours which̄ as ze wote
Such̄ was þis ypocrite boþ colde *and* hote
And in þis wise he serued his ententé
þat saue þe feende non wist what he mente
Til he so longe had wepte *and* compleyned
And many a zeer his seruise to hym feyned
Til þat myn hert to pitous *and* to nyce
Al Innocent of his crowned malice
ffor-ferde of his deþ as þouzt me
Vpon his oþes and his Suerte
Graunted hym loue vpon þis condicioun
þat euer moo myn̄ honure and my renoun
Were saued boþ privey and apert
þis is to seyn þat after his dissert
I zaue hym al myn hert and my þouzt
God woot and he þat oþer wise nouzt
And toke his hert in chaunge of myn̄ for ay
But soþ is seide go siþen mony a day

A trewe wight' and a þeef thenkeþ not' oõn
And whan he sawe þe þing' so fer ygoñ
þat' I [had] graunted hym fully my loue
In suchñ a gise as I haue seide aboue
An ȝeuen hym my trewe hert' as free
As he swore he ȝaf his hert' to me
Anoñ þis tigre ful of doublenesse
ffil on his knees wiþ so deuoute humblesse
Wiþ hye reuerence and as by his chere [leaf 111]
So like a gentile louere of manere
So rauisshed as it' semed for þe Ioye
þat' neuere Iason ne Paris of Troye
Iason certes ne noon oþere man
Siþ Lameþ was þat' alþer furst' biganne
To louen two as writen folk' to-forne
Ne neuere siþ þe first' man was borñ
Ne coude man by xx^ti^ þousand part'
Countrefete þe sophymes of his arte
Ne were worþi to vnbocle his galoche
þer dowblenesse or faynyng' shuld' approche
Ne so couþe þonke a wiȝt' as he did me
His manere was an heuene for to see
Til eny womman were she neuere his wys
So peynted he and kembeþ at' poynt' devis
As wel his wordes as his countenaunce
And I so loued hym for his obeysaunce
And for þe trouþe I demed in his hert'
þat' if so were þat' eny þinge hym smerte
Al were it' neuere so lite and I it wist'
Me þouȝt' I felt' deþ at' myn herte twiste
And shortely so ferforþ þis þinge wente
þat' my wille haþ his willes Instrument'
þis is to seyne my wille obeied his wille
In al þinge as ferre as reson fille
Kepinge þe boundes of my worship euere
Ne neuere had I þinge so leef ne leuere

As hym ſ god wote ne neuere shal no moo /
þis last lenger þan a ȝere or twoo
¶ That I Suppose of hym no þing but good
But fynaly þus at the ende it stood
þat fortune wold þat he most twynne
Out of þat place whicħ þat I was Inne
where me were woo it is no questioñ
I can not make of it discripcioñ
ffor oon þinge dar I telle boldely [leaf 111, back]
I knowe what is þe peyne of deþ þerby ſ
Suchħ harme I felt for he no wiȝt by-leué
So on a day of me he toke his leue
So sorowefulli eke þat I wende verrely
þat he had feled as moche harme as I
Whan þat I herde hym speke and seghħ his hwe
But naþeles I þouȝt he was so trewe
And eke þat he repeire shuld agayn/
Wiþ-Inne a litel while soþ to sayñ
And reson wold eke þat he most goo
ffor his honoure as oft happeþ soo
þat I made vertue of necessite
And toke it wel siþ þat it most be
As I best myght I hid fro hym my sorowe
And toke hym by þe honde seint Iohñ to borowe
And seide þus loo I am ȝoures all
Beþ swichħ as I haue be to you *and* shal
what he answerd it nedeþ not reherce
who can seyn bette þan he who can do wors
whan he haþ al wel seide þan haþ he done
þerfore bihoueþ hym a ful longe spone
þat shal eten with a feend þus herd I seye
So at þe last he möte forþ his weye
And forþ he fleeþ til he come þer hym list
whan it come hym to purpoos for to rist
¶ I trowe he had þilk texte in mynde ¶ Redditui suo sui gula gaudent /
þat al þinge repeiryng to his kinge

Gladeþ hym self þus seyn men as I gesse
Men louen of propre kinde newfangilnesse
As briddes doon þat' men in cages fede
ffor þeigh̄ þou ny3t' and day take of hym hede
And strawe her cage faire and soft as silk
And 3eue hem sugre . hony . brede *and* mylk'
3it' right' anoon as þat' his door is vppe
He wiþ his feete wil spurne doun his cuppe
And to þe wode he wil and wormes ete [leaf 112]
So newfangle bene þei of her mete
And louen nouelries of propre kinde
No gentilnesse of blood may hem bynde
So ferde þis tercelet' allas þe day
Thowe he were gentiH born fressh̄ and gay
And goodly forto sene . humble *and* free
He segh̄ vpon a tyme a kite fle
And sodeynly he loued þis kite soo
That' al his loue is clene fro me goo
And haþ his trowþe falsed in þis wise
Thus haþ þe kite my loue in her seruyse
And I am lorn *with*-outen remedye
And wiþ þat' worde þis fawcon gan to crie
And swowned eft' in Canaces barme
Grete was þe sorowe for þat' haukes harme
That' Canacee and alle her wo*m*men made
þei nyst' howe þat' þei my3t' þe faucon glade
But' Canace home bereþ her in hir' lappe
And softely in plaasters gan hir wrappe
þer as she *with* hire beek had hurt' her selue
Nowe can not' Canace but' herbes delue
Out' of the grounde and maken salues newe
Of herbes precious *and* fyne of hewe
To helen wiþ þe hauke from day to ny3t'
She doþ her bysynesse and al her' my3t'
And by hire beddes hede she made a mewe
And keuered it' wiþ veluetes blewe

In signe of troupe þat' is in wo*m*men sene
And AH wiþ-oute þe mwee is peinted grene
In whiche were peynted aH þise fals foules
As bene þise tydifs . tercelettes and owles
Riȝt' for þe spite were peynted hem biside
Pies on hem forto crie and chide
þus lete I Canace her hauke kepinge
I wil no more as nowe speke of her rynge
Til it come eft' to p*ur*poos forto seyn [leaf 112, back]
Howe þat' þis faucon gate her loue ageyn̄
Repentaunt' as þe story telleþ vs
By mediacioñ of Camballus
þe kyngges sone of whicH̄ I ȝou tolde
But' hens forþ I wil procesSe holde
To speken of auentures and of batailles
That' ȝit' was neuere herde so grete m*er*veiles
ffirst' wil I telle ȝou of Cambynskan
That' in his tyme mony a Cite wan
And aftere wil I speke of algarsif
How þat' he wan Theodora to his wiff
ffor whan ful oft' in grete periH he was
Ne had he bene holpen by þe hors of bras
And aftere wil I speke of Camballo
þat' faught' in listes wiþ þe breþeren two
ffor Canace er þat' he myȝt' hir' wynne
And þer I left' wil I ageyn bygynne
va- i. sol. Apollo whirleþ vp his chare so hie
cat Til þat' þe god Mercurius hous þe sclie
Explicit' secunda p*ars*:
¶ Here endeþ þe squyers tale

And here [*on leaf* 112, *back*]
bygynneþ þe prologe of þ^e^ *mer*chaunte.

In feiþ Squier þow hast' þe wel yquytte
And gentely I preise wel þi witte
Quod þe merchaunt' consideryng' þi 3ouþe
So felingly þou spekest' sir' I þe alouþe
As to my dome þer is non þat' is here
Of Eloquence þat' shal be þi pere
[And if þat þow lyue god 3if þe goode chaunce [Barlow MS 20]
And in vertue sende the Contynaunce]
ffor of þi speche I haue gret' deynte
I haue a sone and by þe trinite
I had leuere þan xx^ti^ pounde worþ lond
þoughⁿ it' were ri3t' nowe fallen in my hond
3e ere a man of suchⁿ discrecioⁿ
As þat' 3e beⁿ fy on possessioⁿ
But' 3if a man be uertuous with al
I haue my sone snybbed *and* 3it' shal /
ffor he to vertue listeþ not' entende [leaf 113]
But' forto pley atte dys and to dispende
And lese al þat' he haþ is his vsage
And he haþ leuere talke wiþ a page
þan to comune wiþ a gentile wi3t'
where he my3t' lerne gentillesse ari3t'
A strawe for 3oure gentilnesse quod our Hoost'
What' Marchaunte *par*de Sir' wel þou woost'
That' echⁿ of 3ou mote tellen at' þe leest'
A tale or twoo or breken his bihest'
That' knowe I weⁿ quod þe *Mer*chaunte *cer*teyⁿ
I prey 3ou haueþ not' me in disdeyne

þouȝe to þis man I speke a word or twoo
Telle on þi tale wiþ-outen wordes moo /
Gladly sir ooste q*uo*d he I wil obeye
Vnto ȝour wille now herkeneþ what I seye
I wil ȝou not contrarye in no wise.
As ferre as my wittes wil suffise
I prey to god þat it may plesen ȝou
þan woot I wele þat it is good ynowe

þus endeþ þe prologe /

And here by-
gynneþ þe *Mer*cha*un*tes tale. [*on leaf* 118]

Whilom þer was dwellinge in lumbardy ¶ The tale.
A worþi kny3t' þat' born was at' Pavy
In which he lyued in grete prosperite
And sixty 3ere a wyuelees man was he 1248
And folowed ay his bodely delite
On wo*m*man þer as was his Appetite
As doon þise fooles þat' bene seculers
And whan þat' he was past' sixty 3eres 1252
Were it' for holynesse or ellis for dotage
I can not' seye but' suche a corage
had þis knyght' to be a wedded man
That' day and nyght he doþ al þat' he can 1256
To aspie where he my3t' wedded be
Preiynge our lord' to graunt' hy*m* þat' he /
Might' ones knowe þat' blisful liff [leaf 113, back]
þat' is bytwixe an husbonde *and* his wif 1260
And for to lyuen vnder þat' holy band'
Wiþ which god furste man to wo*m*man band'
Noon oþer lif seide he is worþ a bene
ffor wedloke is so esi and so clene 1264
That' in þis world' it' is a paradys
Thus seiþ þis olde kny3t' þat' was so wis
And certeynly as soþ as god is kinge
To take a wif it' is a glorious þinge 1268
And namely whan a man is olde *and* hoore
þan is a wif þe frute of his tresore
þan shuld' he take a 3onge wif and a faire
On which he my3t' engender him an aire 1272

And lede his lif in Ioye and solace
Wher as þe bachilers synggen alas
Whan þei fynde eny aduersite
In loue whicħ þat' is but' childes vanite 1276
And trewly it' sitte wel to be soo
That' bachilers han ofte peyne *and* woo
On brutel grounde þei beelde brutelnesse
þei fynde whan þei wene sikernesse 1280
þei lyue but' as a bridde or a beest'
In liberte and vnder nyce areest'
þer as a wedded man in his astate
Lyueþ his lif blisful and ordynate 1284
Vndere þe ȝok' of mariage ybounde
Wel may his hert' in Ioye and blisse be founde
ffor who can be so buxom as a wif
Who is so trewe and eke so tentiff 1288
To kepe him seke and hole as is his make
ffor wel ne woo she wil not' hy*m* forsake
She nys not' wery hym to loue *and* serue
þouȝe þat' he lye bedrede til he sterue 1292
And ȝit' som*me* clerkes sein þat' it' is not' soo
Of whicħ theofraste is oon of þoo ./
What' foorce þouȝt' Thophrast' lusteþ lye [leaf 114]
Ne take no wif q*uo*d he for husbondrye 1296
As forto spare in household' þi dispence
A trewe seru*aun*te doþ more diligence
Thi good to kepe þan þine owne wif
ffor she wil cleyme half part' al her lif 1300
And ȝif þat þou be seke so god me saue
Thi verrey frendes or a trewe knaue
Wil kepe þe better þan she þat' waiteþ ay
Aftere þi good and haþ do mony a day 1304
And if þou take a wif [1]þat' to þe is vntrewe
fful ofte tyme it' shal þe Rwe[1] [1--1 ? *spurious*]
This entent' an hundred siþes wors
writeþ þis man þer god his bonys curs 1308

But take no kepe of al such vanyte
Defie Theofraste and herkeneþ me
A wiff is goddys 3ifte verreyly
Al oþer manere 3iftes hardely
As londes. rentes pasture or comune
Or mebles al bene 3iftes of fortune
þat passen as a shadowe on a wall
But drede it nou3t pleynly speke I shall
A wiff wil laste and in þine hous endure
Wel more þan þe liste peraventure
Mariegge is a ful grete sacrament
Who haþ no wiff I telle hym shent
He lyueþ helplees and is al desolate
I speke of folke in seculere astate
And herken whi. I seie not þis for nou3t
þe womman is for mannes helpe ywrou3t
þe highe god whan he had Adam maked
And seghe him alone bely naked
God of his grete goodnesse seide þan /
Late vs make an helpe vnto þis man
Like to hym self and þan he made Eue
Here may 3ee see and herby may 3e preue
þat þe wiff is mannys Comfort [leaf 114, back]
His Paradys terrestre and his disport
So buxom and so vertuous is she
þei moste nedes lyue in vnite
Oo flessh þei bene and two soules as I gesse
Haþ but oon herte in hele and in distresse
A wif a seynte Mary benedicite
How my3t a man han eny aduersite
þat haþ a wiff certes I can not seie
þe blisse þat is ytwixe hem tweye
þer may no tunge tellen or herte þenke
If he be poor she helpeþ him to swynke
She kepeþ his good and waasteþ neuer a dele
Al þat her husbonde lust she likeþ wele

She seiþ nou' onys nay whan he seith ȝe
Doþ þis seiþ he. al redy sire seiþ she
O blisful ordere of wedloke precious
Þou arte so mery and eke so vertuous
And so commended and so appreued eke
Þat' euery man þat' halt' him worþ a leke
Vpon his bare knees auȝt' al his lif
Thanken his god þat' him haþ sent' a wif
Oyþer prei to god him for to sende
A wiff to last' vnto his lyues ende
ffor þan his lif is sette in sikernesse
He may not' be desceyued as I gesse
So þat' he worche after his wyues rede
Þan may he boldely bere vp his hede
Þei bene so trewe and also wys
ffor whicħ if þou wilt' worchen as þ^e wis
Do alway so as wommen wil þe rede
Loo howe þat' Iacob as þise clerkes rede
By good counseil of his modere Rebekke
Boonde þe ƙyddes skyn about' his nekke
ffor whicħ his faders benyson he wan
Loo Iudiţħ as þe storie telle can
Be wise counsail she goddes puple kepte [leaf 115]
And sclowe hym Olophernes while he sclepte
Lo Abygail by counseille how she
Saued her husbonde Nabaħ whan þat' he
Shuld haue be sclayne and loke aster alsoo
By good counsaile delyuered out' of woo
þe puple of god and made hym marche
Of assure enchaunced forto be
Ther is no þinge in grete superlatif
As seiþ seneke [above] an humble wif'
Suffre þi wifes tunge as Catoñ bitte
She shal commaunde and þou shalt' suffre it'
And ȝit' she wil obeye of Curtesie
A wif is keper of þine husbondrye

wele may þe seke man by-weile *and* wepe
þer as þer nys no wif þe hous to kepe
I warne þe 3if wisly þou wirchë
Loue wel þi wif as crist loueþ his chirche
If thou louest þi self wel. þou louest þi wif
No man hateþ his flessh̄ but in his lif
He fostreth it and þerfore bid I þe
Cherisshe þi wif or þou shalt neue*r*e the
Husbonde and wif what so men Iape or pleye
Of worldly folk holde þe siker weye
They bene so knytte þer may noon harme betide
And namely vpon þe wives side
ffor which̄ þis Ianuarie of which̄ I tolde
Considered haþ wiþ-in his daies olde
þe lusty lif þe vertuous quiete
þat is in mariage hony swete
And for his frendes on a day he sent
To tellen hem the effecte of his entent
wiþ face sadde his tale he haþ hem told
He saide frendes I am hoor and olde
And almost god wote vpon þe pittes brinke
Vpon my soule somwhat I most þenke
I haue my body folily dispended / [leaf 115, back]
Blessed be god it shal be amended
ffor I wil bene certeyn a wedded man
And þat anon in al þe hast I can
Vnto some maide faire and tender of age
I prey 3ou shapeþ for my mariage
Al sodeynly for I wil not abide
And I wil foonden to aspie on my side
To whoom I may be wedded hastely
But for as moche as 3e bene more þan I
3e shul raþer such̄ a þinge espien
þan I and þer me lust best to alien
But of on þing I warne 3ou my frendes dere
I nyl noon olde wif haue in no manere

She shal not' passe xvj 3ere in fayn
Old fissh and 3onge flessh þat' wil I haue certayn
Bett' is quod he a p[i]ke þan a pikereH
And bette þan olde beef is þe tender' veeH
I wil no womman of xxx^ti wynter' age
It' is but' bene strawe and grete forage
And eke þise olde wyues god it wote
þei konnen so moche craft' on wades bote
So mochel broke harme whan þat' hem lest'
That' wiþ hem shuld' I neuer' lyuen in rest'
ffor sondry scoles makeþ subtile clerkes
Womman of mony scoles. half a clerk es
But' certeyn a yonge þing' may man gye
Riȝt' as men may warme wax with handis plye
Wherfore I seie 3ou pleynly in a clause
I nyl non olde wif han riȝt' for þis cause
ffor if so were I had some meschaunce
þat' [I] in hire ne couþe haue no plesaunce
þan shuld' I lede my lif in auenture
And so streite to þe deuel sure
Ne children shuld' I noon vpon hure geten
3it' had me leuere þat' houndes had me eten
Than þat' myne Heritage shulde falle [leaf 116]
In straunge honde and þus I telle 3ou aH
I dote not'. I not' þe cause whi
Men shuld wedde and ferthermore wote I
Ther spekeþ mony a man of Mariage
þat' wote no more of it' þan doþ my page
ffor whiche causes men shuld' take a wif'
3if he may not' chaast bene his lif
Take him a wif wiþ grete deuocioñ
Bycause of leeful procreacioñ
Of children to þe honure of god aboue
And nouȝt' only for paramour ne for loue
And for þei shulden leccherie eschewe
And 3eelde her dettes while þat' it' is newe

Or for þat' eche man shuld helpe oþere
In meschief as sustere shal to broþere
And lyve in chastite ful heuenly
But' sirs by 3oure leue þat' am not' I
ffor god byþonke it'. I dar make auaunte
I fele my lymmes sterke and suffisaunt'
To done al þat' a man bylongeþ to
I wote my self best' what' I may do
þou3 I be hoor I fare as doþ a tre
þat blosmeth er þe frute ywox[e] be
þat' blossmed tre is neiþer drie ne dede
I fele no where hoor but' on my hede
Myne hert' and my lymmes ben as grene
As lauriel is þorgh̄ þe 3ere to sene
And sythen 3e han herd' al myn entent'
I prey 3ou to my wille 3e assent'
Dyuers men dyuersly hym told'
Of Mariage mony ensamples olde
Somme blamen it' somme preisen it certayn̄
But' at' þe laste shortely forto sayn̄
As alday falleþ altercacioñ
Bitwixen frendes in disputacioñ
þer fille a strif ytwix his breþeren two · [leaf 116, back]
Of which þat' oon is cleped placebo./
Iustinus soþly called was þat' other'
Placebo seide oo I am 3oure broþere
fful litel nede han ye my lord' so dere
Counseile to aske of ony þat' is here
But' þat' 3e bene so ful of Sapience
That' 3ou ne likeþ for 3oure high prudence
To weyue from þe word' of Salomon ,
This word' seiþ he vnto vs everechoñ
Wirk' al þing' by counseile þus seide
And þan shalt' þou not' repent' þe
But' þeigh̄ þat' Salomon speke such̄ a word'
Myn owne dere broþer and my lord'

So wisly god bring' my saule at' ese and rest'
I holde 3oure owe counseH is þe best'
ffor broþer myn take of me þis motif'
I haue bene nowe a courte man al my lyf'
And god woot' þou3e I vnworþi be
I haue stonden in ful grete degre
Abowen lordes of ful grete astate
3it' had I neuere wiþ none of hem debate
I neuere hem contraried trewly
I wote welẽ þat' my lord can mòre þan I.
That' he seiþ I holde it' forme *and* stable
I seie þe same or ellis þing' semblable
A ful grete fool is eny counselour'
þat' seruęþ eny lord of hie honour'
þat' dar presume or ones þenk' it'
That' his counsaile shuld' passe his lordes witte
Nay lordes bene no fooles be my fay
3e haue 3oure self spoken here to day
So higH sentence so holy & so weH
That' I consent' and conferme eu*e*ry dele
3o*ur* wordes al & 3oure opynyo*u*n
By god þer is no man in al þis to*u*n.
Ne in Ytaile couþe bet' han seide [leaf 117]
Criste holdeþ of þis hy*m* ful wel apaied
And trewly it' is an hie corage
Of eny man þat' stoupeþ into age
To take a 3onge wif be my fader' kynne
3oure hert' hongeþ vpon a Ioly pynne
Doþ now in þis matere ri3t' as 3ou leste
ffor fynally I holde it' for þe best'
¶ Iustinus þat' ay stille satte *and* herde
Ri3t' in þis wise he to placebo ansuerde
Nowe broþer myn be pacient' I prey
Siþens þat' 3e han seide herken what' I sey
Senek amonges oþer wordes wise
Seiþ þat' a man ou3t' hy*m* wel avise

To whom he ȝeueth his land or his cateH
And siþens I ought' avise me riȝt' weH
To whoom I ȝeue my [gode aweye ffrome Me
WeHe more I aughte auysede be
To whome I yeue my] body for alway
I warne you wel it' is no childes play
To taken a wif wiþ-out' avisement
Men most' enquere þis is myn assent'
Whedere she be wis. sobre or dronklewe
Eyþer proude or oþer wise a shrewe
A chidere eiþer a waaster' of þi good
Or riche or poor / or ellis a man is wood'
Al be it' so þat' no man fynde shal
Non in þis world' þat' tretep hool in aH
Ne man ne beest' suclı as men con devise
But' naþelees it' aught' ynowe suffise
Wiþ eny wif ȝif so were þat' ȝe hadde
Moo good thewes þan her vices badde
And al þis askeþ leisere to enquere
ffor god wote I haue wepte mony a tere
fful priuely siþens I had a wif
Preise who so wil a wedded mannys lif'
Certeyn I fynde in it' but' cost' and care
And obseruaunces of al blessed bare./
And ȝit' god þonk' my neighbours al aboute
A[nd] namely of wommen a grete route
Sein þat I haue þe most' stedefast' wiff'
And eke þe mekest oon þat' bereþ liff
But I woote best wher wrieþ [me] my shoo
ȝe may for me riȝt' as ȝou list' doo
Aviseþ ȝou ȝe bene a man of age
Howe þat' ȝe entren into mariage
And namely wiþ a ȝonge wif *and* a feire
By him þat' made water erþe *and* Eyre
þe ȝongest' man þat' is in al þis route
Is bisy ynouȝe to bringe it' aboute

[MS Reg. 17 D 15, *leaf* 110, *back*. *Not in Sloane* 1685, *leaf* 91; *or Reg.* 18 *C ii*, *lf* 91; *but in Addit.* 5140, *lf* 153; *Hart.* 7333's *rymes corrected to* me, avised be, *lf* 70, *col.* 1.]

1528

1532

1536

1540

1544

1548

[leaf 117, back]

1552

1556

1560

To haue his wiff allone trestep me
3e shullen not' plesen hure 3eres þre
This is to seyn to done her plesaunce
A wiff axeþ ful mony an obseruaunce 1564
I prey 3ou þat' 3e ne be euel apaide
Wel quod þis Ianuar' & hastowe al saide
Strawe for þi senek & for þi prouerbes
I count' not' a panyer ful of herbes 1568
Of scole teermes wiser men þan thou/
As þou hast' herd assenteþ it' riȝt' nowe
¶ To my purpoos Placebo what' say 3e
I sey it' is a cursed man quod he 1572
That' letteþ Matrimoyne Sikerly
And wiþ þat' word' þei risen sodeynly
And bene assented fully þat' he shuld'
Wedded be whan hym list' and where he wold' 1576
Thy fantasie and þi curiousnesse
ffro day to day gan in þi soule inpresse
Of Ianuar' about' his mariage
Mony faire shappe and mony faire visage 1580
Ther passeþ his hert' nyȝt by nyght'
As who so toke a myrour' polshed bright'
And sette it' in a comune Market' place
þan shuld' he seen mony a figure pace 1584
By his Miroure and in þe same wise [leaf 118]
Can Ianuar' in wiþ his þouȝt' devise
Of Maidens whicℏ þat' dwellen [him] beside
O. He wist' not' where he myȝt' abide 1588
ffor þouȝe þat' oon haue beute in her face
A-noþer stant so in þe puples grace
ffor her sadnesse *and* her benignite
þat' of þe puple grettest' vois had she 1592
And somme were riche and hadden badde name
But' na þe lees bytwixe ernest *and* game
He atte last' enpoynted hym in oon
A[nd] lete al oþer from his herte gooñ 1596

And chese hire of his owne auctorite
ffor loue is blynde al day and may not se
And whan þat he was in þe bedde brouȝt
He purtreide in his hert and in his þouȝt
Her freisshe beaute and her age tendere
Hir myddel smalle her armes longe and sclendere
Her wise gouern*aun*ce and her gentilnesse
Her wo*m*manly beringe and her sadnesse
And whan þat he to her was condescended
Hym þouȝt his chois myȝt not be amended
ffor whan þat he him self concluded had
Hy*m* þouȝt eche oþer mannys witt so bad
þat inpossible it were to replie
Aȝeinst his chois þis was his fantasie
His frendes sent he to at his instañce
And preieþ him to done hy*m* þat plesañce
That hastely þei wolde to hy*m* come
He wold abreggen her labour al *and* some
Hit nedeþ no more to hem to goo ne ride
He was apointed þer he wold abide
Placebo came and eke his frendes sone
And alþer first he bad he*m* aH a bone
þat noon of hem noon argumente*s* make
Aȝeinst his pu*r*poos whicH þat he haþ take.
WhicH pu*r*poos was plesaunt to god as seide he [lf 118, bk]
And verrey grounde of his prospe*r*ite
He saide þer was a mayden in þe toune
WhicH þat of bewte haþ grete renou*n*
Al were it so she were of smal degre
Suffiseth him her ȝouþe and her bewte
WhicH mayde he seide he wold haue to wif
To leden in eese and in holynesse his lif
And þonkeþ god þat he myȝt han hir aH
þat no wiȝt his blisse part shaH
And preieþ him to labour in þis nede
And shapen þat he faile not to spede

ffor þan he seide his spirit' was at' eese
þen is quod he no þing' me may displese
¶ Saue oon þinge prikkeþ in my conscience
þe which̄ I wil reherce in 3oure presence 1636
I haue quꝙd he herd saie ful 3ore agoo
þer may no man han p*ar*fit' blesses twoo
þis is to saie in erþe and eke in heuene
ffor þei he kepte him from þe synnes seuene 1640
And eke fro euery brannche of thilk tree
3it' is þere so p*ar*fit prosp*er*ite
And so grete eese and lust' in mariage
That' euer I am a-gast' nowe in myn age 1644
þat' I shal lede nowe so mery a lif
[So delicat withouten wo or strif [MS Harl. 7335, *leaf* 118, *no gap in Petworth.*]
That y shal han myn heuene in erthe] here
ffor siþens þat' verrey heuene is bou3t' so dere 1648
Wiþ tribulacion̄ and grete pen*aun*ce
how shuld I such̄ in such̄ plesaunce
As alle wedded men done wiþ her wives
Come to þe blisse þ*er*e crist' eterne alyue es 1652
This is my drede and 3e my breþ*er*e tweye
Assoilleþ me þis question I 3ou preye
¶ Iustinus which̄ þat hated his foly
Answerd' anon ri3t' in his Iapry 1656
And for he wold' his longe tale abregge
He wolde noon autorite alegge
But' seide sir' so þere bene noon obstacle [leaf 119]
Oþer þan þis god of his hye myracle 1660
And of his mercy may so for 3ou wirche
That' er 3e han 3oure 3iftes of holy chirche
3e may repent' of wedded m*an*nys lif
In which 3e seyn is neiþer woo ne strif' 1664
And ellis god forbede but' 3if he sent'
A wedded man grace hym to repent'
Wel often raþer þan a syngle man /
And þerfor sir' þe best' rede I can 1668

Dispeireþ 3ou nou3t haueþ in memorie
*Per*auenture she may be 3our' p*ur*gatorie
She may be goddis mene *and* goddys whippe
Than shal 3oure soule vp to heuen skippe
Swifter þan doþ an arowe out' of a bowe
I hope to god here aftere 3e shal knowe
þat' þer nys noon so grete felicite
In mariage ne neu*er*e more shal be
þat 3ou shal lak of 3our' saluacioñ
So þat' 3e vse as skille is and resoñ
þe lustes of 3oure wif attemp*er*ally
And þat' 3e plese hure not' to amerously
And þat' 3e kepe 3ou eke fro oþer synne
My tale is done for my witte is þinne
Beþ not agast' her-of my broþer'
But' lat' vs wade from þis mat*er* to an oþ*er*e
þe wif of baþe if 3e wil vnderstond*e*
Of mariage whicħ 3e han on hond*e*
Declaren can ful wel in litel space
ffareþ nowe wel god haue 3ou in his grace
And wiþ þis word' þis Iustyne *and* his broþere
Han take her leue and ecħ of hem of oþere
ffor whan þei segħ it' most' nedes be
þei wrou3ten so by wise and sclegħ trete
þat' she þis maide whicħ þat' Mayus hi3t'
As hastely as euere þat' she my3t'
Shal wedded be vnto Ianuarye [leaf 119, back]
I trowe it' were to longe 3ou to tary
If I 3ou tolde of euery scrite or bonde
By whicħ þat' she was festned in his londe
Eiþer forto herken of her riche aray
But' fynaly yc*om*men is þe day
þat' to þe churche boþ[e] bene þei went'
fforto receyue þe holy sacrament'
fforþ co*m*meþ þe preest' wiþ stole about' his neke
And bad hir' be ylik' sarra and rebek'

In wisdom and [in] trouþe of mariage
And saide his orisons as is his vsage
And crowched hem and bad god shuld he*m* blisse
And made al siker ynoughⁿ *with* holynesse
Thus bene þei wedded *with* solempnite
And atᵗ þe feeste sitteþ he and she
Wiþ oþer worþi folkᵉ vpon þe dees
Al ful of Ioye and blisse is þe paleys
And ful of instrumentes *and* of vitaile
þe moste deyntevous of al Ytaile
Byforn hem of instrumentis whichⁿ soun
þatᵗ Orpheus ne of phebes ampheounⁿ
Ne maden neuere suche a melody
And atᵗ euery cours came loude mynstralcye
Thatᵗ neue*r*e Ioab trumped forto here
Neiþ*er* Theodomas ȝitᵗ half so clere
And Thebes whan þe cite was in doute
Bacus þe wyne hem shenkeþ al aboute
And Venus laugheþ on euery wiȝtᵗ
ffor Ianuarᵉ was bycome her knyȝtᵗ
And wolde boþ assaien his corage
In liberte and eke in mariage
And wiþ hure fuyr bronde *with* her handᵈ aboute
Daunseth byforne þe bride al aboute
And clenly I dar wel seyn right þis
Emyneus þat god of weddyngᵉ is /
Segⁿ neuere in his lifᵉ so mery a wedded man [leaf 120]
Holde þou þi pees þou poete Marcéan
þatᵗ writestᵗ vs þatᵗ ilk weddingᵉ mery
Of hure Philologi and ofᵗ Marcury
And of þe sanges þatᵗ þe muses songe
So smale as eke þi penne *and* eke þi tunge
fforto discryuen of þis mariage
Whan tender ȝouþe haþ wedded stoupingᵉ age
þer is suche myrþe þat itᵗ may notᵗ be writte
Assaieþ it ȝoure self þan may ȝe wite

ȝif þat' I lak or noon in þis matere
Mayus þat sitte wiþ so benygne a chère
Hire to biholde it' semed faierye
Queen Estre loked neuere wiþ suc̄h an ye
On assure so meke a loke as she
I may ȝou not' avise al her bewte
But' þus moche of her bewte telle I may
þat' she was like þe briȝt' morowe of may
ffulfillede of beaute and of plesaunce
This Ianuar' is rauissht' in a traunce
And at' euery tyme he loked on hir' face
But' in his hert' he gan hir' to manace
þat' he þat' nyȝt' *in* armes wold hir' streyn̄
Harder þan euere Paris did Eleyn̄
But' naþelees ȝit' had he grete pite
þat' ilk*e* nyȝt' offenden her most' he
And þought' alas o tender' creature
Nowe god wold ȝe myȝt' wel endure
Al my corage it' is so sharpe *and* kene
I am agast' ȝe shul it' not' sustene
But' god forbede þat' I did al my myȝt'
Nowe wolde god þat' it' were wexen nyȝt'
And þat' þe nyȝt' wolde lasten eu*e*re moo
I wold þat al þis puple were a-goo
And fynaly he doþ al his laboure
As he best' myȝt' sauyng' his honoure
To hast' hem fro þe mete in subtile wise [leaf 120, back]
The tyme came þat' reson was to rise
And after þat' men daunce *and* drink*e* fast'
And spices al aboute þe hous þei cast'
And ful of ioye and blisse is euery mán
All sauf a squyer þat' hiȝt' damyan.
which̄ carf to-fore þe king' mony day
He was so rauysshed on his lady may
That' for þe verrey peine he was nyȝe wode
Almost' he swalte an swowned *þer* he stode

As she him ladde daunsinge in her hand
So fresshe she was and perto so likand [*spurious*]
And to his bedde he went hym hastely
No more of him at this tyme speke I. 1780
But pere I lete him wepe ynow and pleyn
Til fresshe may wil rewen on his peyn
¶ O perilous fyre pat in pe bedstrawe bredep
O famulere foo pat his seruise bedep 1784
O seruaunte traitoure fals [of] holy hewe
Like to pe adder sclegh . & in Basom vntrewe
God shilde vs alle from 3oure iniquitaunce
O Ianuare dronken in plesaunce 1788
Of Mariage se howe pi damyan
Thyne owne squyer and pi born man
Entendep to done pe vilanye
God graunte pe pine harme forto aspie 1792
ffor in pis world nys no wors pestilence
Than homely foo alday in pi presence
Parfourmed hap pis day his arke dyurne
No lenger may pe body of hym soiourne 1796
pe Orisonte as in pat latitude
Rizt wip his mantel pat is derk and Rude
Gan forto sprede pe mysprey aboute
ffor which departed is pe lusty route 1800
ffor Ianuare wip ponke on euery side
Hoom to her howses lustely pei ride .
Ther as pei done her pingges as hem lust [leaf 121]
And whan pei segh her tyme to go to rest 1804
Sone aftere pat pis hastif Ianuar
Wol go to bedde he wil no lenger tar
He drinkep Ypocras clerre *and* vernage
Of spices hote to encresen his corage 1808
And many a letuare had he ful fyne
Such as pe cursed monk daune Costantyne
Hap writen in his boke of Coytu
To eten hem al he nas no ping eschwe 1812

And þus to his privey frendes seide he
ffor goddis loue as sone as it' may be
Lette voiden al þis hous in curteys wise sone
Men dronken and þe trauers drowe anōn
The bride was brouȝt' to bedde as stille as eny stoñ
So hasted Ianuar' it most' be dōn [*spurious*]
And whan þe bedde was *with* þe preest' yblessed
Out' of þe Chambre haþ euery wiȝt' hy*m* dressed
And Ianuare haþ fast' in armes take.
His fresshe may his p*ar*adis his make
He lulleth hure he kisseth hure ful oft'
Wiþ þilke bristels of his beerd' vnsoft'
Ylike to þe skyn of hounde fissñ sharpe as brere
ffor he was shaue al newe in his manere
He rubbeþ hure vpon her tendere face
And seide þus alace I mote trespace
To ȝou my spouse *and* ȝou gretly offende
Or tyme come þat' I wil doune descende
But' naþelees considereþ þis q*uo*d he
þer nys no werkman what' so euer he be
þat' may boþe worche wel and hastely
þis wil be done at' leisere p*ar*fitely
It' is no force howe longe þat' we pleye
I trowe in wedloke coupled bene we tweye
And blessed by the yokke þat' we bene Inne
ffor in our actys we may do no synne ·/
A man may do no synne wiþ his wiff [leaf 121, back]
Ne hirt' hym self wiþ his owne knyff
Now han we leue to pley vs by þe lawe
Thus labowreþ he til þat' þe day gan dawe
And þan he takeþ a soppe in fyne clerre
And vpriȝt in his bedde þan sitteþ he
And aftere þat' he songe ful loude *and* clere
And kissed his wiff and made wanton chere
He was al coltissñ and ful of ragerye
And ful of Girgoun as is flecked pie

þe sclak skyn about' his necke shakeþ
While þat' he songe so chaunteþ he *and* crakeþ
But' good woote what' may þou3t' in her hert'
Whan she him segh̄ vpsitting' in his shert'
In his ny3t' cappe and wiþ his necke lene
She preiseth nou3t' his plesinge worþ a bene
Than seide he þus my resting' wil I take
Nowe day is come I may no lenger wake
And doune he leide his hede *and* sclept' til prime
And afterward' whan þat' he segh̄ his tyme
Vp riseþ Ianuare but' fresshe may
Holdeþ her chambre vnto þe ferþe day
As vsage is of wives for þe best'
ffor euery laboure somtyme mot' haue rest'
Oyþer ellis longe may he nou3t' endure
þis is to saye no lyues creature
Be it' of fissh̄ . or brid of beest' or man
Now wil I speke of woful damyan
þat' languowreþ for loue as 3e shul here
Therfore I speke to him in þis manere
I say o. sely damyan allas
Answere to þis demaunde as in þis cas
Howe shalt' þou to þi lady fressh[e] May
Telle þi woo she wil alway sey nay
Eke if þowe speke she wil þi woo bywreye
God bene þine helpe I can no better' seye
¶ This seke Damyan in Venus fire [leaf 122]
So brenneþ þat' he deyeþ for desire
ffor whiche he putte his lif in auent*ure*
No lenger my3t' he in þis wise endure
But' p*riuely* a penner' gan he borowe
And in a letter wrote he al his sorowe
In manere of a compleint' o*þer* a lay
Vnto þis faire and fressh[e] lady may
And in a purs of selk hong on his shert'
He haþ yputte and yleide it' at' his hert'

þe mone þat' at' none was at' thilk day
þat' Ianuare haþ wedded þat' fressh may
yn two of taure was in þe Cancre gliden
So longe haþ she in her chambere bydēn
As custumes is vnto þese nobles alle
A bride shal not' eten in þe halle
Til daies foure eiþer thre daies at þe lest'
Ypassed bene þan lat' her goo to þe feest'
þe *ferthe*[1] day complete fro none to none [f. MS iiij]
whan þat' the highe masse was ydone
In halle sitte þis Ianuare *and* may
As fresshe as is þe briȝte somers day
And so bifelle howe þat' þis good man
Remembreþ hym vpon þis Damian
And seide seint' mary how may þis be
That' Damian entendeþ nouȝt to me
Is he ay seke or howe may þis betide
His squyers whichē þat' stoden hym beside
Excusinge him bycause of his siknesse
Whichē þat' letted him to do his bysynesse
None oþer cause myȝt' make hym care
þat' me forþenkeþ quod this Ianuare
He is a gentile squyer' be my trouþe
ȝif þat' he deied it' were harme *and* rouþe
He is as wise discrete and secree.
As eny man I woote of his degre
And þerto manly and eke seruisable [leaf 122, back]
And for to bene a þrifty man riȝt' able
But' after mete as sone as euer I may
I wil my self visite hym and eke may
To done him al þe comfort' þat' I can.
And for þat' worde hym blessed euery man
þat' of his bounte *and* his gentilnesse
He wolde so conforten hym in his siknesse
His squyer for it' was a gentile dede
Dame quod he þis Ianuare take good hede

That' at' aftere mete 3e wiþ 3oure wo*m*men alle
Whan 3e han bene in chambre out' of þis halle
That' alle 3e goon to se þis damyañ
Doþ him disport' he is a gentile man
And telleþ him þat' I wil hy*m* visite
Haue I no þinge but' rested me a lite
[And spede 3ou faste ffor I woH abyde [MS Reg. 17 D 15, *leaf* 116; *no gap in Petworth.*]
TyHe þat ye slepe ffaste by my syde]
Now wiþ þat' word he gan to hy*m*-calle
A sqwier þat' was a marshal of his halle
And tolde him certeyn þingges what' he wold'
þis fresshe may haþ streight' her way yhold'
Wiþ aH her wo*m*men vnto þis Damyan
Doune by his beddes side satte she þan
Confortinge him as she goodly may
This Damyan whan he his tyme say
In secrete wise his purs and eke his bille
In whiche þat' he writen had al his wille
Haþ putte into her honde wiþ-outen more
saue þat' he sikked wondere sore
And soft'ly to hure ri3t' þus seide he
Mercy and þat' 3e diskeuere nou3t' me
ffor I am dede if þat' þis þinge be kidde
þis purs haþe she in her bosom hidde
And went' her way 3e gete no more of me
But' vnto Ianuare yco*m*men is she
And on his beddys side sitte ful soft'
He 'takeþ hur' an kisseþ hure ful oft'
And leide hy*m* doune to slepe and þat' anōn [leaf 123]
She feyned hure as þoo she most' gōn
Ther as she woote þat' euery wi3t' mote nede
And whan she of þis bille haþ taken hede
She rent' it' al to cloutes at' þe last'
And in þe priuee softly she it' cast'
Who stodieth nowe but' feire fresshe may
And adoune by Ianuare she lay

þat' sclepte to þe Coughe haþ hym a-waked.
Anon he preide hire to stripe hur' naked.
He wold of hur he seide haue som plesañce
He seide hire cloþes did hym encombrañce
And she obeieþ be he leef or loth̄
But' lest' þat' precious folk' be wiþ me wroþe
How þat' he wrouȝt' I dar to ȝou not' telle
Eiþer whedere þat' he þouȝt' on paradis or on helle
But' I lete hem worche in her wise
Til euensonge ringe *and* þat' þei most arise
were it' be destanye eiþer be auenture
were it' by influence eiþer be nature
Eiþer in constellaciōn þat' in such̄ estate
þe heuene stood þat' tyme fortunate
was forto putte a bille of Venus werkes/
ffor al þing' haþ tyme as seine þise clerkes
To eny womman forto gete her loue
I can not' seie but' þe grete god aboue
That' knoweþ þat' none acte is causelees
He demeþ of aH for I wil holde my pees
But' soþ is þis howe þat' þis fresshe may
Haþ take such̄ impressioñ þat' day
On pite of þis sike Damyan
That' from her hert' she ne drive can
The remembraunce forto done hym eese
Certeine þouȝt' she whom þat' þis þing' displese
I rek not' for here I him assure
To loue him best' of eny creature ·/
Though̄ he no more nad þan his shert'
lo pite renneþ sone in gentil hert'
Here may ȝe se howe excellent' fraunchise
In wommen is whan þei narowe hem avise
Somme tyraunt' þer is as bene mony oñ
That' haþ an hert' as hard' as eny stoñ
Whiche wold han lete him sterue in þe place
Wel raþer þan han graunted him þat' grace

1960 1964 1968 1972 1976 1980 1984 [leaf 123, back] 1988 1992

And hem reioysen in her cruel pride
And recched nouȝt to bene an homycide
This gentile may fulfilled of al pite
Riȝt so of hure honde a *lettre* made she
In whiche she graunteþ hym of hire verrey grace
Ther lackeþ nouȝt only but day *and* space
wher þat she myȝt to his lust suffice
ffor it shal be riȝt as he wil deuise
And whan she seeghe her tyme vpon a day
To visite þis Damyan goþ faire May
And subtily þis letter doune she þrest
Vnder his pilowe rede if him lest
She takeþ him by þe hond and hard hym twist
So secrely þat no wiȝt it wist
And bad him be al hole and forþ she wente
To Ianuare whan þat he for her sente
Vp riseþ Damyan the nexte morwe
Al passed was his siknesse & his sorowe
He kembeþ him and proyneþ hym *and* pykeþ
He doþ al þat his lady lust and likeþ
And eke to Ianuare he goþ as lowe
As euere did a dogge for þe bowe
He is so plesaunt to euery man
ffor craft is al who þat it can
þat euery wight is fayn to teche hym good
And fully in his lady grace he stood
Thus lete I Damyan aboute his nede
And in my tale forþ I wil procede /
Somme Clerkes holden þat ffelicite [leaf 124]
Stant in delite and þerfor he
This noble Ianuare wiþ al his myȝt
In honest wise as longeþ to a knyȝt
Shope him to lyve ful deliciously
His howsing his aray al honestly
To his degree was maked as of kingges
Amonges oþere as of honest þingges

He had a gardyn walled al wiþ stoñ
So faire a gardyne wote I nowhere noon
ffor out' of doute I verrely suppose
þat' he þat' wrote þe romance of þe rose
Ne couþe of hit' þe bewte wel devise
Ne priapus ne myȝt' not' suffice
þoughñ he be god of gardynes forto telle
The bewte of þe gardyne and of þe welle
That' stood vndere a laurere alway grene
fful ofte tyme king' Pluto *and* his quene
Preserpyna and al her fairye
Disporten hem and maken melodye
Abouten þat' welle and daunceden as men told'
This noble knyght' þis Ianuare þe olde
Suchñ deynte haþ in it' to walken and to pley
þat' he wil suffre no wight' to bere þe key
ssaue he him self' for of þe smal wikett
He bare alway of siluere a clikett'
Wiþ þe whichñ whan þat' hym lust vnshette
And whan þat' he wold' pay his wiff his dette
In somer seson þidere wold' he goo
And may his wiff' and no wiȝt' but' þei twoo
And þingges whichñ þat' were not' doñ abedde
þei in þe gardyn *per*fourmed han and spedde
And in þis wise mony a mery day
Lyued þis Ianuare and fresshe may
But' worldly Ioye may not' alway endure
To Ianuare ne to no worldely creature
O sodeyn happe . o þou fortune vnstable · [leaf 124, back]
ylike to þe scorpion uariable
þat' flaterest' wiþ þine heued whan þou wilt stinge ?
Thy tale is deþ by þine enuenemyng'
O brutel ioye o swete poyson queynt'
O mystery þat' subtilly canst' peynt'
Thyne ȝiftes vndere þe hwe of stidfastnesse
þat' þou desceyuedest' boþ more and lesse .

Why hast' þou Ianuare þus desceyued.
And haddest' hym for þi ful frende receyued.
And now þou hast' byraft' hym boþ his eyen
ffor sorowe of whiche desireth he to dyen
¶ Allas þe noble Ianuare þat' is so fre
Amydde his lust' and his prosperite
Is wexen blynde and al sodeynly
His deeþ þerfore desireþ he vtterly
And þer-wiþ-aH þe fuyre of Ielosie
Lest' þat' his wif' shuld' falle in some foly
So brent' in his hert' þat' he wold' fayn
That' somme man boþe hur' and hym had slayñ
ffor neuere aftere his deþe ne in his liff'
Ne wolde he þat' she were loue ne wiff'
But' euere lyue as a widowe in cloþes blake
Sool as þe turtel doþ þat' haþ lost' her make
But' at' þe last' after a monþe or tweye
His sorowe gan to swage soþ to seye
ffor whan he wist' it' may noon oþer be
He paciently toke his aduersite
Sauf out' of doute may he not' forgoñ
þat' he nas Ialouse euermore in ooñ
Whicñ Ialousie was so outrageous
That' neiþer in halle ne in nooñ oþer hous /
He nolde suffre hure forto ride ne goo
Ne in noon oþer place neuer þe moo
But' ȝif þat' he [had] hande on hir' alway
ffor whicñ ful ofte wepeþ frecche may
Thal loueþ Damyan so benygnely ?
That' she mote eiþer dey sodeynly
Or ellis she mote han him at' her list' [leaf 125]
She waiteþ whan [her] hert' wold al to-brest'
Vpon þat' oþer side DAmyan
Bycommen is þe sorowfullest' man/
þat' euer was for neiþere nyȝt' ne day
Ne myght' he speke a word to fresshe may

As to his purpoos of no suche matere
But' 3if' þat' Ianuare most' it' here
þat' had oon honde vpon hir' euere moo.
And naþelees by writing' to and froo
And priveys signes wist' he what' she ment'
And she knewe of þe sygnes of his entent'
¶ O Ianuare what' my3t' þe availe
Thowe my3test' se as ferre as shippes saile
ffor as good is a blynde desceyued be
As to be disceyued whan a man may see
Loo Arguys whiche þat' had an C. eyen
ffor al þat' euere he couþe powre eyþere prien
3it' was he blent' and god woot' so bene moo /
That' wenen wisly þat' it' nys nat' soo
Passe ouer is an eese & say no more
þis fresshe May of whicħ I speke of 3ore
In warme wexe haþ enprinted þis cliket'
þat' Ianuare bere of þat' smal wiket'
By whicħ vnto his gardyne of[t] he went'
And Damyan þat' knewe her entent'
þe. Cliket' countrefeted prively
þer nys no more to say but' hastely
Somme wondere by þis cliket' shal betide
Whicħ ye shal here if' 3e wil abide
O noble Ovide soþe seist' þou god wote
What' scle3t' is it' þow it' be longe & hote
þat' he nyl fynde it' out' in somme manere
By Piramus and Tisbe may men lere
þoughħ þei were kepte ful longe streit' ouerall
þei ben acorded rownyng' þorgħ a wall
Ther nys no wi3t' couþe han founde out' suchħ a scle3t' [lf 125, bk]
But' nowe to purpoos er þat' daies viij.
were passed er the monþe of Iuyl byfille
That' Ianuare haþ caught' so grete a wille
þorowe eggyng' of his wiff' him forto pley
In his gardyne and no þing' but' þei tweye

þat' in a morwe vnto his may seide he
Rise vp my wif' my loue my lady free
The turtels vois is herd my douve swete
The wynter is goon *with* al his reynes wete
Come forþ nowe *with* þine eyen colu*m*byne
How feirer bene þi brestes þan bene wyne
Thę gardyne is enclosed al aboute
Come forþ my white spouse out' of doute
þow hast' me wownded in myn hert' o wiff
No spotte in þe nas in al þi liff
Come forþ and lat' vs take our disport'
I Cheese þe for my wiff and my comfort'
Suche olde loude wordes vsed he
On damyan a signe made shee
That' he shulde goo byforn wiþ his clikett'
This damyan haþ opned þe wikett'
And in he stert' and þat' in suc̄h manere
That' no wi3t' my3t' it' see ne here
And stille he sitte vnder a buss̄h anoñ
This Ianuare so blynde as is a stoñ
Wiþ Maius in his honde *and* no wi3t' moo
Into his fresshe gardyne is he goo
And crapte to þe wiket' sodeynly
Now wif q*uod* he here nys but' þou *and* I
That' arte þe creature þat' I best' loue
ffor by þat' lorde þat' sitte vs al aboue
I had leuere dyen on a knyff
þan 3e offended dere trewe wiff'
ffor goddes sake þenk' how I þe chees
Nou3t' for no coueityse doutelees ·/
But' only for þe loue I had to þe [leaf 126]
And þough̄ þat' I be olde and may not' see
Be to me trewe and I wil telle 3ou why
Certes iij. þingges shul 3e wy*n*nen þer*b*y
ffirst' loue of Crist' and to 3oure self hono*ur*
And al myne heritage toune *and* toure

I ȝeue it ȝou makeþ Cher[tr]es as ȝou lest
This shal be doo to morowe er sonne[1] rest [[1] *first* sonnesse]
So wisly god my soule bringe in blisse
I prey ȝou in couenant þat ȝe me kisse
And þouȝe þat I be Ialous wite me nouȝt
ȝe ben so depe enprented in my þouȝt
That whan I considere ȝoure bewte
And perwiþal þe vnlikly elde of me
I may not certes þouȝe I shulde deie
fforbere to bene out of ȝour companye
ffor verrey loue þis is wiþ-oute doute
Now kisse me wiff and lat vs rome aboute
¶ This freesshe may whan she þise wordes herd
Benignely to Ianuare she answerd
But first and formest she bygan to wepe
I haue quód she a soule to kepe
As wel as she and also myn hono*ur*e
And of my wifhede þilke tendere floure
whiche I haue assured in ȝoure hand
whan þat þe preest to ȝou my body band
wherfore I wil answere in þis manere
with þe leue of ȝou my lord so dere
I prey god þat neuere dawe þat day
þat I ne sterue as foule as wo*m*man may
If euer I do vnto my kynne þat shame
Eiþer ellis I enpeire so my name
þat I be fals And if I do þat lakke
To stripe me *and* putte me *in* a sakke
And in þe next ryuere do me drenche
I am a gentil wo*m*man *and* no wenche.
whi speke ȝe þus but men bene euere vntrewe [leaf 126, back]
And wo*m*men ha repreef of ȝou ay newe
ȝe can noon oþer countynancē I leue
But speke to vs as vntrest and in repreue
And wiþ þat worde she segh̄ wher damyan
Satte in þe busshe and knele he bygan

And wiþ her fynger signes made she
þat' Damyan shuld clymbe vpon a tree
þat charged was wiþ frwte and vp he went'
For verreily he knewe al her entent' 2212
And euery signe þat' she couþe make
wel bette þan Ianuare her owne make
ffor in a *lettre* she had tolde him all
Of þis matere howe he worchen shall 2216
And þus I lat' hym sitte in þe pirry
& Ianuare and Mayus regnyng' ful mery
¶ Briȝt' was þe day *and* blewe þe firmament'
Phebus of gold' doune haþ his stremes sent' 2220
To gladen eu*e*ry floure wiþ his warmnesse
He was þat' tyme in Gemynys as I gesse
But' litel fro his declinacioñ
Of Canser, Iouis exaltacioñ 2224
And so bifelle þat' in a briȝt' morowtide
þat' in þe Gardyne on þat' ferþer side
Pluto þat' is þe kyng' of ffairye
And mony a lady in his companye 2228
ffolowinge his wiff þe qwene p*ro*serpina
Whiche þat' he rauyssshed out' of proserpina
whilis þat' she gadered floures in a mede
In Claudyan ȝe may þe stories rede 2232
How in his Grisly carte he her fette
This kinge of fairye adoune hy*m* sette
Vpon a benche of Turves fressh *and* grene
And riȝt' anon seide he þus to his quene 2236
My wif' quod he þat' may no wiȝt' say nay
The exp*e*rience proueth it' euery day
The treson which þat' wo*m*man doþ to man [leaf 127]
x^{c}. thousand telle I can 2240
Notable of ȝoure vntrouþe *and* britelnesse
O salamon richest' of alle rychesse
ffulfilled of sapience and of worldely glorie
fful worþi bene þi wordes to memorie 2244

To ęuery wight' þat' witte and resoñ can/
Thus preiseþ he 3it' þe bounte of man
Among' a M̄ men 3it' fonde I oñ
But' of alle wo*m*men fonde I neuere nooñ
Thus seiþ þis knyght' þat' knoweþ 3oure wickednesse
And Ih*esus* filius C[i]rak as I gesse
Ne spekeþ of 3ou but' seelden reuerence
A wilde fuyr a corrupte pestilence.
So falle vpon 3oure bodies 3it' to ny3t'
Ne Se 3e not' þis honurable knyght'
By cause alas þat' he is blynde *and* olde
His owne man shal make him kokewold
Lo where he sitte þe leccheo*ur* in þe tree
Nowe wil I graunte of my maieste
Vnto þis olde blynde worþi kny3t'
That' he shal han a3ein his eyen si3t'
whan þat' his wiff wold do him vilanye
þan shal he knowe al her harlotrie
Booþ in repreef' of hure and o*þer* moo/
¶ 3e Sire quod proserpyne and wil 3e soo
Nowe by my moders sire soule I swere
þat' I shal 3euen hire suffisant' answere
And alle wo*m*men aftere for 3oure sake
That' þou3e þei bene in eny gilt' ytake
Wiþ face bolde þei shullen he*m* self excuse
And beren hem doune þat' wolden he*m* accuse
ffor lacke of answer noon of hem shul dyen
AH hadde 3e seie a þinge wiþ boþ 3oure yen
3it' shullen we so visage it' hardely
And wepe and swere and chide subtily
þat' 3e shullen bene as lewde as bene gees [leaf 127, back]
what' recketh me of suchi autoritées/
I wote wel þis Iwe this salomon
ffoonde of vs wymmen foles mony oñ
But' þou3e þat' he ne fonde no good wo*m*man
þer haþ yfounde mony anoþer man

wo*mm*en ful trewe ful good ful vertuous
witnesse of hem þat' dwellen in cr*i*stes hous
wiþ martierdome þei proued her constance
þe Romayn geestes maken remembraunce
Of mony a verrey trewe wif also /
But' sir ne be not' wroþ as be it' soo /
þoughñ þat' he seide he foonde no good wo*mm*an
I prei ȝou take þe sentence of þe man
He ment' þus þat' in souereyn bounte
Nis noon but' god but' neiþere he ne she
Eye for verrey god þat' nys but' oon̄
what' make ȝe so moche of Salomoñ
what' þouȝe he made a temple goddys hous
what' þouȝe he were riche and glorious
So made he a temple of fals goddes./
Who myȝt' do a þinge þat' more forbode es
Parde as faire as ȝe his name enplastere
He was a lecchoure and an ydolastre
And in his elde he verrey god forsoke
And ȝif þat' god nad as seiþ þe booke
yspared him for his faders sake he sholde
haue lost' his regne souner þan he wolde
I sette nouȝt' of alle þe vyleynye
þat' ȝe of wo*mm*en write a botterflie
I am a wo*mm*an nede mote I speke
Eiþer ellis swelle to myn̄ hert' breke
ffor siþen he seide þat' we bene Iangler[ess]es
As euer mote I brouke boþ my tresses
I shal not' spare for no curtesye
To speke him harme þat' wold' vs vilanye
Dame quod þis Pluto be no lenger wroþe [leaf 128]
I ȝeue it' vp but' si*þens* I swore myn̄ oþe
þat' I wolde graunten him his siȝt' aȝeyn̄
My word' shal stonde þat' warne I þe certeyn̄
I am a kinge it' sitte me not' to lye
And I quod she a quene of fairye

Her Answere she shal haue I vndertake
Lat' vs no moo wordes make
¶ fforsoþ I wil no lenger 3ou contrarie
Now lat' vs turne a3ein to Ianuarye
That' in þis Gardyn wiþ þis faire Maye
Syngeþ wel merier þan þe popeniay
3ou loue I best' and shal and oþer noñ
So longe aboute þe alaies is he goñ
TiH he was come a3einst' þilk' piry
where as þis damyan sitteþ ful mery
On hegh amonge þe fresshe leues grene
This fresshe May þat' is so bri3t' an shene
Gan forto sigh and seide alas my side
Now sire quod she for ou3te þat' may bytide
I moost' haue of þe peeres þat I see
Or I mote dyé so soore longeþ me
To eten of þe smale peres grene
Helpe for her loue þat' is of heuene quene
I telle 3ou wel a womman in my plite
May haue to fruete so grete an appetite
þat' she may dyen but' she it haue
Allas quod he þat' I nad here a knaue
That couþe clymbe alas alas quod he
ffor I am blinde 3e sire no fors quod she
But' wold' 3e vouchesauf for goddis sake
þe piry in wiþ 3oure armes forto take
ffor wel I wote þat' 3e mystrest me
Ellis shuld I clymbe wel ynowe quod she
So I my fote my3t' sette vpon 3oure bak'
ffor soþe seide he in me shal be no lak'
Might' I 3ou helpe wiþ myn herte blood [leaf 128, back]
He stoupeþ doune and on his bak' she stood
And cau3t' hure by a twist' and vp she gooþ
Ladyes I preie 3ou þat' ye be nat' wrooþ
I can not' glose I am a rude man
And sodeynly anoon þis damyan

Gan pullen vp þe smokke and in he þronge
And whan þat' Pluto segħ þis grete wronge
To Ianuarie he ȝaue his siȝt' ageyn̄
[And made him se / as wel as evir he myħt [Addit. 5140, *leaf* 167, *bk*, *leaf* 168. *In Reg.* 17 *D* xv, *lf* 122, *bk*, *lf* 123; *not in Reg.* 18 *C* 2, *leaf* 104.]
And whan he hadde / cauht his syht ageyn̄]
ne was þer neuer man of þinge so feyn̄
But' on his wiff his þouȝt' was euermoo
Vp to þe tree he cast' his eyen twoo /
And segħ þat' Damyan his wif' had dressed.
In whicħ manere it' may not' be expressed
But' [ȝif] I wolde speke vncurteysly
And vp he ȝaue a roringe *and* a crye
As doþe þe modere whan þe childe shal dye
oute helpe alas harowe I gan to crye
O stronge lady stoor what' doostowe
And she answereþ sire what' eileth ȝowe
Haue pacience and reson in ȝoure mynde
I haue ȝou hulpen of boþ ȝoure eyen blynde
Vp perile of my soule I shal not' lyen
As me was tauȝte to hele wiþ ȝoure eien
Was no þinge bette forto make ȝou see
Than strogle wiþ a man vpon a tree
God wote I did it' in ful good entent
Stroggel q*uod* he. ȝe algate in it went'
God ȝeue ȝou boþe a shames deþ to dyen̄
He swyued þe I segħ it' wiþ myne eyen̄
And ellis be I honged by þe hals
Than is quod she þe medecyne fals
ffor certeynly if ȝe myȝten see
ȝe wold not' saye no wordes vnto me
ȝe han some glymysing' *and* no p*ar*fit siȝt'
I see quod he as wel as eu*er*e I myȝt'
Thonked be god wiþ boþ myn eyen twoo [leaf
And by my trouþe me þought' he did þ^e soo
ȝe mase mase good sir' quod she
This þonk' I haue for I haue made ȝou see

Allas quod she þat' cuere I was so kinde
Now dame quod he lat' al passe out' of mynde
Come doune my leef *and* if I haue myssayd'
God helpe me so as I am euel apayd' 2392
But' by my faders soule I wend' haue seyn'
How þat' þis Damyan had by þe leyn'
And þat' þi smok' had leye vpon þi brest'
3e sir' quod she 3e may wene as 3ou lest' 2396
But' sir' a man þat' wakeþ out of sclepe
He may not' sodeynly wel take kepe
Vpon a þinge ne seen it' parfitely
To þat' he be adawed verrely 2400
Ri3t' so a man þat' long' haþ blynde ybe
Ne may not' sodeynly so wel yse
ffirst' whan þ^e^ si3t' is newe commen ageyn̄
As he þat' haþ a day or tweyen yseyn̄ 2404
Til þat' 3oure si3t' ystabled be a while
Ther may ful mony a si3t' 3ou begile
Beþ ware I preye 3ou for by heuene kinge
fful mony a man weneþ forto se a þinge 2408
And it' is al anoþer þan it' semeþ
He þat' mysconceyueþ mysdemeþ
And wiþ þat' word' she lepe doun fro þe tre
This Ianuarie who is glad but' he 2412
He clippeþ hire and kisseþ hure ful oft'
And on hire wombe he strokeþ hure ful soft'
And to his Palays home he haþ hire lad
Nowe good men I prey 3ou to be glad 2416
Thus endeþ here my tale of Ianuarie
God blesse vs and his modere seynt' Marie. 2418

¶ Here endeþ þe tale of þe marchaunt'

GROUP D. FRAGMENT V.

§ 1. WIFE OF BATH'S PREAMBLE.

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe wif of Bathe [leaf 129]

Experience thouȝe noon autorite [leaf 129, back]
were in þis world riȝt ynouȝe for me
To speke of woo þat is in mariage
ffor lordingges siþ I twelue ȝere was of age
Thonked be god þat is eterne alyue
Husbondes atte churcħ door haue I had fyve
ȝif I so often myȝt han wedded be
But alle were worþi men in her degre
But me was tolde certeyn not longe agoñ is
That siþen crist ne went neuer but onys
To wedden in þe cane of galile
þat by þilk ensample tauȝte he me
That I ne shuld wedded be but onys
Herk eek. loo suchħ a sharpe word for þe nones
Beside a welle Ihesu god *and* man
Spake in repreef of þe Samaritan
Thow hast yhad .v. husbondes quod he
And þat ilk man þat nouȝ haþ þe
Is not thyne husbond þus seide he certeyñ
What he ment þer-by I can not seyñ
Wele! But *þat* I aske whi the fift man
Was no*n* husbond to þe Samaritan
How mony myȝt she han in mariage
ȝit herd I neuere telle in myn age

vpoñ þis nombre diffinicioun
Men may devise and glosen vp *and* doun
But wel I wote expresse wiþ-outen lye
God bad us forto wexe and multiplie
That ge[n]tile text can I wel vnderstond
Eke wel I wote he seide myñ husbond ¶ Relinquet homo patrem & matrem
Shuld lete fadere *and* modere *and* take to me & adherebit vxori sue & cetera.
But of no nombre mencioñ made he
Of bygamy or of octogamye
Whi shuld men þan of it han vilanye
loke here the wise man. kyng Salomon
I trowe he had wyues moo þan ōōñ ¶ Genesis ij° quam-obrem
Now wold god it lieful were to me [leaf 130]
To be refresshed half so oft as he
Which ȝift of god had he for aH his wyues
No man haþ suchñ þat in þis world alyue es /
God wote þis noble kinge as to my witte
þe furst nyȝt had mony a mery fitte
Wiþ eche of hem so wel was hym alyve
Blessed be god. þat I haue wedded fyve
Welcome þe .vi. whan þat euer he shal
ffor siþ I wil not kepe me chaast in aH
Whan myn husbond is fro þe world ygoñ
Somme cristen man shal wedde me anoñ
ffor þan the apostel seiþ þat I am fre
To wedde a goddes half where it likeþ me.
He seiþ þat to be wedded is no synne
Better is to be wedded þan to brenne ¶ Melius est nubere quam vri. //
What rekkeþ me þoo folk sey vylanye
Of shrewde lameþe and his Bygamye
I woot wel Abraham was an holy man
And Iacob eke as fer as euer I can
And eche of hem had wyues moo þan twoo
And mony anoþer holy man also
Where can ȝe say in eny maner age
That vs god defended mariage

By expresse woord' I prei 3ou telleþ me
Or where co*m*maunded he virginite
I wote as wel as 3e it' is no drede
þe Apostel whan he speke þ of maydenhede
He seide þerof precept' had he noñ
Men may counsaile a wo*m*man to be oñ
But' co*u*nseilling' nys non comaundement'
He putte it' in oure owne Iuggement'
ffor had god co*m*maunded maidenhede
þan had he dampned weddyng' wiþ þe dede
And certes 3if þer were no sede ysowe
Virginite þan wherof shuld' it' growe.
Paule durst' not' co*m*maunde at' þe leest' [leaf 130, back]
A þing' of which his maister' 3af hy*m* no heest'
þe darte is sette vp for virgynyte
Chace who so may who so renneþ best' lat' se
But' þis word is not' take of every wi3t'
But' þer as god wold 3eue it' of his myght'
I wote wel þat' þe apostel was a mayde
But' naþelees þoughñ þat' he wrote or seide
He wold þat' euery wi3t' were suchñ as he
All nys but' counsaile to virgynite
And forto be a wif he 3af me leue
Of Indulgence so is it' no repreue
To wedde me 3if þat' my make dye
W*ith*-oute excepcioñ of Bygamye
Al were it' good no wo*m*man forto touche
He ment' as his body · or in his couche
ffor peril is boþ fire *and* towe to assemble
3e knowe what' þis ensample may resemble
þis is al *and* som*m*e he helde virginite
More p*ar*fit' þan wedded in freelte
Freelte clepe I not' but' þat' he *and* she
Wolde lede her lif al in chaastite
I gr*au*nte it' wel I haue non envie
þoo Maidenhede preferre bygamye

It' likeþ hem to be clene in body and goost'.
Of myn estaat' I wil make no boost'
ffor wel ȝe knowe a lord' in his houshold'
Haþ not' euery vessel of gold'
Somme bene of tree and doñ her lord' seruise
God clepeþ folk to him in sondry wise
And euery haþ of god a propre ȝift
Somme þis somme þat' as hym likeþ shift'
Virginite ys grete perfeccioñ
And continence eke wiþ deuociōn
But' crist' þat' of perfeccioñ is welle
Bad not' euery wiȝt' he shulde selle
Al þat' he had and ȝeue it' to þe poore [leaf 131]
And in suchñ wise folowe hym *and* his lore
He spake to hem þat' wold lyue parfitely ¶ M^t xlx.[1] Dixit autem Ihesus vade & vende omnia quæ habes & da pauperibus [1 *Matth.* xix. 21]
And lordingges by ȝoure leue þat' am not' I
I wil bystowe þe floure of al myn age
In charite and fruyte of mariage
Telle me also to what' conclusioñ
Were membres made of generacioñ
And of so parfit' wise and whi ywrouȝt'
Tresteþ riȝt' wel þei were not' made for nouȝt'
Glose who so wil I say boþ vp and doun
þat' þei were made for purgacioun
Of vryne and oure boþe þingges smale
were eke to knowe a female from a male
And for noon oþer cause. what' seye ȝe no
þe experience woot' þat' it' is so /
So þat' þe clerkes ben not' wiþ me wrooþ
I seie þis þat' þei maked be[2] fore both [2 *over* a y *rubd out.*]
This is to seyne for office *and* for ese
Of engendringe ther we not' god displese
whi shuld' men ellis in her bokes sette
þat' man shal ȝelde to his wif his dette
Nowe wherwiþ shuld' he paye his payment'
ȝif þat' he ne vsed his sely instrument'

Than were þei made vpon a creature
To purge vryne and eke for engendrure
But' I seye not' þat' euery wi3t' is holde
þat' haþ suc̄h harneys as I to 3ou haue tolde
To goon and vsen hem in engendrure
þan shuld' men take of chastite no cure
Crist' was a mayde and shapen as a man
And mony a seint' siþ þat' þe wórld' bygan
3it' lyued þei euere in *par*fit' chaastite
I nyl envie wiþ no virginite
Lat' hem ete brede of pured whete sede
And lat vs wyues ete Barle brede.
And 3it' wiþ barle brede Mark' telle can [leaf 131, back]
Oure lord Ihesu refresshed mony a man
In suc̄h astate as god haþ cleped vs /
I wil *per*seuere I ne am not' precious
In wifhode wil I vse myn Inst*r*ument'
As frely as my maker haþ it' sent'
If I be daungerous god 3eue me sorowe
Myn husbonde shal it' haue boþ eue *and* morowe
Whan þat' him list' come forþ *and* paye his dette
An husbond' I wil han I nyl not' lette
Which̄ shal be boþ my dett*our* *and* my þral
And han his t*r*ibulacioñ wiþ-aH
Vpon his flessh while þat' I am his wiff
I haue the power during' al my liff
vpon his p*r*opre body and not' he
Ri3t' þus þe apostel told' [it] vnto me
And bad oure husbondes forto loue hy*m* weH
Al þis sentence me likeþ euery deH
Vp stert' the p*ar*donere and þat' anoñ
Now dame quod he by god *and* by seynt' Ioh̄n
3e bene a noble precheour in þis caas
I was about to wedde a wiff alas
What' shuld' I by it' on my flessh̄ so dere
3it' had I leuer wedde non to 3ere

¶ Ad cor*inthios* vijo. vir sui corpo*r*is potestatem non habet, sed mulier.

Ibyde quod she my tale is not' bygonne
Nay þou shalt' drinken a noþer tonne
Er þat' I goo shal sauour wors þan ale
And whan þat' I haue told' forþ my tale
Of tribulacion in mariage
Of whiche I am expert' in myn age
þis is to seye my silf haþ bene þe whippe
þan maist' þowe chese whider' þou wilt' scippe
þilk' tonne þat' I shal abroche
Be war of it' or þou to nye aproche
ffor I shal telle ensamples moo þan ten
who that' wil not' be war by oþere men./
By hym shul oþer men corrected be [leaf 132]
Thise same wordes writeþ ptholome
Rede in his almagest' and take it' þere
Dame I wold' prey 3ou if 3our wille were
Seide þis pardonere as 3e bygan
Telle forþ 3oure tale spare for no man
And teche vs 3enge men of 3oure practyke
Gladly quod she siþ it may 3ou like
But' þat' I prey to al þis companye
If þat' I speke after my fantasie
As takeþ nat' a greef of þat' I seye
For myñ entent' is not' but' to pleye
¶ Now sirs þan shal I telle 3ou my tale
As euere mote I drinke wyne or ale
I shal seie soþ þoo husbondes þat' I hadde
As iij. of hem were good *and* two were badde
þe iij. were good men riche *and* olde
Vnneþes myȝten þei þe statute holde
In whicñ þei were bounden vnto me
3e wote wele what' I mene of þis *parde*
As god me helpe I laugñ whan I þenke
How pitously a nyȝt' I made hem swynke
But' by my faye I tolde of it' no store
þei had me 3oue her londe *and* her tresore

Me neded nou' do lenger diligence
To wynne her loue and do hem reuerence
þei loued me so wel by god aboue
þat' I ne tolde no deynte of her loue
A wise wo*m*man wil bysy hure eu*er*e in oñ
To gete her loue 3e þer as she haþ noñ
But' siþe I had hem holy in myn honde
And siþ þat' þei hadde 3oue me al her londe
what' shuld I take kepe hem forto-plese
But' 3if it' were my profite & myñ ease
But' sette he*m* so a werke by my faye
þat' mony a ny3t' þei songen weleaway
The bacon was not' fette for he*m* I trowe [leaf 132, back]
þat' som*m*e men han in Essex at' donmowe
I gouerned hem so wel after' my lawe
þat' eche of hem ful blisful was *and* fawe
To bringe me gay þingges fro þe feire
knyves and ryngges & pu*r*ses wel faire
ffor god it' woot' I chide hem spitously
Now herkeneþ how I bere me pr*o*prely
3e wise wyues þat' can vnderstonde
þus shuld 3e speke and bere he*m* wrong' on honde
ffor half so boldely þer can no man
Swere and lye as wo*m*man can
I say not þis by wyues þat' bene wise
But' it' be whan þat' þei he*m* mysavise
A wise wif shal if þat' she can her goode
Bere him an honde þat' þe kowe is wode
And take witnesse of hire owne mayde
Of hure assent' but' harkeneþ how I seide
¶ Sire olde keynarde is þis þine aray
whi is my neighbo*ur*es wif' so gay
She is hono*ur*ed oueral wher she goþe
I sitte at home I haue no þrifty cloþe
what' dostowe at' myn neighbo*ur*s hous
Is she so faire art' þou so amerous

what' roune ȝe wiþ our mayde. benedicite
Sire olde lecchoure lat' þi Iapes be
And if I haue a gossipe or a frende
wiþ-oute gilt' ȝe chide as a fende
ȝif þat' I walk' or play vnto his hous
þou commest home as dronken as a mous
An prechest' on þi benche wiþ euel preef'
þou seist' to me it' is a grete meschief
To wedde a poor womman for costage
And if þat' she be riche of grete parage
þan seist þou þat it' is a turmentrie
To suffre her pride and her malencolie.
And if þat' she be faire þowe verrey knaue [leaf 133]
þowe seist þat' euery holoure wol hure haue
She may no while in chaastite abide
That' is assaied vpon eche side
Thowe seist' somme folk' desire vs for richesse
Somme for our shap and some for our fairnesse
And somme for she can eiþer sing' or dañce
Thus seistowe wernard' god ȝeue þ^e^ meschañce
Somme for hure hondes *and* her armes smale
Thus goþ al to þe deueH by þi tale
Thow seyst men may not' kepe a casteH walle
It' may so longe assailled be oueraH
And if þat' she be foule þou saist' þat' she
Coveiteþ euery man þat' she may se
ffor as a spaynel she wil on hym lepe
Til þat' she fynde somme man þat' wil hire chepe
Ne noon so grey goos gos þer in the lake
As seist þou þat' wil be wiþ-outen make
And seist' it' is an harde þinge forto welde
A wiȝt' þat' no man wil his þonkes helde
Thus seist' þou lorel whan þou goost' to bedde
And þat' no wise man nedeþ forto wedde
And no man þat' entendeþ to þe heuene
with wilde þonder' dynt' and fire leuene

Mote þi welked nek' be to-broke
þou seist' þat' dropping' houses and eke smoke
And chidinge wyues maken men to fle
Out' of hir owne house. A benedicite
What' eileþ suc̄h an old man forto chide
þou seist' we wyues wil oure vices hide
Til we be fast' *and* þan we wil hem schewe
Wele may þis be a prouerbe of a schrewe
þou seist' þat' Oxen. assen. hors. *and* houndes
þei ben assaide at' dyuers stoundes
Basyns lauoyrs er þat' men hem bye
Spones. stooles. *and* suc̄h husbondrye.
And so bene pottes cloþes and o*þer* araies [leaf 133, back]
But' of wo*m*men are maked none assaies
Til þei ben wedded old dotard' shrewe
And seist' howe þen we wil̄ our vices shewe
Thowe seist' also þat' it' displeseþ me
But' 3if þou wilt' preise my bewte
And but' þou poure alway vpon my face
And clepe me faire dame in euery place
And but' þou make a feest' on þat' ilk' day
þat' I was born and make fressh̄ *and* gay
And but' þou do to myn norys honoure
And to my chambere *with*Inne my bour
And to my faders folkes *and* his alyes
Thus seist' þou olde bareh̄ ful of lyes
And 3it' of oure apprentise Iankyn
ffor his crispe here shynyng' as gold' fyne
And for he sqwiers me boþ vp *and* do*u*n
3it' hast' þou þou3t' a fals suspecio*u*n
I wil hym not' þei þou were dede to-morowe
But' telle me þis whi hidest' þou wiþ sorowe
þi keyes of þi chest' away fro me
It' is my good as wel as þine p*a*rde
what' wenest' þou make an ydyote of o*u*r dame
Now' by þat' lord þat' called is seint' Iame

þou shalt not boþ þouȝe þou were woode
Be maister of my body and my goode
þat oon þou shalt forgoen magre þine eiȝen
what helpeþ it of me to quere *and* spien
I trowe þoo þou woldest lokke me *in* þi chest
þou shuldest seie wif go where þe lest
Take ȝoure disport I wil leue no talis
I knowe ȝou for a good-wiff dame Alys
we loue no man þat takeþ kepe ne charge
where þat we go we wil be at *our* large
Of alle men blessed mot he be
þe wise astrologen daun ptholome
That seiþ þis prouerbe in his almagest [leaf 134]
Of alle men his wisdom is hiest
þat rekkeþ not who haþ þe world in hond
By þis prouerbe þou shalt wel vnderstond
Haue þou ynowe what ther þe rekke *and* care
Howe merely þat oþere folk fare
ffor certes olde dotarde be ȝoure leue
ȝe shul haue queynt right ynowe at eue
He is to grete a nygard þat wil warne
A man to liȝt a candel at his lantarne
He shal haue neuere þe lasse liȝt *par*de
Haue þou ynowe þe ther not pleyn þe
Thou seist also þat ȝif þou make vs gay
with cloþinge or wiþ precious aray
That it is perile of our chaastie
And ȝit wiþ wordes þou mote enforce me
And say þise wordes in þe apostels name
In abite made wiþ chaastite and shame
ȝe wo*m*men shuld apparaile ȝou quod he
And not in tressed here and gay perre
As perle ne wiþ gold *and* cloþes riche
Aftere þi text ne aftere þi rubriche
I nyl not worche as mochel as a gnatte
Thowe seidest als þat I was like a catte

But who so wolde senge a cattis skyn
þan wold þe catte wel dwellen in his Inn
And if þe cattes skyn be sclyke *and* gay
She nyl not dwel in hous half a day
But forþ she wil er eny day be dawed
To shewe her skyn and go a *cater*wawed
þis to seie if I be gay sir schrewe
I wil renne out my burel for to shewe
Sir olde foole what helpeþ þe to spien
þei þowe prey argus wiþ his Mł. eyen
To be my warde corps as he can best
In feiþ he shal not kepe me but if me lest
3it coupe I make his beerde so mote I þee [leaf 134, back]
þou seist eke þat þer bene þinges þre
þe which þingges trowblen al þis erþe
And þat no wi3t ne may endure þe ferþe
O leue sir schrewe Ihesu short þi liff
3it prechestowe and seist an hatful wiff
Yreckned is for oon of þise meschaunces
Ben þere non oþer manere resemblaunses
þat 3e may likne 3oure parables too
But 3if a cely wif be oon of þoo
þow. liknest wommannys loue to helle
To barayn londe þer water may not dwelle
Thou liknest it also to wilde fire
þe more it brenneþ þe more it haþ desire
To consume eny þing þat brent wold be
Thow seist þat ri3t a[s] wormes sheende a tre
Ri3t so a wiff distroieþ her husbonde
þis knowe þei þat bene to wyues bonde
¶ Lordingges ri3t þus as 3e han hunderstand
Bare I stifly myn olde husbondes on hand
That þus þei seiden in her dronkenesse
And eke þat þei had suspecioñ of Ialousnesse
On Iankin and on myn neef also
O lord þe peyn I did hem *and* þe woo /

fful giltelees by goddis swete pyne
ffor as an hors I coupe bop bite *and* whyne
I coupe pleyn *and* I was in pe gilt
Or ellis often tyme I had be spilt
Who so pat first to mylle commeth first grynt
I pleyned furst so was oure werre stint
¶ pei were ful glad to excusen hem ful blyue
Of pinge of which pei agilt neuer her lyue
Of wenches wold I beren hem on honde
Whan pat for seke pei myzt vnneþ stonde
zit ticled I his hert for pat he
wende I had of hym so grete chierte
I swore pat al my walking by nyzt
Was forto aspie wenches pat he dizt
Vnder pat colour had I mony a myrpe
ffor al such witte is zeuen vs in our birpe
Deceyte. weping. spynnyng god hap zeue
To womman kindely while pat pei lyue
And pus of on ping I auaunte me
At pe ende I had pe best in eche degre
By sleizt or force. or by somme maner pinge
As by contynuel murmur or grucchinge
Namely abed had pei meschaunce
per wold I chide and do hem no plesaunce
I wolde no lenger in pe bedde abide
zif pat I felt his arme ouere my side
Til he had made his raunson vnto me
pan wolde I suffre hym doo his nicete
And perfore euery man pis tale I telle
Wiue who so may al are for to selle
With empty hond men may non hauke lure
ffor wynnyng wold I al his lust endure
And make me a feyned appetite
And zit in bacon had I neuere delite
That maked me pat euer I wold hym chide
ffor pouze pe pope had sitte hym beside

388 392 396 [leaf 135] 400 404 408 412 416 420

¶ ffallere. flere. nere scatuit deus in muliere

I wolde not' spare hym at' his owne bord'
ffor be my trouþe I quytte hym worde for word'
As helpe me verrey. god omnipotent'
þow I riȝt' nowe shuld' make my testament
I ne owe hym a word' þat' it' nys quytte
I brouȝt' it' so aboute by my witte
þat' he must ȝeue it' vp as for þe best'
Or ellis had we neuer be in rest'
ffor þoughñ he loked as a lyoñ
ȝit' shuld' he faile of his conclusioñ
Than wold' I seie nowe goode leef take kepe
Howe mekely lokeþ wilkin our shepe./
Come nere my spouse lat' me ba þi cheke [leaf 135, back]
ȝe shul be al pacient' *and* meke
And han a swete spiced conscience
Siþ ȝe so precñ of Iobes pacience
Suffreþ alway siþ ȝe so wel can preche
And but' ȝe doo certeyn we shul ȝou teche
þat' it' is faire to haue a wif in pees
Oon of vs mote bowen doutelees
And siþ a man is more resonable
þan womman is. sir' ȝe moste be suffrable
what' eileth ȝou to grucche þus *and* grone
Is it' for ȝe wold' han my queynt' alone
Wy take it' alle lo haue it' euery deñ
Peter I schrewe ȝou but' ȝe loue me weñ
ffor ȝif I wolde selle my bele chose
I couþe walk' as frecch as eny rose
But' I wil kepe it' for ȝour owne totñ
ȝe be to blame be god I seie ȝou sotñ
Suchñ manere wordes had we on hond'
Now wil I speke of my ferþe husbonde
¶ Mi ferþe husbonde was a reueloure
þis is to seie he had a paramour
And I was ȝenge and ful of ragerye
Stiborn and stronge and Ioly as a pie

lord' I coupe daunce to an harpe smale
And synge ywis as eny ny3tingale
whan I hadde dronke a draught' of swete wyñ
Metelyus þe foule cheerle þo swyñ
þat' wiþ a staf' byraft' his wif her lif'
ffor she dronk' wyne þou3e I had ben his wilf
Ne shuld he not' han daunted me fro drinke
And aftere wyne on venus most' I þenke
ffor as siker as colde engendreþ haile
A likerous mouþ most' han a lykerous tale
In wo*m*man vinolent' is no defence
þis knowe lecchours by exp*e*rience
But' lord c*r*ist' whan þat' it' remembreþ me [leaf 130]
Vpon my 3ouþe and [on] my Iolite
It' ticleþ me aboute myn herte rote
Vntó þis day It' doþ myn herte bote
þat' I haue had my world' as in my tyme
But' age alas þat' al wil enuenyme
Haþ me byraft' my bewte and my pith̄
Lat' it' go fare wel þe deuel goo þerwith̄
The floure is goñ *per* nys no more to telle
þe bren as I best' can now mote I selle
But' 3it' to be ri3t' mery wil I foonde
Now forþe to telle of my ferþe husbonde
I seie I had in hert' gret' despite
þat' he of eny oþer had delite
But' he was quytte by god *and* by seynt' Iose
I made hy*m* of þe same wode a crose
Nat' of my body in no foule manere
But' certeynly I made folk' such ch̄ere
þat' in his owne grece I made hy*m* frye
ffor Anger and for verrey Ialowsie
By god in erþe I was his purgatorie
ffor which̄ I hope his saule be in glorie
ffor god it' woote he satte ful oft' and songe
whan þat' his shogh̄ ful bitterly hy*m* wronge

ffor þer nas noon sauf god and he þat wist'
In mony wise where I hym twist'
He deyed whan I come fro Ierusalem
And liþe in a graue vnder þe rode-beem
All nys his tombe not' so curious
As was þe sepulture of hym darius
which̄ þat' appelles wrouȝt' subtily
It' nys but' waast' to bury hym preciously
Lat' hym fare wel god ȝeue his soule rest'
He is nowe in his graue *and* in his chest'
¶ Nowe of my .v. husbond' wil I telle
God lat' neuere his soule come *in* helle
And ȝit' was he to me þe moost' shrewe [leaf 136, back]
þat' fele I on my ribbes al by rewe
And euere shal unto myn ending' daye
But' in oure bed he was so fressh̄ *and* gaye
And þer wiþ al so wel couþe he me glose
whan þat' he wold' han my bele chose
þat þouȝe he had me bete on euery bon̄
He couþe wynne ageyn my loue anon̄
I trowe I loued him þe bette for he
Was of his loue daungerous to me
We wo*m*men han if þat' I shal not' lye
In þis manere a queynte fantasie
waite what' þinge we may not' liȝtly haue
Theraftere wil we crie al day and craue
fforbede vs þinge *and* þat' desiren we
Prees on vs fast' and þan wil we fle
with daungere outer we al oure chaffare
Greet' prees atte Market' makeþ dere ware
And to grete chepe is yholde atte litel pris
This knoweþ euery wom*m*an þat' is wise
¶ My fift' husbonde god his soule blisse
which̄ þat' I toke for loue and no ricchesse
he some tyme was a clerk' of oxenford'
And had left' scole and went' at' home to boord'

wiþ my gossip dwelling' in our toūn
God haue her soule her name was alisoun
She knewe myn hert' and al my priuyte
Better þan oure parissh preest' so mot' I the
To hure bywried I my counseil aH
ffor had myn husbonde pissed on a walle
Or doon a þinge þat' shuld' have cost' his liff'
To hure and to anoþer worþi wiff'
And to my nece which I loue weH
I wold han tolde his counseile eueridell
And so I did ful often god it' wote
þat' made his face often rede *and* hote.
ffor verrey shame and blamed hym self for he [leaf 137]
had tolde to me so grete a privyte
And so byfelle þat' ones in a lente
So ofte tyme I to my gosype wente
ffor euere ȝit' I loued to be gay /
And forto walke in marche Averil and may
ffrom hous to hous to harken sonday tailes/
þat' Iankin clerk *and* my gossip dame alys
And I my self into þe feeldes wente
Myn husbonde was at' londoñ al þat' lente
I had þe bettre leisere forto pley
And forto see and eke forto be seye
Of lusty folk what' wist' I wher' my *grace*
Was shapen forto be or in what' place
Therfore made I my visitacions
To vigiles and to processioñs
To preching' eke and to þise pilgrimages
To plaies of miracles and of mariages
And wered vpon my gay scarlet gites
Thise wormes ne þise mothes ne þise mytes
Vpon my perile frete hem neuer a dele
And woostowe whi for þei were vsed wele
Now wil I tellen forþ what' happed me
I seie þat' in þe feeldes walked we

Til trewely we had suc̄ daliañce
þis clerk' and I þat' of my purviañce
I spake to hym and seide how þat he
3if I were widowe shuld wedde me
ffor certeynly I seyȩ for no bobañce
þat' I was neuere 3it' without purveañce
Of mariage ne of oþer þingges eke
I hold' a monnys witte nat worþ a leke
þat' haþ but' oon hool forto stirten too
And 3if þat faile þan is al ydoo /
[I bare hym' on' hande he hadde enchauntede me [MS Reg. 17 D xv, *on leaf* 132, *back*]
My dame taugh̄te me þat subtylte
And eke I sayde I Mete of' hym' aH nygh̄te
He wolde haue slayne Me As I laye vprigh̄te
And aH my bedde was ffuHe of' vereye blode
Butte yette I hope þat ye schuH do me gode
ffor' blode bitokeneþe golde As me was taugh̄te
And aH' was ffalse I dremede of' hitt' righte nough̄te
Butte as I ffollowede Ay My dames lore
AsweHe of' that as of' oþer' þynge more] [MS Reg. *extract stops*]
But' nowe Sir' lat' me se what' shal I seyn̄
A A. by god I haue my tale ageyn̄.
whan þat' my ferþ husbond' was on bere [leaf 137, back]
I wepte algates and made sory chere
As wyues moten for it' is þe vsage
And with̄ my keercheef keuered my visage
But' for þat' I was purueide of a make
I wepte but' smale *and* þat' I vndertake
To churc̄h was myn husbond yborn on morowe
wiþ neighbours þat' for hym made sorowe
And Iankyn our clerk' was on of þoo
As helpe me god whan þat' I segh̄ hym goo
Aftere þe bere me þou3t' he had a peire
Of legges and of fete so clene *and* feire
þat' al my hert' I 3aue vnto his holde ·
He was I trowe xx^ti^ wynter' olde

And I was xl^{ti} ȝif I shal seie soþe
But^{t} ȝit^{t} I had alway a Coltissħ toþe
Gat^{t} toþed I was *and* þat^{t} by-cam me welħ
I had þe p*r*inte of seynt^{t} venus seelħ
As helpe me god I was a lusty oñ
ffaire and riche . ȝonge *and* welbygoñ
And trewly as myn husbond̄ tolde me
I had þe best^{t} quoniam þat^{t} myȝt^{t} be
[ffor^{t} sertes I Am) alħ venerye*n*)
In) ffelenges And my herte is Mercye*n*)
Venus me yafe My luste my lykerousnesse
And Mars yafe me my sturdye hardynesse]
Myn ascendent^{t} was taure *and* mars þ*er*-inne
Allas alas þat^{t} euer loue was synne
I folowed aye myn Inclinacioñ
By vertue of my constellacioñ
That^{t} made me I couþe not^{t} wiþdrawe
My chambere of venus fro*m* a good felawe
[Yette haue I Mars is Marke vppon) my ffac*e*
And allso in Anoþ*er*e preuye place
ffor^{t} god^{t} so wysse be My saluac*i*on)
I louede neu*er* by no discrec*i*on)
I ffollowede eu*er* Myne Appetyte
Alħ were he longe schorte blacke or^{t} whyte
I toke no kepe so þat he lykede me
How poure he was And eke of^{t} whatte degre]
What^{t} shuld I sei but^{t} at^{t} þe monþes ende
This Ioly clerk^{t} Iankyn þat^{t} was so hende
Haþ wedded me wiþ grete solempnite
And to hy*m* ȝaue [I] al þe londe and ffee
þat^{t} euere was me ȝeuen þ*er*bifore
But^{t} aftere[ward] repented me fuĺ sore
He nolde suffre no þinge of my lest^{t}
by god he smote me onys on þe lest^{t}
ffor þat^{t} I rent^{t} out^{t} of his boke a leef
That^{t} of þat^{t} stroke myn eeren wexen deef

[MS Reg. 17 D xv, *on leaf* 133]
[MS Reg. 17 D xv, *on leaf* 133]
[MS Reg. *extract stops*]
[leaf 138]

Stiborn I was as is a leonesse
And of my tunge a verrey Iangeleresse
And walk' I wold' as I had doñ to-forn ·
ffrom hous to hous al þou3e he had it' sworn
fforþwiþ ful often tyme he wolde preche
And me [of] olde Romaynes geestes teche
How he · symplicius gallus laft' his wiff
And hure for-soke for terme of his lif
Nat' but' for open hede he hure say
Lokinge out' at' his door on a day
Anoþer romayn tolde he me by name
þat' for his wiff was at' a somers game
Wiþ-oute his wittyng' he forsoke her' eke
And þan wolde he vpon his bible seke
þat' ilk prouerbe of Ecclesiast'
Where he commaundeþ *and* forbedeþ fast'
Man shal not' suffre his wif to rome aboute
Than wolde he seie ri3t' þus wiþ-outen doute
Who-so þat' beeldeþ his hous aH of salous ¶ Nota bene
And prickeþ his blynde hors ouere þe falous
And suffereþ his wif forto seken halowes
Is worþi forto be honged on þe galowes /
¶ But al for nou3t' I sette not' an hawe
Of his prouerbes ne of his olde lawe
Ne I wold not' of hym corrected be
I hate hym þat' my vice telleþ me
And so doñ moo god wote of vs þan I
þis made him wiþ me wode al vtterly
I nold' forbere hym in no cas
Now wil I seye 3ou soþ by seint' Thomas
Whi þat' I rent' out' of his booke a leef'
ffor which he smote me þat' I was deef'
He had a boke þat' gladly ny3t' *and* daye
ffor his disport' he wolde rede alway
He cleped Valerye and theofraste [leaf 138, back]
Atte whiche boke he lowgh alway ful fast'

And eke þer was somtyme a clerk' in Rome
A Cardynal þat' hight' seint' Ierom?
þat' made a boke a3ein Iouean
In which boke eke þer was Terculan
Crisippus. Trocula. and holowys
That' was Abbas not' fer fro Paris/
And eke þe parables of Salomon
Ovydes art' and bokes mony oñ
And alle þise were bounden *in* oo volom
And eu*e*ry ny3t' and day was his custom
Whan he had leisere and vacacioñ
ffrom o*þer*e worldly occupacioñ
To reden in þis boke of wicked wyues
He knewe of hem mo legendys þan lyues
þan bene of good wyues in þe bible
ffor trusteþ wel it' is an impossible
þat' eny clerk' wil speken good of wyues
But' 3if it' be of holy seyntes lyues
Ne of noon o*þer*e wo*m*man neue*r*e þe moo /
who peinted þe lyon telle me who /
By god 3if' wo*m*men had ywriten stories
As clerkes han wiþ-In her oratories
Thei wold han writen of men more wickednesse
Than al þe Mark' of Adam may redresse
The Children of mercury and Venus
Ben in her worchinge contrarious /
Mercury loueþ wisdom *and* science
And Venus loueþ riote and dispence
And for her dyuers disposicioñ
Ecñ falleþ in oþer exaltacioñ
As þus god wote mercure is disolate
In pisces wher Venus is exaltate'
And Venus falleþ þer mercurye is reysed'
þerfor no wo*m*man of no man is preised.
The clerk' whan he is olde and may not' do [leaf 139]
Of Venus werkes worþ his olde shoo

þan sitte he doun *and* writte in his dotage
þat' wo*m*men can not' kepe her mariage
But' nowe to p*ur*poos whi I told þe
þat' I was beten for a boke parde.
Vpon a ny3t' Iankin þat' was our sire
Redde on his boke as he satte by þe fire
Of Eua first' þat' for her wickednesse
Was al mankinde brou3t' to wrecchednesse
[ffor' whiche þat Ih*es*u Crist' hym' selfe was slayne [MS Reg. 17 D xv,
That boughte vs *with* his herte blode agayne on *leaf* 134, *back*]
Lo here expresse of' women' Maye ye ffynde
That women' was the losse of' AH Mankynde]
Tho redde he me howe sampsoñ lost' his heres
Slepinge his lemman kitt' it' wiþ her sheres
þourgh whiche treson lost' he boþ his eyen /
Tho redde he me if I shal not' lyen.
Of Ercules and of his dyanyre
þat' caused hy*m* to sette hy*m* self a fyre
No þinge forgate he þe pen*au*nce *and* woo
þat' Socrates had wiþ his wyues twoo
Howe þat' Ancipa cast' pisse on his hede
þe Sely man satte stille as he were dede
He wiped his hede no more durst' he seyn'
But' er þat' thonder' stint' co*m*meþ a reyn'
Of [1]pasipa þat' was þe quene of grete [[1] *at first* ph]
ffor schrewdenesse hy*m* þou3t' þ^e^ tale swete
ffye speke no more it' is a grisly þinge
Of hur*e* horrible lust' and [hur*e*] lykynge
Of Clitermistra for her lecherye
þat' falsly made her husbond' forto dye
He redde it' wiþ ful good deuocioñ
He tolde me for what occasioñ
Amphiorax at' thebes lost' his lif'
Myn husbonde had a legende of his wif
Eriphilem. þat' for an ouch of gold'
haþ prively vnto þe grekes told'

wher þat' her husbond' hidde hym in a place
ffor whicħ he had at' Thebes sory grace
Of lyma tolde he mee and of lucye [leaf 139, back]
þei boþ made her husbondes forto dye
Thatt on for loue þat' oþer was fol hate
lyma her husbonde on euene late
Enpoysened had for þat' she was his foo
Lucia lykerous loued her husbond' soo /
þat' for he shuld' vpon her alway þinke
She ȝaue hym sucħ a loue manere drinke
That' he was dede or it' was by þ^e morowe
And þus algates husbondes han sorowe
¶ Than tolde he me howe on latumyus
Compleyned to his felawe arius
That' in his gardyne growed sucħ a tre
On whicħ he seide þat' his wyues þre
Hangged hem selue for hertes despitous
O leue broþer quod þis arious
ȝeue me a plant' of þat' blisful tre
And in my gardyne planted shal he be
Of latter date of wyues haþ he redde
þat' han sclayn her husbondes in þe bedde
But' lat' hure lecchoure diȝt' hur' al þe nyȝt'
Whan þat' þe corps lay in þe floore vpriȝt'
And some han dryuen nayles in her brayñ
While þat' þei sclepe and þus þei han hem sclayñ
Somme han ȝeuen poysen in her drinke
He spak more harme þan hert' may þenk'
And þer-with-aH he knewe of moo prouerbes ¶ Solo melius est habitare.
þan in þis world' þer growen grasse or herbes /
Bett' is quod he þine habitacioñ
Be wiþ a leon or a foule dragoñ
þan wiþ a womman vsing' forto chide
Bet' is quod he higħ in þe roof abide
þan wiþ an angry wif doun in an hous
þey bene so wicked and contrarious /

þei haten þat her husbondes louen ay
He seide a wo*m*man cast her shame away
whan she cast of her smokke *and* fer*þer*mo [leaf 140]
A faire wo*m*man but she be chaast also /
Is lich̄ a gold rynge on a sowes nose
who wold wene or wold suppose
The woo þat in myn herte was *and* pyne
And whan I segh̄ he wolde neuere fyne
To reden on þis cursed boke al nyȝt
Al sodeynly þre leues haue I pliȝt
Out of his boke riȝt as he redde *and* eke
I wiþ my fist so toke him on þe cheke
That in our fire he fille bakward adoun
And he vp stert as doþ a wood lyoun
And wiþ his fist he smote me on þe hede
þat in þe flore I laie as I were dede
And whan he seegh̄ how stille þat I lay
He was agast and wold han fledde away
Til at þe laste out of my swowe I breide
O hastowe sclayne me fals þeef I seide
And for my londe þus hastowe mordred me
Or I be dede ȝit wil I kisse þee
And nere he come and kneled faire adoun
And saide dere sustere Alisouñ
As helpe me god I shal þe neuere smyte
That I haue done it is þi self to wite
fforȝeue it me *and* þat I þe biseke
And ȝit eftsones I hit hym on þe cheke
And seide þeef þus moche am I wreke
Nowe wil I dye I may no lenger speke
But at þe last wiþ mochel care *and* woo
We fille acorded by vs seluen twoo
He ȝaue me al þe bridel in myn honde
To haue þe gouerna*u*nce of hous *and* londe
And of his tunge and his hand also
And made him brenne his boke anoñ riȝt þoo

And whan þat' I had goten vntò me
By maistery al þe souereynte.
Than he seide myn owne trewe wif' [leaf 140, back]
Do as 3ou lest' þe terme of al 3oure lif'
kepe 3oure honure and kepe eke myn astate
Aftere þat' day we had neuere debate.
God helpe me so I was to him as kinde
As eny wiff from denmarke into Ynde
And also trewe / and so was he to me
I prey to god þat' sitte in mageste
So blesse his soule for his mercy dere
Now wil I seie my tale if 3e wil here

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe wiff of bath̄

And here bygynneþ þe Tale.[1]

[1 *that is, The Wrangle between the Summoner and the Friar.*]

¶ The tale./

The frere lowe whan he had herd al þis
Now dame quod he so haue I ioye or blis
þis is a longe preamble of a tale
And whan þis somnour herd þe frere gale
Lo quòd þe somnour goddis armes two
A frere wil entrémete hym euermoo
Loo good men a flie and eke a frere
wollen falle in euery diss̄ and eke matere
what' spekest' þou of preambulacioun.
what' amble or trotte or pees or go sitte doun
Thou lettest' oure disport' in þis manere
3e wilt' þou so somnour' quod þe frere
Now by my fay I shal er þat' I goo
Telle a somnour such a tale or twoo
That' alle þe folk shul laughen in þis place
Now ellis frere I bishrewe þi face
Quod þis somnour' and I bishrewe me
But' 3if I telle þe tales two or þre
Of freres er I come to sidyngburne
þat' I shal make þine hert' for to mourne

ffor wel I wote þi pacience is goũ
Our hoost' cried pees and þat' anoũ
And seide lat' þe wo*m*man telle her tale
3e faren as folk' þat' dronken beñ of ale./ 852
Do dame telle forth 3our tale þat' is þe best' [leaf 141]
Al redy sire quod she ri3t' as 3ou lest'
If I haue licence of þis worþi frere
3is dame quod he telle forþ 3oure tale we wil here 856

[*No break in the MS.*]

[*THE WIFE OF BATH'S TALE*]

[*on leaf* 141]

IN þe olde dayes of þe kingꝫ arthour' ¶ ffabula
Of whicħ þatꝫ bretons speken grete honour
Al was þis land fulfilled of fayry
þe Elfe quene wiþ her Ioly companye
Daunced wiþ outꝫ in mony a grene mede
þis was þe olde opynyon as I rede
I speke of mony an .C. ȝere a-goo
Butꝫ nowe can no man se noon elues moo
ffor nowe þe grete charite and preiers
Of lymytoures and oþer poor freres
Thatꝫ serchen euery londe and euery streme
As þikke as motes in þe sonne beme
Blessinge halles chambers and boures
Citiees burghes castels hiȝe toures
Thropes . beernys . shiþnes . dayrys
This makeþ þatꝫ þer bene no fayrys
ffor þer as wonte to walke was an elfꝫ
Ther walkeþ nowe þe lymytour hym selfꝫ
In vnder meles and in mornyngges
And seiþ his matyns and his hoły þingges
As he goþ in his lymitacioun
Wommen may go nowe sauf vp and doun
In euery bussħ or vnder euery tre
þer nys noñ oþer Incubus butꝫ he ,
And he wil do hem butꝫ dishonour
And so felle itꝫ þatꝫ þis kingꝫ Arthour
Had in his hous a lusty bachilere
Thatꝫ on a day come ridingꝫ fro ryvere

And happed alone as she was borñ
He seegh̃ a maiden walkingꝫ hym byforñ
Of whicḥ mayde Maugre her hede
By verrey force he raftꝫ hure maydenhede
ffor whicḥ oppression was suchꝫ clamour [leaf 141, back]
And suchꝫ pursute vnto þe kingꝫ arthour
Thatꝫ dampned was þis knyȝtꝫ forto be dede
Be cours of lawe *and* shuld haue lostꝫ his hede
Perauenture suchꝫ was þe statute þoo /
Butꝫ þatꝫ þe quene and oþer ladis moo
So longe preide þe kinge of grace
Til he his liff him graunted in þatꝫ place
And ȝaue hym to þe quene al atꝫ her wille
To chese whedere she woldꝫ hym saue or spille
The quene þonkeþ þe kinge wiþ al her myȝtꝫ
And after þis þus speke she to þe knyghtꝫ
Whan þatꝫ she seegh̃ her tyme on a day
Thou stondestꝫ ȝitꝫ quod she in suchꝫ aray
Thatꝫ of þi lif ȝitꝫ hastowe no suerte
I graunte þe lif if þou canstꝫ telle me
¶ Whatꝫ þing is itꝫ þatꝫ wommen mostꝫ desiren
Be ware and kepe þi nekbone fro yren
And if þou canstꝫ notꝫ telle itꝫ me anoñ
ȝitꝫ wil I ȝeue þe leue forto goñ
A xij. monþe *and* a daye. to seke *and* lere
An answere suffisauntꝫ in þis matere
And suerte wil I han er þatꝫ þou passe
þi body forto ȝelde in þis place
woo was þis knyȝtꝫ and sorowfully he sikeþ
Butꝫ whatꝫ? he may notꝫ do al as hym likeþ
And atꝫ þe lastꝫ he chese hym forto wende
And to come aȝein riȝtꝫ atꝫ þe ȝeres ende
With suche answere as god woldꝫ hym purveye
And takeþ his leue and wendeþ forþ his weye
He sekeþ euery hous and euery place
Where as he hopeþ forto fynde grace

To lere what' þing' wo*m*men louen most'
But' he nowe koude aryuen in no cost'
where as he my3te fynde in þis matere
Twoo creatures acording' in fere
Som*m*e seiden wo*m*men louen best' ricchesse [leaf 142]
Som*m*e seide honour' som*m*e seiden Iolynesse
Som*m*e riche aray. some seiden lust' a bedde
And oft' tyme to be wydowe *and* wedde
So*m*me seiden þat' we bene most' yesed
Whan þat' we bene yflatered *and* yplesed.
He goþ ful ny þe soþ I wil nat' lye
A man shal wynne vs best wiþ flaterye
And wiþ attendaunce and wiþ bisynesse
bene we alyned boþ more *and* lesse
And som*m*e men seyn howe þat' we louen best'
fforto be free and do ri3t' as vs lest'
And þat' no man repreue vs of our vice
But' say þat' we beno wise and no þinge nice
ffor trewly þer nys noon of vs alle
3if eny wi3t' wil clawe vs on þe gallo
þat' we nyl loke or he saye vs soth̄
Assaie and he shal fynde it' þat' he doþ.
ffor be we neuer' so vicious wiþ-Inne
We wil be holden wise and clene of synne
And som*m*e seyn þat' grete delit' haue we
ffor to be holden stable and eke secree
And in oo p*ur*pos stedfastly to dwelle
And not' bewrey þing' þat' men vs telle
But' þat' tale is not' worþ a rake stele
P*ar*de wè wo*m*men co*n*nen no þing' hele
Witnesse on myda wil 3e here þe tale
Ovide amonges oþer þingges smale
Seiþ Mida had vnder his longe heres
Growinge vpon his hede two asses eres
The whiche vice he hidde as he best' my3t'
fful subtily from euery mannys si3t'

þat saue his wif þer wist it no moo
He loued her most and trested to her also
He preide hir most þat vnto no creature
She shuld not tellen of his disfigure
She swore hym nay for al þis world to wynne [leaf 142, back]
She wold do þat vilanye or þat synne
To make her husbond han so foule a name
ffor reprevynge of hym and foule shame
But naþelees her þouȝt þat she dide
þat she so longe shuld a counseile hide
Her þouȝt it satte so sore about her herte
þat nedely som word her mote a-sterte
And siþe she durst [nat] tellen it no man
Doune to a marise fast she ranne
Til she came þere her herte was a fire
And as a bitor bumleþ in þe myre
She laide her mouþ vnto þe water doun
Bewrey me not þou watere wiþ þi soun̄
Qooþ she to þe I telle it *and* no moo
Myn̄ husbonde haþ longe asses eren two
Now is my hert al hole now is it oute
I myȝt no lenger kepe it out of doute
Here may ȝe se þouȝe we a tyme abide
ȝete oute it moot we mowe no counseil hide
The remen*aun*te of þe tale if ȝe wil here
Redeþ ovide and ȝe mowe it lere
¶ This knyȝt of which̄ my tale is specialy
Whan þat he seegh̄ he myȝt not come *per*by
This is to seyn. what wo*mm*en louen most
Wiþ-in his hert soryful was þe goost
But home he goþe he myȝt not soio*ur*ne
þe day was come þat homward most he to*ur*ne
And in his way it happed hy*m* to ride
In al his care vndere a forest side
Where he segh̄ in oon daunce goo /
Of ladis *foure and twenti*[1] *and* ȝit moo [1 MS xxiiij.u.]

Toward' þe daunce he drowe hym 3erne
In hope þat' somme wisdom shuld' he lerne
But' certeynly er he cam fully þere
Vanysshed was þe daunce he nyst' not' where 996
No creature seye he þat' bare lif [leaf 143]
Saue in þe grene he sey sitting' a wif
A fouler wi3t' þer may no man deuise
Ageyn þe kny3t' þe old wif gan arise 1000
And seide sir kny3t' here forþ ne lieþ no way
Telle me what' þat' 3e seken be 3oure fay
Perauenture it' may þe better' be
Thise olde folk konne moche þing' quod she 1004
My leue modere quod þis kny3t' certayñ
I am but' dede but' 3if þat' I can sayñ
Whatt' þinge it' is þat' wommen most' desire
Cowde 3e me wisse I coude wel quyte 3our hire 1008
Plite me þi trouþe here in my hand quod she
The nexte þinge þat' I require þe
Thow shalt' it' doo if it' lye in þi my3t'
And I wille telle it' 3ou er it' be ny3t' 1012
Haue here my trouþe quod þe kny3t' I graunte
Than quoþ she I may me wel auaunte
þi lif is sauf for I wil stonde þer-by
Vpon my lif þe quene wil say as I 1016
Lat' se whicħ is þe proddest' of hem alle
þat' wereth on a kerchif or a calle
þat dar seie nay of þat' I shal 3ou teche
lat' vs goo forþ wiþ-oute lenger speche 1020
Tho rowned she a pistel in his eere
And bad hym to be glad and han no fere
Whan þei be commen to þe courte þis kny3t'
Seide he had holde his day as he had hi3t' 1024
And redy was his answere as he seide
fful mony a noble wif and mony a maide
And mony a widowe for þat' þei be wise
þe quene her silf sitting' as a Iustise 1028

Assembled ben þis answere forto here
And aftere þis kny3t' was bode apere.
And þat' þe kny3t' shuld' telle in audience
To euery wi3t' commmaunded was silence
what' þing' þat' worldly wommen louen mest' [leaf 143, back]
This knyght' ne stode not' stille as doþ a beest'
But' to his questiõ anoñ answerd'
wiþ manly vois þat' al þe courte it' herde
My lege lady generally quod he
wommen desiren to han souereynte
As wel ouer hir husbond *and* her loue
And forto be in maistrie hym aboue
This is 3oure most' desire þou3e 3e me kille
Doþ as 3ou list' I am here at' 3oure wille
In al þe courte ne was þer wif ne mayde
Ne wydowe þat' contraried what' he saide
But' seiden he was worþi han his lif
And wiþ þat' word vp stert' þat' olde wif
whicñ þat' þe knyght' sey sitting' on þe grene
Mercy quod she my souereyn lady quene
Er þat 3oure courte departe do me ri3t'
I taught' þis answere vnto þis kny3t'
ffor whicñ he pli3te me his troythe þere
þe first' þinge I wolde of him requere
He wold it' doo 3if it' lay in his my3t'
Bifore þe court' þan prey I þe sir kny3t'
Quod she þat' þou me take vnto þi wiff
ffor wel þou woost' þat' I. haue kepte þi liff
If I sey fals seye nay vpon þi faye
þis kny3t' answerd' allas *and* weleaway
I woot' ri3t' wel þat suchñ was my bihest'
ffor goddis loue chese a newe request'
Take al my good *and* lat' my body goo
Nay þan quod she I schrewe vs boþe twoo
ffor þou3e þat' I be foule *and* olde *and* poor
I nold' for al þe metal ne for ore

þat vnder erþe is graue or lith aboue
But 3if þat I þi wif were *and* þi loue
My loue quod he nay my dampnacioñ
Allas þat eny of my nacioñ
Shuld euere so foule ydisp*ar*aged be [leaf 144]
But al for nou3t þe ende is þis þat he
Constreyned was he nedes most her wedde
And takeþ þis olde wif and goþ to bedde
Nowe wolden som*m*e men seyn p*er*auentu*r*e
þat for my necligence I do no cure
To telle 3ou þe Ioie and þe araye
þat at þe feest was þat ilk day
To which þinge shortly answere I shal
I seie þer nas no Ioye ne feest at all
þer nas but hevynesse and mochel sorowe
ffor p*r*iuely he wedded hure on a morowe
And alday aftere hid hy*m* as an owle
So woo was him his wif loked so foule
Grete was þe sorowe þe kny3t had in his þou3t
Whan he was wiþ his wiff a bedde brou3t
He walloweþ and turneþ to and froo
His olde wiff laye smyling euermoo
And seide .o dere husbond o benedicite
fareþ euery kny3t þus wiþ his wif as 3e
Is þis þe lawe of king Arthures hous
Is euery kny3t of his loue þus dañgerous
I am 3oure owne loue and eke 3oure wiff
I am she which þat saued haþ 3oure lif
And certes 3it did I 3ou neu*er*e vnri3t
whi fare 3e þus wiþ me þe firste ny3t
3e faren lich a man had lost his witte
ffy what is my gilt for goddes loue telle it
And it shal ben amended if I may
Amended quod þis kny3t nay nay
That wil not bene amended neu*er*e moo
þou art so loþly and so old also

And þerto commen of so lowe a kinde
þat no wonder is þouȝe I walowe & wynde
So wolde god my herte wolde bres
Is þis quod she þe cause of ȝoure vnrest' 1104
ȝe certeinly quoþ he no wonder' is [leaf 144, back]
Now sire quod she I couþe amende al þis
If þat' me list' er it' were daies þre
So wel ȝe myȝt' bere ȝou vnto me. 1108
¶ But' for ȝe speken of suchī gentilesse ¶ Nota bene de nobilibus
As is descended out' of alle ricchesse
þat' þerfore shulden ȝe be gentile men
Suchī erroganncе nys not' worþ an heī 1112
Loke who so is moost' vertuous alway
Privey and aperte and best' endeþ ay
To do þe beste dedis þat' he can
And take him for þ[e] grettest' gentile man 1116
Of criste cleyme we our' gentylesse
Not' of oure elders for our old ricchesse
ffor þouȝe þei ȝeue vs al our heritage
ffor whichī we cleyme to be of hie parage 1120
ȝit' may þei not' byqueeþ for no þing'
To noon of vs her vertuous lyuynge
þat' made hem gentile men ycalled be
And bad vs folowen in suchī degre 1124
wel can þe wise poete of florence
þat' hight' dañt' speke in þis sentence
Lo in such manere Ryme is dantes tale
ffull seelde vpriseþ by his braunches smale 1128
Prowesse of man for god of his prouesse
wil þat' of hym we clayme our gentilnesse
ffor of oure elders may we no þing' clayme
But' temporel þing þat' man may hirt *and* mayme 1132
Eke euery wiȝt' wote þis as wel as I
þo gentelesse were planted naturelly
Vnto a certeyn lynage doun þe lyne
Prive *and* apert' þan wold he neuere fyne 1136

To doñ of gentelesse þe fair' office
þei myȝten do no vileny or vice
Take fire and bere it' in þe derkest' hous
By-twix þis *and* the mount' of Caucasous.
And lat' men shette þe doores and go þenne [leaf 145]
ȝit' wol þe fire as faire lye and brenne
A[s] thowsand men myȝt' it' biholde
His office naturel ay wil it' holde
Vp perile of liff til þat' it' die
Here may ȝe se wel how þat' gent*r*ie
Is nat' annexed to possessioñ
Siþ folk do not' her ope*r*acioñ
Al waie as doþ þe fire lo in his kinde
ffor god it' wote men may ful often fynde
A lordes sone doo shame and vilenye
And he þat' wil haue price of his gent*r*ie
ffor he was born of a gentile hous
And had his elders noble *and* ve*r*tuous
And nyl him-seluen do no gentile dedys
Ne folow his gentile A*u*ncestre þat' dede is
He nys nat' gentile be he duke or erle
ffor vileyns sinful dedes make a cheerle
ffor gentilnesse nys but' reuent' renome
Of þine ancestres for hir bewte bounte
Whiche is a strong' þing' for þi pe*r*sone
The gentilesse co*m*meþ from god alone
Than co*m*meth our verrey gentilesse of *g*race
It' was no þing' byqueþe vs *with* our place
Thenkeþ howe noble as seiþ valerius
Was þilk Tullius Hostilius
þat' out' of pouerte roos to hie noblesse
Redeþ Senek and redeþ eke Boesse
þer shul ȝe sene expresse þ*at* it' no drede is
þat' he is gentile þat doþ gentile dedys
And þerfore dere husbonde I þ*us* conclude
Al were it' þat' myn ancestres were rude

3it' may þat' hie god an so hope I
Graunt' me grace to lyue vertuously
Than am I gentile whan þat' I bygynne
To lyuen vertuously and leuen synne
And *per* as 3e of pouert' me repreue [leaf 145, back]
The hie god on whom þat' we byleue·
In wilful pouerte. chas to lede his lif' ¶ nota de paupertate.
And certes euery man boþ maide & wiff
May vnderstonde *Ihesu* heuen kinge
Ne wold not' chese a vicious lyuynge
Glad pouerte is an honest' þing' certayñ
This wil senek and o*per*e clerkes seyñ
Who þat' holte him paide of his pouerte
I holde him riche al had he nou3t' serte
He þat' coueiteþ is a poor wi3t'
ffor he wold' han þat' is not' in his my3t'
But' he þat' nou3t' haþ ne keueiteþ to haue
Is riche al þoughñ men hold him but' a knaue
Verrey pouerte is signe *pro*prely
Iuuenal [saiþ] of pouert' merily
The poor man whan he goþ by þe way
Biforn þe þeues he may singe *and* play
Pouerte is hatel good and as y gesse
A ful grete bringer out' of bysynesse
A grete amender' eke of sapience
To him þat' lackeþ it' in pacience
Pouerte is þis al þoughñ it' seme alenge
Possessioñ þat' no wi3t' wil chalenge
Pouerte ful often whan a man is lowe
Makeþ his god and eke him self to knowe
Pouerte in spectacle is as þenkeþ me
þorowe whichñ he may his verrey frendes see
And þerfor siþ þat' I 3ou not' greue
Of my pouerte no more me repreue
Now sire of elde 3e repreue me ¶ Nota de senectute.
And certes sire þorowe noñ auctorite

Where in no boke ȝe gentile *in* hono*ur*
Seyn þat' mon shuld' an olde wif do fauo*ur*
And clepe hur' modere for ȝoure gentilnesse
And auctours shal I fynde as I gesse 1212
Now þere ȝe seyn þat' I am foule *and* olde [leaf 146]
Than drede ȝou not' to bene a kokewold'
ffor filþe and helde[1] also mote I thee [1 *at first* helþe]
Bene grete wardeyns vpon chastite 1216
But' naþeles siþ I knowe ȝoure delite
I shal fulfille ȝoure worldly appetite
Chese nowe quod she oon of þise þingg*es* twey
To han me foule *and* olde til þat' I dye 1220
And be to ȝou a trewe humble wiff
And neuere ȝou displese in al my lif
Or ellis ȝe wil haue me ȝonge *and* faire
And take ȝoure auentu*re* of þe repaire 1224
That' shal come to ȝoure hous bycause of me
Or in some o*þer*e place wel may be
Nowe chese ȝoure selue*n* whe*þer* ȝou likeþ
This knyght' avised him and sor sikeþ 1228
But' at' þe last' he seide in þis manere
My lady. *and* my loue. *and* wif so dere
I putte me in ȝoure wise gou*er*n*au*nce
Geueþ ȝoure self which may be most plesaunce 1232
And most' hono*ur* to ȝou *and* me also
I do no force þe whe*þer*e of þe two
ffor as ȝou likeþ it' suffiseþ me
Than haue I gote of ȝou þ^e^ maistrie q*uod*' she 1236
Siþ I may chese and gouern as me list'
ȝe certes wif quod he I holde it' for þe best'
Kisse me quod she we be no lenger wroþe
ffor by my trouþe I wil be to ȝou boþe 1240
þis is to seine boþ faire and goode
I prei to god þat' I mot' steruen woode
But' I to ȝou be as sadde and trewe
As euere was wiff syþ þat' þ^e^ world' was newe 1244

And but' I be to morow as fair' to sene
As eny lady Emp*er*esse or quene
þat' is by-twene þe Est' and eke þ^e^ west'
doþ wiþ my liff and deþe ri3t' as 3ou lest' 1248
Cast' vp þe Curtyne loke how it' is [leaf 146, back]
And whan þe kny3t' sawe al þis
þat' she so faire was and so yonge *þer*to
ffor ioie he hent' her in his armes twoo 1252
His herte bathed in a bath̄ of blisse
A *thousand*[1] tyme a rowe hire gan he kisse [[1] MS M[L]]
And she obeied him in euery þinge
That' myght' done hy*m* plesaunce or likinge 1256
And þus þei lyued vnto her lyues ende
In p*ar*fitt Ioye and Ih*esus* cr*ist'* vs sende
Husbonde. yonge. meke *and* fresssh̄ abedde
And grace to ouerlede he*m* þat' we wedde 1260
And eke I prei to Ih*esu* short' her lyues
That' wil not' be gouerned by her wyues
And olde and angry nygard *and* dispence
God sende hem sone a verrey pestilence 1264

¶ **Thus endeþ þe tale of þe wif of bath̄ /**

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe frere [on leaf 146, back]

¶ þe prologe

This worþi lymitour þis noble ffrere
He made alway louring chere
Vpon þe somnour. but for honeste
No vyleyns word as 3it speke he
But at þe last he seide vnto þe wif
Dame good god 3eue 3ou ri3t good lyf
3e han touched here also mote I the
In scole matere grete difficulte
3e han seide mochel þing ri3t wel I seie
But dame here as we riden by þe weie
Vs nedeþ not to speken but of game
And late auctoritees a goddes name
To prechen *and* to scole eke of clergie
But 3if it like vnto þis companye
I wil 3ou of a somnour telle a game
Parde I may wel knowe by þi name
That of no somnour may no good be seid
I prey þat noon of 3ou be euel apeid
A somnour is a romere vp and doun [leaf 147]
Wiþ a mendement of fornicacioun
And is ibete at euery townes ende
Our hoost þoo spak a. sire 3e shuld beñ hende
And Curteis as man of 3our astat
In company we wil no debate
Telleþ 3oure tale and lat þe somnour be
Nay quod þe somnour lat him say to me
What so him lest. whan it commeþ to my lott
Be god I shal hym quyte euery grott
I shal him telle swicñ a grete honour
It is to be a flateryng lymytour
And eke of ful mony an oþer crime
Which nedeþ not rehersen at þis tyme
And his office I shal hym telle ywis
Our hooste answerd pees no more of þis
And afterward he seide vnto þe frere
Telle forþ 3oure tale my owen maister dere

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe frere.**

And

here begynneþ þe ffreres tale.

Whilom þer was dwelling' *in* my co*n*tre ¶ The tale./
An Archedeken a man of hie degre
That' boldely did execusioñ
In punysshing' of fornicacioñ 1304
Of which craft' and eke of baudry
Of diffamacioñ and avoutrye
Of chirche reues *and* of testamentes
Of contractes and of lak of sac*r*amentes 1308
Of vsure and symonye also
But' certes lecchours did he grettest' woo
Þei shulden syngen if þei were hent'
And Smale Tythers weren foule shent 1312
If eny p*er*son wold' vpon he*m* pleyne
Þer myȝt' astert' him no pecunyal peyne
ffor smale tyþes and eke smale offringe
He made þe puple spitously to singe 1316
ffor er the bisshope kauȝt' hem wiþ his hoke [leaf 147, back]
Þei weren in þe Archedekens boke
And þan had he þorowe his Iurisdictioñ
Pouer to don on hem correccioñ 1320
he had a somnour' redy to his hand'
A sclyer boye was non in engelond'
ffor sotilly he had his especiale
That' tauȝt' hy*m* where þat' hy*m* myȝt' availe 1324
He coude spare of lecchou*r*s on or twoo
To techen hym to *four and twenty*[1] moo [1 MS xxiiij]
ffor þouȝe this somnou*r* wode were as an hare
To telle his harlotry I wil not' spare 1328

ffor we bene out' of her correcciõn
þei han of vs noñ Iurisdictioñ
Ne neuere shullen teerme of al her lyues
Peter' so bene þe wo*m*men of þe stewes
Quod this somno*ur* yput' out' of our cure
Pees wiþ meschaunce *and* wiþ misauenture
Thus seide our hoost' *and* lat' hy*m* telle his tale
Now telleþ forþ and lat' þe somno*ur* gale
Ne spareth nou3t' myn owne Maister' dere
This fals þeef þis somno*ur* quod þe frere
Had alway baudes redy to his honde
As eny hauke to lure in Engelonde
That' telle him al þe secre þ*at* thei knewe
ffor hure a-queyntance was nat' come of newe
þei weren his aprouers prively
He toke hym silf a grete p*ro*phete þerby
His maistere knewe not' al way what' he wan
wiþ-outen maundement' of a lewde man
He coude so*m*mon vpeyn of c*ristes* curs
And þei were inly glad to fille his purs
And made hym grete festes atte nale
And ri3t' as Iudas had purses smale
And was a þeef ri3t' such̃ a þeef was he
His maister' had but' half his dwete
He was 3if I shal 3euene hy*m* his laude [leaf 148]
A theef and eke a somno*ur* *and* a bawde
He had eke wenches of his retenue
That' whedere þat' sir' Rob*er*de or sir' hwe
Or Iohñ or rauf or who þat' it' were
þat lay by hem þei tolde it' in his eere
Thus was þe wenche and he of on assent'
And he wolde focche a feyned maundement'
And somne hem to þe chapitere boþ twoo
And pille þe man and lat' þe wenche goo
Than wold he sei frend I shal for þi sake
To strike þe out' of oure letters blake

þe ther no more as in þis caas travaile
I am þi frende þer I þe may availe
Certeyn he knewe of bribers moo
þan possible is to telle 3ou vnto to/ 1368
ffor in þis world' is no dogge for no bowe
þat' knoweþ and hert' deer'. from an olde bete kowe.
þan þat' þis somnour knewe a sly lecchour
Or auouter' or ellis a paramour' 1372
And for þat' was þe fruyte of al þe rent'
Therfore on hit' he sette al his entent'
And so byfelle þat' ones on a day
This somnour euer wayting' on his pray 1376
Rode forto somne an old' wif a ribibe
ffeynyng' a cause for he wold' haue a bribe
And happed þat' he sawe to-fore hym ride
A gey 3eman vnder' a forest' side 1380
A bowe he bare and Arowes bri3t' and kene
He had vpon a courtepie of grene
An hatte vpon his hede wiþ stringges blake
Sire quod þis somnour. haile and wel ytake 1384
welcome quod he and euery good felawe
whider' ridest' þowe vnder þis grene wood shawe
Seide þis 3eman wilt' thou fer to-day
This somnour hym answerd' and seide nay 1388
Here fast' by quod he is myne entent' [leaf 148, back]
To riden for to reisen vp a rent'
It' longeþ to my lordes dewte
Art þou þan a bailyf. 3e quod he 1392
He durste not' for verrey filþe and shame
Say þat' he was a somnour for þe name
Depar-dieux quod þis 3eman dere broþer'
þou art' a baillif and I am anoþer' 1396
I am vnknowen as in þis contre
Of þine aqueyntañce I wil prey þe
And eke of breþerhede if þat' þou le3t'
I haue gold and siluer' in my chest' 1400

3if þat' þe happed come into *our* shire
Al shal be þine riȝt' as þou wold' desire
Gr*aun*te mercy quod þis somno*ur* by my feiþe
Euerech̄ in oþeres honde his trouþe leiþe
ffor to be swore breþeren to þei dye
And wiþ þat' word þei ride forþ her wey
This somno*ur* wiþ þat' was as ful of Iangles
As ful of venyme ben̄ þise waryangles
And euer enquiring' vpon eu*er*y þinge
Broþer quod he wher' is ȝour dwellinge
Anoþer day if I shuld' ȝou seche
þis ȝeman him answerd' in softe spech̄
Broþer quod he ferre in þe north̄ contre
Wher' as I hope somtyme I shal þe See
Or we dep*ar*te I shal þe so wel wisse
þat' of myn hous shalt' þou neuere mysse
Now broþere quod þis somno*ur* I ȝou pray
Teche me while we riden by þe waye
Siþ þat' ȝe bene a balif as am I
So*m*me subtilite telle me feiþfully
In myn office howe þat' I may most wynne
And spareþ not' for conscience ne synne
But' as my broþere telle me howe doo ȝe.
Nowe by my treuþe broþere dere seide he
As I shal tellen þe a feiþful tale [leaf 149]
My wages be ful streit' and smale
My lorde is hard' to me and daungerous
And' myn office ful laborous
And þerfore by extorcions y lyue
ffor soþ I [take] al þat' men wil me ȝeue
Algate by scleyght' or violence
ffrom ȝeer to ȝeer I wynne al my dispence
I can no better tellen feiþfully
Now certes quod þis somno*ur* so fare I
I spare not' to take god it' wote
But' ȝif it' be to hevy or to hote

What' I may gete in counseile priveily
No maner' conscience of þat' haue I
Ner myn extorcioñ I myȝt' not' lyuen
Of suche Iapes nyl I not' be shryuen
Stomake. ne for conscience ne knowe I noñ
I schrewe þise shrift' faders euerechoñ
Wel ben we mette by god and by seint' Iame
But' leue broþer telle me þan þi name
Quoþ þis somnour in þis mene while
þis ȝeman gan a litel forto smyle
Broþer quod he wiltow þat' I þe telle
I am a feende my dwellyng' is in helle
And here I ride aboute my purchasing'
To wete where men wollen ȝeue me eny þing'
My purchace is to fette of all my rent'
Loke how þou rides' for þe same entent'
To wynne good þou recches' not' howe
Riȝt' so fare I for ride wold' I nowe
Vnto þe worldes eende for a preye
A quod þis somnour benedicite what' ȝe seie
I wende ȝe were a ȝeman trewly
ȝe han a mannes shappe as wel as I
Han ȝe a figure þan determynate
In helle þer ȝe bene in ȝour estate
Nay certeynly quoþ he þere haue we noon [leaf 149, back]
But' whan vs likeþ we can take vs oon
Or ellis make ȝou seme we bene shape
Somtyme a man or like an ape
Or like an aungel can I ride or goo
It' is no wonder' þing' þouȝe it' be so
A lousy Iogelour can desceyue þe
And parde ȝit' can I more craft' þan he
Why quoþ þis somnour ride ȝe þan or goñ
In sondry shappe and not' alway in oon
ffor we quod he wil vs in suchñ forme make
As most' able is our praies forto take

What' makeþ 3ou to han al þis labo*ur*
fful mony a cause lecue sir' somno*ur*
Seide þis feende but' al þing' haþ tyme
The day is short' and it' is passed p*ri*me
And 3it' ne wanne I no þinge in þis day
I wil entende to wynnyng' 3if I may
And nat' entende our wittes to declare
ffor broþer myne þi witte is alto bare
To vnderstonde þou3e I tolde hem þe
But' for þowe askest' whi labo*ure*n we
ffor somtyme be we goddes inst*ru*mente*s*
And menes to do his comaundemente*s*
Whan þat' him list' vpon his creatures
In dyuers actes and in dyuers fig*ur*es
W*ith*-outen hym we han no my3t' certeyn
3if þat' him list' to stonden þer a3ein
And some tyme at' our' pray han we leue
Only þe body and nat' þe soule greue
Witnesse on Iob whom þat' we diden woo
And somtyme han we my3t' of boþ[e] two
þis is seyn of soule and body eke
And somtyme we bene suffered forto seke
Vpon a man and do his soule vnrest'
And nat' his body and al is for þe best'
Whan he w*ith*stondeþ our temptacioñ [leaf 150]
It' is a cause of [his] saluacioñ
Al be it' þat' it' was not' our entent'
He shulde be sauf but' þat' we wold' hy*m* hent'
And somtyme be we seru*au*ntes vnto man
As þe erchbisshope seint' dunstan
And to þe appostels *ser*u*au*nte was I
3it' telleþ me quod þe somno*ur* feiþfully
Make 3e 3ou newe bodies þus alway
Of elementz þe feende answerd' nay
Som*m*e tyme we feyne and somtyme we arise
Wiþ dede bodies in ful sondry wise

And speke as resonably and faire weH
As to þe Phitonessa. did samueH
And ȝit wil somme men say it was not he
I doo no fors of ȝoure dyvynite
But oon þing warne I þe I wil not Iape
Thow wilt algates witte howe we be shape
Þou shalt here afterward my broþer dere
Come þer þe nedeþ nat of me to lere
ffor þou shalt be þine owne experience
Come into þe Chaiere rede þis sentence
Bette þan virgil while he was a lyue
Or Dante also now lat vs ride blyue
ffor I wil hold company wiþ þe
Til it be so þat þou forsake me
Nay quod þis somnour þat shal not betide
I am a ȝeman knowe is ful wide
Mi trouþe wil I holde to þe as in þis cas
ffor þei þou were þe deuel Sathañas
My trouþe wil I holde to my broþer
As I am sworn and eche of vs to oþer
ffor to be trewe broþer in þis caas
And broþer we goon to our purchas
Take þou þi parte what men wil þe ȝeue
And I shal myne þus may we boþ[e] lyue
And ȝif þat eny of vs haue more þan oþere [leaf 150, back]
Lat him be trewe and part it with his broþer
I graunte quod þe deuel be my fay
And wiþ þat word þei ryden forth her way
And riȝt at þe enteringe of þe townes ende
To which þe sompnour shope hym for to wende
þei sey a cart þat charged was wiþ hay
Which þat a carter droof forþ on his way
Depe was þe way for which þe carte stoode
This Carter smote and stroof as he were woode
Haite broke haite scotte what spare we for þe stonys
þe feende quod he ȝou fecche boþ body and bonys

As ferforþly as euere were ȝe foled/
So moche woo as I haue for ȝou tholed
þe deuel haue aH boþ hors and carte *and* hay
þouȝt' this somnour here shul we haue a play
And nere þe feende he drouȝe as nauȝt' ne were
fful priueyly and rouned in his eere
Harken my broþer herken be þi feiþ
Herestow nat' howe þe carter seiþ
Hent' it' anoñ for he haþ ȝeuen þe
Boþ hey and carte and eke his caples þre
Nay quod þe deuel god wote neuer a dele
It' is not' his entent' trust' me wele
Aske hym þi silf ȝif þou not' trestest me
Or ellis stint' a while and þou shalt Se
This Carter thakked his hors on þe croupe
And þei bygonne to drowe and to stoupe
Haite nowe quod he þat' Ihesu crist' ȝou blisse
And al his hond werk boþ more and lesse
That was wel twite myn owne lyarde boy
I prey god saue þe and seint' loye
Now is my carte out' of þe sclough parde
lo. broþer quod þe feend. *and* what' told' I þe
Here may ȝe se myne owne dere broþere
þe Carle spak' oo þinge but' he þouȝt' anoþer
lat' vs go forþ abouten our viage [leaf 151]
Here wynne I no þinge vpon cariage
Whan þat' þei commen somwhat' out' of þ^e^ toun
This somnour to his broþer gan to roun
Broþer quod he here wonneþ an olde rebekke
þat' had almost' as leef to lese her nekke
As forto ȝeue a peny of hire good.
I wil haue xij. pans þouȝe þat' she be wode
Or I wil somne hure to our office
And ȝit' good woote of hure knowe I no vice
But' for þou canst' nat' as in þis contree
Wynne þi cost' take here ensample of me

This somnour knokkeþ at þe wydous gate
Come out he seide þou olde viritate
I trowe þou hast somme frere or preest with þe
Who clappeth þer seide þis wif benedicite
God saue 3ou sir what is 3oure swete wille
I haue quod he to somne þe here a bille
Vp peyne of cursinge loke þat þou be
To-morowe by-forn our Archedeken kne
To answere to þe courte of certeyn þingges
Now lord quod she crist Ihesu king of kingges
So wisly helpe me as I ne may
I haue be sik and þat ful mony a day
I may not goo so ferre quod she ne ride
But I be dede so prickeþ it in my side
May I not axe a libell Sir somnour
And answere þere by my procuratour
To suche a þinge as men wolden opposen me
3is quoþ this somnour pay anon late See
xij penys to me and I wil þe aquite
I shal no profit han þerby but lite
My maister haþ þe prophete *and* nat I
Come and lat me riden hastely
3eue me .xij pans I may no lenger taryo
xij. quod she lady seinte Maryo
So wisly helpe [me] out of care *and* synne [leaf 151, back]
þis wide world þou3e I shuld it wynne
Ne haue I not xij pens wiþ-in my holde
3e knowe wel þat I am poor *and* olde
Kithe 3oure almesse on me poor wrecche
nay þan quoþ he þe foule fende me fecche
3if I þe excuse þou3e þou shulde be spilt
Allas quod she god wote I haue no gilt
Pay me quod he or by the swete Anne
As I wil bere away þi newe panne
ffor dette which þou owest me of olde
Whan þat þou made þine husbond kukwold

I paide at' home for þi correctiõ
þou lixte quod she be my saluaciõ
Ne was I neuere or nowe widowe ne wiff'
Somned vnto 3oure courte *in* al my liff
Ne neu*ere* I nas but' of my body trewe
Vnto þe deuel blake & rowe of hwe
3eue I þi body and my panne also
And whan þe deuel herd' her curse soo /
Vpon her knees he seide in þis manere
Now mabely myñ owne mode*re* dere
Is þis 3ou[r] will in ernest' þat' 3e seye
þe deuel quod she fette hy*m* er he deye
And pan and al but' he wil hy*m* repent'
Nay olde stott þat' is not' myn entent'
Quod þis somno*ur* for to repente me
ffor eny þing' þat' I haue had of þe
I wold' I had þi smokke and euery cloþe
Nowe broþer quod þe deuel be not' wrothñ
þi body and þis panne is myñ by riȝt'
þou shalt' wiþ me to helle ȝit to-nyȝt'
Where þou shalt' knowe of our' p*ri*uete
More þan a maist*er* of diuinite
And wiþ þat' word' þis foule fende hy*m* hent'
Body and soule he *with* þe deuel went'
Wher þat' somno*ur*s han her heritage [leaf 152]
And god þat' made after' his ymage
Man-kinde saue and gyde vs al *and* some
And lene þis somno*ur* good man to bycome
Lordingg*es* I couþe han told' ȝou quod þ*is* frere
Had I had leisere for þis somno*ur* here
Aftere þe text'. c*ri*st. paule *and* Ioñn
And of oure o*þere* doctou*rs* mony on
Whicñ peynes þat' ȝour' hertes myȝt' ag*ri*se
Al be it' so no tunge may deuise
þouȝe þat' I myȝt' a ·M̃. wynter' telle
þe peynes of þilk' c*ur*sed hous of helle

But forto kepe vs from þat cursed place
Wakeþ and preieth Ihesu for his grace
So kepe vs fro þe temptour sathanas
Herkeneþ þis word beþ ware as in þis cas
þe lyon sitte in his awaite alway
To sclee þe Innocent 3if þat he may.
Disposeþ ay 3oure hertes to wiþstond
þe fende þat 3ou wold make þral and bond
He may not tempten 3ou ouer 3our myȝt
ffor crist wil be 3oure champioñ and kny3t
And preieþ þat þis somnour hym repent
Of his mysdede er þat þe fende hym hent

¶ Thus endeþ þe frere his tale.

¶ And here bygynneþ þe *pro*loge of þᵉ somnou*r* [*on lf* 152]

This somnou*r* in his stirop hiȝe stode ¶ þe prologe
Vpon þis frere his herte was so wode
þatˈ like an aspen leef he quoke for Ire
Lordingges quod he butˈ oo þinge I desire
I ȝou biseche þatˈ of ȝourˈ curtesie
Siþens ȝe han herdè this fals frere lye
As suffre me I may a tale telle
þis frere boosteth þatˈ he knoweþ helle
And god woote itˈ is litel wondere
ffreres and feendes bene butˈ lite asonre
ffor p*ar*de ȝe han oftˈ tyme herd telle [leaf 152, back]
How þatˈ a frere rauysshed was in helle
In spiritˈ ones by A visiou*n*
And as an aungel lad him vp & dou*n*
To shewen him the peynes þatˈ þer were
In alˈl þe place segn̄ he notˈ a frere
Of oþer folkˈ he segn̄ ynow i*n* woo
Vnto þis aungel speke þe frere þoo
Nowe sir*e* quod he han freres suche *grace*
þatˈ noon of hem shal come to þis place
ȝis quoþ þis aungel mony a mylliou*n*
And vnto Sathanas he lad hy*m* dou*n*
And now haþ sathanas seiþ he a tale ‘
Bradderˈ þan of þe Carike is a saile
hold vp þi taile þou sathanas *quod* he
Showe forþ þine ers and latˈ þe frere see
Wher is þe nestˈ of freres in þis place
And er þan half a forlonge wey of space

Ryȝt as been swermen out of an hyve
Out of þe deuels ers þei gon drive
xx^tl. thousand freres on a route
And þought helle swarme al aboute
And commen aȝein as fast as þei mowe goñ
And in his ers þei crepten euerechoñ
He clapte his taile aȝein and lay stille
This frere whan he loked had his fille
Vpon þise turmentz of þis sory place
His spiret god restored of his grace
Vnto his body aȝein *and* he awoke
But naþelees for fere ȝit he quoke
So was þe deueles ers ay in his mynde
which is his heritage of verrey kinde
God saue you alle saue þis cursed frere
My prologe wil I ende in þis manere

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe somnour**

And here bygynneþ þe somnour tale

LOrdyngges þer/ is in york-shire as I gesse [leaf 153]
A mershy contray called holdernesse
In whicñ þere went' a lymitour aboute
To preche and eke to begge it' is no doute 1712
And so byfelle þat' on a day þis frere
Had preched atte chircñ in þis manere
And specialy abouen euery þinge
Excited he þe puple in his prechinge 1716
To trentales and [to ȝeue] for goddis sake
Therwiþ men myȝte holy howses make
Ther as dyuyne seruyse is honoured
Nouȝt' þere as it' is waasted and deuoured 1720
Ne þere it' nedeþ not' forto be ȝeue
As to possessoures þat' may ellis lyue
Thonked be god in wele *and* habundaunce
Trentales seide he delyuereþ fro penaunce 1724
Her frendes soules as wel olde as yonge
ȝif þat' þei bene hastely ysonge
Nouȝt' forto holde a preest' Ioly *and* gay
He syngeþ not' but' oon masse on a day 1728
Delyuereþ out' quod he anoñ þe soules
fful hard' it' is wiþ flesshhoke eiþer *with* oulys
Nul spede ȝou hastely for cristes sake 1732
To kepe ȝou from peynes of fendes blake 1731
And whan þe frere had seide al his entente
With qui cum patre forþ he wente
Whan folk in chirche had ȝeue hym what' hem lest
He went' his way no lenger wold' he rest' 1736

Wiþ scrippe and tipped staf tukked ful hie
In euery hous he gan to pore and prie
And beggeþ mele or chese or ellis corñ
His felawe had a staf tipped wiþ horñ
A paire of tables of yuorie
And a poyntel polsshed fetisly
And w[r]ote alway þe names *þer* he stode
And alle folk þat' 3aue hym eny goode
Ascaunce as he wold for hem preye [leaf 153, back]
3if vs a busshel whete. malt' or reye
A goddys kechil or a trippe of chese
A bosshel malt' or ellis of peese
A goddys half peny or a masse penye
Or 3eue vs of 3oure [bran] 3if ye haue enye
A dagon of 3our blanket' leue dame
Our suster deer loo here I write 3our' name
Bacon or beef or suchñ þinge as 3e finde
A sturdy harlot' went' alway behinde
þat was her hoostes man and bere a sak'.
And what' men 3aue hym leide it' on his bak'
And whan he was out' of þe door anoñ
He pleyned away [þe] names euerechoñ
þat' he biforn had writen in his tables
He serued [hem] wiþ nyfels and wiþ fables
Nay þer-In þu lixt' somnour quod þe frere
Pes quod oure hoost' for cristes modere dere
Telle forþ þi tale and spare it' not' at all
ffor hym ne for noon oþere what so fall
So longe he went' hous by hous til he
Come to an hous þer he was wont' to be
Refresshed more þan in an .C. places
Seke lay þe good man þat' of the place es /
Bedred vpon a couche lowe he lay
Deus hic' quod he. o thomas frende good day
Seide þis frere curtesly and soft'
Thomas god 3eeld 3ou wel oft

Haue I vpon þis benche faren ful wele
Here haue I eten mony a mery mele
And from þe benche he droof away þ^e^ catt'
And leide a doune his potent' *and* his hatt' 1776
And eke his scripte and sette hym soft adoun
His felawe was go walked in to þe toun
fforþ wiþ his knaue into þat' hostelerye
Where as he shope hym þilke nyȝt' to lye 1780
O dere Maister' quod þis sike man [leaf 151]
How haue ȝe farn siþ þat' marc̄h bygan
I segh̄ ȝou nouȝt' þis fourteny3t' day *and* more
God wote quod he labowred haue I ful sore 1784
And specialy for þi saluacioñ
Haue I seide mony a precious orisoñ
And for our oþer frendes god hem blesse
I haue þis day ben at' ȝ*our* chirc̄h at messe 1788
And seide a sermon after' my symple witte
Not' al aftere þe text' of holy writte
ffor it' is hard' to ȝou as I suppose
And þerfore I wil teche ȝou al þe glose 1792
Glosinge is glorious þing' certeyñ
ffor letters sleþ so as we clerkes seyñ
There haue I taught' he*m* to be charitable
And spende her good þer it' is resonable 1796
And þer I seghe *our* dame a where is she
ȝondere in þe ȝerde I trowe she be
Saide þis man and she wil come anoñ
Ey maister' welcome be ȝe be seint' Ioh̄ñ 1800
Seide þis wiff how fare ȝe hertely
This frere riseþ vp wel curteisly
And hur*e* enbraseþ in his armes narowe
And kisseþ hure swetely *and* chirkeþ as a sparowe 1804
Wiþ his lippes. dame quod he riȝt' wel
As he þat' is ȝour' *seruaunte euery* deh̄
Thonked be god þat' ȝou ȝaf soule *and* liff
ȝit' sey I not' þis day so faire a wiff 1808

In al þe churche god so saue me
3e god amende all fautes sir' q*uod*' she
Algates welcome be 3e by my fay
Graunt' mercy dame þis haue I fonde alway
But' of 3oure grete goodnesse be 3*our* leue
I wold prey 3ou þat' 3e nold' not' greue
I wil wiþ thomas speke a litel throwe
Thise Curato*urs* bene ful necligent' *and* sclowe
To grope tenderly a conscience [leaf 154, back]
In shrift' in preching' is my diligence
And stody in peter wordes *and* poules
I walke and fisshe *cr*isten me*nn*ys soules
To 3eelde Ihe*s*u his p*ro*pre rent'
To speke his wordes is al myn entent'
Nowe by 3oure feiþ dere maister' q*uod*' she
Chideþ him wel for seinte *tr*inite
He is as angry as a pisse myre
þou3e þat' he haue al þat' he can desire
þou3e I wrie hy*m* on ny3t' *and* make hy*m* warme
And on hym lay my legge or myn arme
He groneþ lich oure boor þat lieþ in þe stie
Oþer disport' of him non haue I
I may not' plese him in no mane*re* cas
O Tho*mas* Ieo vous dye. tho*mas* thomas
This makeþ þe fende this wil be amended.
Ire is a þinge þat/ hie god haþ defended
And þe*r*of wil I speke a word' or twoo
Now maist*er* quoþ þe wif er þat' I goo
What' wil 3e dyne I wil goo þe*r*aboute
Now dame q*uod*' he Ieo vous dye sanz doute
haue I of a Capon nou3t' but þe lyuere
And of 3oure soft*e* brede but' a shyuere
And aftere þat' a rosted pigges hede
But' þat' I nolde for me no beest' were dede
þan had I wiþ 3ou homely suffisaunce
I am a man of litel sustynaunce

My spirit haþ [his] fostring' in þe bible
þe body is ay so redy *and* so penyble
To wake þat' my stomak' is destroied
I prei 3ou dame be 3e nou3t' anoyed
þou3e I frendly to 3ou my co*u*nsail shewe
By god I nold not telle it' it' but' a fewe
Nowe sir*e* q*uod* she but' oo word er 3e goo
My childe is dede *with*-in þise wekes twoo
Sone after' þat' 3e wenten out' of þis toun [leaf 155]
His deþ I segh by reuelacio*u*n
Seide þis frere at' home in our dorto*ur*
I dar wel seyn er þat' half an houre
Aftere his deþ I segh hy*m* born to blisse
In myn avision god me so wis
So dyd our Sexten *and* our fermerer*e*
þat' han bene trewe freres .l. 3ere
þei may now god byþonke of his lone
Maken hir Iuble and walken alone
And vp I aroos and alle o*ur* couent' eke
Wiþ mony a tere trilling' vpon o*ur* cheke
Wiþ-oute noys of clateryng' of bellys
Te deu*m*. was our songe *and* no þing' ellys
Saue þat' to c*r*ist I seide an orison
Thonkinge hym of my reuelacion
ffor sir' and dame tresteþ me ri3t' wel
Our orisons bene more effectuell
And more we seen of c*r*istes secre þingges
þan borel folk' or þou3e þei were kingges
We lyue in pouerte and in abstinence
And burel folk' in ricchesse *and in* dispence
In mete and drink' and her foule delite
We han þis worldly lust' al in dispite
¶ Lazarus and Diues. liveden dyu*er*sly
And dyuers guardon had þei þerby
Who so wil prey most fast *and* be clene
And fat' his soule and make his body lene

We faren as seiþ þe apostel. cloþe *and* fode
Suffiseþ vs þouȝe þei be not' ful goode
The clannes and þe fasting' of vs freres
Makeþ þat' criste acceptеþ our preieres
Loo Moyses fourty daies *and* fourty nyȝt'
ffast' or þe hie god of myȝt'
Spak' wiþ him *in* þe Mount' synay
Wiþ empty woombe of fasting' mony a day
Resceyued he þe law þat' was writen/ [leaf 155, back]
wiþ goddys fyngere and hely wil ȝe witen
In mount' Oreb er he had eny speche
Wiþ hie god þat' is our saules leche
he fast' longe and was in contemplance
Aaron þat' had þe temple in gou*ernaun*ce
And eke þe oþer preestes euerechoñ
Into þe temple whan þei shuld goñ
To prey for þe puple *and* to do seruise
þei nold drinke in no manere wise
No drink' which þat' hem dronke myȝt' make
But' þer in abstinence prey and wake
lest þat' þei diden take hede what' I saye
But' þei be sobre þat' for þe puple praye
war þat' I seie no more for it' suffiseþ /
Our lorde Ihesu as holy writte deuyseþ
ȝaf vs ensample of fastinge *and* preiers
Therfore we mendena*un*tz we sely freres
Be wedde to pouerte *and* contynence
To charite humblenesse and abstinence
To *per*secucyon for riȝtwisnesse
To wepinge misericord' *and* clennesse
And þerfore may ȝe see þat' *our* preiers
I speke of vs we mendena*un*tz we freres
Bene to þe hie god more acceptable
þan ȝo*ur*es *with* þe fest' at' þe table
ffor *par*adis first' if I shal not' lye
was man outchased for his glotenye

And chaast' man was in *pa*radis certeyn
But' harken nowe Thomas wha[t] I wil seyn
I haue no tixte þerof as I suppose
But' I shal fynde it' in a mane*r*e glose
That' specialy our lorde swete Ih*esus*
Spake by freres whan he seide þus
Blessed be þei þat' poor in spirite be
And so forþ al þe gospel may ȝe se
Wher' it' be like our professioñ [leaf 156]
Or her þat' swym*m*en in possessioñ
ffye on her' pompe *and* on her glotenye
And on her lewdenesse I ham defie
Me þenkeþ þei ben like Iouynyan
ffatte as a whale and walking' as a swan
Al vinolent' as þe betel in þe spence
Her preier is of ful grete reuerence
Whan þei for soules seyn þe Psalme of davyd
lo boþ þei seyn Cor meu*m* eructauit'
Who foloweþ *c*ristes gospel *and* his lore
But' we þat' humyle ben *and* chast' *and* pore
Worchers of goddis word [not] audito*ur*s
þerfore riȝt' as an hawke vp at' a sours
Vp springeþ into þe eire. so preiers
And charitable chastite of bysy freres
Making' her soures to goddes eren too
Thomas riȝt' so as mote I ride or goo
And by þat' lord þat' cleped was seynt yve
Ner þowe our broþer þou shuldest' not thryve
In oure Chapitle prey we day *and* nyȝt'
To *c*rist' þat' he þe sende hele *and* myȝt'
Thi body forto welden hastely
God wote quoþ he no þing' þ*er*of fele I
As helpe *c*rist' as I haue i*n* fewe ȝeres
Spended vpon mony dyuers freres
Wel mony a pounde ȝit' fare I ne þe bette
Certeyn my good is almost' be-sette

ffare wele my good for it' is almost' agoo
þe frere answerd' o Thomas dost' þou so
What' nedeþ 3ou diuers freres seche
What' nedeþ hym þat' haþ a *perfit'* leche
To sechen oþer leches in þe toun
3our inconstañce is *3our* confusiõ
Holde 3e me þan or ellis *our* couent'
To prey for 3ou ben insufficient'
Tho*m*as þat' Iape is not' worþ a myte [leaf 156, back]
3oure Maladie is for we haue to lite
A 3eue þat' Couent' half a q*uar*ter otys
A 3eue þat' Couent' *four and twenti*[1] grotys [1 MS xxiiij^{ti}]
A 3eue þat' frere a peny *and* lat' hym goo
Nay nay thomas it' may no þing' be so
What' is a ferþing' parted in twelve
Lo eche þing' is counted in hym selue
Is more stronge whan it' is so sclatered.
Thomas of me þou shalt' not' be flatered /
þou woldest' haue our labour al for nou3t'
þe hie god þat' al þis world' haþ wrou3t'
Seiþ þat' þe werkman is worþi his hire
Thomas nou3t' for 3oure tres*our* I desire
As for my silf but' þat' al *our* Couent
To prey for 3ou is al *our* diligent'
And forto beelden cristes owne chirche
Thomas if 3e wil lerne forto wirche
Of beeldinge vp of churches may 3e finde
If it be good in Thomas lif of ynde
3e ligge here ful of anger and of yre
wiþ which þe deuel sette *3our* hert' on fire
And chiden here þis holy Innocent'
3oure wif þat' is so meke *and* pacient'
And þerfore trow me 3if 3ou list'
Ne strive not' wiþ þi wif as for þe best'
And bere þis word' away now by þi feiþ
Touchinge suc̃h þing' lo what' þe wise man seiþ

Wiþ-Inne þi hous ne be þou no lyoñ
To þi sogettes do þou noon op*ressio*ñ
Ne make þou nat' þine aqueyntau*n*ce forto fle
And ȝit' Thomas eftsones charge I þe
Be ware of yre þat' in þi bosom slepeþ
ware þe for the serpent' þat' so sclily crepeþ
vnder þe gras and stynge þ sotilly
Be war my sone and harken paciently
That xx^ti þousand men han lost' her lyues [leaf 157]
ffor stryuyng' w*ith* her lemmanes *and* her wyues
Now siþ ȝe han so holy meke a wif
What' nedeþ ȝou thomas to make strif
Ther nys iwis no serpent' so cruel
Whan men treden on his tale ne half so feH
As a wo*m*man is whan she haþ kauȝt' an Ire
Vengeaunce is þan al þat' þei desire
Ire is an synne oon þe grete of seuene
Abhominable vnto god in heuene
And to hym self it' is distruccioñ
Thus euery lewde vicar or p*ar*soñ
Can seie how Ire engendres homic[id]e
Ire is in soþ executo*ur* of pride
I coude of Ire seie so mochel sorowe
My tale shuld' last' vnto to-morowe
And þerfore I prei god boþ day *and* nyȝt'
An yrous man god sent' hy*m* litel myȝt'
It is grete harme and eke gret' pite
To sette an yrous man in hie degre
¶ Whilom þer was an yrous potestate
As seiþ senek þat' during' his estate
Vpon a day oute riden knyȝtes twoo
And as fortune wolde it' shuld' be so/
þat' oon of hem come home þat' o*þe*r nouȝt'
Anoñ þe knyȝt' byfore þe Iuge was brouȝt'
þat' saide þus þou hast' þi felawe sclayñ
ffor whicH I deme þe to deþ certeyñ

And to an oþer kny3t' co*m*mañded he
Go lede him to deþe I charge þe
And happed as þei went' by þe way
Toward' þe place þer he shuld' day
þe kny3t' come which̄ men wende had̄ ben dede
þan þou3t' þei it' was þe best' rede
To lede hem boþ to þe Iuge agayn̄
þei seiden lord' þe kny3t' nys not' slayn̄
His felawe here he stant' hool a lyue [leaf 157, back]
He shal be dede quod he so mot' I thryue
þat' is to seyn boþ on two *and* þre
And þoo to þe first' kny3t' ri3t' þus spoke he
I dampne þe þe most' algate be dede
And þou also most' nedes lese þine hede
ffor þou art' cause of þi felawes deþe
And to þe *thridde*[1] kny3te þus he seiþe [1 MS iij.]
Thou hast' not' done þat' I co*m*maunded þe
And þus he did hem sleen al þre
¶ Irous Cambises was eke dronkenlewe
And ay delited him to bene a shrewe
And so byfelle a lorde and his mayne
That' loued vertuous moralite
Seide vpon a day bitwix hem two ri3t' þus
A lorde is lost' if he be vicius
And dronkenesse eke is a foule record'
Of eny man and namely in a lord'
þer is wel mony an yre and mony an ere
In waytinge and he note where
ffor goddes [loue] drynkeþ more attemp*er*aly
Wyne makeþ a man to lesen wrecchedly
his mynde and his lymes euerechon̄
þe reuerce shalt' þou see quod he anon̄
And preue it' by þine [owne] exp*er*ience
That' wyne ne doþ to folk non̄ such̄ offence
þer nys no wyne byreueþ me my my3t'
of honde ne of foote ne of myn eye sight'

And for despite he dronke mochel more
An .C. part' þan he had doñ byfore
And ri3t' anon þis yrous cursed wreche
lete þise kny3tes sones to-fore hym fecche
Comaundyng' hem þei shuld' to-fore hym stonde
And sodeynly he toke his bowe on honde
And vp the strenge he pulled to his ere
And wiþ an arowe he sclowe þ^e childe ri3t' þere.
Nowe whe þer' haue I a siker hond' or noñ [leaf 15]
Quod he is al my my3t' and mynde agoñ
Haþ wyne byreued me myn eye si3t'
What' shuld' I telle answere of þe kny3t'
His sone was sclayn þer nys no more to say
Be ware þerfor wiþ lordes howe 3e play
Syng' Placebo and I shal 3if I can
But' if it' be to a poor man
To poor man shuld he his vices telle
But not' to a lord' þoughñ he shuld' goo to helle
Lo Irous Arus þilk' Percian
how he distroied þe Ryuer of gysan
ffor þat' an hors of his was dreynt' þer' Inne
Whan he went' babilonye to wynne
He made þat' þe Ryuer was so smal
þat' as men my3t' passed ouer al
lo þat' he so wel teche can
Ne be 3e no felawe to non yrous man
Ne wiþ no woode man þat' walkeþ by þe way
lasse þe repent' I wil no ferþere say
Now Thomas leue broþer leue þine Ire
þou shalt' me fynde as Iuste as is a squyere
Hold' not' þe deuels knyf ay in þine herte
Thyne anger doþ þe al to sore smerte
But' shewe it' me al þi confessioñ
Nay quod þe sik man by seint' Symeoñ
I haue be shrive þis day at' my curate
I haue tolde hym alholy myne astate

It' nedeþ no more to speke of it' seid he
But' if me list' of myne humilite
3eue me þan of 3oure gold' to make *our* cloister'
Quod he for mony a muscle and mony an oyster'
Whan oþer men han bene ful wel at ese
Haþ bene our fode our' cloister' forto rese
And gód wote vnneþ þe foundement'
Perfourmed is and of our payvement
Is nou3t a tyle wiþ-Inne our' wonys [leaf 158, back]
By god we owen xl pounde for stonys
Now helpe Thomas for hym þat' harowed helle
ffor ellis mote we our bokes selle
And 3if 3ou lakke our predicacioñ
Than goþ þis world' al to distruccioñ
ffor who so wold' from þis world' vs byreue
So god me saue thomas by 3oure leue
He wolde byreue out' of þe world' þe sonne
ffor who can techen and worchen as we konne
And þat' is nou3t' of litel tyme quod he
But siþ Elie was or Elise
Han freres be þat' fynde I of record'
In charite þon-kidde be our' lord'
Now thomas [helpe vs] for seint' charite
Haue done anoñ he sette hym on his kne
This sik man wex nyé woode for Ire
He wolde þat' þe frere had be a fire
Wiþ his fals dissimulacioñ
Suchñ þing' as is in my possessioñ
Quoþ he þat' may I 3eue *and* non oþere
3e seiñ me thus hou þat' I am 3our' broþere
3e certes quoþ þis frere trusteþ wel
I toke our dame þe letter of our seel
Nowe quoþ he wel *and* somwhat' shal I 3eue
Vnto 3oure holy Couent' while I lyve
And in þine honde þou shalt' it haue anōn
Vp þis condicioñ and oþer noñ

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. Petworth MS.

That þou departe it so my dere broþer
þat euery frere haue as moch as oþer
This shalt þou swere on þi professioñ
Wiþ-outen fraude or·cauellacioñ
I swere it quod þe frere by my faiþ
And þerwiþal his honde in his he laiþ
lo here my feiþ in me shal be no lak
Now þan put þine honde doun by my bak
Seide þis man and grope wel behinde [leaf 159].
Byneþ my buttok þer þou shalt fynde
A þinge þat I haue hidde in priuete
A þouȝt þe frere þat shal go wiþ me
A-doune his honde he launseþ to þe clift
I hope for to fynde þer a ȝift
And whan þis sik man felt þis frere
About his trwel grope her *and* þere
A myddes his honde he lete þe frere a fart
þer nys no capel drawing in a cart
þat myȝt han lete a fart of such a soun
þe frere vp stert as doþ a [wood] lyoun
A fals cherle quod þe frere for goddis bonys
This despite þou hast done for þe nonys
þowe shal aby þis fart if I may
His mayne þat harde þis affray
Come lepinge Inne *and* chased out þe frere
And forþe he goþ *with* a ful angry chere
[1]He ne had nat ellis for his sermoñ [*2159]
To parten amonge his breþeren whan he come home [*2160]
And þus is þis tale ydoñ
ffor we were almost at þe toñ 2294

¶ Thus endeþ þe somnours tale.

[1 *Spurious ending in the Petworth MS. For the genuine ending of the Tale, see the Appendix.*]

GROUP E. FRAGMENT VI.

§ 1. THE CLERK'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

Ande here
bygynneþ þe prologe of þe clerk' of Oxenford' [on leaf 159]

Sir' Clerk' of Oxenford' our' oost' saide ¶ The prologe :/
3e ride as stille as Coy as doþ a maide
Were newe spoused sitting' at' þe borde
This day ne herd I of 3oure mouþ a word'
I trowe þat' 3e stodye about' som sophyme
But' Salomon seiþ al þinge haþ tyme
ffor goddes sake beþ of better' chere
It' is no tyme nowe to stody here
Telle vs some mery tale by 3our' fay
ffor what' man is entred into a play
he nedes mote into þat' play assent'
But' pr[e]cheþ not' as freres doñ *in* lent'
To make vs for our' olde synnes to wepe [leaf 159, back]
Ne þat' þi tale ne make vs not' to sclepe
Telle vs som*m*e mery þing' of auentures
3oure termes. 3oure colours *and* figures
kepe hem in store til 3e he*m* endite
hi3e stele as whan men to ky*ngges* write
Spekeþ so pleyn at' þis tyme I 3ou prey
That' we may vnder-stonde what' 3e sey
This worþi clerk' benygnely answered
Hoost' quod he I am vndere 3our' 3eerde
3e han as nowe of vs þe gouern*aun*ce
And þerfor wil I do 3ou obeysaunce

GROUP E. § 1. CLERK'S HEAD-LINK. **Petworth MS.**

As fer as reson askeþ hardely
I wil ȝou tel a tale whicħ þat I
lerned at' Padowe of a worþi clerke
As preued by his wordys and his werk' 28
He is nowe dede and nailed in his chest'
I prei to god so send his soule good rest'
ffraunceys Petrak þe laureol poete
Hight/ þis clerke whoos retorike swete 32
Enlumyneþ al Itaile þorgħ poetrie
As lynyan did of Philosophye
Or lawe or oþer art' particulere
But' deþe þat' nyl suffre no þing' here 36
But' as it' were a twynkelinge of an ye
Boþ haþ he slayn and al shal we dye.
But' forto tellen of þis worþi man
þat' tauȝt' me þis tale as I first' bygan 40
I sey þat' he first' wiþ hygħ steel enditeþ
Or he þe body of his tale writeþ
A procheyn in þe which disseuereþ he
þe Mounde and of Saluse þe contree 44
And speketh of Appenyn þe hilles hye
þat' ben þe bondes of west lumbardye
And of Mount' Resulus in special
Wher as þe Poo out' of a welle smal 48
Takeþ his furst' sprynginge *and* his sours [leaf 160]
Wher as he holt' euen streiȝt' way his cours
To Emel ward' to ferrare *and* to venyse
The whicħ a longe þinge were to devise 52
And trewely as to my Iugement'
Mee thenkeþ it' a þing' inpertinent',
Saue he wil conuey his matere
But' þis is þe tale whicħ þat' ȝe shal here 56
¶ **Thus endeþe þe prologe of þis tale·**

And here bygynneþ þe clerk his tale [on leaf 160]

¶ The tale:/

Ther is at' þe west side of ytayle
Doune at' þe rote of vesulus þe cold'
A lusty pleyn abundant' of vitaile
wher mony a toune & tour[1] þou maist' bihold' [1 & tour interlined by perhaps a later hand]
þat' founded were in tyme of elders olde
And mony anoþer delectable siȝt'
And saluce þis noble cuntre hiȝt' 63

A Marquis whilom [lord] was in þat' lond' 64
As were his worþi elders hym bifore
And Obeisaunt' and redy to his hond'
Were alle his leeges boþ lasse *and* more 67
þus in delite he lyued and haþ do ȝore
Be-loued and drad þourgh fauour of fortune
Boþ of his lordys *and* of his comune 70

Therwiþ he was as to speke of lynage 71
The gentelest' y-born of al lumbardy
A faire *per*sone. stronge and ȝenge of age
And ful of honure and curteisie 74
Discrete ynouȝe his cuntrey forto gye
Saue in some þingges he was to blame
And Water' was þis yonge lordes name 77

I blame him þus *þat* he considered nouȝt' 78
In tyme *com*mynge what' myȝt' betide
But' on his lust' present was al his þouȝt' [leaf 160, back]
And forto hauke and hunte on euery side 81
Wel nye al oþer cures lete he slide
And eke he ne wold' þat' was worst' of all
Wedde no wif for ouȝt' þat' myȝt' byfall 84

Only þat' pointe his puple bere so sore
þat' flok-mele on a day þei [to him] went'
And oon of hem þat' wisest' was of lore
Or ellis þat' þe lorde wold best' assent'
þat' he shulde telle hym what' his puple ment'
Or ellis coude he wel shewe such̄ matere
He to þe Marquis seide as ȝe mowe here

(6)

O Noble Marquis ȝoure humanitee
Assureþ vs *and* ȝeueth vs hardynesse
As ofte tyme as it' is necessite
That' we ȝou mow telle our' heuynesse
Acceptеþ lord of ȝour' gentilnesse
þat' we to ȝowe wiþ pitous hert' compleyne
And lat' ȝoure eeres not' my vois disdeyne

(7)

Al haue I nouȝt' to done in þis matere
More þan anoþer haþ in þis place
ȝit' for as moche as ȝe my lord so dere
Haue alway shewed [me] fauour *and* grace
I dare þe better aske of ȝou a space
Of audience to shewen our request'
And ȝe my lord' to done riȝt' as ȝou lest'

(8)

For certes lord so wel vs likeþ ȝou
And alle ȝoure werkes *and* euer han do þat we
Ne cowde nat our owne silf devisen howe
We myȝt' more lyve in felicite
Saue oo þinge lord if it' ȝour wille be
That' to be a wedded man if ȝou list'
Than were our' puple in souereyn hertes rest' [leaf 161]

(9)

Boweþ ȝoure nek' vndere þat' blisful ȝok'
Of souereynte nouȝt' of seruise
Which̄ men clepe spousale or wedlok'
And þenkeþ lord among' ȝoure þouȝtes wise

That of wedloke commeþ grete emprise
ffor þouȝe we slepe or wake ronne or ride
Ay fleeþ þe tyme it wil no man abide.

(10)

And þouȝe ȝour grene ȝouþe growe as ȝit
In crepeþ age alway as stille as stone
And deþe manaseþ euery age and smyt
In eche astate for þer ascapeþ noon
And also certeyn as we knowe euerichoñ
þat we shul dye as vncerteyn we aH
Beñ of þat day þat deþ shal on vs falle

(11)

Accepteth þan of vs þe trewe entent
That neuere ȝit refused your heest
And we wil al lord ȝif ȝe wil assent
Chese ȝou a wif in short tyme at the lest
Born of þe gentelest *and* of þe mest
Of al þis londe so þat it out seme
Honure to god *and* ȝou. so as we con deme

(12)

Delyuere vs of al þis bysy drede
And take a wif for hiȝe goddis sake
ffor ȝif it byfelle so as god forbede
þat þourgh deþ ȝour lynage shuld sclake
And a straunge lynage shuld take
ȝour heritage. oo woo were vs alyue
Wherfore we prey ȝou hastely to wif

(13)

Her meke preier & her pitous chere
Made þe Marquis haue suchñ pite
Wil ȝe quod he myne owne puple dere [leaf 161, back]
To þat I neuer erst þouȝt constreyne me
I me reioyse not of my liberte
þat seelden tyme is found in mariage
Ther I was free I mot bene in seruage

But' naþelees I se 3oure trewe entent'
And trust' vpon 3ou and haue doñ ay
Wherfore of my fre wille I assent'
To wedde me as sone as euer I may
But *þer* as 3e han profered me to day
To chese me a wif I 3ou relese
That' chois ! & prei 3ou of 3*our* p*ro*phèr cese

(15)

For god it' wote *þat'* children oft' beñ
Vnlike her worþi eldres he*m* bifore
Bounte co*mme*þ al of god not' of þ^e^ strene
Of whicħ þei ben engendred and ybore
I Trust' in goddys bounte *and* þ*er*fore
My mariage and my astate *and* rest'
I hym bitake he may do as hy*m* lest'

(16)

Lat' me allone in chesing' of my wiff
That' charge vpon my bak' I wil endure
But' I 3ou prey and charge vpon 3*our* lif'
Þat' wif *þat* I take 3e me ensure
To worship hur' whil our' lyf endure
In worde and werke boþ here and ellys wher*e*
As she an empe*r*ours dou3ter were

(17)

And ferþermore þis shullen 3e swere *þat* 3e
A3einst' my chose shul nei*þer* grucche ne stryue
ffor siþ I shal forgo my liberte
At' 3oure request' as euer mot' I thryue
Ther as myn hert' is sette *þer* wil I wyue
And but' 3e wollen assent' in suchħ manere
I prey 3ou spekeþ no more of þis matere [leaf 162]

(18)

Wiþ harty wille þei sweren and assenten
To al þis þinge þer seide no wi3t' nay
Bisechinge hym of grace er þei wenten
That' he hem wold' gr*a*unten a certeyn day

Of his spousale as sone as euer he may
ffor ȝit' alway þe puple somwhat' dredde
Lesse þis Marquis wol no wif wedde 182

He graunted hem a day suc̄h as hym lest' 183
On which̄ he wolde be wedded sikerly
And seide he did al þis at' her request'
And þei wiþ humble entent' ful buxomly 186
Knelinge vpon her knees ful reuerently
Hym þonken alle and þus þei han an ende
Of her entent' and home aȝein þei wende 189

And here vpon he toke his officers 190
Commaundinge for þe fest' to purueye
And to his privey knyȝtes and sqwiers
Such̄ charge ȝaf hem. as hym lust' on hem to leye 193
And þei his comaundementz to obeye
And ech̄ of hem doþ his diligence
To done vnto þe fest reuerence 196

[*PART THE SECOND.*]

Nouȝt' fer from þilk' place honurable 197
wher as þis Marquis shope his mariage
þer stoode a Thrope of siȝt' delectable
In which̄ poor folk' of þat' vilage 200
Hadden her beestes and her harbigage
And of her labour toke her sustinaunce
After' þe erþe hem ȝaue abundaunce 203

Among' þise poor folk þer dwelled a man 204
which̄ þat' was holden porest' of hem all
But' hegh̄ god somtyme sende can [leaf 162, back]
His grace vnto a litel oxes stall 207
Ianicula men of þat' thrope hym calle
A doughter' had he faire *and* ȝong' of siȝt'
And Grisild' þis ȝonge maiden hiȝt' 210.

But' forto speke of vertuous bewte
þan was she oon þe fairest' vnder sonne
fful poorly yfostred was she
No licorousnesse was on her lust' yronne
Wel ofter of þe well þan of þe tunne
She drank' / *and* for she wole vertue plese
She knewe wel labour but' noñ ydel ese

(24)

But' þouȝe þis maide were tender' of age
ȝit' in þe brest' of her virginite
þere was enclosed ripe *and* sad corage
And in grete reuerence *and* in grete charite
Her olde poor fadere fostred shee
A fewe shepe spynnyng' on þe felde she kept'
She wolde not' ben ydel til she sclepte

(25)

And whan she homward' come she wolde bringe
wortes and herbes tymes ful oft'
whicñ she shradde *and* siþ for her lyuyng'
And made her bedde ful hard' *and* no þing' soft
And euere she kept' her faders lif on loft
wiþ euery obeisaunce *and* diligence
That' childe may do to faders reuerence

(26)

Vppon Grisilde þe poor creature
fful oft' haþ Marquis sette hys eye
As he on hundyinge rode *per*auenture
And whan it' felle þat' he myȝt' hir espye
he not' wiþ wa[n]toñ lokinge of foly
his eyen cast' vpon hur' but' *in* sad wise
Vpon her chere he wold' hy*m* oft' avise . [leaf 163]

(27)

Co*m*mending' in his hert' her wo*m*manhede
And eke her vertue passing' eny wiȝt'
Of so ȝonge age as wel in chere as *in* dede
ffor þouȝe þe puple haue no gret' insiȝt'

In vertue he considered ful riȝt'
Her bewte and disposed þat' he wold'
Hir' wedde if euer he wedde shuld'
(28)
The day of weddyng' come but' no wiȝt' can
Telle what' wo*m*man it' shuld' be
ffor which me*r*vaile wondred mony man
And seiden whan þei weren in p*r*iuete
wil not' our lorde leue his vanyte
wil he not' wedde alas alas þe while
whi wil he hy*m* self *and* vs þus begile
(29)
But' na-þe-lees þis marquis haþ do make
Of Gemmes sette in gold' *and* in asure
Broches and ryngges for grisild' sake
And of her cloþing' toke he þe mesure
Of a maide like to her stature
And eke of oþer ornamentes all'
þat' to such a wedding' shul fall'
(30)
The tyme of vndern þe same day
Approcheþ þat' þis wedding' shulde be
And all þe paleys putt' was in aray
Both halle *and* chambres ech in his degre
Houses of office. stuffed wiþ grete plente
þer maist' þou see of deynteuous vitaile
þat' may be found' as fer as lasteþ ytaile
(31)
This rial Marquis rially araied.
lordys and ladys in his companye
þe which to þe feest' were preied / [leaf 163, back]
And of his retenwe þe bachelerye
wiþ mony a soune of sondry melodye
vnto þe vilage [of þe] which I told'
In þis aray þe riȝte way haþ hold'

Griseld̄ god wote of þis ful Innocent̄ 274
þat̄ for hure was shape al þis aray
To fecchen watere at þe welle is went̄
And com*m*eþ home as sone as euer she may 277
ffor wel she herd say þat̄ ilk̄ day
þat̄ Marquis shuld̄ wedde *and* if she myȝt̄
She wold̄ fayn see som*m*e of þat̄ siȝt̄ 280

(33)

She þouȝt̄ I wil wiþ oþer̄ maidens stond̄ 281
þat̄ bene my felawes in oure door *and* see
The Marquis and þerfor wil I fonde
To done at̄ home as sone as it̄ may be 284
þe laboure which̄ þat̄ longeþ vnto me
And þan may I at̄ leisere it̄ byhold̄
If she þis way to þe castel holde 287

(34)

And as she wolde ouer̄ þe thresshold̄ goñ 288
The Marquis come and can hur̄ forto calle
And she sette doune her water pot̄ anoñ
beside þe thresshold̄ of þe oxes stalle 291
And doun vpon her knees she gan to falle
And wiþ sadde co*u*ntena*u*nce kneled stille
Til she had herde what̄ was þe lordes wille 294

(35)

This þouȝtfu̅l Marquys spake vnto þis maide 295
wel soberly and seide in þis manere
where is ȝoure fader Griseld̄ he seide
And she wiþ reuerence and meke chere 298
Answered lord he is al redy here
And Inne she gooþ wiþ-out̄ lenger lette
And to þe Marquis she her fadere fette. [leaf 164] 301

(36)

He by þe honde þan toke þis olde man 302
And seide him þus whan he hy*m* had a side
Ianicula I neiþer may ne can
lenger þe plesaunce of myn herte hide 305

If þat' ȝe vouchesauf what' so be-tide
þi douȝter wil I take er þat' I wende
As for my wif to my lyues end 308

(37)

Thow louest' me I woot' wel certeyñ 309
And art' my feiþ-ful liege man ybore
And al þat' likeþ me I dar wel seyñ
It' likeþ þe and specialy þerfore 312
Tel me þat' poynt' þat' I haue seide byfore
If þat' þowe wolde vnto þat' purpoos drawe
To take me as for þine sone in lawe 315

(38)

The sodeyn caas þe man astonyed soo / 316
þat' rede he wexe al basshed and al quakinge
He stood *and* vnneþes seide wordes moo
But' only þus lord quod he my willinge 319
Is as ȝe wol not' aȝeinst' ȝour' likinge
I wil no þinge ȝe be my lorde so dere
Riȝt' as ȝou lest' gouerneþ þis matere 322

(39)

Than wil I do þus quod Marquis softly 323
þat in to þe chambre I and þou. *and* she
haue a collacioñ and woost' þou why
ffor I wil aske hur' ȝif hir' wil be 326
To be my wif and rewle hir' after me
And al þis she shal done in þi presence
I wil not' speke out' of þine audience 329

(40)

And in þe Chambere while þei were aboute 330
Her tretis whicħ ȝe shul after here
þe puple come into þe hous without
And wondred hem in howe honest' manere [leaf 164, back] 333
And tentifly she kepte hur fadere dere
But' vtterly grisild' wonder myȝt'
ffor neuere erst' sey she shuch̄ a siȝt' 336

No wonder is þouȝe she be astonyed 337
To se so grete a gest' come in þat' place
She was neuere to suche gestys wonned
ffor which she loked wiþ ful pale face 340
But' shortly fro þis matere forto pace
Thise were þe wordes þat' þis marquis saide
To þis benygne verrey feiþful mayde 343

(42)

Grisyle he seide ȝe wol wel vnderstonde 344
It' likeþ vnto ȝoure fadere *and* me
þat' I ȝou wedde *and* eke it' may so stonde
As I suppose þat' ȝe wil it' so be 347
But' þis demaunde I axe furst' *quod* he
That' siþen it' shal be doñ on hastif wise
Wol ȝe assent' or ellis ȝowe avise 350

(43)

I seye þis be ȝe redy *with* good hert' 351
To al my lust' *and* þat' I frely may
As me best' þenkeþ do ȝou lawgh or smert
And ȝe neuer gruch nyȝt' ne day 354
And eke whan I seie ȝe say ȝe not nay
Neiþer be word ne fraward countenance
Swere þis and here I swere *our* aliañce 357

(44)

WOndringe vpon þis worde quaking' for drede 358
She seide Indigne and vnworþi
Am I to þat' [honour] þat' ȝe me bede
But' riȝt' as ye wil ȝ*our* self riȝt' so wil I 361
And [here] I swere þat' neuer willingly
In word ne þouȝt' I neuere ȝou disobeye
ffor to be dede þouȝe me were loþe to deye 364

(45)

This is ynowe Grisile myn quod he [leaf 165] 365
And forþ he goþ wiþ a sobre chere
Out' at þe door after cam she
And to þe puple he seide in þis manere 368

This is my wif quod he þat stondeþ here
Honoureþ hir and loueth [hire] I prey
Who so loueþ me þer nys no more to seye 371

(46)

And for no þing of hure olde gere 372
She shuld bring to his hous he bade
þat wommen shulden spulen hir riȝt þere
Of which þe ladies were not riȝt glade 375
To handel her clopes in which she was clad
But naþeles þis maiden briȝt of hwe
ffrom fote to hede ycloped han al neye 378

(47)

Her heres han þei kembed þat lay vntressed 379
wel rwdely with her fyngeres smale
And a crowne on her hede þei han dressed
Isette ful of owches grete and smal 382
Of hir aray what shuld I make a tale
Vnneþes þe puple hir knewe for her fairnesse
Whan she transformed was in such richesse 385

(48)

¶ This Marquis haþ hure spoused wiþ a rynge 386
Boȝt for þe same cause an þan hir sette
vppon an hors snowe white and wel amblynge
And to his palaies er he lenger lette 389
Wiþ ioiful puple þat he lad *and* mette
Conveied hir and þus þe day þei spende
In reuel to þe sonne canne descende 392

(49)

And shortely forþ þis tale forto chace 393
I sey þat to þis newe Marquissesse
God haþ ysent such favour of his *grace*
þat it semed not as by liknesse 396
That she was born and fedde in rudenesse [leaf 165, back]
As in a Cote ar in an oxes stalle
But norshed in an Emperours halle 399

To euery wiʒt' she woxen is so dere
And worshipful þat' folk' þer she was bore
And from her birth knewe her fro ʒere to ʒere
Vnneþ trowed þei but' durst' haue swore
þat' to Ianicle of which I speke byfore
She douʒtere ne were for as by coniecture
hem þouʒt' she was a noþer creature

(51)

ffor [þouʒe] þat' euere vertuous was she
She was encresed in such excellence
Of thewe sette in high bounte
And so discrete and faire of eloquence
So benygne and digne of reuerence
And coude þe puples hertes so enbrace
þat' ech her loued þat' loked on her face

(52)

Nouʒt' only of saluce in þe toun
Publisshed was þe bounte of her name
And eke be-side in mony a regioun
If oon seide wel anoþer seide þe same
So spradde of hure bounte þe fame
That' men and wommen boþ ʒonge *and* olde
Goon to saluse hur' to be-holde

(53)

This walter. lowly nay but' ryally
weddeþ wiþ fortune honeste
In goddes pees lyuen wel esely
At' hoom and outward grace ynoʒe had he
And for he sawe vnder lowe degre
was oft' vertue hid þe puple hym helde
A prudent' man and þat' is sene wel selde

(54)

Nouʒt' only Grisile þus þorgh her witte
Coupe al þe fete of wively humblenesse [lea' 166]
But' eke whan þe cas required it'
The comon profite coude she redresse

Ther nas no discord' rancour ne heuynesse
In al þe londe þat' she ne coude it' cese
And bring' hem al wisely in rest' *and* ese 434

Though þat' hur' husbond' present' were anoñ 435
3if Gentil men or oþer of her contre
were wrooþ she cowde bringe hem at' oñ
So wise and rype wordes had she 438
And Iuggement' of so grete equite
That' she fro heuene was as men wende[1] [1] *this line is repeated in the MS.*
Puple to saue and euery wrong tamende 441

Not' longe tyme aftere þat' þis grisild 442
Was wedded she a dou3ter haþ ybore
Al had she leuer born a knaue child'
Glad was þe Marquis *and* his folk þerfore 445
ffor þou3e á mayde childe come al byfore
She may to a knaue childe atteyne
By liklihede siþens she is not' bareyne 448

[*THE THIRD PART.*]

Therfor as it' falleþ tymes moo 449
That' þis childe haþ sowked but' a thrawe
This marquis in his hert' longeþ so
To tempte his wif her sadnesse to knowe 452
þat he ne myȝt' fro his hert' throwe
þis merveilous desire his wif tassay,
Naþe-lees god wote he þouȝt' hir' to affray 455

He had assaied hir' ynou3e to-fore 456
And fonde hur' euer good what' nedeþ It'
Hir' forto torment' and alway more *and* more
þou3e somme preise it' for a subtile witte 459
But' as for me I saie þat' cuel it' sitte [leaf 166, back]
To assaie a wif whan it' is no nede
And putten hure in angwissh *and* in drede 462

For whicħ þis Marquis wrouȝt' in þis ma[ne]re
He came a nyght' alon þer as she lay
wiþ steerne face and trouble chere
And seide þoo Griseld' quoþ he þat' day
þat' I ȝou toke out' of ȝoure poor aray
And putte ȝou in estate of hie noblesse
ȝe han not' ȝit' forȝeten as I gesse

(60)

I seye Griseld' þis present' dignite
In whicħ I haue put' ȝou as I trowe
Makeþ not' ȝou forȝetful forto be
þat' I ȝou toke in poor estate ful lowe
ffor eny þinge ȝe mote ȝoure seluen knowe
Take hede of euery word þat' I ȝou seie
ther is no wiȝt' þat' hereþ þis but' we tweye

(61)

ȝe wote *ȝour* self wele howe þat' ȝe come here
Into þis hous it' is not long' ago
And þouȝe to me ȝe be leef *and* dere
vnto my gentiles ȝe be no þing' so
þei seyn to hem it' is grete shame *and* woo
fforto be sogette and in seruage
To þe þat' art' born of so lowe lynage

(62)

And namely siþ þi douȝter' was bore
þise wordes han þei spoke doutlees
But' I desire as I haue don byfore
To lyve my lif wiþ hem in rest' *and* pees
I may not' in þis cas bene rechelees
I most' doñ wiþ [þi] douȝtere for þe best'
nouȝt' as I wold' but' as my gentils lest'

(63)

And ȝit' god woot' þis is ful loþ to me
But' naþeles wiþ outen *ȝour* wetynge
I nyl not' doo but' þis I wil quod he
þat' ȝe to me assent' as in þis þinge

Shewep now 3oure pacience *in* 3*our* worchinge
That' 3e me byhi3t' *and* swore in 3our vilage
That' day þat' maked was our mariage 497

(64)

Whan she had herde al þis she was not' amoued' 498
Neiþer in word or chere or countenaunce
ffor as it' semed she was not' agreued
She seid lorde all lith̄ in 3oure plesaunce 501
My childe and I wiþ hertely obeisance
Bene 3oures all *and* 3e may saue *and* spille
3oure owne þing' wheder' þat 3e wille 504

(65)

Ther may no þinge so god' my saule saue 505
likinge to 3ou þat' may displese me
Ne I desire no þinge to haue
Ne drede to lese saue only 3e 508
This wille is my hert' *and* ay shal be
No length̄ of tyme or deþ it' may deface
Neiþe chaunge my corage into o*þer* place 511

(66)

Glad was þe Marquis of hur' answering' 512
But' 3it' he feyned as he were not' so.
Al drery was his chere *and* his lokinge
whan she shuld' out' of þe chamber goo' 515
Sone after þis a forlong' way or twoo
he pleynly haþ told' his entent
Vnto a man which̄ he to his wif sent' 518

(67)

A maner' *ser*geaunt' was þis p*r*ivey man 519
þe which̄ þat' feithful fond' yhad
In þingges grete *and* eke such̄ folk' wel can
Don execucion̄ of þingges bad 522
þe lord knewe wel þ*at* he hy*m* loued *and* drad.
And whan þis sergeaunt' wist' his lordes will̄ [leaf 167, back]
Into þe chambere he stalked hy*m* ful stil̄ 525

Madame he seide ȝe mote forȝeue it me 526
þough I do þinge to which I am constreyned /
ȝe bene so wise þat wel knowe ȝe
þat lordes heestes may not be feyned 529
þei mowen wel be wailed or compleyned
But men mote nede vnto her lust obeye
And so wil I þer nys no more to seye 532

(69)

That childe I am commaunded to take 533
And spake no more but out þe child he hent
Despitously and gan a chere make
As he wold han slayn it þer he went 536
Griseld mot al suffre and al consent
And as a lombe she sitteþ meke *and* stille
And lete þis cruel Seriaunt haue his wille 539

(70)

Suspecte was þe name of þis man 540
Suspecte his face. suspecte his world also
Suspecte þe tyme þat he þis bygan/
ffor his douȝter þat she loued soo 543
She wende he wold haue slayn it riȝt þoo
But naþelees she neiþer wepte ne seide
Confeermyng hur to þat þe Marquis seide 546

(71)

And at þe last speke she bygan 547
And nekely to þe sergeant preide
So as he was a worþi gentil man
þat she myȝt kisse her childe er þat it deide 550
And in her barme þis litel childe she leide
wiþ ful sadde face and gan þe childe to blisse
And lulled it and after gan it kisse 553

(72)

And þus she seide in her benigne voys 554
fare wele my child I shal þe neuere see
But siþ I haue Marked þe wiþ croys
Of þilk fadere yblessed mot þou be [leaf 168] 557

þat' for vs deyed vpon þe rood tre.
þi soule litel childe I hym bytake
ffor þis ny3t' shalt þou dyen for my sake 560

(73)

I trowe þat' to a norice in þis caas / 561
It' had ben hard' þis rewþe forto see
Wel my3t' a modere þan cry alas /
But' naþeles so sadde *and* stedfast' was she 564
þat' she endured al hur' aduersite
And to þe Sergeant' meke she seide
Haue here a3ein my litel 3onge maide 567

(74)

And goþ now quod she *and* doþ my lordes heest' 568
And oon þinge wold' I prei of 3oure grace
That' but' my lorde forbede 3ou at' lest'
Burieþ þis litel body in som place 571
þat no beestes no briddes it' to-race
But' he no word' to þo purpoos wold' saye
But' toke þe childe *and* went' vpon his way 574

(75)

This Sergeañt' come to þe lord' ageyñ 575
And of Griseldes wordes *and* of her chere
He tolde hym poynt' by poynt' *in* short *and* pleyñ
And hym presented wiþ his dou3*ter* dere 578
Somwhat' þis lord' had' rawþe *in* his manere
But naþelees his purpoos helde he stille
As lordes doñ whan þei wil han her wille 581

(76)

And bad þis Sergeant' ful priveily 582
he shuld ful soft' þis child' welde *and* wrappe
with al þe circumstance tenderly
And carie it' in a coffre or in a lappe 585
But' vp peyn his hede of for to swappe
þat' no man shuld' knowe of his entent'
Ne whens he come ne whidere he went' 588

¶ But' at' Boloyne to his suster' dere [leaf 168, back] 589
þat' þoo of Pavie was countesse
He shuld her take *and* shew hir' þis matere
Bisechinge hure to doñ her bysynesse 592
This childe to fostere in al gladnesse
And whoos childe þat' it' was he bad hir' hide
ffrom euery wi3t' for ou3t' þat' my3t' betide 595

This Sergeaunt' go þ and ha þ fulfilled þis þinge 596
But' to þis marquis nowe retourne we
ffor nowe go þ he wel oft' ymagynynge
If by his wif' [chere] he myght' See 599
And by hir wordes perceyue þat' she
Were chaunged but' he coude neuere fynde.
But' euere in oon ylik' sad *and* kinde 602

As glad as humble as bysy in seruise 603
and Eke in loue as she was wont' to be
Was she to hym in euery manere wise
Ne of her dou3ter' oon worde speke she 606
Noon accident' for noon aduersite
Was seen in hir' ne neuere her dou3ter' name
Nempned she for ernest' ne for game 609

[*THE FOURTH PART.*]

In þis estate passed ben foure 3ere 610
Er she wi þ child' was but' as god wold'
A knaue childe she bere by þis waltere
fful gracious *and* faire to biholde 613
And whan folk' it' to hir fadere tolde
Not' oonly he But' al þe contree mery
Was for þe child' *and* god þei þonke *and* herye 616

Whan it' was two 3ere olde *and* from þe brest' 617
Departed from his norce vpon a day
þis Marquis kaught' 3it' anoth[er] lest'

To tempten his wif' ofter if he may 620
O nedeles was she tempted in assay [leaf 169]
But' wedded men knowen no mesure
Whan þei fynde a pacient' creature 623

(82)

Wyf quod þis Marquis ȝe herd' er þis 624
My puple sekely bereþ our mariage
And namely siþen my sone born is
Now it' is wors þan euer in our age 627
þe murmur sleeþ myn. her[te] and my corage
ffor to myn eres comeþ þe vois so smerte
þat' it' wel nye destroieþ al my herte 630

(83)

Now seye men þus' whan walter is a goon. 631
þan shal þe blood of Ianicle succede
And bene our lord' for oþer haue we nōn
Suchī wordes seyn my puple it' is no drede 634
Wel ouȝte I of suchī murmur taken hede
ffor certeynly I drede suchī sentence
þouȝe þei not' pleynly speke in myn audience 637

(84)

I wold lyue in pees if þat I myȝt' 638
Wherfore I am disposed vtterly
As I his sustere serued by nyȝt'
Riȝt' so I þenke to serue hym prively 641
þus warne I ȝou þat' ȝe not' sodeynly
Out' of ȝoure self for no woo shuld' outray
Beþ patient' and þerof I ȝou pray 644

(85)

I haue quod she seide [þus] and euere shall 645
I wil desire no þing' certeynī
But' as ȝou lust' not' greueth me at all
þouȝe þat' my douȝtere *and* my sone be sclaynī 648
At' ȝoure comaundement' þis is to sāynī
I haue had no parte of children tweynī
But' furst' siknesse and after' woo *and* peynī 651

3e be our lord doo *with* 3our owe þinge. 652
Riȝt as 3ou lust and askeþ no rede of me [leaf 169, back]
ffor as I left at home al my cloþinge
whan I come first to 3ou riȝt so quod she 655
left I my will and al my liberte
And toke 3oure cloþing wherfore I 3ou prey
Do 3oure wille I wille to it obeye 658

(87)

And certes 3if I had prescience 659
3oure will to knowe. or 3e 3oure lust me told
I wold it done wiþ oute necligence
But now I wote 3oure lust *and* what 3e wolde 662
Al 3oure plesaunce feerme *and* stable I hold
ffor wist I þat my deþ wold do 3ou ese
Gladly wil I suffre it 3ou to plese 665

(88)

Deth may make non comp*a*risou*n* 666
Vnto 3oure loue and whan þis Marquis say
þe constance of his wiff he cast his hede ado*u*n
And his eyen two and wondred how she may 669
In such pen*au*nce suffre al þis array
And forþ he goþ wiþ drery co*u*ntenance
But to his hert it was ful grete plesannce / 672

(89)

This ege sergeant in þe same wise 673
þat he her dou3tere kaught riȝt so he
Or wors if he coude wors devise
Haþ kaught hire childe þat was ful of bewte 676
And euere in oon so pacient was she
þat she no chere made of hevynesse
But kiseþ her sone and after can hy*m* blesse 679

(90)

Saue þis she preide him if þat he myȝt 680
hir litel sone he wold on erþe graue
his tendere ly*m*mes delicat to siȝt
ffro fowles *and* beestes forto saue 683

But she noon answere of hym myȝt haue
He went his way as he no þing wrouȝt [leaf 170]
But into boloyne tendrely it brouȝt 686

(91)

This Marquis wondreþ euere lenger þe more 687
Vpon her pacience *and* if þat he
Ne had soþly knowe þerfore
þat parfitly her children loued she 690
He wold haue wende þat of some sotilte
And of malice or cruel corage
That she had suffred þis *with* sad visage 693

(92)

Wut he knewe þat next hym self certayn 694
She loued her children best in euery wise
But nowe of wommen wold I aske fayn
ȝif þise assaies myȝt not suffise 697
what cowde a stordy husbond [more] devise
To preue her wifhode *and* her stedfastnesse
And be contynuyng in stordynesse 700

(93)

But þer ben folk of such condicion 701
þat whan þei han a certeyn purpoos take
þey con not stinte of her entencion
But as þei were bounden to a stake 704
þei wil not of þat purpoos sclake
Riȝt so þis marquis haþ fully purposed
To tempten his wif as he was first disposed 707

(94)

He waiteþ if by woordes or countenance 708
ȝif she to hym was chaunged of corage
But neuere coude he fynde variance
She was euere in hert & in visage 711
And euer þe ferþer þat he was *in* age
þe more trewer if it were possible
She was to hym in loue *and* more penyble 714

For whicħ it semeþ þus þat of hem twoo
Ther was but oon wiħ for as walter lust
The same lust was her plesaunce also [leaf 170, back]
And god be þonked al felle for þe best
She shewed wel for no worldly vnrest
A wif as of her self no þinge shuld
Willen in effecte but as her husbond wold

(96)

The sclaundere of waltere oft wide sprad
That a cruel hert wickedly
ffor he a poor womman wedded had.
Haþ morþered boþ his children priuely
which murmur was amonge heme comonly.
No wonder was for to þe puples eere
þer come no worde but þat þei murþered were

(97)

For swicħ as of his puple þerbifore
had loued hym wel desclaundred of his name
Made hem þat þei hated hym therfore
To bene a murdrere is an hatful name
But naþelees for ernest ne for game
He of his cruelte wold not stynte
To tempte his wif was al his entente

(98)

Whan þis douȝtere xij ȝere was of age
he to þe courte of Rome in sotile wise
Enformed of his wille sent his massage
Comaunding hem sucħ billes to devise
As to his cruel purpoos may suffise
howe þat þe pope for his puples rest
Bad hym wedde anoþer wif if þat hym lest

(99)

I sey he bad þat þei shuld counterfete
þe popes billes making mencioñ
þat he haþ leue his first wif to lete
As by þe popes dispensacioñ

To stinte rancoure *and* dissencioñ
Bitwix þe puple *and* hym þus speke þe bulle
The which þei han publissshed at þe fulle [leaf 171] 749

(100)

The rude puple as no wonder is 750
Wende ful wel it had be riȝt soo
But þise tydyngges commen to griseld is
I deme þat her hert was ful woo 753
But she was ylike sad euermoo
Disposed was þis humble creatur*e*/
þe aduersite of fortune al to endure 756

(101)

Abydinge euer his lust *and* his plesance 757
To whom she was ȝeuene hert *and* all
As to her worldely suffisaunce
ffor certeynly for his story telle I shall 760
This Marquis ywriten haþ *in* special
A l*ett*re in which he shewe þ his entent
And sikerly he it to boloyne sent 763

(102)

To þe Erle of Pavie which þat he had so, 764
wedded his sustere he preide specialy
To bringen him aȝein his children two
In honurable estaat al openly 767
Bot of on þing he hym preide al vtt*er*ly
That he to [no] wiȝt þoughñ men wold enquere
Shuld not telle whoos children þei were 770

(103)

But seide þat þe mayde shuld wedded be 771
Vnto þe Marquis of Saluce anoñ
And as þe erle was preide so did he
ffor at a day Isette he on his way is goñ 774
Toward Saluse *and* lordes mony oñ
In riche aray þis maide forto gyde
Hir yonge broþer ridyng by hir side 777

Araied was towardes þis mariage
This mayde fressh̄ ful of ge*m*mys clere
Hir' broþer that' vij. 3ere was of age.
Araied eke was fresshly on his manere [leaf 171, back]
And in grete noblesse *and* glad chere
Toward Saluce shapinge her io*ur*nay
ffrom day to day þei riden forþ her way

[*THE FIFTH PART.*]

Amonge al þis aftere his wikked vsage
This Marquys 3it' his wif to tempten more
To þe vttrest' preef of his corage
ffully to haue exp*e*rience *and* lore
3if þat' she were as stedfast' as bifore
he on a day in open audience
wel boistously haþ seide hir' þis sentence

CErtes Griseld' I had ynowe plesaunce
To han 3ou to my wif for 3oure goodnesse
And for 3oure treuth̄ *and* 3our obeysaunce
Nou3t' for 3oure lynage ne for 3oure ricchesse
But' it' is now knowen in verray soþnesse
þat' in grete lordship if I wil avise
Ther is grete souereynte in sondry wise

I may not' done as euery plowe man may
My puple me constreynen forto take
A noþer wiff and crien day by day
And eke þe pope rancour forto sclake
Consenteþ it' þat' dar I vndertake
And trewly þus moch̄ wil I 3ou say
My newe wif is co*m*myng' by þe way

Be stronge of hert' and voide anoñ her' place
And þilk' dowary þat' 3e brou3t' to me
Take it' a3ein I g*r*aunte it' of my g*r*ace

Retou*r*neþ to 3oure faders hous quod he
No man may alway haue p*ro*sper*i*te
wiþ euene hert' I rede 3ou to endure
þe stroke of fortune or of auenture

(109)

And she a3ein answerde in pacience [leaf 172]
My lord quod she I wote and wist' alway
howe þat' I swore 3ou magnificence
And my pouert' no man can ne may
Maken noon comp*a*rison it' is no nay
I helde me neuere digne in no manere
To be 3oure wif ne 3it' your chambrere

(110)

And in þis hous þ*er* 3e me lady made
þe high̃ god take I for my witnesse
So wisly as he my soule glade
I helde me neiþer lady ne maistresse
But' humble s*er*u*aun*te to 3oure worþinesse
And euere shal while my lif may endure
Abouen eu*er*y worþi creature

(111)

That' 3e so longe of 3o*ur* benygnite
haue holde me in honure *and* *in* nobleye
where I was not' worþi forto be
þat' þonk' I god and 3ou [to] whom I prey
ffor-3eelde it' 3ou þ*er* nys nó more to sey
Vnto my fadere gladly wil I wende
And wiþ hym dwelle to my lyves ende

(112)

Ther as I was fostred a child ful smal̃
Til I be dede my liff [þer] wil I lede
A widowe clene in hert' body *and* al̃
ffor siþen I 3af to 3ou my maydenhede
And am 3oure trewe wif it' is no drede
God shild' such̃ a lordes wif to take
Anoþer man to husbonde or to make

And of 3our' newe wif god of his grâce 841
So graunte 3ou welþe and prosperite
ffor I wil gladly 3eeld' hir' my place
In which I was blisful wont' to be 844
ffor Siþen it' likeþ 3ou my lord' quod she. [leaf 172, back]
That' whilom weren al my hertes rest'
That' I shal goon I wil goon whan 3ou lest' 847

(114)

But' þer 3e me profre such dowarie 848
As I furst' brou3t' it' is wel in my mynde
It' were my wrecched cloþes no þing' faire
þe which to me nowe were ful hard' to fynde 851
How god howe gentile *and* how kinde
3e semed by 3oure spech *and* 3our' visage
þe day þat' maked was oure mariage 854

(115)

But' soþ is seide algate I finde it' trewe 855
ffor in effecte is proued nowe on me
Loue is not' olde as whan it' is newe
ffor certes lord' for non aduersite 858
To dyen in þis cas it' shal not be
That' in worde or werk' I shal repent'
þat' I 3ou 3aue myn hert in good entent' 861

(116)

My lorde 3e wote þat' in my faders place 862
3e diden me stripen out' of my poor wede
And richely 3e cladden me of 3oure grace
To 3ou brou3t' I not' ellis out' of drede 865
But' fait' nakednesse *and* maidenhede
But' here a3ein 3oure cloþing' I restore
And eke my weddyng' ringe for euermore 868

(117)

The remen*aunte* of 3*our* Iwels redy be 869
wiþ in 3our' chambre dare I it seyuely seye
Naked out' of my faders hous quod she
I come/ and naked I mote turne ageyne 872

Al 3oure plesaunce wil I folowe feyne
But if I hope it be not 3oure entente
þat I smoklees out of 3oure paleis went
(118)
3e cowde not do so dishonest a þinge
That ilk wombe in which̄ our children lay [leaf 173]
Shuld byfore þe puple in my walkinge
Be seyn al bare wherfor I 3ou pray
lat me not like a worm gon by þe way
Remembre 3ou myn / owne lorde so dere
I was 3oure wif þou3e I vnworþi were
(119)
Wherfore in guerdon of my maidenhede
Which̄ þat I wrou3t and not a3ein bere
As vouche þ sauf to 3eue me to my mede
But such̄ a smokke as I was wont to were
þat I þerwiþ may hille þe wombe of here
þat was 3oure wif *and* here I take my leue
Of 3owe myn owne lord lest I 3ou greue
(120)
The smok quod he þat þou hast on þi bak
Lat it be stille and bere it forþ wiþ þe
But wel vnneþ þat word he spak
But went his way for reuthe *and* pite
Byfore þe folk hure self stripeþ she
And in her smok wiþ hede *and* fete al bare
Toward her fadres hous forþ is she fare
(121)
The folk folowed weping in hir way
And fortune eu*e*re þei cursed as þei goñ
But she from weping kept her eyen day
Ne *in* þis tym̄e word spak she noñ
Her fader þat here of herd anoñ
Cursed þe day *and* tyme þ*a*t nature
Shope him to be a lyues creature

For out' of doute þis olde poor man
was euer' suspecte of her mariage
ffor euer he demed siþen it bygan
þat' whan þe lord yfylled had his corage
hym wold þenk' it' was a despar*a*ge
To his astate so lowe to a liȝt' [leaf 178, back]
And voiden hir' as sone as eu*e*re he myȝt'
(123)
Aȝeinst his douȝtere hastely goþ he
ffor he by þe noys of folk' knewe her co*m*myng'
And wiþ her olde cote as it myȝt be
He keuereþ hir' ful sorowfully wepinge
But' on hur' body myȝt' he it' not bringe
ffor rude was þe cloþ and more of age
By dayes fele þan hur' mariage
(124)
Thus w*ith* her fadere for a certeyn space
dwelleþ þis floure of wively pacience
That' neu*er* by her wordes ne be her face
Bifore þe folk' ne in her absence
Ne shewed she þat' to hir' was doñ offence
Ne of hie astate in remembra*u*nce
Ne had she as by her co*u*ntena*u*nce
(125)
No wonder is for in [her] grete estate
Her goost' was euere in pleyn hu*m*ilite
No tender mouþe ne hert' delicate
Ne pompe ne semblant' of Rialte
But' ful of pacience and benygnite
Discrete and pruydeles and eu*e*re honurable
And to her husbonde euere meke *and* stable
(126)
Men speke of Iob and most' of his humblesse
As clerkes whan hem lust' can wel endite
Namely of men but' in soþfastnesse
þouȝe clerkes preise wo*m*men but' a lite

þer can no man in humblesse he*m* aquite
As wo*m*men can ne ben half so trewe
As wo*m*men bene but' it be fallen newe 938

[*THE SIXTH PART.*]

Fro babyloyne is þis Erle of Pavie come 939
Of whicℏ þe word spronge to more *and* lesse
And to þe pules eeres al *and* som*m*e
was couþe eke a newe Marquyssesse [leaf 174] 942
He wiþ hym brouȝt' in pompe *and* sucℏ ricchesse
þat' was neuere sey wiþ mannys eye
So noble aray in Westlombardye 945

The Marquis þat' Shope an knewe al þis 946
Er þat' þis erle was co*m*men sent' his massage
ffor cely poor' Gryseldys
And she *with* humble hert' *and* glad visage 949
Nouȝt' wiþ swollen hert' in her corage
Come at' his heest' and on here knees her sette
And reuerently and wisely she hy*m* grette 952

Griseld quod he my wiℏ is vtt*er*ly 953
þis maide þat' shal wedded be vnto me
Resceyued be to morowe as Really
As it' is possible in my hous to be 956
And eke þat' euery wiȝt' in his degre
Haue his estate in sittyng' and se*r*uise
And also plesaunce as ȝe can best' deuyse 959

I haue no wo*m*man suffisant' certayñ 960
þe Chambres to aray in ordyn*aun*ce
After my lust' *and* þer*for* wil I fayñ
þat' þine were al sucℏ gouern*aun*ce 963
þou knowest' eke of olde al my plesa*un*ce
þouȝe þine aray be bad and euel ysey
Do þou þi deuoyre at' þe lest wey 966

Nou3t' only lord þat' I am glad *quod'* she 967
To do 3oure lust' but' I desire also
3oure forto plese and *se*rue *in* my degre
*With*out' fayntise and shal euermoo 970
Ne neuer for no wele ne for no woo
Ne shal þe goost' *with*in my hert' stynt'
To loue 3ou best' *with* al my trewe entent' 973

(132)

And wiþ *þat'* word she gan þe hous to di3t' [leaf 174, back]
And tables to sette and beddys to make
And peyned hure to doo al þat' she my3t'
Preying' þe chambreres for goddis sake 977
To hasten hem and fast' swope *and* shake
And she þe most' seruisable at a*ll*
Haþ euery ychambre araied *and* his halle 980

(133)

Aboute vndern gan þis Erle ali3t' 981
That' wiþ him brou3t' þise noble childre tweie
ffor which þe puple ranne to se *þat* si3t'
And hure araye so richely beseye 984
And þan at' arst amonges he*m* þei goñ seye
That' walt*er* was no foole þoug*h* hy*m* lest'
To chaunge his wiff for it' was for þe best' 987

(134)

For she is fairrer' as þei demen alle 988
Than is Grise*ll* and more tender' of age
And fairrer fruyte bytwene he*m* shuld' falle
And more plesaunt' for hir' hi3e lynage 991
Hir' bro*þer*' so faire was of his age
þat' hy*m* to seen þe puple had kau3t' plesau*n*ce
Co*m*mendyng' nowe 3e Marquis gou*ern*au*n*ce 994

(135)

O sterne puple vnsad and [vn]trewe 995
Euere vndiscrete and chaungyng' as a fane
Delitinge eu*er*e in Rumo*ur* þat' is newe
ffor like þe mone euere wexe 3e *and* wane 998

Euere ful of clapping' dere ynowe a Iane
3our' dome is fals 3our constañce euel preueþ
A wel grete fool is he þat' on 3ou leueþ 1001

(136)

Thus seiden sadde folk in þat' Cite 1002
Whan þat' þe puple gased vp *and* doun .
ffor þei were glad ri3t' for þe nouelte
To make a newe lady of her toun 1005
No more of þis make I mencioun [leaf 175]
But' to griseld' a3ein wil I me dresse
And telle her constance *and* her bysynesse 1008

(137)

Wel bysy was gryseld in euery thing'e 1009
þat' to þe feest' was pertinent'
Ri3t' naught' was she abasshed of her cloþinge
þou3e þei were Rude and eke somdel to-rent' 1012
But' wiþ glad chere to þe gate is went'
wiþ oþer folk to greten þe Marquissesse
And after doþ she forþ her bysynesse 1015

(138)

Wiþ ful glad chere þe gestes she receyueþ 1016
And Boxomly euerich̃ in his degre
That' no man defawte þer perceyueþ
But' euere þei wondren what' she my3t be 1019
That' in so poor aray was forto se
And cowde such̃ honure & reuerence
And worþely þei preisen her prudence 1022

(139)

In al þis me[ne] while she ne stynte 1023
This maiden and eke her broþer to commend'
Wiþ al her hert' and benigne entente
So wel þat' no man koude her prise amende 1026
But' at' þe last' whan at' þise lordes wende
To sitten a doun he gan to calle
Griseld' as she was bysy in þe halle 1029

Griseld quod he as it were in play .. 1033
How likeþ þe my wif in her bewte
Rigt wel quod she my lorde for in good fay
A fairrer sawe I neuere non quod she 1036
I prey to god so 3eue 3ou prosperite
And so hope I he wil to 3ou sende
Plesaunce ynou3e to 3oure lyues ende 1039

(141)

Sut oon þing I biseche *and* warne also 1037
þat 3e prik wiþ no tormentynge [leaf 175, back]
þis tendere mayden as 3e han doñ moo
ffor she is fostred in her norshynge 1040
fful tenderly in her 3ong pleyynge
She coude not aduersite endure
As coude a poor fostred creature 1043

(142)

And whan þis Walter segh̄ her pacience 1044
her glad chere and no malice at all
And he so oft hap done hir offence
And she euer constant and sad as a wall 1047
Contynuyng euer her innocence ouerall
This stordy marquis gan his herte dresse
To Rwe vpon hur wifly stidfastnesse 1050

(143)

This is ynou3e Griseld myñ quod he 1051
Be no more agast ne euel apayde
I haue þi feiþ and þi benignyte
As wel as euer womman was asaied 1054
In gr[e]te astate and poorly araied
Now knowe I dere wiff þi stedfastnesse
And hure in armes toke *and* gan to kesse 1057

(144)

And she for wonder toke þerof no kepe 1058
She herd not what þing þat he seide
She ferde as she had stert out of her sclepe
Til she out of þe maisednesse abreide 1061

Griseld quod he by god þat for vs deyde
þou art my wif *and* noon oþer I haue
Ne neuere had as god my soule saue 1064

(145)

This is þi douȝter which þou hast supposed 1065
To bene my wif and noon oþer feiþfully
shal bene myn heir as I haue euere disposed
Thowe bere hem in þi body trewly 1068
At boylen haue I kepte hem sikerly
Take hem aȝein for þou myȝt not seyn [leaf 176]
þat þow hast lorn eny of þi children tweyn 1071

(146)

And folk þat oþerwise han seide of me 1072
I warne hem wel þat I haue done þis dede
ffor no malice ne for no cruelte
But forto assay þi wommanhede 1075
And not forto scle my children god forbede
But forto kepen hem prively *and* stille
Til I þi purpoos knewe and al þi wille 1078

(147)

And whan she þis herd adoun *in* swowe she falleþ 1079
ffor pitous ioying and after hire swowinge
She boþ her yonge children to hure calleþ
And in hure armes pitously wepinge 1082
Enbrased boþ tenderly kissynge
Wel like a modere wiþ her salt teeres
She baþed boþ her visage *and* her heeres 1085

(148)

O such a pitous þinge it was to see 1086
Her sownyng *and* her pitous vois to here
Gramercy my lord god y thenk ȝou quod she
þat ȝe han saued me my children dere 1089
Now rech I neuere to be dede riȝt here
Siþ I stonde in ȝour loue *and* in ȝour grace
No force of deþ ne whan my spirit pace 1092

A tender o dere .o. ȝenge children myn 1093
ȝoure wooful modere wende stedfastly
þat cruel houndes or some vermyn
Had eten ȝou but god of his mercy 1096
And ȝoure benigne fader tenderly
Haþ done ȝou kepte *and* þat same stounde
Al sodeynly she swapte doun to þe grounde 1099

(150)

And hin her swowne so sadly holdeþ she 1100
her children two whan she gan hem brace
That wiþ grete scleight and difficulte [leaf 176, back]
The children from her armes gan þei to rase 1103
O mony a tere .o mony a pitous face
Doun ranne of hem þat stoden hyr beside
Vnneþ aboute hur myȝt þei abide 1106

(151)

Walter hir vptakeþ *and* her sorowe gladeþ 1107
She ariseþ vp al abasshed from her trance
And euery wiȝt hir Ioye and feest makeþ
To she haue kauȝt aȝein her countenance 1110
Walter her doþ so feiþfully plesaunce
þat it was deynte for to se þe chere
Bitwixe hem two nowe þei bene mette *in* fere 1113

(152)

Thise ladys whan þei her tyme say 1114
han taken hur and into chambre gone
And stripen hir out of her rude aray
And in a cloþe of gold þat brighte shone 1117
wiþ a crowne of mony a riche stone
vpon hur hede þei hir into halle brouȝt
And þer she was honoured as she ouȝt 1120

(153)

Thus haþ þis pitous day a blisful ende 1121
ffor euery man and wo*m*man doþ his myȝt
This day in myrþe and reuel to dispende
Til on þe welken shoon þe sterres briȝt 1124

ffor more solempne in euery mannys si3t'
This fest' was and gretter of costage
þan was þe reuel of þe mariage 1127

(154)

fful mony a 3eer in hig̃ prosperite 1128
lyuen þise two in concord̃ and in rest'
And richely his dou3ter' maried he
Vnto a lord on of þe worþiest' 1131
Of al̃ ytaile and þan in pees *and* rest'
His wifes fader' in his courte he kepeþ
Til þat' his soule out' of' his body crepeth̃ [leaf 177] 1134

(155)

His sone entreþ into his heritage 1135
In rest' and pees aftere his faders day
And fortunate was eke in mariage
Al putte he not' his wif in assay 1138
This world̃ is not' [so] stronge it' is no nay
As it' haþ bene in olde tymes 3ore
And harkeneþ what' þe auctour seiþ þerfore 1141

(156)

þis storie is seide not' þat' wives shuld̃ 1142
ffolowe Gryseld as in humilite
ffor it' were importable þou3e þei wold̃
But' þat' euery wi3t' in his degre 1145
Shulde be constant' in aduersite.
This storie which̃ he wiþ hig̃ stile enditeþ
Wiþ pacience Griseld̃ he qwiteþ 1148

(157)

ffor siþens a womman was so pacient' 1149
Vnto a mortal̃ man moch̃ more we ou3t'
Resceyue alle in gree þat' god vs sent'
ffor grete scelys he preueþ þat' he bou3t' 1152
Mankynde þe which̃ þat' he wrou3t'
As seiþ seint' Iame if 3e his pistel rede
He preueþ folk al day it' is no drede 1155

And suffreþ vs as for our exercise 1156
Wiþ sharpe shoures of aduersite
Wel ofte to be leten in sondry wise
Nowe forto knowe vs for certys he 1159
Er we were born knewe al our freelte
And for our best is al our gouernaunce
Lat vs it haue þan in vertuous suffrance 1162

[*Chaucer's addition to the Tale.*]

But oo witte harkeneþ lordyngges er ȝe goo / 1163
It were ful harde nowe adayes
In al a toune fynde Griseldys þre or two
ffor if þei were putte *in* suchꝫ assaies 1166
þe goldꝫ of hem haþ nowe so hardꝫ alaies
Wiþ bras þatꝫ þouȝe þe kynde be faire atte ye
Itꝫ wolꝫ raþer brastꝫ a two þan plye 1169

(160)

[ffor whiche hiere . for the wifes love ofꝫ bathꝫ [MS Reg. 17 D xv, *leaf* 176, *back*: *not in Reg.* 18 C II, *Sloane* 1685, *or Harl.* 1758.]
whos lyfꝫ and al hirs . swete god maynteigne[1]
In highꝫ maistrie . and ellis were itꝫ skathꝫ
I wil withꝫ lusty hertꝫ . fressꝫ and grene 1173
Say now a songꝫ . to gladde yow I wene
And late vs stintꝫ . ofꝫ Ernestful matiere
Herknythꝫ my songꝫ . thatꝫ saithꝫ in this manere] 1176

[[1] 1-*line gap in the MS, after l.* 1171.]

¶ Le Voy De Chaucere '/ [*headline*]

(161)

GRiseldꝫ is dede and eke her pacience [leaf 177, back]
And boþ atꝫ onys yburied in Ytalie
ffor whichꝫ I cry in open audience 1179
No wedded man be hardy to assaile
His wyves pacience in trust to fynde
Griseldes for in certeyn he shal faile 1182

O noble wyues ful of hegh̄ prudence
lat' none humilite 3oure tonge nayle
Ne lat' no clerk' haue cause ne diligence 1185
To write of 3ou a storie of such̄ mervaile
As of griselde pacient' and kynde
lest' Chychyuache 3ou swelowe in hir entraile 1188

Folowe þ ekko þat' holde þ no silence
But' euere answere þ at' þe countretale
Be þ not' bydaffed for our Innocence 1191
But' sharpely take on 3ou þe gouernaile
Emprinte þ wel þis lesson̄ in 3oure mynde
ffor Comon profit' sith̄ it' may availe 1194

NE drede hem nou3t' doth̄ hem no reuerence 1201
ffor þou3e þine husbonde araied be in maile
þe arowes of þi crabbed eloquence 1203
Shal perce his brest and eke his aduentale
In Ialowsie I rede eke þou hym bynde
And þat' þou shalt make hym couche as do þ a quale 1206

If þou be faire þere folk bene in present'
Shewe þou þi visage and þine apparaile
If þowe be fowle be free of þi dispence 1209
To gete þe freendes ay do þi travaile
Be aye of chere as li3t' as leef on lynde
And lat' hym care and wepe and wryng' and waile 1212

3e Arche wiffes stonde þ at' 3our' defence 1195
Sith̄ 3e bene stronge as is a grete camaile
Ne Suffre þ not' þat' man do 3ou offence 1197
And sclendere wyves feble as in bataile
Beth̄ egre as a tygre 3ende in Ynde
Ay Clappe þ as a mylle I 3ou counsaile. 1200

GROUP E. § 5. MERCHANT'S END-LINK. **Petworth MS.**

[For the Squire's Prologue of the Petworth MS see the Man-of-Law-Shipman Link.]

¶ The prologe of þe ffraunkeleyn. *[headline of leaf 178, front]*

EHY goddis mercy seide oure hoost' þoo /
Alle euel wyues god kepe vs fro
ffor mony scleiȝtes and sub[t]ilites
Bene in wommen þat' bene euere bisy as bees
Vs foly men forto desceyue
ffor from þe soþ euere wil þei weive
By mony ensamples it' proueþ weH
But' doutelees as trewe as eny stele
I haue a wiff' þough she poor be
But' of her tunge a labbyng' shrew is she
And she haþ an hepe of vices moo
þerof no force lat' al suc̄h þingges goo
But' wete ȝe what' in counsaile be it' saide
Me reweþ sore þat' I am to her teide
ffor and I shuld rekne eue[r]y vice
Whic̄h þat' she haþ ywis I were not' wis
And cause whi for it' shuld reported be
And tolde to hure of somme of þis mayne
Of whom it' nedeþ not' to declare
Siþ wommen kon out' suc̄h chaffare
And eke my witte suffiseþ not þerto
To telle alle þerfore my tale is doo

[No break in the MS.]

GROUP F. FRAGMENT VII.

§ 1. THE SQUIRE'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

Sir' ffrannkeleyne come ner' if it' 3our wille be [on leaf 178]
And say vs a tale for sertys 3e
Can þeron as moch̄ as eny man
Nay sir' quod he I wil say as I can
With̄ hertely wille for I nyl be rebelle
A3einst' 3oure wille. a tale nowe wil I telle
HAue me excused 3if I sey amys.
My wille is good *and* loo my tale is þis ·/

¶ **Here endeþ þe prologe of þe ffra*n*nkeleyn̄**

And here bygynneþ þe ffra*n*nkeleyns tale [*on leaf* 178]

[*THE PROEM.*]

Thise olde gentile bretoynes in her' daies
Of dyuers auentures maden laies
Rymeden in her furst' bretoyne tonge
Whicħ layes wiþ her instrumentes þei songe 712
Oiþer ellis radden hem for her plesañce [leaf 178, back]
And oon of hem haue I in remembrance
Whicħ I shal seie wiþ as good wille as I can/
But' sirs by cause þat' I am but' a buriłł man 716
At' my bygynnynge furst' I ȝou biseche
Haue me excused of my rwde speche
I lered neuere rethorike certeyne
þinge þat' I speke it' mot' be bare *and* pleyne 720
I slepte neuere on þe mounte of *par*naso
Ne I neuer lered. Marchus Tullius ne Cithero
Colours of rethorike knewe I none *with*-out' dredo
But' such coloures as growen in þe mede 724
Or ellis such as men dye or peynt'
Colours of rethorike bene to me queynt'
Mi spirit' feleþ not' of such matiere
But' if ȝou lust' my tale shul ȝe here 728
[*No break in the MS.*]

[*THE TALE.*]

Ther was a knyght' þat' loued *and* did his peyne 730
In armorike þat' cleped is breteyne 729
To seruen a lady in his best' wise
And mony a laboure & mony a grete emprise 732

He for his lady wrouȝt er she were wonne
ffor she was oon þe fairest vndere sonne
And eke þerto come of so higħ kynrede
þat wel vnneþes durst þis knyght for drede
Telle hure his woo his peyne *and* his distresse
But at þe last she for his worþinesse
And namely for his meke obeysañce
Haþ suche a pite kauȝt of his pen*aun*ce
That prively she felle of his acorde
To take hym for hure husbond *and* her lord
Of suche lordship as men han ouer her wyves
And forto lede þe more in blisse her lyves
Of his fre wille he swore hure as a knyȝt
þat neu*er*e in his wille by day ne nyȝt
Ne shuld vpon hy*m* take no maistrie
Aȝeinst her wille ne kitħ hure Ialousie
But hure obeye and folowe her wille i*n* alł [leaf 179]
As eny louyere to his lady shall
Saue þat þe name of souereynte
That wolde he han for shame of his degre
She þonkeþ hym and wiþ ful grete hu*m*blesse
She seide sir siþ of ȝoure gentylnesse
ȝe profre me to han as large a reyne
Ne wolde neuere god betwix vs tweyn*e*
As in my gilt were eiþer werre or striff
Sir I wil be ȝoure owne humble & trewe wiff
Haue here my trouþe til þat my hert brest
Thus bene þei boþ in quiete *and* in rest
ffor oon þinge sires saufly dar I seie
That frendes euerich oþer most obeie
ȝif þei wil longe holde companye
louę wil not bene constreyned be maistrye
whan maistrie co*m*meþ þe god of loue anōn
Beteþ on his wengges and fare-wele he is goñ
loue is a þinge as eny spirite free
Wo*m*men of kynde desiren liberte

And nou3t' to be constreyned as a þraH
And so done men 3if I þe soþe seie shaH
Loke who þat' is most' pacient' *in* loue
He is at' his avauntage aboue
Pacience is an hie vertue certeyñ
ffor it' venquysshe þ as clerkes seyne
Thingges þat' rigoure shulde neu*er*e ateyne
ffor euery worde men may not' chide ne pleyne
Lerne þ to suffre or ellis so mote I goñ
3e Shul it' lerne wheder' 3e wil or noñ
ffor in þis world' certeyne no wi3t' nys
þat' he ne do þ or sei þ some tyme amys
Or o þer' siknesse oi þer constellacioñ
Wyne. woo. or chaunchynge of complexioñ
Cause þ ful oft' to do amys ei þer' speken
On euery wronge men may not' be a-wreken
Aftëre þe tyme most' be temp*er*a*un*ce [leaf 170, back]
To euery wi3t' þat' can no gouern*aun*ce
And þerfore ha þ þis wor þi wise kny3te
To lyue in ease suffrañce hure bihi3te
And she to hym ful wisely gan to swere
þat' neuere shuld þer be defaute in here
Here may men seen an humble wif acord'
Thus ha þ she take her seru*aun*te and her lord'
Seru*aun*te nyl oñ and lord in mariage
þan was he bo þ in lordship and seruage
Seruage nay but' in lordschip alloue
Sy þens he ha þ bo þ his lady and his loue
His lady certys and his wiff also
The whicH þat' lawe of loue accorde þ *per*to
And whan he was in þis prosp*er*ite
Home wi þ his wiff he go þ to his cuntre
Not' fer fro Pedmarke þer as his dwelling' was
Where as he lyue þ in blisse and in solas
Who couthe telle but' he had wedded be
The Ioie þe ease and þe prosp*er*ite

That is bitwix an husbond' and his wiff
A ȝere and more lasted þis blisful lif'.
Til þat' þis kny3t' of whicħ I spake of þus
That' of kynrede was cleped Arueragus
Shope hym to goon and dwelle a ȝere or tweyn
In engelond' þat' cleped was breteyn ./
To seche in armes worship and eke honour
ffor aħ hit lust' he sette in suchħ labour
And dwelleþ þere þe boke seiþ þus
Now wil I stint' of þis Arueragus
And speken I wil of dorygen his wiff'
That' loueþ her husbonde as his hertes lif'
And for his absence wepeþ she *and* sikeþe
As done þise noble wyues whan hem likeþ.
She mourneþ. wakeþ. waileþ. fasteþ & playneþ
Desire of his presence hure so destreyneþ
That' aħ þis wide world' she sette at' nou3t' [leaf 180]
Her frendes which þat' knewe her hevy þou3t'
In al þat' euere þei my3t' or may
þei prechen hur' þei tellen hur' ny3t *and* day
þat' causelees she sleeþ her self alas
And euery comfort' possible in þis cas
They doon to hure wiþ al her bysynesse
And al forto make hure late her heuynesse
By processe as ȝe knowe wel euerechoñ
Men may so longe grauen in þe stoñ
Til some figure þer-Inne emprinted be
So longe han þei conforted hure þat' she
Resceyued haþ by hope and by resoñ
The emprintyng' of hure constellacioñ
Thorgħ whicħ here grete sorowe gan aswage
She may not alway endure in suchħ a rage
And eke arueragus in al þis care
Haþ sent' her lettres home in al þis fare
And þat' he wold' come hastely aȝeiñ
Oyþer ellis had þis sorowe hure hert' sclayñ

Her frendes segħ hure hert' gan to sclake
And preiden hure on knees for goddys sake
To come and to Rome hure in companye
Away to dryve hure derk fantasie
And fynaly she graunted þat' requst'
ffor wel she seghe it' was for þe best'
Nowe stoode hure castel fast' by þe see
And oft wiþ hure frendes walked she
Hire to disporte on þe See bank' on hegħ
Where as she mony shippe *and* barge segħ
Seilynge her cours where hem lust' to goo
But' ȝit' was þer a parcelle of her woo.
ffor to hure self ful ofte seide she
Is þer no shippe of so mony as I see
wil bringe home my lord' þan wold' my herte
Al warisshe of þise bittere peynes smerte.
A-noþer tyme þer wil she sitte *and* þenke [leaf 180, back]
And cast' her yen downward' fro þe brinke
But' whan she segħ þe grissly rokkes blake
ffor verrey fere wold hure hert' quake
þat' on her fete she myȝt' not' hure sustene
þan wold she sitte dóune on þe grene
And pitously into þe see she wolde biholde
And seyn riȝt' þus withħ soroweful hert' cold'
Eterne god þat' þourgħ þi purueaunce
Ledest' þe worlde by certeyn gouernaunce
In ydelnesse as men sayne ye no þinge make
But' lorde þise grisly feendly rokkes blake
That' semen raþer a foule confusioñ
Of werk' þan eny faire creacioñ
Of whichħ a parfit' god *and* a stable
why han ȝe wrouȝt' þis werk vnresonable
ffor by þis werk' souþe. norþ. eest' & west'
Ther nis yfostred man ne bridde ne beest'
It' doþ no good to my witte but' anoyeþ
Se ȝe not' lorde how man-kynde it' destroieþ

An C. thousand bodies of man-kynde
Han rokkes sclayn al be þei nou3t *in* mynde
Which mankynde is so faire part' of þi werke
þat' þow it maidest' like to þine honde werke
þan semed it' 3e had a grete cheerte
Toward' mankynde but' how þan may it' be
þat' 3e suche menes make it' to destroien./
Which̄ menes done no good but' euer anoyen
I wote wel clerkys wollen seyn as hem lest'
By argument' þat' al þing' is for þe best'
þough̄ I ne can þe causesse forsoþ knowe
But' þilk god þat' made wynde to blowe
As kepe my lorde þis is my conclusioñ
To clerkes lete I al disputacioñ
But' wolde god þat' all þe rokkes blake
Were sonken into helle for his sake
Thise rokkes scleen myn hert' for fere [leaf 191]
Thus wold' she sayn wiþ mony a pitous tere
Hire frendes segh̄ þat' [it] was no disport'
To Romen by þe see but' discomfort'
And shopen for to pleyen somwher ellis
They leden hure by ryuers *and* by wellys
And eke in oþer places delitables
Thei daunsen *and* pley atte chesse *and* tables
So on a day ri3t' on þe morowe tyde
Vnto a gardyne þat' was þer beside
In whiche þat' þei had made her ordin*aunce*
Of vitaille and of o*per*e purueaunce
They goon *and* pleien hem al þe longe day
And þis was on þe sext' morowe of may
Which̄ may had peinted wiþ his soft*e* shoures
This gardeyn ful of leues *and* of floures
And wiþ craft' of m*a*nnys honde so curiously
Araied had þis gardyne traily
That' neuere nas þer gardyne of such̄ p*ri*se
But' 3if it' were þe verrey p*a*radyse

The odour of floures and þe fresshe siȝt'
Wold haue made eny pensif hert' liȝt'
That' euere was born̄ but' if to grete siknesse
Oiþer to grete sorowe helde it' in distresse
And aftere dynere gan þei to daunce
So ful it' was of bewte wiþ plesaunce
And syngen also but' dirigen song' allone
And made alway her compleinte *and* her mone
ffor she ne segh̄ him in þe daunce goo
þat' was her husbonde *and* her loue also
But' naþelees she most' a tyme abide
And wiþ good hope lete she her sorowe glide
¶ Vpon þis daunce amonges oþer men
Daunsed a squier' afore Dorigen
þat' fressher' was and Iolier of araye
As to my dome þan is þe monþe of may
He syngeþ and dounseþ passinge eny man [leaf 181, back]
þat' is or was siþens þis world' bygan
þer-wiþ he was if men shuld hym discrive
On þe best' faring' man alyue
ȝong'. strong' riȝt' vertuous riche and wis
And wel byloued and holden in grete pris
And shortely if þe soþ tellen I shal
Vnwittyng' of þis Dorigen at' all
This lusty squyere seruaunte to Venus
Which þat' icleped was aurelius
Had loued hure best' of eny creature
Two ȝere and more as was his auenture
But' neuere durst' he telle of his greuaunce
Wiþ-out' cuppe he dronke al his penaunce
He was despeired no þing' durst' he saye
Sauf in his sawe somwhat' wold' he wreye
His woo as in general compleynyng'
He saide he loued and was byloued no þing'
Of suche matere made he mony laies
Songges compleyntes roundelettes virrelaies

How þat' he durst' not' his sorowe telle
þat' languysshe þ as a fuyre do þ in helle
And deye he seide most I as did Ekko
ffor Narsisus þat' durst' not' telle hure woo
In o*þere* manere þan ȝe here me saye
Ne durst' he not' to hur*e* his woo bywrey
Saue p*er*auenture somtyme at' daunces
þere ȝonge men kepen her obseru*aun*ces
It' may wel be he loked on hur*e* face
In such a wise as man þat' aske þ grace
But' no þinge wist*e* she of his entent'
Na þeles it' happed er þei þens went'
Bycause þat' he was hure neighb*our*
And was a mon of worship *and* hono*ur*
And had yknowe hy*m* oft' tymes ȝore
þei fylle in speche more *and* more
Vnto his p*ur*poos drowe aurelius
And whan he segh his tyme he saide þus
Madame quod he by god þat' þis world' made
So þat' I wist' it' myȝt' ȝoure hert*e* glade
I wold þat' day þat' ȝoure aruerag*us*
Went' to þe see þat' I Aurelius
Had went' þat' I shuld neuere come a*ȝ*ein
ffor wel I wote my seruise is in veyn
My gwerdon is but' brestyng of myn h*erte*
Madame reweþ vpon my peynes smerte
ffor as wiþ a swerde ȝe may me scle or saue
Here at ȝoure fote god wolde I were *in* graue
I haue as nowe no leisere forto seie
Haue mercy on me swete or ȝe wil do me die
She gan to loke vpon Aurelius
Is þis ȝoure wille q*uod* she and saye ȝe þus
Neuer erst' q*uod* she ne wist' I what' ȝe ment'
But' nowe Aurely I knowe ȝoure entent'
By þilk*e* god þat' ȝaf me soule *and* liff
Ne shal I neuere be an vntrewe wiff

[leaf 182]

In worde ne werk as fer as I haue witte
I wil bene his to whom þat' I am knytte
But aftere þat' in pleyn þus seide she
Take þis for fynal answere as for me
Aurely quod she by hiȝe god aboue
ȝit' wil I graunte ȝou to be ȝoure loue
Sipþe I see ȝou so pitously compleyne
Loke what' day þat' euenlong' breteyne
ȝe remeue alle þe Rokkes stoon by stoon
þat' þei lat' shippe ne bote none
I saye whan ȝe han made þise costes so clene
Of Rokkes þat' þer be no stone sene
þan wil I loue ȝou best' of eny man
Haue here my trouþe in al þat' euere I can
Is þere noon oþer grace quod he
No by þat' lorde quod she þat made me.
ffor wel I wote þat' shal neuere betide [leaf 182, back]
Lat' such foly out' of ȝoure hert' glide
What' deynte shuld' man haue be his lif'
fforto loue anoþere mannys wiff'
þat' haþ hure body whan þat' hym likeþ
Aurelius ful ofte sore sikeþ
Woo was Aurelius whan he þis herde
And wiþ a sorowful hert' þus answerde
Madame quod he þis were an impossible
þan mote I deye a sodeyne deþe horrible
And wiþ þat' worde he turned hym anon
Tho come hire oþer frendes mony oñ
And in the aleis romed vp *and* doun
And no þing' wist' of þis conclusioun
But' sodeynly bygonne to reuel newe
Til þat' þe briȝte sonne lost' his hwe
ffor þorisonth haþ raft' þe sonne his liȝt'
This is as moche to say as it was nyȝt'
And home þei gone in Ioie and in solace
Saue only wrecched Aurelius allas

he to his hous is gone wiþ sorowful herte
he seiþ he may not' from his deþ asterte
Hym semeþ he feleþ his hert' colde
Vp to þe heuene his hondys gan he holde
And on his knees bare he sette hym doun
And in his raving' seide þis Orisoun
ffor verrey woo out' of his witte he breide
He nyst' not' what' he spake but' þus he seide
Wiþ pitous hert' haþ he compleynt' bygon̄
Vnto þe goddesse and first vnto þe sonne
He seide Appollo god and gouernour
Of euery planete. herbe. tree *and* flour'
Þat' 3euest' aftere þi declinacion̄
To ech̄ of hem his tyme *and* his seson̄
And þine harborowe chaungeþ lowe *and* hie
Lord Phebus cast' þi merciable ye
On wrecched Aurely which̄ þat' am but' lorne [leaf 183]
loo lord' my lady haþ my deþ sworne
Wiþ-oute gilt' but' þi benignite
Vpon my dedly herte haue somme pite
But' wel I wote lorde phebus *if 3ou lest'*
3e may me helpe to haue my *lady best'*
Now vouchep sauf þat' I may 3ou devise
How þat' I may be hulpe and in what' wise
3oure blisful sustre lucyna þe Shene
Þat' of the see is cheef goddes *and* quene
Þouȝe Neptynus haue deite in þe See
3it' Emperesse abouen hem is she
3e knowen wel lord' riȝt' as hure desire
Is to be qwykkened and liȝtned of 3our fire
ffor which̄ she folweþ 3ou fu[l] bisily
Riȝt' soo þe See desireþ naturelly
To folowen hure as she þat' is goddesse
Boþe in þe See and in þe Ryuere more *and* lesse
Wherfore lorde phebus þis is my requeste
Do þis myracle or do myn herte to-brest'

That nowe next at þis opposicioñ
Whiche in þe signe shal be of þe lyoñ
As preie hure so grete a floode to brynge
þat .v. fathme at þe leest it ouere sprynge
þe hiest rokke in harmorike Bretaigne
And lat þis flode endure 3eres tweyne
Than certis to my lady may I saye
Holdeþ 3oure heeste þe rokkes ben awaye
Lord Phebus do þis miracle for me
Preie hure she goo no faster cours þan 3e
I seie þowe þus preie 3oure sustre þat she go.
No fastere cours þan 3e þise 3eres two
þan shal she be euere at þe ful alway
And springe floode lasteþ boþ ny3t *and* day
And but she vouche-sauf in suchñ manere
To graunte me my lady souereyn dere
Preie hure to synken euery rokke adoun [leaf 183, back]
Into hure owne derk regioun
Vndere þe grounde þer Pluto dwelleþ Inne
Oiþere neuere more shal I my lady wynne
Thi temple in Delphos wil I barefote seke
Lorde Phebus biholde 3e þe teeres of my cheke
And of my peyne haue compassioun
And wiþ þat worde in swoune he fille adoun.
And longe tyme he lay in a traunce
his broþer whichñ þat knewe of his penaunce
Vp kau3t hym and to bed hym brou3t
Despeired in his torment *and* his þou3t
Loo I þis wooful creature lye
May chese whedere to lyve or dye
¶ Arueragus wiþ hool and grete honour
As he [that] was of chyualrie þe floure
Is commen home and oþer worþi men
O blisful art þou Doregen
þat hast þine lusty husbond in þine armes
þat fresshe knyght þat worþi man of armes

þat' loueþ þe as his owne hertys lif
No þing' lest' he to be ymagynatiff
þouȝe eny wiȝt' had spoke while he was oute
To hure of loue he made þerof no doute
He nouȝt' entendeþ to no suc̄h matere
But' daunseþ. Iusteþ. and makeþ good chere
And þus in Ioye and blisse I lat' hem dwelle
And of þe swete Aurelius [1] wil I telle [1 *First*, Aruelius, *in the MS.*]
In langour and in furious torment' þus
Two ȝere and more lay wrecched aurelius.
Or eny foote on erþe he myȝte goñ
No comfort' in þis tyme nad he noñ
Sauf of his broþere which þat was a clerke
he knewe of all þis woo and al þis werke
ffor to noñ oþer creature certeyñ
Of þis matere ne durste he no worde seyn
Vndere his brest' he bere it' more secree [leaf 184]
Than euere did phamphilius for galathe
His brest' was hoole wiþ-outen for to sene
But' in his herte was ay þe arowe kene
And wel to knowe þat' afore Sanure
In Surgery ful perilous is þe cure
But' men myȝt' not' touche þe arowe þouȝe he come þerby
His broþer wepeþ and weilleth prively
Til at' þe last' hym felle in remembrañce
That' whiles he was at' orliañce in france
As ȝonge clerkes þat' bene likerous
To reden artes þat' bene curious
Seken in euery halke and euery herne
Particulere sciences forto lerne
He him remembreþ vpon a day
At' Orliaunce in stody a boke he saie
Of magike naturel which̄ his felawe
þat' was þat' tyme a bachilere of lawe
Al were he þere to lerne anoþer craft'
And priuely vpon his desk' he laft'

This boke whicħ speke mochel of ope;acioñs
Touchinge þe *eight and twenty* [1] mancioñs [1 *MS* xxviij]
þat' longen to þe mone and suchħ foly
As in our daies nys nat' worþ a flye
ffor holy churche seiþ in *our* bileue
Ne suffreþ noon illusioñ vs to greue
And whan þis booke was in remembraunce
Anone for ioy he gan to daunce
And to hym self saide *pri*uely
My broþer shal be warisshed hastely
ffor I am siker þat' *þer*' bene sciences
By whicħ men make dyuers apparences
whiche as þise subtile tregetours pleien
ffor oft' at' feestes haue I herde seyen
That' tregetours wiþ-in an halle large
Han maden come water' in a barge:
And in the halle rowe vp and doune [leaf 184, back]
Somtyme haþ semed [come] a grete lyoun
[And somtyme flours spryng as in a mede [Add. MS 5140, *leaf* 190, *back*]
Somtyme a vyne/ and grapes whyt and reede]
Somtyme a castel al of lyme *and* stoñ
And whan hen liked voide it' anoñ
Thus semed it' to euery mannys si3t'
Now þan conclude I þus if þat' I my3t'
At' Orliaunce some olde felawe finde
þat' had þe moons mancions in mynde
Oiþer magike naturel aboue
He shuld wel make my broþer han his loue
ffor wiþ apparens a man may make
To mannys si3t' þat' alle þe Rokkes blake
Of Bretoyne were ywent' euerechoñ
And þat' shippes by þe brinkes my3t' commen *and* goñ
And in suchħ forme enduren a 3ere or twoo
þan were my broþer warsshed of his woo
þan moste she nedis knowe hure byhest'
Or ellis he shal shamen hure at' þe lest'

What' shuld' I make-a lenger tale of þis
Vnto his broþer bedde co*mm*en he is
And suche co*m*forte he ȝaue hy*m* forto goñ
To orliaunce þat' he vpstert' anoñ
And on his way forþward' is he fare
In hope to bene ylissed of his care
Whan þei were come almost' to þat' cite
But' if it' were a two forlonge or þree
A ȝonge clerk' romyng' by he*m*self þei mette
Whiche þat' in latyn thriftely hym grette
And aftere þat' he seide a wonder' þinge
I knowe quod he þe cause of ȝoure co*mm*ynge
And er þei forþer eny foote went'
He tolde hem all þat' was in her entent'
þis bretoyne clerke hy*m* asked of ffelawes
þe whiche þat' he had knowe in olde daies
And he answered hy*m* þat' þei dede were
ffor whiche he wept' ful mony a tere
Doune of' his hors Aurelius li3t' anõn [leaf 185]
And forþ wiþ þis Magicien is he gõn
Home to his hous and made hem wel at' eese
Ham lackeþ no vitaile þat' hem my3t' plese
So wel an araied hous as ther was oñ
Aurelius in his lif ne segh̃ none
He shewed hem ere [þei] went' to sopere
fforestis and parkes ful of wilde dere
[Ther sauh*e* he hertis / with̃ ther hornys hihe [Addit. MS 5140, *leaf* 191]
The grettest / that evir wer seyn*e* w*i*t*h* eye
He sauh*e* of hem an hundred / slayn*e* wyth houndes
And som with̃ arwes / bleede of bytter wo*u*ndes
He sauh*e* whanne wyde were the wylde deer
The fauconers vpon) a fayr ryver]
And howe facouns han þe herowne sclayñ
þat' segh̃ he knyghtes iusten in a playñ
And aftere þis he did hym such̃ plesa*u*nce
þat' he hym shewed his lady in a daunce

On whicℏ him self daunsed as hym þouȝt
And whan þis maistere þat þis magike wrouȝt
Segℏ it was tyme and clapped his hondys twoo
A fare wele al oure reuel is ydoo
But ȝit remeue þei neuere out of þis hous
whiles þei seghe al þis siȝt merveilous
But in his stody þere as his bokes be
þei sitten stille and no wiȝt but þei þre
To him þis maastere called þan a sqwiere
And seide him þus is it redy oure sopere
Almost an houre it is I vndertake
Siþens I ȝou bad oure sopere to make
Whan þat þise worþi men wenten with me
Vnto my stody þer as my bokes be
Sir quod þis squiere whan it likeþ ȝou.
It is al redy þouȝe ȝe wiℏ riȝt nowe
Go we þan soupe quod he & for þe best
þise Amerous folk somtyme mote haue rest
And after sopere fille þei in trete
What somme shulde þis maisters guerdoñ be
To rem[u]e alle þe Rokkes of breteyne
And eke from geroñ to þe mouþe of Seyn
He made it straunge & swore so god hym saue
Lasse þan a þousand pounde he nolde not haue
Ne gladly for þat somme he nold not gooñ [leaf 185, back]
Aurelius wiþ blisful hert anoñ
Answered þus. fie on a thousand pounde
This wide world þat men seyn is rounde
þat wold I ȝeue if I were lord of it
This bargayn is ful drive for we bene knyt
ȝe shullen be paide trewly be my trouþe
But lokeþ nowe for no negligence ne slouþe
ȝe tary vs here no lenger þan to morowe
Nay quod this clerke haue here my trouþe to borowe
To bedde is gone Aurelius whan hym list
And welnygh al þat nyȝt he had his rest

þat' for his laboure and for his hope of blisse.
His wooful herte of pen*aun*ce had a lisse
Vpon þis morowe whan þat' it' was day
To breteigne toke þei þe right' way
Aurelius and þis magicien be side
And bene descended *þer* þei willen abide
And þis was as þe bokes me rem*em*bre
þe colde frosty seson of decembre
Phebus wexe olde and hwed like latoñ
That' in his hote declinaciõn
Shoone as þe byrned cold' *with* stremes briȝt'
But' nowe in scorpion a-doune he liȝt'
Where as he shone ful pale I dar wel seyn
þe bitter' frostes *with* þe sclete *and* reyn
Destroied haþ þe grene in euery ȝerde
Ianus sitte by þe fuyr *with* double berde
And drynkeþ of his bugle horn þe wyne
Byforn hym stant' þe brawne of þe tusked swyne
And a noweH crieþ euery lusty man
Aurelius in al þat' eu*er*e he can.
Doth to his maister' chere *and* reuerence
And preieþ him to doñ his diligence
To bringgen him out' of his peynes smerte
Oiþere wiþ a swerde þat' he wold sclitte his h*er*te
That' subtile clerk' which þat' rouþe had of *þis* man [leaf 186]
þat' nyght' and day he him spedde þat' he ne lan
To waite a tyme of his conclusioñ
This to say to make illusioñ
I ne can no termes of Astrologie
By whiche an apparence of Iogelrie
þat' she and euery wiȝt' shuld wẽne *and* seie
That' of Breteyn þe rokkes bene away
Oiþ*er*e ellis þei were sonken vnd*er* grounde
So at' þe last' whan he his tyme fo*un*de
To make his iapes and his wrecchednesse
Of which a sup*er*sticious cursednesse

His tables colletanes forþ he brouȝt
fful wel corrected for þer lacked nouȝt
Ne his collectis ne his expans ȝeres
Ne his rotes ne his oþer geres
As bene his Centrys *and* his argumentz
And his *pro*porcions conuenientz
ffor his equaciõns and euery þinge
And by his viiij spere in his wirkinge
He knewe howe fer alnaþe was yshoue
ffrom þe hede of þilk fixe ariseþ aboue
þat in þe *ninthe* [1] spere considered is [1 *MS* ix]
fful subtily he cal[cu]leþ al þis /
And whan he had founde his first manciõn
He knewe þe remyn*au*nte by *pro*porciõn
And knewe þe arising of þe mone weH
And in whoos face and terme euery deH
And knewe ful wel þe monys mancioñ
Accordant to his operaciõn
And knewe also his oþer obser*uau*nces
ffor suc̃h illusions and suc̃h mesch*au*nces
As heþen folk vsed þilk daies
ffor which̃ no lenger maked he delaies
But þorgh̃ his magike for a weke or tway
It semed as al the Rockes were away
Aurelius which̃ þat despeired is [leaf 186, back]
whedere he shal han his loue or fare amys
Awaiteþ nyȝt and day of þis myracle
And whan he knewe þer was noñ obstacle
þat voiden were þise rokkes euerechoñ
Doune to þis maisters fete he fille anoñ
And seide I woful wreche Aurelius
Thonke ȝou lorde and lady myne Venus
That me han hulpe from my carys cold
And to þe temple forþ his way haþ hold
Where he knewe he shuld þis lady se
And whan he segh̃ his tyme anon riȝt he

With dredful herte and humble chere
Salwed haþ his souereyn lady dere
My riȝtful lady quod þis wooful man.
Whom I most drede and loue as I best can. 1312
And loþest were of al þis world displese
Nere it þat I for ȝou haue suche dissese
That I most dye here at ȝoure fote anoñ
¶ But not wolde I telle howe me is woo bygoñ 1316
But certes eiþer most I deye or pleien·
ȝe slee me giltelees for verrey peyne
But of my deth̄ þouȝe ye haue no rouþe
Avise ȝou er þat ȝe lese ȝoure trouþe 1320
Repenteþ ȝou for þilke god aboue
Er ȝe me sleen by cause þat I ȝou loue
ffor madame wel ȝe wote *þat* ȝe han hiȝt
Not þat I chalence eny þing of riȝt 1324
Of ȝou souereyn lady but ȝo*ur* grace
But in a gardyne ȝonde in such̄ a place
ȝe wote riȝt wel þat ȝe bihote me
And in myn honde ȝoure trouþe bliȝt ȝe 1328
To loue me best god wote ȝe saide so
Al be þat I vnworþi am þerto.
Mādame I seie it for þe honure of ȝou·
More þan to saue myn hertes lif riȝt nowe. 1332
I haue done as ȝe comaunded me [leaf 187]
And if ȝe vouchesauf ȝe may go see
And as ȝou lust haueþ ȝoure bihest in mynde
ffor qwikke or dede riȝt þus ȝe shullen me finde 1336
In ȝou lif aH̄ to do me lyve or deye
But wel I woote þe rockes bene aweye
He toke his leue and she astonyed stode
In al her face þer nas on drope of blood 1340
She wende neuere han co*mm*en in such a trappe
Allas quod she þat this euere shuld happe
ffor wende I neuere by possibilite
þat such̄ a meschaunce shuld eu*er*e be 1344

It is aȝeinst þe processe of nature[1] [1 These lines are transposed in the MS.]
And home she goþ a soriful creature[1]
ffor verrey fere vnneþes may she goo /
She wepeþ and weilleþ a day or twoo
And swowneþ þat it rauthe was to see
But whi it was to no wiȝt tolde she
ffor out of toune was goon Arüeragus
But to hure self she seide and speke þus.
In hure compleynte as ȝe shul aftere here
With face pale *and* wiþ soriful chere
Allas quod she on þe fortune I playñ
þat vnware hast wrapped me *in* þi chayñ
ffor whicħ þe eskape wote I no socour
Saue only deþ eiþer dishonour
Oon of þise two bihoueth me to chese
But naþelees ȝit had I leuer lese
My lif þan of my body to haue a shame
Eiþer knowe my self fals eiþ*er* lese my name
And wiþ my deþ I may be quytte I-wis
Han þer nat mony a wif er þis
And mony a maiden sclayn her self allas
Raþer þan wiþ her bodies done trespas
And certes loo þise stories beren witnesse
Whan xxx.ti tirauntz ful of cursednesse.
Had sclayn Phidon in Athenes at þe lest [leaf 187, back]
They co*m*maunded his douȝters to arest
And bringgen [hem] byforn hy*m* in despit
Al naked to fulfille her foule delite
And in her faders bloode þei made he*m* daunce
Vppon þe pauement god ȝeue he*m* meschau*n*ce
ffor whicħ þise wooful maidens ful of drede
Raiþer þan þei wolde lese her maidenhede
þei prively bene sterte into a welle
And dreinte hem self as þe bokes telle
Thei of mesue lete enquere and seke
Of lacedemye .l. maidens eke

On whicħ þei wolden doñ her lecherie
But was þer none of al þat companye
þat she nas sclayn and wiþ a glad entent
Chese þe raþere to die þan to assent
To bene enpressed of her maidenhede
Whi shuld I þan to dye bene *in* drede
Lo eke þe tiraunte Austoclides
þat loued a maiden whicħ hiȝt Symphalides
Whan þat hure fadere sclayn was on a nyȝt
Vnto Dianes temple goþ she anoñ riȝt
And hent þe ymage wiþ hure armes twoo /
ffrom whicħ ymage she nolde neuer goo
No wiȝt myȝt fro hit hure handis race
Til she was sclayn in þe self place
Nowe siþens þat maidens had sucħ despit
To bene defouled wiþ mannys foule delite
Wel ouȝte a wiff raþere hure self slee
þan ben defouled as þenkeþ me
What shal I sayn of hasdrubaldys wif
þat at Cartage biraft herself hur liff
ffor whan she segħ þat Romayns wan þe toun
She toke her chuldren alle and swept adoun
Into þe fuyre and ches rather to dye
þan eny Romayñ did hure vilenye
Haþ not lucres ysclayn hure self allas [leaf 188]
At Rome þere she oppressed was
Of Tarquyne for hure þouȝt it was a shame
To live whan þat she had lost her name
The .viij. maidens of Melefie also /
Han sclayn hem self for drede *and* woo /
Raþer þan folk of gaule shuld hem oppresse
Moo þan a M stories as I gesse
Couþe I nowe telle as touching þis matere
Whan habradas was sclayn his wif so dere
Her self sclowe and lete her blood to glide
In Habradas woundes brood *and* wide

And saide my body at' þe leeste waye
Ther shal no wi3t' defoile if þat' I may
What' shuld' I moo ensamples herof sayñ
Siþen þat' so mony han hem self sclayñ 1420
Wel raþer þan þei wolde defowled be
I wil conclude what' is best for me
[Tho sleen my self. than be defouled thus [MS Reg. 17 D 15, leaf 188]
I wilbe trewe. vnto Arueragus] 1424
Eiþer raþer slee my self in some manere
As did Demonycions dou3tere dere
By cause þat' she nolde defoiled be
O Cedasus it' is ful grete pite 1428
To reden how þi dou3ters deiden allas
þat' sclowe hem self for suche manere cas
As grete appetit' was it' or more
The theban maiden þat' for Nichasore 1432
[Hir selfen slough right for suche a mâner woo [MS Reg. 17 D 15, leaf 188]
Another theban mayden dide right so]
Hure had wedded and sore dressed. [*spurious*]
For oon of Masidoigne had hure oppressed. 1435
What' shal I seyn of Nicharatyfs wiff
þat' for suchñ caas biraft' her' self her lif
Howe trewe was eke to Alcebiades
His loue þat' forto dyen [raþer] ches 1440
þan forto suffre his body vmbreided be
Loo which a wif was alcesteyn quod she
What' Emore of good Penoloþe
Alle Grece knoweþ of her chaastite 1444
Parde of leodomya is written þus [leaf 188, back]
That' whan a Troy was sclayn protheselayus
No lenger nold' she lyf aftere his day
þe same of noble porcia telle I maye 1448
Wiþ-outen brutus quod she not' lyve
To whom [s]he had alhole hure herte 3eue
The parfit' wifhode of Archemesie
Honoured is þorgh alle þe barberye 1452

O teuta quene in þi wifly chastite
To alle wives may þou a myrour be
[. . . *no gap in the MS: these lines*
. . . . . *known only in Ellesmere MS.*]
Thus playned Dorigen a day or twoye
Purposinge euere þat she wolde deye
But naþeles vpon þe þred nyȝt
Home came Arueragus þe worthi knyȝt
And asked hure whi þat she wepte so sore
And she gan wepen euere þe lenger more
Allas quod she þat euere was I borne
Thus haue I seide quod she þus haue I swor̄
I tolde hym alle as ȝe han herde bifore
It nedeþ not rehersen it here-of no more.
This husbonde wiþ glad chere in sondry wise
Answerde and seide as I shal [ȝou] devise
Is þer ouȝt ellis Dorigen but þis
Nay nay quod she god helpe me so as wisse
þis is to moche if it were goddes wille
ȝe wiff quod he lat sclepe þat is stille
It may be wel ȝit peraventure to saye
ȝe shullen ȝoure trouþe holden be my fay
ffor god so wisly helpe me
I had wel leuere ystikked forto be
ffor verrey loue which̄ I to ȝou haue
But ȝif ȝe shuld ȝoure trouthe Saue
Trouþe is þe hiest þing þat man may kepe
But wiþ þat word he brast anon̄ to wepe
And seide I ȝou forbede in peyn̄ of deth̄
That neuer whiles ȝou lasteþ lif & breth̄
To no wiȝt telle of þis cure [leaf 189]
As I may I most my lif endure
Ne make no countenaunce of heuynesse
þat folk of ȝou may deme harme or gesse
And forþ he clepeþ a sqwiere *and* a mayde
Goþ forþ anon̄ with̄ Dorigen he saide

And bringeþ hure to suchꝫ a place anoñ
Thei toke her leue and on her way þei goñ
But' þei ne wiste whi she thider went'
He nolde no wiȝt' telle hure entent' 1492
[. . . . . [These lines known only in the Ellesmere MS.]
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. 1496
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
This Sqwier whichꝫ þat' hiȝt' Aurelius
On dorigen whichꝫ þat' was so amerous 1500
Of auenture happed hure to mete
Amydde þe toune riȝt in þe qwikke strete
As she was boune to goo þe way forþ riȝt'
Toward' the gardeyn þer as she had hiȝt' 1504
And he was to þe gardeyñ ward' also
ffor wel he aspied whan she wolde goo
Out' of her hous to eny manere place
But' þus þei mette by auenture or grace 1508
And he salueþ her wiþ glad entent'
And axed of hure whidere þat' she went'
And she answerd' half as she were madde
Vnto þe Gardyne as myn husbond' badde 1512
My trouþe forto hold' allas allas
Aurelius gan wondere of þis cas.
And in his hert' had grete compassioñ
Of hure and of her lamentacioñ 1516
And of Arueragus þe worþi knyȝt'
þat' bad hure holde al þat' she hight'
So loþe he was hys wiff sholde breke her trouþe
And in his hert' he cast' of þis grete routhe 1520
Consideringe þe best' on euery side
þat' from his lust' hym were better abide
Than done so higꝫ a cherles wrecchednesse
Aȝeinst' fraunches and al gentilnesse 1524

ffor whicℏ in fewe wordes seide he þus [leaf 189, back]
Madame seiþ to ȝoure lorde Arueragus.
þat' siþen I se his grete gentilnesse
To ȝou and eke I see wel ȝoure distresse 1528
If ȝe by me shulde breke ȝoure trouþe 1530
Certes me þenkeþ it' were grete rouþe [*spurious* 1529]
I haue wel leuer' euere to suffre woo
þan I departe þe loue ytwix ȝou twoo 1532
I ȝou relese madame into ȝoure honde
Quite euery surement' and euery bonde
That' ȝe han made to me as here biforn̄
¶ Siþens þilk' tyme þat' ȝe were born̄ 1536
My trouþe I pliȝt' I shal ȝou neuer' repreef'../
Of no biheest' and here I take my leue
As of þe trewest' & þe beste wiff
þat' euere ȝit' I knewe in al my liff 1540
And euery wiȝt' be ware of hure bihest'
On Dorygen remembreþ at' þe leste
Thus can a squyere don̄ a gentile dede
As wel as can a knyȝt' wiþ-oute drede 1544
She þonked hym vpon hure knees al bare
And home vnto hure husbonde is she fare
And tolde hym alle as ȝe han herd' me seide
And be ȝe siker he was ful wel apaide 1548
It' were impossible to write
What' nedeþ lenger in þis cas endite
¶ Arueragus and Dorigen his wiff'
In souereyn blisse leden forþ her lif 1552
Neuer aftere was þer anger hem bitwene
He Shershed hure as þouȝe she were a quene
And she was to hym trewe for euermore
Of þise two folk' ȝe gete of me no more 1556
¶ Aurelius þat' his çost' haþ forlorn̄
Curseþ þe tyme þat' euere he was born̄
Allas quod he alas þat' I bihiȝt'
Of pured gold' a thousand' pounde of wiȝt' 1560

Vnto þis philosople how shal I doo [leaf 196
I se no more but' þat' I am fordoo
Mine heritage most' I selle
And bene a begger here I may not' dwelle 1564
And shamen al my kynrede in þis place
But' I of him may gete bett*er* grace
But' naþelees I wil of hy*m* assaie
At' certeyn dayes ȝere by ȝere to paie 1568
And þonke him of his grete c*ur*tesie
My trouþe wil I kepe I wil not' lie
Wiþ herte sore he goþ vnto his cofre
And brouȝte golde vnto þis philysophre 1572
þe value of .v. C. pounde I gesse
And hy*m* biseche þ of his gentilnesse
To g*r*aunte hy*m* daies of þe remen*aun*te
And saide maistere I dar wel make au*aun*te 1576
I failled neuere of my trouþe ȝit
ffor sikerly my dette shal be quytt'
Towardes ȝou how þat' eu*er*e I fare
To goon a begger in my kirtel bare 1580
But' wolde ȝe vouche sauf vpon swerte
Two ȝere or þre forto respite me
þan were I welle for ellis mote I selle
¶ Myn heritage þer nys no more to telle 1584
This Philisophre soberly answerde
And seide þus whan he þis word herde
Haue I not' holde con*aun*te vnto þe
Ȝis certes wel *and* trewly quod he 1588
hast' þou not' had þi lady as þe likeþ
No no quod he and sorily he sikeþ
What' was þe cause telle me ȝif þou can
Aurelius his tale anon bygan 1592
And tolde hy*m* alle as ȝe han herd bifore
It' nedeþ not' to rehercen it' no more
He saide Arueragus of gentilnesse
Had leuere dey in sorowe and distresse 1596

Than his wif were of hure trewþe fals [leaf 190, back]
The sorowe of dorigen he tolde hym als
Howe loþe hire was to be a wicked wiff
And þat' she leuere þat' day lost' hure liff
And þat' hure trouþe she swore þourgh Innocence
She neuere erst' herde speke of apparence
That' made me han of hure so grete pite
And rizt' as frely as he sent' hire me
As freely sent' I hire to hym azein
This is alle and some þer nys no more to seyñ
This Philisophre answerd' leue broþer
Euerich of zou did gentilich til oþer
Thou art' a squyere and he a kny3t'
But' god forbede for his blisful my3t'
But' if a clerk' couþe do a gentile dede
As wel as eny of zou it' is no drede
Sir' I relece þe þi þousand pounde
As þow riz3t' nowe were cropen out' of þ^e^ grounde
Ne neuere er nowe haddest' þou knowe me
ffor sir' I nyl not' take a peny of þe
ffor al my craft' and my travaile
þow hast' ypaied wel for my vitaile
It' is ynowe and fare wele & haue good day
And toke his hors and forþ he goþ his way
¶ Lordingges þis questioñ wil I aske nowe
Which was þe most' free as þenkeþ zou
Nowe telleþ me er þat' I forþer wende
I Can no more my tale is at' an ende
¶ **Thus endeþ þe ffrankleyn his tale**

GROUP G. FRAGMENT VIII.

§ 1. THE SECOND NUN'S TALE.

PETWORTH MS.

[*THE PROEM.*] [*on leaf* 190, *back*]

[*No breaks between the stanzas in the MS.*]

¶ And here byginneþ þe *prologe* of ij. nonne

(1)

The mynystere and þe norice vnto vices
Which þat men clepen in englissh ydelnesse
The porter of þe gate is of delices
To eschewe and by her contrary hure oppresse
þat is to sayn by leeful bysynesse
Wel ouȝt we to doñ our entent
Lest þat þe feend þorgh ydelnesse vs shent [leaf 191]

(2)

For he þat wiþ his þousande cordes sliȝe
Continuelly vs waiteþ to be-clappe
Whan he may man in ydelnesse aspie
He can so liȝtly cacche him in his trappe
Til þat a man be hent riȝt by þe lappe
He nys nat ware þe fende haþ hym on hond
wel ouȝt vs worch and ydelnesse wiþstond

(3)

And þouȝe men dradden neuere forto deye
ȝit seen men wel by resoun doutelees
That ydelnesse is roten scloggardye
Of whiche þer neuere *com*meth non encrees
And siþens þat slouth hure holdeþ *in* a lees
Only to slepe and forto ete *and* drinke
And to devouren alle þat oþ*er*e swynke

(4)

And forto putten vs from suchꝫ ydelnesse
That' cause is of þe grete confusioñ
I haue here done my feiþful bysynesse
Aftere þe legende in translacioñ
Riȝt' of þi glorious lif *and* passioñ
Thow wiþ þi garlond' wrouȝt' of rooses *and* lilie
The mene I maiden and marter' seint' Cicile

(5)

And þou þat' floure of virgynes art' alle
Of whom þat' Barnard' lust' so wel to write
To þe at' my bygynnyng' furst' I calle
Thou comforte of vs wrecches do me endite
þine maidens deþ þat' was þorgh þi merite
þe et*er*nal lif and of þe feende victorie
Certes men may aftere reden *in* his storie

(6)

Thow maiden *and* modere douȝter' of þ' sone
Thow welle of mercy synful soules cure
In whom þat' god for bounte chees to wone[1] [[1] wone *later*]
Thowe humble and hegh ouere euery creature
Thou nobledest' so ferre oure nature
That' no desdeyn þe maker had of kynde
His sone in blood and flessh to cloþ *and* wynde

(7)

Wiþ-Inne þe cloystere blisful of þi sidys [leaf 191, back]
Toke mañys shappe þe eterne loue *and* pees
þat' of þe trynie compas lorde and gide es
Whom erþe and see and heuene wiþ out' relees
Ay heryen and þou virgyne wemlees
Bare of þi body and dwellest' maiden pure
þe creatour of euery creature

(8)

Assembled is in þe magnificence
Wiþ mercy goodnesse *and* suc̄ pite
That' þou arte þe sonne of excellence
Nouȝt' only helpest' hem þat' preien þe
But' oftetyme of þi benignyte
fful frely er þat' men þine helpe biseche
þow goost' byforn and art' her lyues leche

(9)

Now helpe þou meke and blisful faire maide
Me flemed wrec̄ in þis deserte of galle
Thenk' on þe wo*m*man Canane þat' saide
þat' whelpes eten som*m*e of þe crommes alle
þat' from her lordis table bene yfalle
And þouȝe þat' I þe vnworþi sone of Eue
Be sinful ȝit' accepte my bileue

(10)

And for þat' feiþ is dede wiþ-out' werkes
So for to worchen ȝeue me witte *and* space
þat' I be quytte from place þat most' derk' es
O þou þat' art' so faire and so ful of grace
Be myne aduocate in so higħ a place
Ther as wiþ-out' ende is songe Osanna
þou cristes moder and douȝter of Anna

(11)

And of þi liȝt' my soule in p*ri*son liȝt'
þat' troubled is by þe contagioñ
Of my body and also by þe wiȝt'
Of erþly lust' and fals affectioñ
O heuene o. refute .o saluacioñ
Of hem þat' bene in sorowe *and* in distresse
Nowe helpe: for to my werk' I wil me dresse

(12)

3it' prey I 3ou þat' reden þat' I write
fforyeueþ me þat' I doo no diligence [leaf 103]
þis ilk storie subtely to endite
ffor boþ haue I þe wordys *and* þe sentence
Of hem þat' at' sey[n]tes reuerence
þe storie wroot' and folowen her legende
And prei 3ou þat' 3e wil my werk amende

(13) [*THE TALE.*]

First' wolde I 3ou þe name of seint' Cicile
Expoune as men in her stories see
It' is to saye in engelisshe heuenes lilie
ffor pure chaastnesse of virginite
Oiþer for she witnesse had of honeste
Of grene of consciens *and* of good fame
The swote sauoure lilie was hure name

(14)

Oyþere Cicile is to say þe way to blynde
ffor she ensample was by good techinge
Or ellis Cicile as I writen fynde
Is ioyned by a manere conioynynge
Of heuene and lya *and* hier in figurynge
þe heuene is sette for þou3t' of holynesse
And lya for hure lastinge bisynesse

(15)

Cicile maye eke be seide *in* þis manere
Wantyng' of blyndenesse for hure grete li3t'
Of sapience and of her thewes clere
Oiþer ellis loo þis maidens name bri3t'
Of heuene *and* leos *com*meþ for which̄ by ri3t'
Men my3t' þe heuene of puple hure calle
Ensample of good and wise werkes alle

(16)

For leos puple in englissh is to say
And riȝt' as men may in þe heuen see
The sonne and mone *and* þe sterres euery way
Riȝt so [men] goostly in þis maiden fre
Sèen þe feiþ of magnificence
And eke of helpe and of sapience
And sondry werkes briȝt' of excellence

(17)

And riȝt' as þise philisophres write
þat' heuene is swift' rounde *and* brennynge
Riȝt' so was faire Cicile þo white [leaf 192, back]
fful swift' and bisy euere in werkinge
And rounde and hool in good *per*seuerynge
And brenne euere in charite liȝt'
Now haue I declared ȝou what' she hiȝt'

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe / & here bygynneþ þ^e^ .ij. nonnes tale

(18)

This maiden briȝt' Cicile as hure lif saiþ ¶ þe tale./
was commen of Romaynes *and* of noble kynde
And so forþe fostred vp in þe faiþ
Of *cri*ste and bare hys gospel in her mynde
She neuere sesed as I writen fynde
Of hure preiere and god to loue and drede
Bisechinge hym to kepe her maidenhede

(19)

And whan þis maiden shuld' vnto a man
ywedded be þat' was ful ȝenge of age
That' ycleped was valirian
And þe day was commen of hure mariage
She fille deuoute and humble in her corage
Vndere hure Robe of gold' þat' sat' ful faire
And next' hure flessh̄ yclad was in an haire

(20)

And while þe Orgels maden melodie
To god allone þus in hert' songe she
O lorde my saule *and* eke my body gie
Vnwemmed lest' þat' I co*n*founded be
And for his loue þat' dyed on a tree
Euery secounde or *thridde*[1] day she fast'
Ay bidynge in here orisons ful fast'

(21)

The nyght' come and to bed she most' gooñ
Wiþ hure husbonde as aften is þe manere
And p*r*iuely she seide anōñ
O sweto and welbiloued spouse dere
þer is a counsaile *and* ȝe wold' it' here
Whicñ þat' riȝt' fayn I wolde vnto ȝou seien
So þat' ȝe me assured it' nouȝt' bywreien

(22)

Valeryan gan fast' vnto hure swere
þat' for no caas ne þinge þat' myȝt' be
He shold for no þinge neuere bewrien here
And þan at' arst' þus to hy*m* seide she
I haue an aungell whicñ þat' loueþ me
þat' wiþ grete loue whedere I wake or slepe
Is redy ay my body forto kepe

(23)

And ȝif þat' ȝe may felen out' of drede
þat' ȝe wil ȝou gouerne no þinge amys
He wil ȝou saue and kepe to ȝe be dede
ffor ȝoure clene lyuyng' & ȝoure goodnesse
And bring' ȝou streīȝte into heuene blesse
He wol ȝou loue as me for ȝoure clennesse
And schewen ȝou of his Ioye and his briȝtnesse

[MS. iij.]
[leaf 193]

(24)

Valerian corrected as god wolde
Answerde aȝein if' I shal trust' to þe
lat' me þat' aungel se and hym biholde
And ȝif þat' it' a verrei aungel be
þan wil I done as þou hast' preide me
¶ And ȝif þou loue anoþer man þan me
riȝt' wiþ þis swerde I wil slee ȝou boþe

(25)

Cicile Answerde anone in þis wise
And if ȝou lust' þat' aungel shul ȝe see
So þat' ȝe trowe on *criste* and ȝou baptise
Goþ forþ to Via Apia quod she
þat' from þis toune ne stant' but' myles þre.
And to þe pore folk' þat' þere dwelle
Say hem riȝt' þus as þat' I shal ȝou telle

(26)

Say þat' I Cicilie ȝou to hem sent'
To shewe ȝou þe good vrban þe olde
ffor secre nedes and for good entent'
And whan þat' ȝe seint' Vrban han byholde
Telle him þe wordes whicħ I to ȝou tolde
And whan þat' he haþ purged ȝou fro synne
þan shul ȝe seen þat' aungel er ȝe twynne

(27)

Valerian is to þat place ygōn
And riȝt' as hym was tauȝt' by his lurnynge
He fonde þis holy Vrban anoñ./
Amonge þise seintes buriels lowtynge [leaf 193, back]
And he anoñ wiþ-out' tariynge
Did his massage and whan he had [it] tolde
Vrban for ioye gan his hondes vp holde

(28)

The teeres from his eien lete he falle
Almyȝty god o Iheſu criſt quod he
Sowere of chaaſt counsaile & herde of vs alle
The fruyte of þilke seede of chaastite
þat þou haste sawe in cicile take to þee
Loo like a bisy bee wiþ-out gile
þe serueth ay þine owne thralle Cicile

(29)

For þilk spouse þat she toke but nowe
fful like a ferce leon she sendeþ here
As meke as eny lombe was to ȝou
And wiþ þat worde anoñ *per* gan apere
An olde man-clad wiþ white cloþes clere
And had a boke wiþ *lett*res of golde in honde
And gan biforne Valerian stonde

(30)

Valerian as dede fille doune for drede
whan he hym segñ and hym vphent þoo
And on his boke þus he gan to rede
Oo lord oo feiþ oo god wiþ-oute moo
Of *cri*stendome and fadere of alle also
Abouen alle *and* queral euery where
þise wordes al wiþ gold [y]writen were

(31)

Whan þis was radde þat seide þis olde man
Leuest þou þis þing or no sai ȝe or nay
I leue al þis þin[g] / [quod Valerian *[Harl. 7335, leaf 93, back]*
ffor sother thyng]. & [1] þis I dar wel saye *[1 than Harl.]*
Vndere þe heuene no wiȝt ne þenk may
¶ Tho vanished þat olde man he nyst wher
And pope Vrban hym cristened riȝt þere

(32)

Valerian goþ home to seint' Cicile
And with Inne his chambre an Aungel he seigh stande
þis aungel had of rose *and* of lilie
Corownes two þe whiche he bare on hande
And first' to Cicile as I vnderstande
Be ȝaf þat' oon and aftere gan he take [leaf 194]
þat' oþer to Valerian her make.

(33)

Wiþ body clene and wiþ vnwemmed þouȝt'
kepeþ ay wel þise corownes quod he
ffrom paradise to ȝou haue I hem brouȝt'
Ne neuere more shul þei roten be
Ne lese her swete sauoure tresteth me
Ne neuere wiȝt' shal seene hem wiþ his ye
But' he be chaast' and hate vilenye

(34)

And þou valerian for þou so sone
Assentest' to good counsaile also
ffay what' þe lust' and þou shalt' haue þi bone
I haue a broþer quod Valerian þoo
þat' in þis world I loue no man soo /
I prey ȝou þat' my broþere may haue grace
To knowe þe trouþe as I do in þis place

(35)

The aungel answerde god likeþ ȝour' request'
And boþ wiþ þe palme of marterdome
ȝe shul come vnto þe blisful fest'
And wiþ þat' worde tiburce his broþere come
And whan þat' he þe sauoure vndernome
Wiþ þat' þe roses and þe lilies caste
Wiþ Inne his herte he gan to wonder faste

(36)

And saide in þis tyme I wondere of þe ȝere
whennys þis swete sauoure commeþ soo /
And roses and lilies þat I smelle here
ffor þouȝe I had hem in myn hondes twoo
þe sauoure myȝt in me no depper goo
þe swete smelle þat in myn hert I fynde
Haþ chaunged me al in a noþer kinde

(37)

Valerian saide two corownes haue we
Snowe white and rose rede þat shyneþ clere
which þat þine eyen han no myȝt to see
And as þowe smellest hem þouȝe þi preiere
So Shalt þou sene hem leue broþer dere
ȝif it so be þou wilt wiþ-oute scleuþe.
Byleue a riȝt and knowe þe verrey trouþe [leaf 194, back]

(38)

Tyburçe answerd seist þou þis to me
In soþnesse or in dreeme herken ȝe þis
In dremes quod Valerian han we be
Into þis tyme broþer myn ywis
But nowe at arst our trouþe dwelling is
Howe woost þou quod Tiburce & in what wise
Quod Valerian þat shal I þe devise

(39)

The Aungel of god haþ me þe trouþe tauȝt
Which þat þou shalt seen if þat þow wilt reneye
The ydoles and be clene and ellis nauȝt
But of þe myracles of þise corownes tweye
Seint Ambrose in his preface list to seie
Solempnely this noble doctour dere
Commendeþ it and seiþ in þis manere

(40)

The palme of marterdome forto receyue
Seint' Cicile fulfilled of goddys ȝift'
þe worlde and [e]ke hure chambre gan she weyue
Witnesse Tiburce and Cicilees shrift
To which god of his bountee wolde shift'
Corownes two of flowres wel smellynge
And made þe aungel hem þoo corownes bringe

(41)

This made haþ brouȝt' þise men to blisse aboue
þe world' haþ wist' what' it' is worþ certeyne
Deuocion of chastite to loue
Tho shewed hym Cicile open and pleyne
That' alle ydoles nys but' þing' in veyne
ffor þei bene dombe and þerto þei bene defe
And charged hym his ydols forto lef

(42)

Who þat' þis troueþ nat' a beest' he is
Quod þoo tyburce if þat' I shal not' ly
She gan þan kisse his brest' & pat' herd' þis
And was ful glad he couþe trouþ aspie
This daye take I þe for myne alye
Saide þis blesful maide faire & dere
ffor aftere þat' she saide as ȝe may here /

(43)

Loo ryȝt' so as þe loue of *crist'* quod She [leaf 195]
Made me þi broþeres wif riȝt' in þat' wise
Anoon for myn alie here take I þe
Sipens þat' þou wolt' þine ydoles despise
Go wiþ þi broþer nowe and þe baptise
And make þe clene so þat' þou maist' beholde
þe Aungels face of which þi brother tolde

(44)

Tyburse answerd and seide broþer dere
ffurst telle me whidere I shal and to what man
To whome quod he come forþ wiþ riȝt goode chere
I wil þe lede vnto þe pope Vrban
To Vrban broþer myne Valerian
Quod þoo Tiburce wilt þou me þidere lede
Me þenkeþ þat it were a wondere dede

(45)

Remenest þou nat Vrban quod he þoo
That is so ofte dampned to be dede
And wonneþ in halkes to and froo
And dar nat onys put forþ his hede
Men shul hym brenne in a fire so rede
If he were founde þat men myȝt hym spie
And we also þat bere hym compaṅye

(46)

And whiles we seken þilk Dyuinyte
þat is ihidde in heuene prive
Algate ybrent in þis world shul we be.
To whom Cicile answerd bodily
Men myȝt drede wel and skilfully
This lif to lese myn owne dere broþer
ȝif þis were lyuynge only and noñ oþer

(47)

But þer is better lif in ooþer place
That neuere shal be lost drede þe nouȝt
Which goddes sone vs tolde þourgh his grace
[That fadres sone hath alle thynges wrought [Harl. 7335, leaf 95, bk]
And al that wrought is with a skilful thoght
The gost that fro the fader gan procede
hath sowled hem with-outen ony drede

(48)

By word and by myracle he goddes sone [Harl. 7335]
whan he was in this world declared here
That ther was other lif' ther men may wone
Tho answerde Tiburce o. suster dere
Ne sei-destow right now in this manere
Ther nys but o god lord in sothfastnesse
And now of' three how maisthow bere witnesse

(49)

That shal y telle quod she or y go] [Harl. 7335 *extract ends*]
Riȝt' as a man haþ sapiences þre
Memorie engeyne and intellecte also
So in oo beinge of diuinite
Thre *per*sones riȝt' wel þer may be
Tho gan she hy*m* bisily preche.
Of *cri*stes come and of his peynes teche [leaf 195, back]

(50)

And mony poyntes of his passioñ
How goddys son*ne* in þis wiþ-holde
To do mankynde pleyn remyssioñ
That' was ybounde in cares colde
Al þis þinge she vnto Tiburce tolde
And aftere þis Tiburce in good entent'
To pope Vrban wiþ Valerian went'

(51)

Whicħ þonked god *and* wiþ glad hert' *and* liȝt'
He Cristned hym and made hy*m* in þat' place
*Par*fit' in his lyuynge goddys knyȝt',
And after þis Tiburce gate sucħ grace
þat' euery day he seie in tyme *and* space
þe Aungel of god and euery maner bone
þat' he god asked it' was spedde ful sone

(52)

It' were ful harde by order' forto seyne
Howe mony wonders Ihesu for hym wrouȝt'
But' atte last' to telle short' *and* pleyn̄
The sergeaunt' of þe towne of Rome hem souȝt'
And hem byforn Almachē þe prouost' brouȝt'
Whiche hem opposed and knewe al her entent'
And to þe ymage of Iubiter he hem sent'

(53)

And saide who so wil not' sacrifise
Swap of his heued þis is my sentence here
Anone þise marteers þat' I ȝou deuise
On maximius þat' was an officere
Of þe prefectis and of Corniculere
Hem hent' and whan he forþe þe seyntes ladde
Hym self he wepte for pite þat' he hadde

(54)

Whan maximius had herde þe seintes lore
he gate hem of þe turmentours leue
And had hem in his hous wiþ-out' more
And wiþ her prechinge er þat' it' were eue
Þei gone from þe tormentours to reue
And fro maximius and fro his folk' echone
þe fals feith to trowe in god allone.

(55)

Cicile come whan it' was woxen nyȝt' [leaf 196]
Wiþ preestes þat' hem cristened al in fere
And afterward' whan day was waxen liȝt'
Cicile hem seide wiþ a sobre chere
Now cristes owne knyȝtes leef *and* dere
Casteþ al away þe werkes of derknesse
And armeþ ȝou in armure of liȝtnesse

(56)

3e han forsoþe ydone grete bataille
Whicħ is nowe done 3oure feiþ han 3e confermed
Goþ to þe corowne of lif þat' may not' faile
The Ri3t' Iuge whicħ þat' 3e han disserued
Tofore hym 3e bene feiþfulli preserued
And whan þis þinge was seide as I deuise
Men ladde hem forþe to done þe sacrifise

(57)

But' whan þei were vnto þe place brou3t'
To telle shortely þe conclusioun
þei nolde ensence ne sacrifise ri3t' nou3t'
But' on her knees þei setten hem adoun
Wiþ humble hert' and sad deuocioun
And losten boþ her hedes in þe place
Her saules wenten to þe kinge of grace

(58)

This Maximius þat' see þis þinge betide
wiþ pitous tales tolde it' anoñ ri3t'
That' he her sawles seghe to heuene glide
Wiþ aungels ful of cleernesse and of li3t'
And wiþ his worde conuerted mony a wi3t'
ffor which Almachius did hym so to bete
Wiþ whippe of lede til he his lif gan lete

(59)

Cicile hym toke and buried hym anõn
By Tiburce and Valerian softely
Wiþ-Inne her heriyng' place vnder' þe stoñ
And aftere þis Almachius hastely
Bad his mynystres fecchen opynly
Cicile so she my3t' in his presence
Don sacrifise and Iubiter ensence

(60)

But' þei conuerted þorgh her wise lore
Wepten sore and ȝaf credence [leaf 196, back]
Vnto her worde *and* criden more *and* more
Crist' goddes sone wiþ-oute difference
Is Verrey god þis is all' oure sentence
þat' haþ so good a seruaunte hym to serue
Thus wiþ oo vois we trowe þouȝe we sterue

(61)

Almachius þat' herde al this [doinge]
Bad foche Cicile þat' he myȝt' hure se
And alderfurst' loo þis was his askinge
What' maner womman art' þou þo quod he
I am a gentile womman born quod she
I aske quod he þouȝe it' þe greue
Of þi religiõ and of þi bileue

(62)

Whi þan bygan ȝoure questiõ folily
Quod she þat' woldest' two answers conclude
In oon demannde ȝe asked lewedely
Almachy' answerde to þat' similitude
Of whennys [comth̃ thyn answeryng' so rude [Harl. 7335, *lf* 97]
Of' whennys] quod she whan þat' she was refreyned
Of conscience and of good feiþ vnfeyned

(63)

Almachius seide takest' þou non hede
Of þine answere and she hym answerd' þus
ȝoure myȝt' quod she litel is to drede
ffor euery morteH mannys power nys
But' lich̃ a bladdere ful of wynde ywis
ffor wiþ a nedelys poynte whan þat' is blowe
May al þe boost' of it' be laide ful lowe

(64)

Ful wron[g]fully bygonne þou quod he
And 3it' in wronge is þi *per*seuer*aun*ce
Woost' þou nat' how oure my3ty p*ri*nces fre
Ben þus comaunded *and* maken ordin*aun*ce
þat' euery cristen wi3t' shal han pen*aun*ce
But' 3if þat' he his *cri*stendome wiþseyn
And goon al quite if he wil it' receyne

(65)

3oure p*ri*nces aren as 3oure noblen doþ
Quod þoo Cicile and a woode sentence
3e make vs gilty and it' nys nat' soth̄
ffor 3e þat' knowen wel our Innocence [leaf 197]
ffor as moch̄ as we done Reuerence
To c*ri*ste and for we bere a cristen name
3e put' on vs a cryme and eke a blame

(66)

But' we þat' knowen þilk' name soo
ffor vertuous we may it' not' say
Almachy answerde chese on of þise twoo
Do sac*ri*fise or cristendome reney
þat' þowe may nowe scapen by þat' way
At' which̄ þe holy blisful maide
Gan forto lau3e and to þe Iuge she saide

(67)

O Iuge confuse in þi nycete
Wilt' þou þat' I reneye Innocence
To maken me a wicked wi3t' q*uod* she
loo he dissimuleþ here in audience
He stareþ and wodeþ in his adu*er*tence
To whom Almachius o vnsely wrecch̄
Ne woost' þow not' howe ferre my my3t' may strecch̄

(68)

Haþ nouȝt' our myȝty prince to me yȝouen
ȝe boþ powere and auctoritee
To make folk' to dien or to lyuen
Whi spekest' þou so proudly þan to me
I ne speke but' stedfastly quod she
Nouȝt' proudely for I saie as for my side
I hate dedly þilke vice of pride

(69)

And ȝif þou drede nouȝt' a soþe to here
þan wil I shewen al openly by riȝt'
þat þou hast' made a ful grete lesinge here
Thow seist þi princes han ȝeue þe myȝt'
Boþ to sleene and forto quyk a wiȝt'
Thowe þat' ne maist' but' only lif here by-reue
Thow nast' þerto neiþere power ne leue

(70)

[But þou mayst sayn thi prynces han the maked] [Harl. 7335, leaf 98]
Mynyster' of deþ for ȝif þou speke of moo
þow liest' for þi power' is ful naked
Do way þi boldnesse saide Almachius þoo
And sacrifise to our goddys twoo.
I ne recche nouȝt' what' wronge þat' þou me profre [lf 197, bk]
ffor I can suffre it' as a philosofre

(71)

But' þilk' wronges may I nat' endure
þat' þou spekest' of oure goddes here quod he
Cicele answerde oo nyce creature
þow seidest no word siþ þou spekest' to me
þat' I ne knewe þerwiþ þi nycete
And þat' þowe were in euery maner' wise
A lewde officere and a veyn Iustise

(72)

Ther lackeþ no þinge to þine vtter eyen
þatˉ þou nartˉ blynde for þingˉ þatˉ we seen alle
þatˉ is a stone þatˉ men may wel aspien
Thatˉ ilke stoon a god þou woltˉ itˉ calle
I rede þe latˉ þine h[ond] vppon itˉ falle
And taastˉ itˉ wel and stoon þou shaltˉ itˉ fynde
Siþe þatˉ þou seestˉ itˉ natˉ wiþ þine eyen blynde

(73)

Itˉ is a shame þatˉ þe puple shal
So scorne þe and lauȝe atˉ þi foly
ffor comonly wo*mm*en wote itˉ. weH oueraH
Thatˉ myȝty god is in heuene hie
And þise ymages wel þan maistˉ þou spie
To þe ne to hem self may þei natˉ profite
And in her effecte þei bene natˉ worth a myte

(74)

Thise and suc̄ oþer wordes saide She
And he wexe wrooþ and bad she shuld be lede
home to her hous and in her hous quod he
Brenne hure in a fuyre wiþ flawmes rede
And as he bad ryȝtˉ so was done þe dede
And in a bath̄. þei gan hure fastˉ shetten
And nyghtˉ and day grete fuyre vnder þei maden

(75)

Al þe longe nyȝtˉ and eke þe day also
ffor al þe fuyre and eke þe baþes hete
She satte al colde and feltˉ of itˉ no woo
Ne made hure a drope nouȝtˉ forto swete
Butˉ in þatˉ bath̄ her lif She mostˉ lete
ffor he Almachie wiþ ful wicked ententˉ
To scleen hure in þe bath̄ his sondeˉ sentˉ / [leaf 198]

(76)

Thre strokes in þe nekke he smote hure þoo
The turmentour but for no manere chaunce
He myȝt not smyten al her necke a two
And for þer was þat tyme an ordyn*aunce*
That none shuld to no man do such̄ pen*aunce*
þe ferþe stroke to smyten soft or sore
This turmento*ur* ne durst do no more.

(77)

But half dede wiþ her necke ycoruen þere
He laft hure lye and on his waye he went
þe Cristen folk which̄ aboute hure were
Wiþ shetes home ful faire hure hente
Thre daies lyued she in þis torment
And neuere cesed hem þe feiþ to teche
Whom she had fostred hem she gan to preche

(78)

And hem she ȝaf her meueables *and* her þinge
And to þe pope Vrban bytoke hem þoo
And saide þus I asked þis of heuene kynge
To han respite. þre daies and no moo
To recomaunde to ȝou er þat I goo
Thise soules loo: *and* þat I myȝt to wirch*e*
Here of myn hous p*er*petuelly a chirch*e*

(79)

SEynt Vrban wiþ his dekenes p*r*iuely
The body fette and buried it by nyȝt
Amonge his oþer seintes honestly
Hure hous þe church*e* of seint Cicile hiȝt
Seint Vrban halawed it as he wel myȝt
In þe which̄ into þis daye in noble wise
Men done to crist and to his seinte servise.

¶ þus endeþ þe tale of þe seconnde nonne

[*on leaf* 198] ¶ The prologe.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe chanouns ȝeman

Whan ended was þe lif of seinte Cecile
Er we fully had ryden five myle
An boghton vnder þe ble vs gan a take
A man þat cloþed was in cloþes blake
And vnder þat he had a white surplis.
His hakeney þat was so pomel gris [leaf 198, back]
So swete þat it wondere was to see
It semed he had prikked myles þre
þe hors eke þat his ȝeman rode vpon
So swette þat vnneþes myȝt he gon
Aboute þe peitreH stood þe foom ful hie
He was of fome al flekked as a pie
A male twifolde on his cropour laye
It semed þat he caried litel araye
Al liȝt for somer roode þis worþi man /
And in myn herte wondre I bygan
What þat he was til I vnderstode
How þat his cloke was sewed to his hode
ffor whicH whan I longe had avised me
I demed hym some chanon forto be
His hatte honge at his bak doune by a laas
ffor he had ryden more þan trotte or paas
He had aye prikked like as he were wood
A clote leef he had vnder his hode
ffor swote and forto kepe his hede from hete
But it was ioye forto seen hym swete
His forhede dropped as a Stillatorie
Were ful of planteyne and of Pyritorie

And whan þat' he came he gan to crie
God saue quod he þis Ioly companye
ffast' haue I prikked quod he for 3oure sake
Because þat' I wolde 3ou ouertake
To ryden in þis mery company
His 3eman eke was ful of curtesie
And sirres now in þe morowe tide
Out' of 3oure ostelrie I segħ 3ou ride
And warned here my lorde and my souereyn
Which þat' to ride wiþ 3ou is ful fayn
ffor his disporte he loueþ daliaunce
ffrende for þi warnyng' god 3eue þe good chaunce
Seide oure hoste certes it' wolde seme
Thi lorde were wise and so I may wel deme [leaf 199]
He is ful iocounde also dar I lay
Can he ou3t' telle a mery tale or twaye
Wiþ which he glade may þis company
Who sir' my lord' ! 3e 3e wiþ-outen lie
He can of merth and eke of Iolite
And þat' ynou3e also sir' tresteth me
And 3e hym knewe as wel as do I
3e wolde wonder howe wel and thriftelie
He couþe worche and þat' in sondry wise
He haþ take on hym mony sondry aprise
Which were ful hard' for eny þat' is here
To bringe aboute but' þei of hym it' lere
As homely as he ritte amonge 3ou
If 3e hym knewe it' wolde be 3our prowe
3e nolde nat' forgon his aqueyntaunce
ffor mochel good I dar laie in balaunce
Alħ þat' I haue in myn possession
He is a man of hi3e discrecion
I warne 3owe wel he is a passing' man
Wel koþe our' hoost' I prey þe telle me þan
Is he Clerk' or noon telle what' he is
Nay he is gretter þan a clerk' ywis

Seide þe ȝeman and in woordes fewe
Oost of his craft somwhat I wil ȝou shewe
I saie my lorde can suc̄h a sotilte
But all his craft ȝe may not wit at me
And Somwhat helpe I ȝit to his worchinge
þat al þis grounde whic̄h þat we ben on ridynge
Til þat we come to caunterberye tou̇n
He coude al clere turne vp so doun
And paue it al of siluer *and* of golde
And whan þis ȝeman had þus ytolde
Vnto oure hooste he seide Benedicite
This þing is wonder m*er*velous to me
Sipens þat þi lord is of so hiȝe prudence
Bycause of which̄ men shulde hym reuerence [leaf 199, back]
þat of his worship rekkeþ he so lite
His ouersclope nys nat worþ a myte
As in effecte to him as mot I goo/
It is al baudy and to-tore also
Whi is þi lord so scluttish̄ I þe prey
And is of power better cloþes to beye
If þat his dede accord*e* wiþ þi speche
Telle me þat I þe biseche
Whi quod þis ȝeman wherto aske ȝe me
God helpe me so for he shal neu*er*e the
But I wil nat avowe þat I say
And þerfore kepe it secre I ȝou pray
He is to wise in feiþ as I bileue
That þat is ouerdone it nyl not preue
And riȝt as clerkes seyn it is a vice
wherfore in þat I holde hy*m* lewde *and* nyce
ffor whan a man haþ ouer grete a witte
fful often it happeþ to misusen it
So doþ my lord and þat me greueþ sore
God it amende I can seye now no more
Therof no fors good ȝeman q*uod* o*ur* hoost
Syþ of þe konyng of þi lord þou wost

Telle howe he doþ I prey þe hertely
Siþþes þat' he is so crafty and so sely
Where dwellen ȝe if it' to telle be
In þe Subarbes of a toune q*uod* he
Lurkynge in hernes *and* in lanes blynde
Where þise Robbers and þeues be kynde
Holden her p'rve feerful residence
As þei þat' dar not' shewen her presence
So fare we if I shal say þe soþe
ȝit' quod [our] oste lat' me talke to the
Why art' þou discolowred on þi face
Peter' q*uod* he god ȝeue it' harde g*race*
I am so vsed þe fire to blowe
That' it' haþ chaunged my colour' as I trowe [leaf 200]
I ne am not' wonte in no myro*ur* to prie
But' swynke sore and lerne to multiplie
We Blundren euere *and* powren in þe fire
And for alle þat' we faillen of our desire
ffor euere we lacken our conclusioñ
To moche folk' we bene but' illusioñ
And borowe-golde be it' a pound' or twoo
Or ten or twelue or mony so*mm*es moo
And make hem wenen at the leest' wey
þat' of a pounde we cowde make twey
ȝit' is it' fals and ay we han good hope
It' forto doon and aftere it' we grope
But' þat' science is so fer vs biforne
We mowe not' alle þouȝe we had it' sworne
It' ouertake it' slitt' away so fast'
It wil vs make beggers at' þe last'
þe whiles þis ȝeman was þus in his talkyng'
This Chanoñ drowe hy*m* nere *and* herd' al þinge
Which þat' þis ȝem[an] spake for suspecioñ
¶ Of mennys speche euere had þis chanoñ
ffor Caton sciþ he þat' gilty is
Demeþ al þinge be spoke of hym ywis

654 657 661 665 669 673 677 681 685 689

By cause of þat' he gan so nyȝe to drawe
His ȝeman þat' herd alle his sawe
And þus he seide vnto his ȝeman þoo
Holde now þi pees and speke no wordes moo
ffor if þowe doo þu shalt' it' dere aby
þow sclaunderest' me here in þis company
And eke diskeuerest' þat' þou shuldest' hide
ȝe quod oure hoost' telle on what' so betide
Of al þis þretynge recħ þe not' a myte
In feiþ quod he no moore I doo but' lite
And whan þis chanon segħ it' wold' nat be
But' þat' his ȝeman wolde telle his priuete
He fledde a-way for verrey sorowe *and* shame
A quod the ȝeman here shal arise a game [leaf 200, back]
AH þat' I can anoñ wil I telle
Siþens he is goon þe foule fende hym quelle
ffor neuere here after' wil I wiþ hym mete
ffor peny ne for pounde I ȝou bihete
He þat' me brouȝt' furst' vnto þat' game
Er þat' he dye sorowe haue he *and* shame
ffor it' it is ernest' to me by my feiþe
þat' fele I wele what' so eny man seiþe
& ȝit' for all my smerte *and* al my greif
ffor al my sorowe. labour *and* meschieff
I kouþe neuere leue it' in no wise
Now wold god my wittes myȝt' suffise
To tellen al þat' longen to þat' art'
But' naþeles ȝit' wil I telle ȝowe part'
Siþens þat' my lorde is goon I wil not' spare
Sucħ þinge as I knowe I wil declare

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe chanons ȝeman

[on leaf 200, back] & here bygynneþ þe tale

[*THE PREAMBLE.*]

¶ The tale ./

Wiţ̄ þis chanon [I] dwelt̄ haue seuene ȝere
And of his science am I neuer þe nere
Al þat̄ I had I haue ylost̄ þerby
And god woo so han many moo þan I
Ther I was wonte to be riȝt̄ fressh̄ *and* gay
Of cloþinge and of good aray
Now may I were an hose vpon myne heued
And where my coloure was boþ fresh̄ *and* rede
Now is it̄ wan and of a lewde hwe
Who so it̄ vseþ sore shal he rwe
And of my swynk ȝit̄ blered is myn ye
Loo suche auauntage it̄ is to multiplie
That̄ sclydinge science haþ me made so bale
That̄ I haue no good wher so euer y fare
And ȝit̄ am I endetted so þerby
Of golde þat̄ I haue borowed trewly
That̄ whil I lyve I shal it̄ quite neuere
Lat̄ euery man be ware by me for euere
What̄ maner̄ man þat̄ caste þ hym þerto [leaf 201]
If he contynue I holde his thrift̄ ydo
ffor so helpe me god þerby shal he nat̄ wynne
But̄ empty his purs and make his wyttes þinne
And whan he thorgh̄ his madnesse *and* folye
Haþ lost̄ his owne good þorgh̄ Iopardye
þan he exciteþ oþer men þerto
To lese her good as hym self haþ doo /
ffor to shrewes Ioies it̄ is an ese
To haue her felawes in peyn and dissese

Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk'
Of þat' no charge I wil speke of our' werk'
Whan we bene þere as we shul exercise
Oure eluessñ craft' we seme wonder' wise
Our teermes bene so clergial *and* so queynte
I blowe þe fyre til þat' myn hert' feynte
What' shuld' I telle eche proporcioñ
Of þingges whicñ þat we worchen vpon
As on .v. or .vj. vnces may wel be
Of Siluere or of som oþer quantite
And bisy me to telle ȝou þe names
Of Orpyment'. brent' bonys yren . squames
Thatt into powdere grounden bene ful smaꝁ
And in an erthen pot' howe þat' pitte is alle
And salt' ypitte In . and also paupere
Byfore þise powdres þat' I speke of here
And wel ykeuered wiþ a laumpe of glas
And of moche oþer þinge what' þer was
And of the potte and glas englutynge
That' of þe eyre myȝt' passe no þinge
And of þe Esy fire and smert' also
Whicñ þat' was made *and* of the care *and* woo
That' we had in our maters sublymynge
And in amalgamynge and calcenynge
Of quik siluere ycleped Mercurie crude
ffor aꝁ oure scleightes we can not' conclude
Our orpyment' and sublymed Mercurye [leaf 201, back]
Our grounde litarge eke on þe porphirie
Of eche of þise of vnces a certeyñ
Nat' helpeþ vs oure labour is in veyñ
Ne eke oure spirites assencioun
Ne eke our maters þat' lyen al fixe a-doun
Mowen in oure worchinge no þing' vs availe
ffor lost' is al our laboure *and* travaile
And aꝁ þe cost' on twenty deuel weye
Is lost' also whiche we vpon it' laye

Ther is also mony a nother þing
That' is to our craft' appertenynge
þouȝe I by ordere hem here ne reherce kan
Because þat' I am a lewde man
ȝit' wil I telle hem as þei come to mynde
þouȝe I ne can sette hem in her kynde
As boole armonyak. verdegrees. boras
And sondry vessels made of erþe *and* glas
Our' vrynales and our' dyscensories
Violles Creseletys. and sublimatories
Concurbites *and* alembykes eke
And oþer suche dere ynowe a leke
Nat' nedeþ it' to rehersen hem alle
Waters rubyfyinge *and* bolles galle.
Arsenyke sal armonyak *and* brymstoñ
And herbes coude I telle eke mony oñ
As Egrymoyn Valerian *and* lunarie
And oþer suchꝫ ȝif þat' me list' tarie
Our' lampes brennyng' boþ ny3t' *and* day
To bringe about' our craft' ȝif þat' we may
Our furnayes eke of Calcynacioñ
And of waters albificacioñ
Vnslekked lyme. Chalk *and* gleire of an ey
Powders divers. Ashes. dunge. pisse. *and* cley
Sered pockettes. sal peter'. *and* vitriole
And dyuers fires made of wode *and* Cole
Salt tartre. alcalie *and* salt' preparate [leaf 202]
And combust' maters and coagulate
Cley made wiþ horses or mannys here *and* oyle
Of Tartere. alem glas berme wort' & argoille
Rysalgere and oþere mateers enbykinge
And eke of oure mateers encorporinge
And of [our] Siluer' citrinacioñ
Qur sementynge and fermentacioñ
Our ingotes testes *and* mony moo /
I wil ȝou telle as was me tauȝt' also

þe four spirites and þe bodies seuene
By ordre oft' as I herd my lord hem neuene
The first' spirit' quyk-siluere cleped is
þe Secounde orpyment' þe *thrid*[1] ywis [[1] MS iij]
Sal Armonyak and þe ferþ bremstone
þe bodies seuene eke lo hem here anoñ
Sol gold is *and* luna siluer we threpe
Mars. yren *Mercurie* quyksiluer' we clepe
Sat*ur*nus lede. and Iubiter is tynne
And Venus Coper' be my fadere kynne
This cursed craft' who so wil ex*er*cise
He shal no good han þat' may hy*m* suffise
ffor al þe good he spendeþ *þer*-aboute
He lese shal þerof haue I no doute
Who so þat' list to outen his foly
Lat' hym come forþ *and* lerne forto multiplie
And euery man þat' haþ ouȝt' *in* his cofre
Lat' [him] apere and wexe a philosofre
Ascaunce þat' craft' is so liȝt' to lere
Nay nay god wote al be he monke or frere
Preest' chanon or eny o*þer* wiȝt'
þouȝe he sitte at' his boke boþ day *and* nyȝt'
In lernyng' of þis elvissh̄ nyce lore
Al is in vēyn and p*ar*de moch*e* more
Is to lere a lewde man þis sotille
ffy speke nat' *þer*of for it' wil nat' be
Al coude he lettrure or coude he non*e* [leaf 202, back]
As in effecte he shal fynde it' all one
ffor boþ twoo be my saluacioñ
Concluden in multiplicacioñ
Iliche wel whan þei han al ydoo
This is to seyn þei failen boþ two
But' ȝit' for þat' I to moche rehersaille
Of waters corosif and of lymaille
And of bodyes mollificacioñ
And also of her induracioñ

Oilles ablucion & metal fusible
To tellen alle wold passen eny bible
þat owhere is wher as for þe best
Of all þise names now wil I me rest.
ffor as I trawe I haue 3ou tolde ynowe
To reisen a feende loke he neuere so rowe
A nay lat be þi philosophres stone
Elixir cleped we sechen fast echone
ffor had we hym þan were we siker ynou3e
But vnto god of heuene I make avowe
ffor al our craft whan we han al ydoo
And al oure sclei3te he wil not come vs too/
He haþ vs made spende moche good
ffor sorowe of which almost we wexen wode
But þat good hope crepeþ in our hert
Supposinge euere þou3e we sore smert
To be releued by hym afterward
Supposinge þat hope is sharpe *and* hard
I warne 3ou wele it is to seken euere
þat future temps haþ made men disseuere
In trest þerof from alle þat euere þei hadde
3it of þat art þei koude not wexen sadde
ffor vnto hem it is a bitterswete
So semeþ it for ne had þei but a shete
Which þei my3t wrap hem in a ny3t
And a bak to walken In by day li3t
They wold hem Sellen and spenden on þis craft [leaf 203]
They can not stynt til no þinge be laft
And euermore wher þat euere þei gone
Men may hem knowe by þe smelle of bremstone
ffor al þe worlde þei stynken as a gote
Her sauour is so rammyssh and so hote
þat þou3 a man fro hem a myle be
þe Sauour wil enfecte hym tresteþ me
Lo Thus by smellyng and be threde bare aray
3if þat men lust þise folk þei know may

And if a man wil aske hym prively
Whi þei bene cloþed so vnthriftily
Riȝt' anone þei wil rownen in his eere
And seie if þey aspied were
Men wolde hem slee by cause of her science
Loo þus þise folk' bitraien Innocence
Passe ouer þis I go my tale vnto
Er þan þe potte be on þe fuyre ydoo
Of metalles wiþ a certeyn quantite
My lorde hem tempreþ and no man but he
Now he is goon I dar saie boldely
ffor as men seyne he can do craftely
Algate I wote wel he haþ suclı a name
And ȝit' ful ofte he renneþ in þe blame
And wete ȝe how ful ofte it' happeth soo /
The potte to-brekeþ and fare-wel al is goo
Thise metalles bene of so grete violence
Our walles may not' maken hem resistence
But' ȝif þei [weren] wiouȝt' of lyme *and* stone
þei percen so þat' þorȝe þe walł þei gone
And somme of hym synken into þe grounde
Thus haue we lost' by tymes mony a pound'
And somme are scatered al the flore aboute
Somme lepen into þe Roof with-out' doute
Thouȝe þat' þe feende nat' in our siȝt' hym shewe
¶ I trowe þat' he wiþ vs be þat' schrewe
In helle wher þat' he is lord' *and* sire [leaf 203, back]
Ne is þer no more woo angere ne Ire
Whan þat' oure pot' is broke as I haue saide
Euery man chitte and halt' hym euel paide
Som saide it' was longe on þe fire makinge
Som saide nay it' was on þe blowynge
Than was I aferde for þat was myn̄ office
Strawe quod þe þred ȝe bene lewde *and* nyce
It' was nat' tempred as it' auȝt be
Nay quod þe ferþe stynt' *and* harken me

Be cause oure fire was not made of beche
þat is þe cause noon oþere so theche.
I can not telle wheron it is alonge
But wel I woot gret strif is vs amonge
What quod my lorde þer nys no more to done
Of þise periles I wil be ware eft sone
I am riȝt syker þat þe pot was craised
Be as be may be ȝe no þinge amased
As vsage is lat swepe þe flore as swithe
Pluk vp ȝoure hert and be ȝe glad *and* blithe
þe Mullok on an hepe yswoped was
And on þe floore cast a canvas.
And al this Mullok in a sif yth[r]owe
And ysifted and yplukked many a throwe
Parde quod oon somwhat of oure metall
ȝit is þer here þouȝe we haue nat all
And þouȝe þis þinge myshapped haþ as nowe
Anoþer tyme It may be wel ynowe
Vs most putt our good in auenture
A Marchaunte parde may not ay endure
Tresteþ me wel in his prosperite
Somtyme his good is drowned in þe see
And somtyme commeth it sauf vnto þe londe
Pees quod my lord þe next tyme I wil fonde
To brynge our craft al in anoþer plite
And but I doo sirs lat me haue þe wite
Ther was defaute in somwhat wel I wote [leaf 204]
And oþer seide þe fire was ouere hote
But be it hote or cold I dar saie þis
þat we concluden euer more amys
We faillen of that which þat we wold haue
And in oure madnesse euermore we raue
And whan we bene to-gidere euerechoñ
Euery man semeþ as wise as Salomoñ
But al þinge which þat seineþ[1] as þe golde [1 *or* semeþ]
Is nat golde as I haue herd it tolde

Ne euery appel þat' is faire at' ye
Ne is not' god what' so men clappe or crie
Riȝt' so loo fareþ it' amonges vs /
He[1] þat' semeþ þe wisest' by Ihesus [[1] or Ho]
Is moost' foole whan it' commeþ to þe preef
And he þat' semeþ trewest' is a þeef
That' shul ȝe knowe er þat' I from ȝou wende
Be þat' I of my tale haue made an ende

[*No break in the MS.*]

[*THE TALE.*]

Ther is a chanon of Religioun ¶ 2ª pars.
Amonges vs wolde enfecte al a toun 973
Thouȝe it' as grete were as was Nyniue
Rome. Alisaundre. Troie & oþer þre
his scleightes and his infinite falsnesse
Ther couþe no man writen as I gesse 977
Thouȝe þat' he myȝt' lyuen a thousand ȝere
In al þis world' of falsenesse nys his pere
ffor in his teermes he wil hym so wynde
And speke his wordes in so scleȝe a kynde 981
Whan he comune shal wiþ eny wiȝt'
That' he wil make hym dote anoñ riȝt'
But' it' þe feende be as hym seluen is
fful mony a man haþ he bygyled er þis 985
And wil if þat' he may lif a while
And ȝit' men riden and goon ful mony a myle
Hym forto seke and haue of a-queyntaunce
Nat' knowing' of his fals gouernaunce 989
And ȝif ȝe lust' to ȝeue me audience [leaf 204, back]
I wil it' tellen in wiþ ȝoure presence
But' worshipful Chanoñ Religious
Ne demeþ not' I sclaundere ȝour hous 993
Al-þouȝe my tale of a chanon be
Of euery ordere som shrewe is parde
And god forbede þat' all a companye
Shulde rewe a syngule mannys foly 997
To sclaundere ȝou is nat' myn entent'
But' to correcten þat' mys I-ment'

This tale was not' only told' for 3ou
But' eke for oþer moo 3e wote wel howe
That' amonges cristes apostels twelue
þer ne was no traitour but' Iudas selue
Than whi shulde þe remenaunte all' haue blame
þat' giltlees were be 3ou saye I þe same'
Sauf only þis if 3e wil harken me
If eny Iudas in 3oure couent' be
Remeueth hym be tyme I 3ou rede
If shame or losse may causen eny drede
And beþ no þinge displesed I 3ou pray
But' in this caas herkneþ what' I say
In london was a preest' an annuelere
That' þerInne dwelled had mony a 3ere
Which̄ was so plesaunt' *and* so seruisable
Vnto þe wiff where he was att table
That' she wolde suffre hym no þing' forto paye
ffor borde ne. cloþinge went' he neuere so gay
And spending' siluere had he riȝt' ynowe
Therof no force I wil procede as nowe
And telle forþ my tale of þe chanon̄
þat' brouȝt' þis preest' to confusion̄
This fals chanon̄ came vpon a day
Vnto þe preestes chambere þer he lay
Bysechinge hym to lene hym a certeyn̄
Of golde and he wolde quyte hym ageyn̄
Leneþ me a marke quod he but' daies þre [leaf 205]
And at' my day I wil it' quite þe
And it' so be þow fynde me fals
An oþer day honge me by þe hals
This prest' him toke a marke and þat' as swithe
And þis chanon hym þonked ofte sithe
And toke his leue and went' forþ his way
And at' þe þred day brouȝt' his monay
And to þis preest' he toke his gold ageyn̄
Therof þis preest' was glad and fayn̄

Certes quod he no þinge anoyeþ me
To lene a man a noble or twoo or þree
Or what' þinge were in my possessiõ
Whan he so trewe is of condiciõ
That' in no wise he breke wil his day
To suchꝭ a man I can neuere say nay
What' quod þis chanon shuld I be vntrewe
¶ Nay þat' were þinge fallen al of nwe
Treuþe is a þing' þat' I wil euer kepe
Vnto þe day in whichꝭ þat' I shal crepe
Into my graue and ellis god forbede
Bileueþ þis as siker as is 3oure crede
God thonke I and in good tyme be it' seide
That' þer was neuere man 3it' euel apaide
ffor gold ne siluere þat' he to me lent'
Ne neuere falshede to myne hert' I ment'
And sire quod he nowe in my privete
Siþens 3e so goodly haue bene to me
And kyþed to me so grete gentilnesse
Somwhat' to quiten wiþ 3our' kyndenesse
I wil 3ou shewe and 3if 3ou lust to lere
I shal it' shewe to 3ou anon riȝt here
How I can worchen in philosophie
Takeþ good hede 3e shullen see wel at ye
That' I wil done a maistrie er I goo
3e quod þe preest' 3e sir' and wil 3e so
Marie þerof I prei 3ou hertely [leaf 205, back]
At' 3oure comaundement' sir' trewly
Quod þe chanon and ellis god forbede
Loo howe þis þeef koupe his seruise bede
fful soþ it' is þatꝭ suchꝭ propferd seruise
Stynkeþ as witnessen þise olde wise
And þat' ful sone I wil it' verefie
In þis chanõn is rote of al trecherye
That' euere more delite haþ and gladnesse
Suchꝭ feendly þouȝtes in his hert empresse

How cristes puple he may to meschief bringe /
God kepe vs from his fals dissimulynge
What wist þis preest wiþ whom þat he delte
Ne of his harme commyng no þing he felte
O sely preest o. sely Innocent
Wiþ couetise anon þou shalt be blent
O gracelees ful blynde is þi conseite
No þing art þow war of þe deceite
Which þat þis fox shapen haþ to þe
His wily wrenches þou maist not flee
Wherfore to goo to þe conclusioñ
þat referreþ to þe confusioñ
Vnhappy man anon I wil me hye
To tellen þine vnwitte and þi foly
And eke þe falsenesse of þat oþer wrecche
As ferforþ as my conyng wil strecche
þis chanoñ was my lorde ȝe wolde wene
Sir Oost in feiþ and by þe Heuene quene
It was anoþer chanon and nat he
þat can an hundred fold more sotilte
he haþ bytraied folk mony tyme
Of his falsnesse it dulleþ me to ryme
Euere whan I speke of his falshede
ffor shame of him my chekes wexen rede
Algates þei bygonne forto glowe
ffor redenesse haue I now riȝt wel I knowe
In my visage for fumes dyuers [leaf 206]
Of metalles which ȝe han herde me rehers
Consumed and waasted han my Redenesse /
Take nowe hede of þi[s] chanons cursednesse
Sir quod he to þe preest lat ȝour man gone
ffor quyk siluere þat we it had anōn
And lat hym brynge vnces twoo or þre
And whan he commeþ as fast shul ȝe se
A wonder þinge whiche ȝe see neuere er þis
Sir quod þe preest it shal be done ywis

He bad his seruaunte fecchen him þis þinge
And he al redy was at' his biddynge
And went' hym forþ and come anoñ ageyñ
wiþ þis quyk siluere shortely forto seyñ
And toke þise vnces þre to þe chanoun
And he it' laide faire and wel adoun
And bad þe seruaunte colys forto bryngé
þat' he anoon myȝt' goo to his worchis
The Colis riȝt' anoon weren sette
And þis Chanon toke out' a croslette
Of his bosom and shewed it' þe preest'
This instrument' quod he which ñ þat' þou seest'
Take in þine hond and pitt þiself þerInne
Of þis quyk siluer an vnce an here bygynne
In þe name of' crist' to wex a philosophre
þer bene ful fewe whiche þat' I wold profre
To shewen hem þus mochel of my science
ffor ȝe shullen see here by experience
That' þis quik siluer' I wil mortefie
Riȝt' in ȝoure siȝt' anoon wiþ-out' lye
And made it' as good siluer' *and* as fyne
As þer is eny in ȝoure purs er myne
Or ellis where and make it' malliable
And ellis holde me fals *and* vnable
Amonges folke euer to apere
I haue a powder' here þat' cost' me dere
Shal make al good for it' is cause of alł
My konynge which þat' I ȝou shewe shalł
Voideþ ȝour man and lat' hym be þer out'
And schitte þe door þe whiles we bene aboute
Our privete þat' no man vs espie
Whiles we worchen in þis philosophie
Al as he bad fulfilled was in dede
This ilke seruaunte anoon riȝt' out' ȝede
And his maistere shitte þe dore anone
And to her laboure spedely þei gone

[leaf 206, back]

This preest' at' þis cursed chanons biddynge
Vppon þe fure anon sette þis þinge
And blewe þe fire and busied hym ful fast'
And this chanon into þis croslette cast'
A powdere I note wherof it' was
I-made eiþer of chalk' or ellis of glasse
Or somwhat' ellis was not' worþ a flie
To blynde wiþ þis preest' *and* bad hym hie
Thise coles forto cowchen al aboue
The crosselette: for in token þat' I þe loue
Quod þis Chanon þine hondes twoo
Shal worche al þing' whicħ as shal be doo
Graunt' mercy quod þe preest' *and* was ful glad
And cowched coles as þe chanoñ bad
And þe whilys he bisy was þis feendly wreche
This fals chanon þe foule fende hym fecche
Out' of his bosom toke a bechen cole
In whicħ ful sotilly was made an hole
And þer-in pitte was of siluere lymaille
An vnce and stopped was wiþ-out' faille
This hoole wiþ wex to kepe þe lymaille Inne
And vnderstondeþ þat' þis fals gynne
was not' made þere but' it' was made bifore
And oþer þingges I shal telle more
Here-afterward' whicħ þat' he wiþ hym brouȝt'
Ere he come þere to begile hym he þouȝt'
And so did er þei went' atwynne
Til he had turned hym couþe he nat' blynne
It' dulleþ me whan þat' I of hym speke
On his falshede fayn wolde I be a-wreke
If I wist' howe but' he is here *and* there
He is so variaunt' he bitte no where
But' takeþ hede nowe sirs for goddys loue
He toke his cole of whiche I speke aboue
And in his honde he bare it' prively
And whiles þe preest' couched bisyly

1145 1149 1153 1157 1161 1165 1169 [leaf 207] 1173 1177

þe coles as I tolde 3ou er þis
þis Chanon seide frende 3e done a-mys
þis is not' couched as it' ou3t be
But' sone I shal amende it' quod he
Now lat' me medle þerwiþ but' a while
ffor of 3ou haue I pite be seint' gyle
3e bene ri3t' hoote I se wel howe 3e swete
Haue here a cloþe and wipe away þe wete
And whilys þe preest' his wy haas
þis chanon toke his cole I shrewe his faas
And laide it' vpon abouen þe mydward
Of þe Crosselette and blewe wel afterward
Til þat' þe Coles gonne fast' þrenne
Nowe 3eue vs drynk' quod þe chanoñ þen·
As swith. al shal be wel I vndertake
Sitte we a-doun and lat' vs mery make
And whan þe chanons bechen cole
Was brentte al þe lymaille out' of þe hole
Into þe Crosselétte anoñ fille adoun
And so it' most' nedes by resoun
Siþ it' so euen aboue couched was
But' þerof wist' no þing' þe preste allas
He demed al þe coles liche good
ffor of þe scleiȝt' no þinge he vnderstood
And whan this Alkamystere segñ his tyme
Riseþ vp sire preest' *and* stondeth by me.
And for I wote wele Ingot' haue 3e none
Goþ walkeþ forþ and bringeþ a chalk stone
ffor I wil make it' of þe same shap
That' is an Ingot' 3if I may haue happe
And bringe wiþ 3ou a bolle or a panne
fful of water and 3e shul see þan
Howe þat' oure bysynesse shal happe *and* preue
And 3it' for 3e shul haue no mysbileue
Ne wronge conceite of me in 3oure absence
I wil not' bene out' of 3oure presence

1181 1185 1189 1193 1197 1201 1205 1209 1213

eaf 207, back

But' go wiþ 3ou and come wiþ 3ou agayn̄
þe Chambere door shortely to sayn
They opned and shette *and* went' forþ her way
And forþ wiþ hem þei karied þe kay
And co*m*me ageyn wiþ-out' eny delay
What' shuld I tary al þe longe day
He toke þe chalk' and shope it' in þe wise
Of an Ingot' as I shal 3ou deuyse
I saie he toke out' of his owne scleue
A teyne of siluere euel mote he cheue
Whiche þat' was but' an vnce of wei3t'
And takeþ hede nowe of þis cursed sclei3t'
He shope his Ingot' in length̄ *and* in brede
Of þe teyne wiþ-out' eny drede
So scly3ly þat' þe preest' it' not' aspied
And in his scleue agayn he gan it' hide
And from þe fire toke vp his matere
And into þe Ingot' it' pitt *with* mery chere
And into þe water vessel he it' cast'
whan þat' him list' *and* bad þe preest' as fast'
Loke what' þer is pitte in þine honde *and* grope
Thow shalt' fynde þere siluer as I hope
What' deuel of helle shuld it' ellis be
Shavynge of siluere. siluere is p*ar*de
He pitte In his honde and toke vp a teyne
Of Syluere fyne and glad in euery veyne
was þis preest' whan he segh̄ þat' it' was so [leaf 208]
Goddys blessing' and his moders also
And alle halowes haue 3e sir' chanōn
Saide þe preest' and I her malyson̄
But' and 3e vouche-sauf to teche me
This noble craft' and þis sotilte
I wil be 3*our* in all þat' euere I may
Quod þe Chanoñ 3it' wil I make assay
The secounde tyme þat' 3e mow take hede
And bene expert' of þis and in 3*our* nede

Anoþer day [assaie] in myne absence
This disciplyne and þis crafty science
¶ Lat' take anoþer vnce quod he þoo
Of quik siluer' wiþ-out' wordes moo /
And doo þerwiþ as ȝe han done er þis
With þat' oþer which þat' now siluer' is
This preest' hym busieþ in al þat' he can
To done as þis chanon þis cursed man
Comaundeþ hym and fast' bloweþ þe fuyre
fforto come to þe effecte of his desire
And þis chanon riȝt' in þe mene while
Al redy was þis preest' eft' to begile
And for a countenaunce in his hand bare
An holowe stik' take hede and be ware
In þe eende of which an vnce *and* no more
Of syluere lymaille put' was al bifore
was in his cole and stopped *with* wex wel
fforto kepe in his lymaille euery deel
And whilis þis preest' was in his bysynesse
This Chanon wiþ his stik gan hym dresse
To hym anon and' his powdere cast' Inne
As he did eer þe deuel out' of his skynne
Hym turne I prey to god for his falshede
ffor he was euer fals in oþe and dede
And wiþ his stik' aboue þe crosselette
That' was ordeyned wiþ þat' fals gette.
He stireþ þe coles til relente gan [leaf 206, back]
The wex a-gayn þe fuyr as euery man
But' it' a fool be wote wele & mote nede
And alle þat' in þe hole was. out' ȝede
And into þe crosselette hastely it' felle
The preest' supposed no þing' but' wel
But' bisied him fast' and was wonder' fayn
Supposing' nouȝt' but' trouþe soþ to sayn
He was so glad I can not' expresse
In no manere his myrth and his gladnesse

And to þe Chanōn he profred eft' sone
Body and good ȝe quod þe chanon sone
þouȝe poor I be crafty þow shalt' me fynde
I warne þe ȝit' is þer more behinde
Is þere eny copoure here In saide he
ȝe sir' quod þe preest I trowe þer be
Ellis goo by some and þat' as swithe
Now sir' go forþ þi way *and* hithe.
And went' his way and *with* þis coper he cam
And þis chanon it in his honde it' nam.
And of' þat' copere weyed out' but' an vnce
Al to symple is my tunge to pronunce
His monstre as his witte þe doublenesse
Of þis Chanon roote of cursednesse
He semed frendely to hem þat' knewe hym nouȝt'
Bot' he was feendly boþ in werk and þouȝt'
It' werieþ me to telle of his falsenesse
And nathelees ȝit' wil I it' expresse
To þat' entent' men may be ware þerby
And for noon opere cause trewly
He putt þis vnce of copere into þe crosselette
And on the fuyre as swithe he haþ it' sette
And kest' In powdere and made þ^e^ preest' to blowe
And in his worching' for to stoupe lowe
As he did erst' and al nys but' a Iape
Riȝt' as him list' þe preest' he made his Ape
And afterward into the Ingot' he it' cast' [leaf 209]
And in þe panne pitt' it' atte last'
Of watere and in he pitte his owne honde
And in his scleue as ȝe to-fornhonde
Herd me telle he had a siluer' toyne
He sclily toke it' out' þis cursed heyne
Vnwetinge þis preest' of his fals craft'
And in þe pannes botme he haþ it' laft'.
And in þe watere rombleþ too and froo /
And wondere prively toke it' vp also

þe Copere teyne nat' knowing' þis preest'
And hid it' and hente hym by þe breest'
And to hym spake and þus seide in his game ./
Stowpeþ a-downe by god ȝe be to blame.
Helpeþ me nowe as I did ȝowe whilere
Putte Inne ȝoure honde and lokeþ what' is þere
This preest' toke vp þis siluere teyne anone
And þan seide þe chanoñ lat' vs gone
Wiþ þise þre teynes whiche þat' we han wrouȝt'
To somme goldsmyth̃ and wit' ȝif it' be ouȝt'
ffor be my feiþe I nolde for myne hode
But' if þei were siluere fyne *and* goode
And þat' as swiþe proued shal it' be
Vnto þe goldsmythe wiþ þise teynes þre
went' þei and pitte þise teynes *in* assay
To fyre and hamere myȝt' no man say nay
But' þei were as hem' ouȝte to be
This sotted preest' who was glad but' he
Was neuere bridde gladdere aȝeinst' þe day
Ne nyȝtyngale in þe sesoñ of may.
was neuere noon þat' list' better to synge
Ne lady lustyer in Carolynge.
And forto speke of loue and wommanhede
Ne knyght' in armes done an hardy dede
To stonden in grace of his lady dere.
Than had þis preest' þis craft' to lere.
And to þe chanon þus he speke *and* saide
ffor þe loue of god þat' for vs deyde ./
And as I may deserue it' vnto yowe [leaf 209, back]
What' shal þis Receyte cost' telleþ nowe
By oure lady quod þis chanon it' is dere /
I warne ȝou. for saaf I and a frere
In Engelonde þer can no man it' make
No fors quod he nowe sir' for goddys sake /
What' shal I paye telle me I þe pray
Iwis quod [he] it' is ful dere I saie /

Sir' at' oon woord' if þat' þe lest' it' haue
3e shul paye xl. li. so god me saue. 1
And ne were þe frendship þat' 3e did er þis
To me / 3e shuld paie more ywis ./
This preest' þe some of fourty pounde anoñ
Of nobles fette and toke hem euerechoñ 1
To þis Chanoñ for þis ilk receite
AH his worchinge *was strawe and deceite*
Sir' preest' he saide *I kepe forto haue no loos*
Of my craft' for *I* wold it' were kept' *cloos* 136
And as 3e loue me kepeþ it' secre
ffor and men knewe al my *sotilte*
By god men wolde haue so *grete envie*
To me by cause of my *philosophie* *1373*
I Shuld be dede þer nys noon oþer waye
God it' for-bede quod þe preest' what' say 3e.
3it' had I leuere spenden al þe good'
Whicñ þat' I haue and ellys wexe I wood / 1377
Than þat' 3e shuld fallen in suchñ meschief'
ffor 3oure good wille sir' haue 3e riȝt' good preef'
Quod þe Chanon. and sir'. oft' *graunt* mercy.
He went' his way þat' neuere þe preest' hy*m* sie 1381
Aftere þat' day and whan þis preest' shulde
Maken assay at' suche tyme as he wolde
Of þis Receite. fare wel it' wold nat' be
Loo þus byiaped and begiled was he 1385
Thus makeþ he his Introduccion
To bringe folk to her destruction
Considereþ surs howe *þat'* in eche astaat'
Bytwix men and gold þer is debaat' 1389
So fer forþ þat' vnneþes þer is oon [leaf 210]
This multiplyinge so blendeþ mony oñ
That' in good faiþ I trowe þat' it' be
The cause grettest' of þe grete scarcete 1393
Thise philosophres speken so mystely
In þis craft' þat' men can not' come *þer*by

ffor eny witte þat' men han now adayes.
þei may wel Chitere and iangle as doū þise Iaies 1397
And in her teemes sette lust' *and* peyne
But' to her p*ur*poos shul þei neuere atteyne
A man may li3tly lerne 3if he haue ou3te
To multiplie and bringe his good to nou3te 1401
Loo suche a lucre is in þis lusty game.
A m*a*nnes merþe wil it' turne al to grame
And empty also grete and heuy purses.
And make folk to purchasen curses 1405
Of hem þat' han þerto her good ylent'
O. fy for shame þei þat' han be brent'
Allas can þei nat' flee þe fires hete
3e þat' it' losen I rede 3e it' lete 1409
lest' 3e lesen aH. for bette þan neue*r*e is late
Neuere to þrive were tq longe a date
Thou3e 3e prolle ay 3e shul it' neuer' fynde
3e bene as bolde as is bayard' þe blynde 1413
That' blundreþ forþ and perile casteþ noū
He was bolde to renne a3einst a stoū
As forto goo be sides in þe way
¶ Soo faren 3e þat' multiplien I say 1417
3if þat' oure eyen can nat' seen ari3t'
Lokeþ þat' 3oure mynde lak' nat' his si3t'
ffor þou3e 3e loke neuere so brode and stare
3e shul nat' wynne a myte in þat' chaffare 1421
But' waasten aH þat' 3e may rappe *and* renne
Wiþdrawe þe fuyre lest' it' so fast' brenne
Medleth no more wiþ þat' art' I mene.
ffor 3if 3e doon 3oure þrift' is goon fūl clene 1425
And ri3t' as swiþe I wil 3ou telle here
What' þat' þe philosophres seyn in þis matere
Loo þus seiþ alnold' of þe newe toune [leaf 210, back]
As his rosarie makeþ mencio*u*n 1429
He seiþ ri3t' þus wiþ-oute eny lie
Ther may no man mercury mortefie

But ȝif it be wiþ his broþers knowlecchinge
Howe þat he whicħ þat ferst seide þis þinge
Of philosophres fader was hermes
He seiþ how þat þe dragon doutelees /
Ne dyeþ nat but ȝif he be sclayn̄
Wiþ his broþer and þat is forto sayne
By þe dragon mercurye and noon oþer
He ynderstood þat bremstone were his broþer
þat out of sol and luna were ydrawe
And þerfore saide he take hede to my sawe
Lat no man bisie him þis arte forto seche.
But he þat þe entenciōn and speche
Of philosophres vnderstonde can
And if he doo he is a lewde man ·
ffor þis science and þis conyng quod he
Is of þe secree of secrees parde
Also þer was a disciple of plato
þat on a tyme saide his maister too.
As his boke somere wil bere witnesse
And þis was his demaunde en soþfastnesse
Tel me þe name of a prīue stoōn
And plato answered vnto hym anoōn
Take þe stoon þat Titanos men name
Whicħ is þat quod he magnasia is þe same
His disciple seide ȝe sire and is it þus ·
þis is ignotum per ignocius
What is magnasia good sire I pray
It is a watere þat is made I saye
Of elementes foure quod Plato.
Telle me þe roche good sire quod he þoo.
Of þat watere if it be ȝoure wille
Nay nay quod Plato certeyn þat I nyH
The philosophres were sworn echoñ
þat þei shulde diskeuere it to no moñ
Ne in no booke it write in no manere
ffor vnto crist it is so leef and dere.

1433 1437 1441 1445 1449 1453 1457 1461 1465

[leaf 211]

þat' he wil nat' þat' it' diskeuered be
But' where it' likeþ to his deite
Man to enspire and eke forto defende
Whan þat' him likeþ loo þis is þe ende
Than conclude I þus siþens þat' god of heuene
Ne wil not' þat' þe philisophres neuene
How þat' a man shal come vnto þis stone
I rede as for the best' lat' it gone
ffor who so makeþ god his aduersarye
As forto worche eny þinge in contrarie
Vnto his wille certes neuere shal he thryve
þouȝe þat' he multiplie teerme of his lyue
And þer a poynt' for eended is my tale.
God seende euery trewe man boote of his bale /.

¶ Thus endeþ þe chanons ȝeman his tale

And here bigynneþ þe prologe of þe doctour of Phisike
[*on leaf* 211]

Whan þat þis ȝeman his tale ended hadde ¶ **The prolog.**
Of þis fals Chanon which þat was so hadde
Our hoost gan say trewly & in certayn
þis preest was begiled soþly forto sayn
He wenynge forto be a philosophre
Til he lift rigt nouȝt in his Cophre
And soþly þis preest had a liþer Iape
This cursed chanon put in his hode an ape
But al þis passe I ouer as nowe
Sir doctour of phisik I prey ȝou
Telle vs a tale of some honest matere
It shal be done ȝif þat ȝe wil it here
Saide þis doctour *and* his tale bygan anon
Now good men quod he harkeneþ euerechon

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe doctour of phisik**

GROUP C. FRAGMENT IV.

§ 1. THE DOCTOR'S TALE.

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe tale. [*on leaf* 211]

Ther was as telleþ vs tytus lyneus ¶ **The tale./**
A knyghtꝫ þatꝫ cleped was virgineus
ffulfilled of honoures and worþinesse
And stronge of frendes and of richesse
A douȝterꝫ he had be his wiffꝫ [leaf 211, back]
And neuere had hee moo *in* al his lifꝫ
ffaire was þis maide in excellentꝫ bewte
Abouen euery wiȝtꝫ þatꝫ man may see
ffor nature haþ wiþ souereyn [diligence]
fformed hirꝫ in so grete excellence
As þouȝe she wold say loo I nature.
Thus can I forme and peynte a creature
Whan þat me listꝫ who can me countrefete
Pigmalyon noghtꝫ þouȝe he alway forge *and* bete
Or graue or peyntꝫ for I dar wel sayn
Apollus Zephirus shulde worche in veyn
Te graue. peynte. or forge or bete
If þeiꝫ presumed me to countrefete
ffor he þatꝫ is þe fourmer principal
Haþe made me his vikere general
To forme and peintꝫ eche erþely creature
Riȝtꝫ as me listꝫ for al þinge is my cure.
Vnder þe mone þatꝫ may wayne *and* waxe
And for my werkꝫ · no þinge wil I axe

My lorde and I bene fully atte acorde
I made hir' to þe worship of my lorde
So doo I alle myne oþer creatures
Of what' coloure þei be or what' figures
Thus semeþ me þat' nature wolde say
This maide was of age .xij. 3ere *and* tway
In whiche þat' nature haþ such delite
ffor ri3t' as she can peynt' as lily white
And roody as roose ri3t' wiþ such peynture
She peynted haþ þis noble creature
Er she was born vpon her lymes fre
Were also bri3t' as such coloures my3t' be.
And phebus died had her tresses grete
Like to þe stremes of his boorned hete
And 3if þat' excellent' was her bewte
A thowsand folde more vertuous was she
In hur' ne lackeþ no condicion
þat' is to preise as by discrecion.
As wel in body as goost' chaast' was she [leaf 212]
ffor which she flowred in virginite
Wiþ al humilite and abstinence
Wiþ alle attemperance and pacience
Wiþ mesure eke in beringe of araye.
Discrete she was in answering' alwaye
And she was wis as pallas dar I seyn
Hir' facon eke ful womanly *and* pleyn
Noon counterfeted teermes had shee
¶ To seme wise but' after her degree.
She spak and alle her wordes more *and* lasse
Sownynge in vertue and in gentelnasse
Shamefast' she was in maidens shamfastnesse
Constant' in hert' and euere in bysynesse
To drive hur' out' of her scloggardrie
Bachus had of her mouþe no maistrie
ffor wille and þou3t' done Venus encrece
As men in fire wil casten oile or grece

And of her owne vertue vnconstreyned.
She haþe ful oft' tyme hur' seke feyned.
ffor þat' she wolde flee þe companye
where likly was' to treten of folye
As is at' feestys. Reuels. and daunces
Whiche bene occasioñ of daliaunces
Suche þingges maken children forto be.
To sone ripe and bolde as men may see.
Whicñ is ful perilous and haþ bene 3oore
ffor al to sone may she lerne lore.
Of boldnesse whan she is a wiff
And 3e Maistresses in 3oure olde liff'
þat' lordes dou3ters han in gouernaunce
Ne takeþ of my wordes no displesaunce
Thingges þat' bene sette in gouernyngges
Of lordys dou3ters oonly for two þingges
Oyþer for 3e han kepte 3oure honeste
Oyþere ellis 3e han falle in freelte
And knowen wel ynou3e þe olde daunce
And konne for-sake fully [sucñ] meschaunce.
ffor euermoo þerfor for cristes sake [leaf 212, back]
kepeþ wel þoo þat' 3e vndertake
A theef for venyson þat' hath forlaft'
His likerousnesse and al his þeeues craft'
Can kepe a forest' best' of eny man.
Now kepeþ hem wel for and 3e wil 3e can.
lokeþ wel to no vice þat' 3e assente.
Lest' 3e be dampned for 3oure euel entente.
ffor who so doþ a traitoure is certeyn.
And takeþ [kepe] of þat' þat' I shal seyn.
Of al treson suffreyn pestilence.
Is whan a wi3t' bitraieþ innocence.
3e faders and 3e moders eke also.
þou3e 3e han children be it' on or twoo.
3oure is þe charge of al her suffraunce.
Whiles þei bene vnder gouernaunce

Be ware þat' by ensample of ȝour' lyuynge
Eþere by necligence in chaastisinge
þat' þei ne perisshe for I dar wel saye
ȝif þat' ȝe done ȝe shul ful sore abaye
vndere a sheparde. soft' and negligent'
þe wolf haþ mony a shepe and lomb to-rent'
Suffiseþ oon ensample nowe as here
ffor I mot/ turne aȝein to my matere
¶ This maide of whicħ I telle my tale expresse.
She kept' her self her neded no maistresse.
ffor in her lyuynge maidens myȝt' rede
As in a booke euery good woord and dede
þat' longeþ to a maide vertuous
She was so prudent' and so bounteuous.
ffor whiche [þe fame] out' sprange on euery side.
Both of her bewte and of her bounte wide.
þat þorowe þe londe þei preised hure ecħoñ.
þat loued vertue sauf envie allone.
þat' sorie is of oþer mennys wele
¶ And glad is of his sorowe and vnhele
The doctoure makeþ þis descripcioun
This maide went' on a day into þe toun
Toward' þe temple wiþ her modere dere [leaf 213]
As is of yonge maidens þe manere
Now was þer a Iustice in þe toune
þat' gouernere was of þat' Regioun
And so bifelle þis Iuge his eyen cast'
Vppon þis mayde avisinge hir' ful fast'
As she came forþe by þere þe Iuge stood.
Anon his hert' chaungeþ *and* his mood'.
So was he kauȝt' wiþ þe bewte of þis maide
And to him silf ful priuely he saide
This maide shal be myn for eny man.
Anoñ þe feende into his hert' ran
And tauȝt' him sodeynly by what' sclyȝt'
The maide to his purpoos wynne he myȝt'

ffor certis by no force ne by no mede
Him þou3t' he was not' able forto spede.
ffor he was stronge of freendes *and* eke she
Confeermed was in such souereyn bewte
þat' wel he wist' he my3t her neuere wynne
As forto make here wiþ hur' body synne
ffor whiche wiþ grete deliberacio*u*n
He sent' after a clerk into þe toune.
þe whiche he knewe for subtile or for bold'
This Iuge vnto þis clerk' his tale haþ told'
In secre wise and made him to assure
He shulde telle it' to no creature.
And if he did he shulde lese his hede
whan assented was þis cursed rede
Glad was þe Iuge and made glad chere
And 3aue hy*m* 3iftes precious *and* dere
whan shapen was all þis conspiracie
ffrom poynt' to poynt' how þat' þis lecherie
P*er*fourmed shulde be ful sotelly
And 3e shul here afterward' openly
Home gooþ this clerk' þat' hi3t' Claudius
This fals Iuge þat' hi3t' apius
So was his name for it' is no fable
But' knowen for an historial þing' notable.
The sentence of hit' soþ is out' of dowte [leaf 213, back]
This fals Iuge goþ nowe fast' aboute
To hasten his delit' and þat' he may
And so bifelle sone after on a day.
This fals Iuge as telleþ vs þe story
As he was wo*n*ned in his consistorie
And 3af his doomes vpon sondrie caas
This fals Clerk came forþ a wel good paas.
And saide lord' if þat' it' be 3oure wille
As doþ me ri3t' vpon þis pitous bille
In whiche I pleyn vpon Virginius.
And 3if þat' he wol sayn it' is nat' þus

I wiⁿ proue it and fynde good wittnesse
þatˢ soþe is þatˢ my bille wil expresse
þe Iuge answerde of þis in his absence
I may notˢ ȝeue diffinitif sentence
Latˢ doon hym calle *and* I wiⁿ gladly here
þou shaltˢ haue riȝtˢ and no wronge here
Virginius came to witte þe Iuges wille
And riȝtˢ anoon was rad þis cursed bille
¶ The sentence of hitˢ was as ȝe shul here
To ȝowe my lord sirˢ Apius so dere
Shewe þ ȝour poor *seruaunte* Claudius
How þatˢ a knyȝtˢ called Virginius
Aȝeinstˢ þe lawe aȝeinstˢ al equite
Holdeþ expresse aȝeinstˢ þe wille of me.
My seruauntˢ whicⁿ þatˢ is þral be riȝtˢ
Whicⁿ from myn hous was stolen on a nyȝtˢ
þe whiles she was ful ȝenge I wil it preue
By witnesse lordˢ so þatˢ ȝe ȝou natˢ greue
She is natˢ his douȝtere whatˢ so he saye
wherfore my lord þe Iuge to ȝou I praye
ȝeelde me my thraⁿ if þatˢ itˢ be ȝourˢ wille
loo þis was alle þe sentence of þe bille
Virginius ganˢ vpon þe clerk biholde
¶ Butˢ hastely er he his tale tolde
he wold haue defended itˢ as shuldˢ a knyȝtˢ
And by witnesse of mony a trewe wiȝtˢ
Thatˢ al was fals þatˢ saide his aduersarie [leaf 214]
This cursed Iuge woldˢ no lenger tarye
Ne here oon woordˢ more of Virgyneus
Butˢ ȝaf his Iugementˢ and saide þus.
I deme anoon þis clerk his *seruaunte* haue
Thow shaltˢ no longer in þine hous hirˢ saue
Goo bringe hirˢ forþ and putˢ hur in our warde
This Clerkˢ shal haue his praⁿ þus I awarde
And whan þis worþi knyȝtˢ Virgineus
Thorgⁿ þe assentˢ of þe Iuge Apius

Most' by force his dere dou3tere 3euen
Vnto the Iuge in lecchery to lyuen.
He goop hym home and sette hym *in* his halle
And lete anoon his deer dou3ter' calle. 208
And wip a face dede as asshen colde
Vpon her humble face he can biholde
Wip faders pite stikyng' porgh his herte
Al wold he nat' from his purpoos *conuerte* 212
Doughtere quod' he Virginea be pi name
per bene twoo weies. oiper' dep oiper shame
pat' thow most' suffre allas pat' I was bore
ffor neuer pou deseruedest' wherfore 216
To dyen wip a sweerd or wip a knyf'
O dere dou3ter ender of my lif
Which I haue fostred vp wip such plesaunce
pat' pou ne were out' of my remembraunce 220
O doughtere which pat' art' my last' woo.
And in lif my last' Ioie also
O gemme of chastite *in* pacience
Take pou pi dep for pis is my sentence 224
ffor loue and nat' for hate pou most' be dede
My pitous honde mote smyten of pine hede
Allas pat' euer Apius pe say
Thus hap he falsly Iuged pe to day 228
And tolde hur' al pe caas as 3e bifore
Haue herd it' nedep telle it' no more
Mercy dere fadere quod' pis maide
And wit' pat' word' she bop hure armes laide. 232
Aboute his nek as she was wonned to doo [leaf 214, back]
pe teeres brosten out' of her eyen twoo
A[n]d saide good fadere shal I dye
Is pere no grace is per no remedye 236
No certes dere dou3ter myn quod' he.
Than 3eue me leue fader myn quod' she.
My dep [for] to compleyn a litel space
ffor parde Ieffa 3aue his dou3tere grace 240

fforto compleyn er he her sclouȝe alas.
And god it woot no þing was his *tr*espas
But þan she ranne her fader first to see
To welcome him wiþ grete solempnite
And wiþ þat word she felle a swo*u*n anoñ
And aftere whan her swownyng was agoñ
She riseþ vp and to her fadere saide
Blessed be god þat I shal die a maide
ȝeue me my deeþ er þat I haue a shame
Doþ wiþ ȝoure childe ȝour wille a goddys name
And wiþ þat word she preieþ [him] ful oft
That wiþ his swerde he shuld smyte her soft
And wiþ þat woord in swowne doune she felle
Hur fadere wiþ ful sorowful hert *and* felle
Hure hede of smote and by þe top it hent
And to the Iuge he ȝaue it to present
As he satte in his doome *in* consistorie
And whan þe Iuge it seie as seiþ þe storie
He bad take him and honge hy*m* also fast
But riȝt anoon al þe puple in þrast
To saue þe knyȝt for rewþe *and* for pite
ffor knowen was þe fooles iniquite
The puple anoon had suspecte *in* þis þinge
By manere of þis clerkes chalengynge
þat it was by þassent of Apius.
þei wist wel þat he was lecherus
ffor which vnto þis Apius þei goñ
And casten hy*m* in prison riȝt anōn
Wher as he sclough hy*m* self *and* Claudius
þat Seru*a*unte was vnto þis Apius
Was demed forto honge vpon a tree
But Virginius of his grete pite
Preide for hym þat he was exiled
And ellis certys he had be begiled
The remenant were honged more *and* lesse
þat consented were to þis cursednesse /

[leaf 21]

GROUP C. § 1. DOCTOR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Here may men see howe synne haþ his merite
Be ware for no man woote how god wil smyte
In no degree ne in whicħ manere wise
þe worme of conscience wil arise.
Of wicked lif þoughħ it' so prive be
þat' no man woote of it'. but' god and hee
Where he be lewde man or lered'
He note howe sone he may be afered.
Therfore I rede 3ou this counsel take
ffforsakeþ synne er synne 3ou forsake

‖ The prologe of þe Pardonere.

Our hoost gan swere as he were woode
Harowe quod he by nailles and by blood
This was a cursed þeef a fals Iustise
As shameful deeþ as herte can deuise.
Come to þe Iustise and her aduocas.
Aigates þis sely womman is sclayn alas.
Allas dere abouȝte she bewtee.
Wherfore I say alday þat man may se
That ȝifte of fortune or of nature
Bene cause of deþ of mony a creature
[Hir beaute was hir deth I dar weH sayn. [Harl. 1758, *on leaf 150, back*]
Allas so pitously as sche was slayn.]
As boþ ȝiftes as I speke of nowe
Men han ful oft more harme þan prowe
But trewly myne owne maister dere
This is a pitous tale for to here
But naþelees passe ouer is no fors
I prey to god to saue þi gentile cors
And þine vrynales and þi Iordans
þine ypocras and eke þi Galyans
And euery box ful of þi letwarye
God blesse hem and our lady seint Marye
So mote I the þou art a propre man.
And like a prelate by seynt Runyan.
Saue þat I can not speke wel in terme [leaf 215, back]
But wel I woote þou doost myn hert eerme
That I haue almost kaught a Cardyacle
By corps boones but I haue triacle
Or ellis a drauȝt of moist or corny ale
Or but I here anoon a mery tale

My hert' is lost' for pite of þis maide
þowe belamy Iohñ p*ar*donere he saide
Telle vs some merþe or Iapes riȝt' anōn
he shal be done quod he be seynt' Ṛunyoñ
But' furst' quod he here at' þe next' ale stake
I wil boþ drink' and ete of a cake
But' riȝt' anoñ þise gentiles goñ to crye
Nay lat' hym telle vs of no Rybaudrye.
Telle vs some moral þing' þat' we may lere
Som*m*e witte and þan wil we gladly here
I graunt' Iwis quod he but' I mote þink'
Vpon som honest' þinge whiles þat' I drink' /

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe p*ar*doner.**

And here bygynneþ the tale. [*on leaf* 215, *back*]

Loldingges quod he in churcħ whan I preche ¶ The tale
I peyn me to haue an hautyñ speche
I ryngꝰ itꝰ outꝰ as rounde as goþ a belle
ffor I can al by roote þatꝰ I telle
My teeme is alway oon and euerꝰ was.
Radix omnium malorum estꝰ cupiditas.
ffirstꝰ I pronouns whennys þat I come
And þan my bulles schewe aħ and some /
Our liege lordes seel on my patentꝰ
þatꝰ shewe I furstꝰ my body to warentꝰ
Thatꝰ no man be so bolde preestꝰ ne clerkꝰ
Me to distrowbe of cristes holy werkꝰ
And after þatꝰ telle I forþ my tales
Bulles of popes and of Cardynales.
Of patriarkes and bisshoppes I shewe.
And in latyn I speke a wordys fewe
To sauer wiþ my predicacioñ
And forto stirre men to deuocioñ
Than shewe I forþ my longe cristal stones [leaf 216]
Ycrommed ful of clowtes and of bones.
Relikes þei bene as wene men echoñ
þan haue I in laton a sholdere bone
Whichħ þatꝰ was an holy Iwes shepe
Good men say I take atꝰ my wordes kepe
ȝif þatꝰ þis boon be wasshen in a welle
ȝif kowe or calf. shepe or oxe swelle
þatꝰ eny worme hath ete or stonge
Aboutꝰ þe hertꝰ or ellis þe longe

It' is hool anon and ferþermore
Of pokkes and of scabbe *and* of eue*r*y sore
Shal euery shepe be hool þat' of þis welle
Drynkeþ a drauȝt take hede what' I telle
ȝif þat' þe good man þat' þe beest' oweþ
Wil euery weke er þat' þe Cok hy*m* croweþ
ſſastinge drink' of þis welle a drauȝte.
As þilk' holy Iwe our' eldere tauȝte
His beestees and his stoor shal multiplie
And sirs also it' heleþ Ialowsie
And þouȝe a man be fallen in a Ialous rage
Lat' maken wiþ þis watere his potage
And neuer shal he [more] his wif mystrust'
þouȝe he þe soþ of hure defaute wost'
Al had she taken · preestes tweyn · or þree
Here is a myten eke þat' ȝe may see
He þat' his honde wil putte in þis myteyn
He shal haue multiplyinge of his greyn
Whan he haþ sawen be it' whete or otys
So þat' he bringe me good' pans or ellis grotys.
And men and wo*m*men · oo þing' I warne ȝowe
ȝif eny wiȝt' be in þis churche nowe
þat' haþ doo synne horrible [so] þat' he
Dar not' for shame of it' shryuen be
Or eny wo*m*man be she ȝong' or olde
That' haþ made her husbonde Cukwold'
Suche folk' shal haue no power ne no grace
To offre to my relikes in þis place.
And who so findeþ hym out' of· suc̄ blame [leaf 216, back]
Thei wil come vp and offre in goddis name
And I assoille hym by þe autorite
Suc̄ as my bulle was graunted to me
By þis gaude haue I wo*n*nen euery ȝeere
An .C. Mark siþens I was p*ar*donere.
I stonde like a clerk' in my pulpitte
And schewe lewde puples synne ysette

I preche so as I haue lered by-fore
And telle an hundred Iapes more.
Than peyne I me to streche forþ þe necke
And eest' and west' vppon þe puple I bekke
As doþ a dowue sitting' vppon a beerne
Myne hondes and my tunge goñ ful ȝeerne
þat' it' is ioye to see my bysynesse
Of auarice and suche cursednesse.
Is al my prechinge for to make hem free
To ȝeue her pans and namely vnto me
ffor myn entent' is nat' but' forto wynne
And noþinge for correctioñ of synne
I rekke neuere whan þat' þei bene buried
þouȝe þat' her saules goo o blakburied.
ffor certes mony a predicacioñ
Commeþ ofte tyme of euel entencioñ
Somme of plesaunce of folk' and of flaterye
To bene auaunced by ypocresie
And somme for veynglorie and for hate
ffor whan I dar nat' oþer waies debate
Than wil I stynge hem wiþ my tunge smerte
In prechinge so that' he shal not' sterte
To bene defamed falsely so þat' he
haþ trespased to my breþeren or to me
ffor þouȝe I telle nat' his propre name
Men shal wel knowe þat' it is þe same
By somme signe and oþer circumstaunces
Thus smyte I folk' þat' doñ vs displesaunces.
Thus spitte I out' my venyme vnder hwe
Of holynesse to semen holy and trewe
But' shortely myne entent' I wil devise ./ [leaf 217]
I preche of no þinge but' of Couetise ./
þerfore my teeme is ȝit' and euer was
Radix omnium malorum est cupiditas
Thus can I preche aȝeinst' þe same vice
Whicñ þat' I vse and þat' is Auarice

But þouȝe my self be giltif in þat synne.
ȝit can I make oþer folk to wynne
ffrom auarice and soor hem repent
But þat nys not my principal entent
I preche nat but for coueityse
Of þis matere it ouȝt ynowe suffise
Than telle I hem ensamples mony oon
Of olde stories longe tyme agon
ffor lewde puple louen tales olde
which þingges þei conne report and hold
What trow ȝe þe whiles I may preche
And wynne gold and siluere forto teche
þat I wil lyve in pouert wilfully
Nay nay I þouȝt it neuere trewly.
ffor I wil preche and begge in sondry londys
I nyl do no laboure wiþ my hondes.
Ne make baskettes for to lyve þer-by
Because I wil not lyuen ydelly
I wil noon of þe apostels counterfete
I wil haue money. malt chees *and* whete
Al were it ȝeuen of þe poorest page
Eyþere of þe poorest wydowe in a vilage
Al shulde her children sterue or famyne
And I wil drink þe licourest of þe wyne
And haue a ioly wenche in euery toune
But harkeneþ lordes in conclusioun
ȝoure liking is þat I shal telle a tale
Now haue I dronken. a drauȝt of corny ale
By god I hope I shal tel ȝou a þinge
þat shal of reson be at ȝoure likinge
ffor þouȝe my self be a vicious man
I morale tale ȝit I ȝou telle can.
Whiche Iames went to *preche* forto wynne. [leaf 217, back]
Now holdeþ ȝoure pees my tale I wil bygynne.

In fflanndres whilom was a companye [*on leaf* 217, *back*]
Of yonge folk þat haunted folye
As hasard Riot / stewes . *and* tauernes .
Harpes . Rubibes . lutes and giternes .
Þei dauncen and pleyen at þe dys nyȝt *and* day
and Eten also ouer þat her myȝt may
Thorgh whiche þei do þe deuel sac*r*ifise
Wiþ-in þe deuels temple in sondry wise
By super*f*luite abhominable
Her oþes bene so grete *and* damnable
þat it is grisly forto here hem swere
Our blessed lordys body þei to-tere
Hem þouȝt þe Iwes rent hym nat ynowe
And ilk of hem at oþer synne loowe
And riȝt anoñ co*m*men Inne þan tomblesters
ffetys and smale and ȝong fruters
Syngers wiþ harpes . bawdes *and* waifrers
Suchñ bene verrey þe deuels officers .
To kyndel and blowe þe fyre of leccherye
That is annexed [vn]to glotenye
The holy writt take I to witnesse
þat lecherie is in wyne *and* dronknesse
¶ Lo howe þat dronken Lothñ vnkindely
Lay by his douȝters two vnwittyngly
So dronken he was he nyst what he wrouȝt
Herodes who so haþ þe stories souȝt
[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no spurious lines in this MS.*]

¶ nolite inebriari vino in *quo est* luxu*ria*

whan he of wyne was replete at' his feest'
Rizt' at' his owne table zaf his heest
To sleen þe baptist' Iohñ ful giltelees
Senec' saiþ a good word' doutelees. ¶ Seneca
He seiþ he can no difference fynde
Betwix a man þat' is out' of his mynde
And a man þat' is dronklewe
But' þat' woodenesse is fallen in a shrewe
Perseuereþ lenger þan doþ dronknesse
O gloteny ful of Cursednesse.
O cause furst' of our' confusioñ [leaf 218]
Oryginal of our dampnacioñ
Til crist' had bouzt' vs wiþ his blood agayñ
Lo how dere shortely forto sayne
Abouzt' was þe Cursed vilanye ¶ Ieronymus *contra* Iouinianum *Quamdiu* ieiunauit adam in *paradiso* · fuit. Comedit & ejectus est statim
Corrupte was as þis world' þorgh glotenye
Adam oure fadere *and* his wif also
ffrom *paradis* to labour and to woo
Were driven for þat' wise it' is no drede
ffor whiles þat' adam fasted as I rede
He was in *paradys* and whan þat' hee
Ete of þe fruyte defended on þe tree ·
Anoon he was out' cast' to woo & peyne
O glotenye on þe wel ouzt' vs pleyne
O wist' a man how mony maladyes
ffolloweþ of excesse and of glotonyes
He wolde bene þe more mesurable
Of his diete sitting' at' his table
Allas þe short' þrote þe tender mouþe
Makeþ þat' Est' and West' norþe & souþe
In erthe in eire in watere men to synk'
To geten a gloton deynte mete *and* drink'
Of þis matere o poule wel cast' þou trete
Mete vnto wombe and wombe eke vnto mete
Shal god distroie boþ as Powle seiþ
Allas a foule þinge it' is be my feiþ.

To saie þis worde and foulere is þe dede
Whan men so drinken of þe white *and* rede
þat of his þrote he maketh his priuee
Thorgh̄ þilke cursed Superfluite
þe Apostel wepinge seiþ ful pitously
þer walken mony of which̄ tolde haue I
I saie it nowe weping wiþ pitous vois
þer bene enemyes of cristes croys
Of whiche þe eende is deþ. Wombe is her god
O woombe o baly. o stynking cod.
ffulfilled of donge. and of corrupciōn
At eiþer eende of þe foule is þe sesoñ
Howe grete cost and labour is to fynde [leaf 218, back]
Thise Cokes howe þei stampe streyne *and* grynde
And turnen substañce into accident
To ffulfille alle þe likerous talent
Out of þe hard bones knokke þei
þe mary for þei cast nat away
þat may goo þorgh þe golett sauf *and* soote
Of spicery of leeues berk and roote
Shal bene his sause ymade be delite
To maken hym ȝit a newe appetite
But certes he þat haunteþ suche delices
Is dede whiles þat he lyueþ in þoo vices
A lecherous þinge is wyne *and* dronknesse
It is ful of strivinge and of wrecchednesse
O dronken man disfigured in þi face
ffoule is þi breeþ foule art þou to enbrace
And þorgh̄ þi dronken nose souneþ þe soune
As þouȝe þou seidest ay Sampson Sampsoun
And ȝit god woot sampson dronk neuere no wyne
þow fallest as it were a dronken swyne
þi tunge is lost and alle þine honest Cure
ffor drunknesse is verray sepulture
Of mannys witte and his discrecioñ
In whoom þat drink haþ dominacioñ

He can no counsaile kepe it' is no drede
Nowe kepe 3ou from þe white *and* fro þe rede
Namely from þe white wyne of lepe
þat' is to selle in fisshstrete *and* in chepe
This wyne of spayn crepeþ subtilly
In oþer wynes growinge faste by
Of woche riseth suche fumosite
þat' whan a man haþ dronke a drau3t' or þre
And weneþ þat' he be at' home in chepe
þan is he in spayn ri3t' at' þe toune of lepe
Nou3t' at' the rocheH ne at' burdeux toun
And þan wil þei say . Sampson sampsoun
But' harkeneþ lordingg*es* oo þing' I 3ou pray
þat' alle þe souereyn actes dar I say
Of victories in olde testament' [leaf 219]
þat' þorghe verrey god þat' is omnipotent'
Weren doon in abstinence *and* in preiere
Lokeþ þe bible and þer 3e may it' lere
Lokeþ Attila þe grete conquerour'
Deide in his sclepe wiþ shame *and* dishono*ur*
Bledinge at' his nose in dronknesse
A Captayn shuld live in sobrenesse
And ouer al þise avise 3ow ri3t' weH
What' was comaunded vnto lamueH
Not' Samuel but' lamuel say .I. ¶ Noli vinum dare
Redeþ þe bible and fyndeþ it' expresly
Of wyne 3euynge of hem þat' aren Iustise
No more of þis for it' may suffise
And now þat' I haue spoken of glotenye
Nowe wil I defende 3ou hasardye
¶ Hasard' is verrey modere of lesingges ¶ Poli*eratici* [Jo. Sarisburiensis] li*bro* .i. mendaciorum &*per*iuriarum mat*er* est alea
And of disceite cursed forswerynges
Blaspheme of crist' mansclaughter and waast' also/
Of bataile and of tyme and of ferþermoo
It' is repreef' and contrarie to honoure
fforto be holden a comon hasardoure

And euer þe hier he is of estate
The more he is holden desolate
ȝif þat a prince vse hasardie
In al gouernance and polecye
He is as by comon opinioñ
Holde þe lasse in reputacioñ
¶ Stilboon þat was holde a wise embassatour
Was sent into Corinthñ with grete honour.
ffro Calidoyne to make hem alliañce
And whan he came happed þis chañce
And al þe grettest þat were of þat lond
Pleiyng at þe hasard he hem fond
ffor whichñ as sone as þat myȝt be
He stale hym home aȝein to his cuntre
And saidë þere I wold not lese my name
I wold nat take on me so gret diffame.
fforto allye ȝou to noon hasardours / [leaf 219, back]
Sendeþ oþer wiser embassatours ./
ffor by my trouþe me were leuere dye
þan I shuld. ȝow to hasardours allie
But ȝe þat bene so glorious in honoures.
Shal not allie ȝou wiþ hasardoures.
As by my wille ne as by my trete
This wis philisophre þus seide hee
Loke ecke þat to þe kinge Demetreus
The kyng of partes as þe booke seiþ þus
Sent hym a paire of golden dys in scorne
ffor he had vsed hasardrie þer byforne
ffor whiche he heelde his glorie and his renoun
ffor no value of reputacioun
lordes myght fynde oþer manere playe
Honest ynowe to dryue þe day awaye
Now wil I speke of oþes fals *and* grete
A worde or twoo as oþer bookes entrete.
Grete sweringe is a þing abhominable
And fals sweringe is moche more reprouable

¶ Stilboñ .i. Mo*u*rius.

The highe god forbere sweryng' at' alle ¶ Nolite omnino iurare
Witnesse of mathewe but' *in* speciall
Of swerynge [seiþ] þe holy Ieremye. ¶ Ieremie 4° Iurabis inquit in
Thowe shalt' swere soþe þine oþes *and* not' lie veritate in iudicio & iusticia
And swere in doome and eke in riȝtwisnesse
But' ydel sweringe is a cursednesse
Biholde and see þat' in þe first table.
Of hie goddes heestes honurable
How þat' twoo heestes of hym is þis
Take not' my tale in ydelnes amys
Loo raþer he forbedeþ suc̄h swerynge
Than homicide or eny oþer þinge.
I saie as þus by order it' stondeþ
This knowen þat' heestes vnderstondeþ
How þat' þe Secounde heest of god is þat
And ferþer ouer I wil þe telle al plat'
þat' vengeance shal not' part' from his hous
þat' of his oþes is so outrageous.
By goddys precious hert' and his nailles [leaf 220]
And by his blood þat' is in hailles
Seuen is my chaunce and his .v. *and* thre
By goddys armes ȝif þou falsly plaie me
This daggard shal þorgh̄ þine hert' goo.
This fruite co*m*meþ of þilk bones twoo.
ffor-sweringe Ire falsenesse homyside
Now for þe loue of crist' þat' for vs dyde
Leueþ ȝoure oþes bothe grete and smale
ffor I shal telle ȝou a mervelous tale /
Thise Riotours of which̄ I telle.
Longe erste er prime. ronge eny belle
Were sette in a tauerne for to drynke
And as þei satte þei herd a belle chink'
Byforn a corps was caried to his graue
þat' oon of hem can calle to his knaue /
Goo bette quod he and aske redely
What' coors is þat' þat' passeþ forþ by

And loke þat' þou report' his name weH·
Sire quod þis [knaue] it' nedeþ neuer a deH
It was me tolde eer ȝe came heer two houres
He was p*ar*de an olde felawe of ȝoures
Al sodeynly was he sclayn to-nyȝt'
ffor-dronken as he satte vpon his bench vpriȝt'
Ther come a prive þeef men clepen deþe
þat' in his contray al þe puple scleeþ
And wiþ his speer he smote his hert' atwoo
And went' his way wiþ-oute wordes moo
He haþ a thousand sclayn þis Pestilence
And maistere er ȝe come in his presence
Me þenkeþ þat' it' were necessarie
ffor to be war of such an adu*er*sarie
Beeþ redy forto mete hy*m* euermore
Thus tauȝt' me my dame I saye no more
¶ By seint' marye saide þis tauernere.
þe Childe seiþ sooþ for he haþ sclayn to ȝere
hens ouer a myle wiþ-Inne a grete vilage
Both man and wo*m*man childe *and* page.
I trowe his habitacio*un* be þere [leaf 220, back]
To bene avised grete wisdome it' were
Er þat' he did a man dishonoure
ȝe goddes armes quod þis Riatoure
Is it' suche perile wiþ hy*m* forto mete
I shal hym sechen by stie and by strete
I. make a vowe by goddys digne bones.
Harkeneþ felawes we þre bene al ones.
Lat' eche of vs holde vp his honde to o*þ*er
And eche of vs bycome oþers broþer
And we wil slee þis fals traito*ur* deþe
He shal be slayne he þat' so monye sleeþe
By goddys dignite er it' be nyȝt'
To-gidere han þise þre her hertes pliȝt'.
To lif and to dye ilk' of hem wiþ oþer
As þouȝe he were his owne born broþer

And vp þei sterten and dronken in þis rage.
And forþ þei goon towardes þat vilage
Of whicħ þe tauernere haþ spoke byforne
And mony a grisly ooþe han þei sworne
And cristes blessed body þei to-rentꝫ
þatꝫ deeth shal be dede if we may hym hentꝫ
Whan þei han goon natꝫ fully a myle
Riȝtꝫ as þei woldꝫ haue troden ouer a stile
An olde and a poor man wiþ hem mette
This olde man ful mekely hem grette
And saide þus nowe lordes god ȝou see
þe Prowdestꝫ of þise Riatours thre
Answerde aȝein whatꝫ cherlde wiþ harde grace
Why artꝫ þou al forwrapped sauf þi face
Whi lyuestꝫ þou so longe in so grete age
This olde man gan loke in his visage
And seide þus for I can natꝫ fynde
A man þouȝe I walked into Ynde
Neiþer in Cite ne in noon vilage
þatꝫ wil chaungen his ȝouþe for myñ age
And þerfore mote I haue myn age stille
As longe tyme as it is goddys wille /
Ne detħ allas nyl notꝫ haue my lifꝫ [leaf 221]
Thus walk I like a restlees catif
And on þe grounde whicħ is my moderꝫ gate
I knokke wiþ my staf erly and late
And saie leue moder latꝫ me Inne
Loo howe I vanyssħ flessħ blood *and* skynne
Allas whan shul my bones bene atꝫ reste
Modere withħ ȝou wold I chaunge my chestꝫ
Thatꝫ in my chambere longe tyme haþ be.
ȝe for an heeren cloute to wrappe me
Butꝫ ȝitꝫ to me she wil nat do þat grace.
ffor whiche ful welked is my face
And sirs to ȝou itꝫ is no curtesie
To speken vntil an olde man vilany

But he trespase in word or ellis *in* dede
In holy writte ȝe may ȝoure self wel rede
¶ Aȝeinst an ōolde man hoor vpon his hede ¶ Coram canuto capite consurge.
ȝe shuld arise þerfor I ȝeue ȝou rede 744
Ne doþ vnto and olde man harme as nowe
No more þan ȝe wolde a man did ȝowe
In age if þat ȝe so longe abide
And god be wiþ ȝow wheder ȝe goo or ride 748
I mote goo þidere as I haue to goo
We nay olde cherle by god þou shalt nat soo.
Seyde þise oþer hasardours anone
Thow partest nat so liȝtly be seynt Iohn 752
Thow spak riȝt now of þilk tra*tour* deþe
þat in þis cuntre alle our frendes sleeþe
Haue here my trouþe as þou art his aspie
Telle wher he is or ellis þou shalt dye 756
By god and by þe holy sacrament
ffor soþly þou art [on] of his assent
To scleen vs ȝenge folk þou fals þeef
Nowe sirres if it be to ȝou so leef 760
To fynde deþ turne vp þis croked way
ffor in þat groue I left hy*m* be my fay
Vnder a tree and þere he wil abide
Ne for ȝoure boost he nyl hy*m* no þinge hide 764
See ȝe þat ooke riȝt þere ȝe shul hy*m* fynde [leaf 221, back]
God saue ȝou þat bouȝt aȝein mankynde
And ȝou amende þus saide þis olde man
And euery of þise Riatours ranne 768
Til þei come to þe tree *and* þer þei fonde
ffloreyns of gold fyne. ykoyned rounde
Wel nyghe a seuen busshells as he*m* þouȝt
No lenger than aftere deþ þei souȝt 772
But eche of hem so glad was of þat syȝt
ffor þat þe floreynes so faire be and briȝt
That doune þei sette hem by þe precious hoorde
The worst of hem he spak þe furst word 776

Breperen quod he take hede whatꝰ I say
My witte is grete þoughꝫ I bourde *and* play
This tresour haþ fortune to vs ȝeuen
In myrþe and iolite our lyf to lyuen
And lightly so as itꝰ commeþ so wil we spende
Ey precious goddys hertꝰ who wende
To-day þatꝰ we shulde haue so faire a grace
Butꝰ myȝtꝰ þis gold be caried fro þis place .
Home into myne hous or ellis toꝫ ȝoures
ffor wel I woote þatꝰ alꝫ þis goldꝫ is oures/
Than were we in highꝫ ffelicite.
Butꝰ trewly by day itꝰ may natꝰ be
Men wold say þatꝰ we were þeues stronge
And for oure owne tresourꝰ done vs honge
As wisely and as sclilyly as itꝰ myȝtꝰ
This tresour mostꝰ ycaried be be nyȝtꝰ
Wherfore I rede latꝰ loke amongꝰ vs alle
To drawe and latꝰ see where þe Cut wil falle
he þatꝰ haþ þe curtꝰ wiþ herte blithꝫ
Shal renne to toune and þatꝰ ful swithꝫ
To bringe vs brede and drinkꝰ ful priuely
And two of vs shal kepen sotilly
This tresour wel and if he wil notꝰ tarie
Whan itꝰ is nyȝtꝰ we wil þis tresor carie
By oon assentꝰ where as vs likeþ bestꝰ
Thatꝰ oon of ham broȝtꝰ gras in his festꝰ
And bad hem drawe and loke wher it wolde falle [leaf 222]
And itꝰ felle on the ȝongestꝰ of hem alle
And forþ towardꝫ þe towne he wentꝰ anoon
And also sone as that he was goone
Thatꝰ oon of hem spakꝰ vnto þat opere
Thowe woostꝰ wel þou artꝰ myn owne sworn broþere
Thi prophite wil I telle þe anoñ
Thowe woostꝰ wel þatꝰ ourꝰ felawe is gooñ
And here is goldꝫ and þatꝰ grete plente
þatꝰ shal departed be amonges vs þree

But' naþelees if I can shape it' soo
þat' it' departed were amonges vs twoo·
Had I not' done a frendes *turne* to þe
þat' oþer Answered I not' howe þat' myȝt' be
I wold wel þat' þe gold were oures twoo.
What' shuld' wee doo þat' it' myȝt be soo.
Shal it' be counsaile said þe first' schrewe
And I shal telle [þe] in wordes fewe
What' we shul dõon and bringe it' aboute
I graunt' quod þat' oþer out' of doute
That' by my trouþe I nyl þe nat' bywreien
Now quod the furst' þou woote wel we be tweyen
And twoo of vs shul strenger be þan oõn
loke whan he is sette and þat' anõn
Arise as þouȝe þou woldest' wiþ hy*m* play
And I shal ryuen hy*m* þorgh þe sides twey
Whiles þat' þow strogelest' *with* hy*m* as i*n* game·
And wiþ þi daggere loke þou doo þe same
And þan shal al þis golde dep*ar*ted be
My dere freende bytwixe þe and me
Than may we booþ our lustes fulfille
And play at' þe dice at' our owne wille
And þus accorded bene þise shrewes tway
To scleen þe þred as ȝe han herd me say
¶ This ȝongest' whicĥ þat' went' to þe toune
fful oft' in his hert' rolled vp *and* doune
þe bewte of þise floreyns faire *and* briȝt'
O lord' quod he ȝif it' so were I myȝt'
Haue al þis tresour' to myself alone [leaf 222, back]
Ther nys no man þat' lyueþ vnder trone
Of golde þat' shuld lyve so mery as I
And at' þe last' þe feende oure enemye
Put' in his þouȝt' þat' he shuld' poysen bey
wiþ whicĥ he myȝt' scleen his felawes twey
ffor whi þe feende fonde him in suchĩ liuynge
That' he had leue hy*m* to sorowe bringe

ffor þis was vtterly his entent'
To scleen hem boþe and neuere to repent'
And forþ he goþ no lenger wold' he tarye
Into þe towne vnto apotecarye
And preide hym þat' he hym wolde selle
Somme poysen þat' he myȝt' his rattes kelle
And eke þer was a polcat' in his hawe
þat' as he seide his capons had Isclawe
And seide he wolk wreke hym ȝif he myȝt'
On vermyn þat' destroyen hem by nyȝt'
The appoticarie answerd' þou shalt' haue
A þinge þat' as god my saule saue
In al þis worlde þer nys no creature
þat' ete or drink' of þis confecture
Nouȝt' but' þe mountance of a corn of whete
þat' he ne shal his lif anoon forlete
ȝe sterue he shal and þat' in lasse while
þan þow wilt' goon a pace nat' but' a myle
This poysen þat' is so hard' and violent'
This cursed man haþ in his honde it' hent'
This poysen in a boxe and sipens he ranne
Into þe nexte strete vnto a man
And borowed hym large botelles þre
And to his felawes aȝein repaireþ he
The iij. he kepte clene for his drinke
ffor alle þe nyȝt' he shope hym forto swynk'
In cariyng' of þat' gold' out' of þat' place
And whan þis riotour wiþ sory grace
Had filled wiþ him his grete botels þre
To his felawes aȝein repaireþ he./
What' nedeþ it' to sermon þerof more [leaf 223]
ffor riȝt' as þei had cast' his deeþ byfore
Riȝt' so þei han hym sclayn and þat anoñ
And whan þat' þis was doon þan speke þat' oñ
Now lat' vs sitte and drink' and make vs mery
And afterward' we wil his body bery

And after þat hit happed hem *per*cas
To taken a botell wher-in the poyson was
And drank and 3aue his felawe drink also
þorghe whiche anoon þei steruen bothe
But certes I suppose þat Auicen
Wroote neuer in no canon ne *in* no fen
Moo wondere sorowes of empoysenynge
Thus had þise wrecches two her endinge
Thus eended be þise homycydes twoo
And eke þis false enpoysoner alsoo
O. cursed synne ful of al cursednesse
O. traterous homycides .o. Wickednesse
O. glotenye luxurye and hasardrye
Thow blasphemo*ur* of c*r*ist wiþ vileny
And oþes grete of vsage and of p*r*ide
Allas mankinde howe may it betide
That to þi creato*ur* which þat þe wrou3t
And wiþ his precious blood þe bou3t
Thowe art so fals and so vnkynde allas
Now good men god for3eue 3ou 3o*ur* trespas
And kepe 3ou from þe synne of auarice
Myne holy p*ar*doñ may 3ou all warisshe
So that 3e offer nobles or sterlyngges
Oiþer ellis Siluere. spoones. broches. or ryngges
Boweþ 3oure hede vnder þis bulle
Commeþ vp 3e Wyues offreþ 3our wille
3oure name I entre here in my rolle anoñ
In to þe blisse of heuene shul 3e al goon
I 3ou assoille be my highe powere
3e þat wollen offre as clene and eke as cleer*e*
As 3e were born and loo sirs þus I preche
And Ih*es*u crist þat is our saules leche.
So gr*a*unte 3ou his p*ar*don to receyue ./ [leaf 223, back]
ffor þat is best I wil 3ou not deceyue
¶ But sirs oon word forgate I in my tale
I haue relikes and p*ar*don in my male

As faire as eny man in engelond
Whiche were ȝeue me by þe popes hond
ȝif eny of ȝow wol of deuocion
Offre and han myn absolucioñ
Commeþ forþ anon and kneleþ here adoun
Þat ȝe may haue part of my pardoun
Or ellis takeþ pardon as ȝe wende
Al-newe and fressh at euery tounes ende
So þat ȝe offre alway newe *and* newe
Nobles and pans which þat bene good and trewe
It is an honure to euery þat bene here
Þat ȝe may haue a suffisaunt pardonere
To assoile ȝou in contree as ȝe ride
ffor auentures which þat may be-tide
ffor parauenture þer may falle oon or twoo
Doune of her hors and breke her nek atwoo
Looke swiche a swerte it is to ȝou alle
That I am in ȝoure felawship yfalle
Þat may assoile ȝou boþ more *and* lasse
Whan þat þe soule shal fro þe body passe
I rede þat hour [hooste] shal bygynne
ffor he is most enuolupte of synne
Come forþ sire hoost and offre first anon
And þou shalt kysse þe relikes euerechon
ȝe for a groot vnbokel anon þi purs
Nay nay quod he þan haue I cristes curs
lat be quod he it shal nat be so theche
Þow woldest make me kissen þine olde breche
And swere it were þe relike of a seynt
Þouȝe it were wiþ þi foundement depeynt
But by þe crosse which seint Elyne fonde
I wold I had þi culyons in myne honde
In stede of relikes of seint-wary
Lat kitte hem of *and* I wil helpe hem cary
They shulde be schryned in an hogges toord [leaf 224]
This Pardonere answered nat a woord

So wroþ he was he wolde no word say·
Nowe quod our oostˈ I nyl no lenger play·
Wiþ þe ne wiþ noon oþer angry man
Butˈ riȝtˈ anoon þe worþi knyȝt bygan
Whañ þatˈ he seegh̄ þatˈ alle þe puple louȝe
No more of þis for itˈ is riȝtˈ ynoghe
Sirˈ P*ar*donere be mery *and* glad of chere
And ȝee sirˈ Hoostˈ þatˈ bene to me so dere
I prei ȝou þatˈ ȝe kisse þe P*ar*donere
And p*ar*donere I prei ȝou drawe ȝe nere
And as we did latˈ vs lauȝe and play
And anōn þei kissed and riden forþ her way

¶ **Thus endeþ þe p*ar*doners tale.**

And here bygynneþ

The prologe of Thoppas ¶ The prologe

[on leaf 224]

WHan saide was þis tale euery man
As sober was þat' wonder was to see
Til þat' our oost' Iape byganne
And þan at' erst' he loked vpon me .i. chaucers 1884
And saide þus what' man art þou quod he
Thow lokest' as þow woldest' fynde an hare
ffor euer vpon þe grounde I se þe stare 1887

¶ Approche nere and loke meryly
Now war 3ou sirs and lat' þis man han plas
He in þe waast' is shape as wel as I
This were a popet' in armes to embrace 1891
ffor eny wo*m*man smal and faire of faice
He semeþ Elnyssh̄ be his cunten*ā*nee
ffor vnto no wi3t' doþ he daliaunce 1894

Say nowe somewhat siþens o*þe*r folk han saide
Telle vs a tale of merth̄ and þat' anoñ
Oost' quod I ne be nat' euel paide.
ffor oþer tale certes can I noon. 1898
But' of a ryme I lered longe agoñ
3e þat' is good quod he shul we it here
Som deynte þing' me semeþ by his chere. 1901

[*No break in the MS, and no spaces between the stanzas above and after.*]

¶ Here bygynneþ þe tale of chaucere by Sire Thopace.

¶ Capitulum xix^m ¶ Sire Thopace.

[*Fitte I.*]

LEstneth̄ lordes in good entent' [leaf 224, back]
And I wil̄ telle verrement'
Of myrth[1] and of solace [[1] *in a later hand*] 1904
Of a kny3t' was faire and gent'
In bataile and in tornament'
His name was sir thopace. 1907

I-born he was in fer cuntree
In fflaunders al by3onde þe see
Att' Poperinge in þe place 1910
His fader was a man ful free
And lorde he was of þat' cuntre
As it' was goddes grace 1913

Sir' Thopas was a doughty swayn̄
White was his face as payndemayn̄
His lippes rede as Roos. 1916
His rudde is like scarlett' in grayn̄
And I 3ow telle in good certayn̄
He had a semely nose 1919

His heer his beerd was lik saffron̄
þat' to his girdel kau3t' adoune
His shoon of Cordewayne/ 1922
Of brugges were his hosen broun
His Roobe was of Ciclatoun
That' cost' mony a rayn̄ 1925

He couþe hunte at' wylde dere·
And Ride on hawkyng' for þe Ryuer'
Wiþ grey goshauke on honde
Therto he was a good archere
To wrastling' was þer noon his peer
Ther eny ram shulde stonde

fful mony a maide briȝt' *in* boure
þei morn for him P*ar*amoure
Whan þei were bette to sclepe.
But' he was chaast' *and* no lecchoure
And swete as is þe bremble floure
That' bereþ þe reede heppe

And so byfelle vppon a day
ffor soþþe as I ȝowe telle may
Sire Thopaas wold out' ride [leaf 225]
He worþ vp on his stede gray
And in his honde a launce gay
A longe swerde be his side

He prikkeþ þorowe a faire forest'
Ther-in is mony a wilde beest'
ȝa boþ bukke and hare
And as he prikkeþ norþ and east'
I telle ȝowe hym had almest'
By-tidde a sory care

There springen herbes grete *and* smale
þe lykorice and þe Setuale
And mony a clowe gyloffre
And notemuges to put' in ale
Whebere it' be moyst' or stale
Or forto lay in Coffre

þe birdes syngen it' is no nay
þe sp*ar*hauke and þe popeniay
þat' Ioie it' was to here
The þrostel cok' made eke his lay
The woode douve vpon þe spray
She songe ful loude *and* clere/

Sire Thopas felle in loue longynge
And whan he hark' þe þrostel synge.
He prikkes as he were woode
His faire stede in his prikkinge
So swette þat' men myȝt' hy*m* wringe
His sides were al blood'

Sire Thopas eke so wery was
ffor prikkinge on þe soft' gras
So feers was his corage
That' doune he laide hy*m* in þat' plas
To maken his stede som solas
ffor he was so Sauage

O seint' Marie Benedicite
What' aileþ þis loue at' mee
To bynde me so sore
Me dremed al þis nyȝt' p*ar*de
An Elfe quene shal my lem*m*an be [leaf 225, back]
And sclepe vndere my gore

And elf quene wil I loue ywis
ffor in þis world' no wo*m*man is
Worþi to be my make
in to*u*n
Al oþer wo*m*men I forsake
And to an elfe quene I me take
By dale *and* eke by doune

Into his sadel he came anone
And prikkeþ ouere stile *and* stone
An helf quene forto aspie
Til he so longe haþ riden and gooñ
That' he fonde in a privee wooñ
þe Cu*n*try of fary.
¶ so wild'
ffor in þat' cuntre nas *þer* noon
[. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
Neiþer wif ne child

Til him þer come a Ioly geaunt'
His name was clepede Sir' Olyfaunte
A perilous man of dede
He seide childe by tirmagaunt'
But' ȝif þou prik' out' of myn haunt
Anoon I sclee þi stede.
¶ wiþ mace
Here is þe quene of fairie
Wiþ harpe wiþ pipe and Simphony
Dwelling' in þis place

The Childe saide so mot' I þee
To morowe wil I meten þee
Whan I haue myn Armure
And ȝit' I hope *þer* ma faye
þat' þou shalt' wiþ þis launcelay
Abien it' ful sore
¶ Thorgh þ' mawe
Shal I perce ȝif I may
Er it' be fully prime of day
ffor here þow shalt' be sclawe

Sire Thopas drogh a-bak ful fast
This Geaunt at him stones cast
Out of a felle staf sclynge
But faire eskapeþ child thopa
And al it was þorgh goddes grace [leaf 226]
And þorgh his faire beringe

3it listneþ lordes to my tale
Murier þan þe ny3tingale
ffor now I wil 3ou rowne
Howe Sire Thopas wiþ sides smale
Prickinge ouer doune *and* dale
Is come a3ein to toune

His mery men commaunded he
To make hym boþ game and glee
ffor nedes most he fi3t
Wiþ oon geaunt wiþ hedes þre
ffor paramoure and Iolite
Of oon þat shoon ful bri3t

Do come he seide myn menstralles
And geestours for to telle vs tales
Anon in myn armynge
Of Romance þat bene reales
Of popes and of cardynales
And eke of loue likynge

þei fatte hym first þe swete wyne
[. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
And licorice *and* eke comyne
Wiþ sugre þat is cree

He did next' his white leer
Of clop of lake fyne *and* clere
A brech̄e and eke a sherte
And next' his sherte an aketon̄
And ouer þat' an haberion̄
for peercyng' of an herte

And ouer þat' a fyne hawberk
Was al ywrou3t' of Iwes werk'
fful stronge it' was of plate
And ouer þat' his cote armo*ur*
As white as is þe lily flour'
In which̄ he wil debate

His sheeld was of gold so rede
A þer-in was a bores hede
A charbocle by his side
And þere he swore on ale *and* brede [leaf 226, back]
Howe þat' þe geaunt' shal be dede
Betide what' bytide

His Iaumbeuxe were of [1]quirboile [[1] ? *con*iurboile]
His sweerde scheep of yuory
His helme of laton bri3t'
His sadel was of Rowel bone
His bridel as þe son*n*e shone
Or as þe moon li3t'

His spere was of fyne Cipres
That' bodep werre & no þing' pees
The hede ful sharpe ygrounde
His stede was al dapple grey
It' gop an aumble by þe wey
fful softely and rounde

¶ In londe
Loo lordys myne here is a fitte
If ȝe wil eny more of it
To telle it wil I fonde

[*Fitte* II.]

Now holde ȝoure mouth for charite
Boþ knyȝt and lady fre
And harkneþ to my spelle
Of BateH and of Chivalrie
And of ladies loue drurye
Anoon I wil ȝou telle

Men speken of romances of price
Of horn childe and of ypotice
Of Befes and of sire gie
Of Sy le boyx and Pleyndamour
But sire Thopace he bereþ þe flour
Of royal chyualrie

His good stede he bystrode
And forþ vppon his way glode
As sparke out of þe brond
Vpon his creest he bere a tour
And þer-Inne stiked a lilye flour
God shilde his corps fro shonde

And for he was a knyȝt auntrous
He nolde sclepen in non hous /
But ligge in his hode [leaf 227]
His briȝt helme was his wongere
And by hym baite his deistrere
Of oerbes fyne and good.

Hy*m* self drank watere of þe welle
As did þe kny3t' sire percyvelle
So worþely vnder wede
[. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] 2108

NO more of þis for goddys dygnite
Quod our hoost' for þou makest' me
So wery of þi verrey lewdenesse
That' also wisly god my soule blesse
Myn eeres aken of þi drasty speche
Now such̄ a ryme þe deuel I byteche
¶ This may wel be cleped ryme dogrel q*uod* he
Whi so quod he whi wilt' þou lette me.
More of my tale þan an oþer man
Siþ þat' it' is þe best' ryme þat' I can
By god quod he for pleynly at' a worde
Thi drasty rymyng' nys nat' worþ a torde
Thow dost' not' ellis but' spendest' tyme
Sire atte oon worde þou shalt' no lenger ryme
Lat' see wher þou canst tellen ouȝt' in geeste
Or ellis in prose somewhat' at' þe leest'
In whiche þer be som*m*e merth̄ or doct*r*ine
Gladly quod I by goddys swete pyne
I wil ȝow telle a litel þinge in prose
þat' auȝt' like ȝou as I suppose
Or ellis certes ȝe bene to daungerous
It' is a moral tale vertuous
Al be it' tolde somtyme i*n* sondry wise
Of sondry folk' as I shal ȝou devise
As þus ȝe woote þat' euery eu*a*ungelist'
That' tellen vs þe peyn of Ih*es*u c*rist*'
Ne seiþ al þing as his felawe dooþ
But' naþeles her sentence is all sooþ.
And al accorden as in her sentence
Al be þer in her tellyng' difference

ffor somme of hem seyn more and somme lesse [leaf 227, back]
Whan þei his pitous passioun expresse
I mene of mark' mathewe luke *and* Ioñn
But' doutelees her sentence is al oñ·
Therfore lordynggs al I ȝou biseche
ȝif þat' ȝe þenk' I vary as *in* my specℏ
As þus þouȝe þat' I telle somwhat' more
Of prouerbes þat' ȝe han herd byfore
Comprehended in þis litell' tretys here
To enforsen wiþ þe effecte of my matere
And þouȝe I not' þe same wordes say
As ȝe han herde ȝit to ȝou all I pray
Blameþ me nat' for in my sentence
Shul ȝe nowhere fynde difference
ffro þe sentence of þis tretys lite
Aftere þe whicℏ þis mery tale I write
And þerfor harkeneþ what' I shal say
And lat' me telle al my tale I pray

¶ **Here endeþ þe tale of Sir Thopas**

[*No break in the MS.*]

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

[*There are no line-numbers or breaks between the paragraphs in the MS. Tyrwhitt's breaks are kept here to prevent slight differences in the Six Texts throwing out many lines. Some of the omissions in the MS are supplied from the print of the French original in* Le Ménagier de Paris, ed. 1847, i. 186, *as that proves the omissions to be such.*]

[*Petworth MS, on leaf* 227, *back.*]

And here bygnneþ þe tale of Melebius & prudence.

[2157] A ȝong' man called Melebius myȝty and riche bygate vpon his wiff' þat' called was Prudence a doughter' which þat' called was Sophie.

[2158] Vpon a day byfelle þat' he for his disporte is went' into þe feldes. him to play: [2159] his wif and his doughtere he haþ bylaft' in-with his hous. of which þe doores weren fast' shette. [2160] Ther of his olde fooen had espied. and satten ladders to þe walles of his hous. and by þe wyndowes bene entred. [2161] and bete his wiff and wounded his douȝter' wiþ .v. mortal woundes in .v. sondry places. [2162] This is to sayn in her feete. in her hondes. in her eeres. in her nose. and in her mouþe. and laften her' for dede. and wenten her way

[2163] Whan Melebius retourned was into his hous and segh al þis meschief. He like a mad man reending' his cloþes gan to wepe and crie.

[2164] ¶ Prudence his wiff as ferforþ as she durst'. bysouȝt' hym of his weping' for to stynt'. [2165] but' not' forþi. he gan wepe *and* crye euere lenger þe more.

[2166] This noble wif prudence remembred her' vpon þe sentence of Ovide in his booke þat' cleped is þ^e^ remedy of loue. 'De remedio Amoris. Where as he seiþ. [2167] He is a foole þat' distroubeþ þe modere to weepe in þe deeþ of her childe. til she haue wepte her fulle. as for a certeyn tyme. [2168] And þan shal man / doon his dyligence wiþ amyable chere hir' to recomforte *and* prei hyr' of

her wepinge forto stynt'. [2169] ffor which reson þis noble wiff Prudence suffred her husbonde forto wepe and crie as for a certeyn space. [2170] ¶ And whan she segh her tyme she saide to him in þis wise ¶ Allas my lord quod she whi maken ȝe ȝour' self forto [*semblee fol?*, [2171] *Il n'appartient pas à sage homme de*] maken such a sorowe. [2172] ȝoure dou3tere with þe grace of god shal warissh and scape. [2173] And al were is so? þat' she ri3t' nowe were dede. ȝe ne au3t' not' as for her deth ȝour self destroie. [2174] ¶ Senec' seiþ / þe wise man shal not' take to gret' discomfort' for þee deeþ of his children. [2175] but' certes he shuld suffre it' in pacience / as wel as he abideþ þe deeþ of his owne *propre persone*.

[2176] ¶ This Melebius answerd' anon and sayde. What' man quod he shulde of his weping' stent'. þat' haþ so *grete* a cause as I haue. [2177] Ihesu our lord him self wepte for þe deeþ of lazarus his frende ¶ Qualiter Ihes*us christus* fleuit *propter* mortem Lazari. [2178] ¶ Prudence answerde. Certes wel I woot' attempre wepinge is no þinge defended to him þat' soroweful is. amonges folk in sorowe. but' it' is rather *graunted hym* to wepe. [2179] The Appostel paul vnto þe Romayns. Apo*stolus* a Romanos writeþ. Man shal reioyse wiþ hem þat' maken Ioie. and wepe *with* suche folk as wepen: [2180] But' þou3e attempre wepinge be *graunted*. certes outrage wepinge is defended. [2181] ¶ Mesure of wepinge shulde be considered aftere þe loor þat' techeþ vs senec' [2182] ¶ Whan þat þi frende is dede seiþ he. lat' not' þine eyen to moist' bene of teeres. *com*mynge to þine eyen. lat' hem nat falle. [2183] And whan þowe hast' forgoon þi freende. Do diligence to geten anoþer. and þis is more wisdome þan forto wepe for þi frende which þat' þow hast' lorne. for þer-in nys no boote. [2184] And þer-fore ȝif ȝe gou*erne* ȝou by sapience. putte away sorowe fro*m* ȝoure hertes. [2185] Remembreþ þat' Ihes*us* Sirak seiþ;

A man þat' is Ioious and glad in hert' it' conserueþ hym florsshyng' in his age But' soly sorowful hert' makeþ his bonys drie. [2186] He seiþ eke þus. þat' sorowe in hert' scleeþ ful mony a man. [2187] Salomon seiþ: þat' riȝt' as mothes in þe shepes fleese annoyen to þe cloþes. and þe smale wormes to þe tree. Riȝt' so annoieþ sorowe to þ^e^ her^te^ [2188] [1]Wherfore vs auȝt' as wel in þe deeþ of' oure children as in þe losse of our goodes temporeles haue pacience.

[2189] Remembreþ ȝowe vpon pacient' Iob. Whan he had lost' his childere and his temporell substaunce and in his body endured mony a greuous tribulacioñ ȝit' saide he þus. [2190] Our lorde haþ [ȝeue it me / our lorde haþ] byraft' it me Riȝt' so as our lord' wolde riȝt' so is it' done. yblessed be þe name of our' lord' [2191] ¶ To þise forseide þingges answered Melebius vnto his wif Prudence All þise wordes quod he bene trewe. and þerto profitable., But' trewly myn hert' is troubled soo. wiþ þis sorowe, so grisly þat I note what' to doon. [2192] Lat' calle quod prudence þi trewe frendes alle. and þine lynage whicñ þat' bene wise. telleþ ȝour caas and herkeneþ what' þei say in counsailinge And ȝou gouerne aftere her sentence. [2193] Salomon seiþ wirk al þi þing' by counsail and þou shalt' neuere repent'

[2194] ¶ Than by þe counsaile of [his wif Prudence] [*Mellibée appella moult de*] folk'. [2195] as Sirurgyens. Phisiciens. olde folk' and ȝonge. and som of his olde enemyes reconsiled as by her countenaunce to his loue and into his grace. [2196] And þerwiþal þer commen somme of his neiȝboures þat didden him reuerence. more for drede þan for loue as it' happeþ oft' [2197] ¶ Ther commen also ful mony subtile flaterers and wise aduocates lered in þe lawe.

[2198] And whan þise folk' to-gydere were assembled. this Melebius in sorowful wise shewed hem his caas.

[2199] And by þe manere of his speche it' semed þat' in his hert' he bere a cruel yre. redy to do vengeaunce vpon his foon. And sodeynly þan desired þat' þe werre shuld bygynne [2200] But' naþelees 3it' axed he her counsaile vpon þis matere./ [2201] ¶ A Sirurgien by licence and assent' of suc̄h as were wise vp aroos and vnto melebius saide as 3e shul here

[2202] ¶ Sir quod he as to vs Syrurgience appenteþ þat' we doo to euery wight' þe best' þat' we can · wher as we bene wiþholden. and to our pacience þat' we do no damage. [2203] Wherfore it' happeþ mony tyme and oft' þat' whan þat' twey men had euerich̄ wounded oþere oon Sirurgien heleþ hem boþe. [2204] Wherfore vnto our art' it' is not' appertenent' to norsshe werre ne parties to supporte / [2205] But' certes as to þe warisshing' of 3oure doghtere al be it' so þat' she perilously be wounded we shullen do so ententif bysynes fro day to nyght' That' wiþ þe grace of god she shal be hool and sounde as sone as is possible [2206] ¶ Almost' riȝt' in þe same wise þe Phisicien answerd' saue þat' þei seiden a fewe woordes moore. [2207] That' riȝt' as maladies [1]bene by hure contraries saued Riȝt' soo shal man warisshe werre by vengeaunce. [2208] His neighbours ful of envie his feyned frendes þat semeden reconsiled his flaterers [2209] made semblant' of wepinge and enpeiren and engreggen mochel of þis matere in preising' gretely meleby of myȝt'. of power. of Richesse *and* of frendes. Dispisinge þe power of his aduersaries / [2210] and seiden vttrely þat' he anoon shuld wreke hym. on his foes and bygynne werre.

[2211] ¶ Vp roos þan an aduocate þat' was wise. by leue and by counsaile of oþere þat' were wise. and saide. [2212] ¶ Lordingges þe nede for þe whic̄h we bene assembled in þis place is ful heuy þinge. and a grete matere [2213] by cause of þe wronge and of þe wikkednesse þat' haþ bene doon. and eke by reson̄ of a grete damage þat'

in tyme commyngꝫ is possible to fallen. for þe same. [2214] and eke by resoñ of þe grete riches and powerꝫ of þe parties boþe. [2215] ffor þe whicħ resons itꝫ were a ful grete perile to erren in þis matere. [2216] Wherfore melebius þis is oure sentence. we counsaile ȝou abouen al þinge. þat riȝtꝫ anoon ȝe do diligence in þe kepinge of ȝoure propre persone in suchħ a wise þatꝫ ȝe ne wante noon espie ne wacche. ȝoure body forto saue. [2217] And after þatꝫ we counsaile þatꝫ in ȝoure hous ȝe sette suffisantꝫ harnays. so þatꝫ þei mowe as wel ȝoure body as ȝour hous defende [2218] But certes forto moue werre. or sodeynly to doo vengeannce we mowe notꝫ deme in so litel tyme þatꝫ were profitable [2219] wherfore we axen leisere and space to haue deliberacioñ in þis caas to deme. [2220] ffor þe Comon prouerbe seiþ þus. He þatꝫ sone demeþ sone shal repentꝫ. [2221] And eke men sayñ þatꝫ þilk Iuge is wis þatꝫ sone vnderstondeþ a matere. and Iuggeþ by leisere. [2222] ffor al be itꝫ soo þatꝫ taryinge be noyful. algate itꝫ is natꝫ to repreue in ȝeuynge of Iuggementꝫ ne in Vengeaunce takinge whan itꝫ is so suffisauntꝫ and resonable. [2223] & swed oure lorde Ihesu cristꝫ by ensample. ffor whan þe womman þatꝫ was taken in avoutrie / was brouȝtꝫ in his presence to knowen whatꝫ shulde be doon of her persone. al be itꝫ þatꝫ he wistꝫ wel him self whatꝫ he wold answere [*toutesvoies il ne respondi pas*] sodeynly. but he wolde haue deliberacioñ. And in þe grounde he wrootꝫ threse. [2224] and by þise causes we axe deliberacioñ. And we shul þan by grace of good counsaile doo þingeꝫ thatꝫ shal be profitable

[2225] ¶ Vp sterten þen þe ȝonge folk at onys [1]and þe moostꝫ partie of þatꝫ companye han scorne of þis wise olde man and bygonnen to make noyse and saide. [2226] Riȝtꝫ soo þe while þatꝫ yren is hoote. men shulde smyte. Riȝtꝫ soo shuldꝫ men wreken her harmes and wrogges.

þe while þei bene fresshe and newe. And wiþ lowde voice þei criden werre.

[2227] .Vp roos þoo oon of þise olde wise and wiþ his hondes made countenaunce þat' men shulde holden hem stille and ȝeuen hym audience. [2228] ¶ Lordingges quod he þer is ful mony a man / þat' crien werre werre þat' woten ful litel what' werre amounteþ. [2229] Werre at' his bygynnynge haþ so grete an entre *and* so large þat' euery wiȝt' may entre whan him likeþ and liȝtly fynde werre. [2230] But' certes what' ende shal falle it' is nat' liȝt' to knowe. [2231] ffor soþely whan þat' werre is onys bygonne. þer is ful mony a childe vnborn of his modere. þat' steruen. ȝonge by cause of þilk werre or ellys lye in swowe and dye in wrecchednesse. [2232] And þerfore er þat' eny werre be bygonne: men most' han grete counsaile and grete deliberacioñ [2233] And whan þis olde man had wende to enforsen his tale by resons. wel nygħ alł at onys bygonne to rise forto breken his tale. and beden hym ful oft' his wordes forto abrigge. [2234] ffor soþly he þat' precheþ to hem þat' list' nat' here his wordes his sermon availeþ not'. [2235] ffor Ihesus Sirak'. seiþ. þat' musike in wepinge is noyous þinge. This is to saien as mocħ availeþ to speke to-fore folk to whicħ his speche availlèþ not'. as it' is to synge byfore hym þat' wepeþ. [2236] And whan þis wise man segħ þat' hym wanted audience al shamefast' he sette hym doune ageyne. [2237] ffor Salomon seiþ. Ther as þou ne maist' not' haue audience. enforce þe nat' to speke [2238] ¶ I se wel quod þis wise man þat' þe comon prouerbe is soþe. þat' good counsaile whan it' is most' nede availleþ

[2239] ¶ ȝit' had þis Melebius in his counsaile moche folk' þat' prively in his eere counsailed hym moche þinge *and* counsailed hym þe contrarye in general audience

[2240] ¶ Whan Melebius had herd þe grettest'

partye of his counsaile were acorded þat' he shuld make werre. Anoñ consented to her counseillinge and fully affermed her sentence [2241] ¶ Than dame Prudence whan þat' she seye howe þat' her husbonde shope forto wreke hym on his foon and bygynne werre. she in fůl vnble wise whan she segħ her tyme saide hym þise [1]wordes [2242] ¶ My lord quod she I 3ow biseche as hertely as I dare *and* can no hast' 3ou nat' to fast'. and for aħ guerdons as 3eue me audience. [2243] ffor Pirus Alfons. seiþ þus. who so þat' doþ þe good or harme. hast' þe nat' to qwiten it'. ffor in þis wise þi frende wil abide and þine enemye shal þe lenger lyve in drede./ [2244] ¶ The prouerbe seiþ. He hasteþ wel þat' wisely can abide. And in wicked haast' nys no profit'

[2245] ¶ This Meleby answerd' to his wiff Prudence I. purpoos not' quod he to wirken after' þi cõunsaile ffor mony causes and resons. ffor certes euery wi3t' wolde holde me þan a fooħ [2246] ¶ This is to sayne If I for þi counsailing' wold chaunge þingges þat' aren affermed by so mony wise men. [2247] Secoundly I saye þat' alle wo*m*men bene wicke. and non good of hem aħ. for of a thowsande men saiþ Salomon .I. foond oon good man. But certes of alle wo*m*men good wo*mman* fonde I neuer one. [2248] And also certys 3if I gouerned me by þi co*u*nsaille it' shuld seme þat' I had 3eue þe euere þe maistrie as god forbede þat' it' so were. [2249] ffor Syrak seiþ þat' if þe wif haue þe maistrie she is contrarious [*à son mary*]. [2250] And Salomon seiþ Neuere in þi lif to þi wif ne to þi childe ne to þi frende ne 3eue no power ouer þi self. ffor bettere it' were þat' þi children asken of þi p*er*sone þinge þat' hem nedeþ þan þou sese þi self in þe hondes of þi children [2251] ¶ And also 3if I wolde wyrk' by þi co*u*nsaillinge. Certes my counsaile most' somtyme be secree. til it' were tyme þat' it' most' be

knowe and þis ne may not' be [2252. For it is written, 'þe Iangelarie of wo*m*men can hide þingges þat' þei woote nou3t' [2253] Furthermore, the philosopher saith, 'In wicked counsaille wo*m*men venquissñ men;' and for these reasons I ought not to make use of thy counsel. (*See l.* 2274, 2280, *p.* 209, 210, *below.*)]

[2254] ¶ Dame Prudence ful debonairly and wiþ grete pacience had harde aH þat' her husbonde liked to say. þan axed she of hym licence forto speke and saide in þis wise. [2255] ¶ My lord q*uod* she as to 3oure furst' resoñ cẽrtes it' may li3t'ly be answerde. for I say þat' it' nys no foly to chaunge counsaille whan þe þinge is chaunged. ffor ellis whan þe þinge semeþ oþer wise þan it' was byforn [2256 *Après, je dy encores plus, car se tu avoies promis et juré de faire*] 3oure emp*r*ise. And naþelees 3e wayn to [per]foreme þilk' same emp*r*ise. by iust' cause. Men shuld' not' seyn þat' 3e were a lyer or forsworne. [2257] ffor þe booke seiþ The while man makeþ no lesinge: whan he turneþ his corage to þe better'. [2258] And al be it' soo þat' 3oure emp*r*ise be establed and ordeyned by grete multitude of folk. 3it ther 3ou not' acomplise þilk' same ordynaunce but' 3ou like. [2259] ffor þe trouþe of þingges and þe profite bene raþer founden. in fewe [1]folk' þat' bene wise and ful of resoñ þan by grete multitude of folk' þer euery man crieþ and claquereþ what' hym likeþ. Sooþly suchñ multitude nys not' honest' [2260] And to þe secounde resoñ wher as 3e seyn þat' wo*m*men bene wicked. saue 3oure grace Certes 3e dispise aH wo*m*men in þis wise. and [he] þat' al dispiseth̃ [al displeseth]. as seiþ þe boke. [2261] And Senec' seiþ. Who-so wil haue sapience shal no man dispreise. but' he shal gladly teche þat' he can. wiþ[out] presumpcio*u*n or pride. [2262] and suche þinge as he nou3t' ne can he shal not' bene ashamed to lerne hem / and enquere of lasse

folk' þan hym self. [2263] And þat' þer haþ bene ful mony good wo*mm*en. [*I'en le puet prouver légièrement.* [2264] *Premièrement, car nostre Seigneur Ihésu-Crist ne se fust oncques daigné descendre en femme*] ȝif alle wo*mm*en had be wikke. [2265] but' for' þat' grete bounte þat' is in wo*mm*en! our lorde Ih*esus* crist' whan he was risen from deþe to lyf appered raþer to a wo*mm*an þan to his apostels. [2266] And þouȝe þ*at* Salomon say. þat' he ne fonde neuer no good wo*mm*an! It' foloweþ not' þerfore þat' alle wo*mm*en bene wikke. [2267] ffor þouȝe. þat' he ne foonde noon good Certes mony an o*þer*e man haþ founde mony a wo*mm*an ful good and trewe. [2268] Or ellis p*er*auenture þe entent' of Salomon þis. as in souereyn bounte he saide no wo*mm*an. [2269] This to sayn þat' þer is no wiȝt' þat' haþ souereyne bounte sauf god allone. as he hym self recordeþ in his euaungely. [2270] ffor þer nys no creature so good þat' hy*m* ne wanteþ somwhat' of þe p*er*feccioun of god þat' is his [maker] [2271] ¶ ȝoure iij. resoñ is þis. ȝe seyne þat' if ȝe gouerned ȝou by counsaile of me it' shulde seme þat' ȝe had ȝeue me þe maistrie *and* þe lordship Ouer ȝoure p*er*soñ. [2272] sire saue ȝoure grace! it' is not' soo. ffor ȝif it' so were þat' man shulde be counsailed but' only of hem þat' had maistrie and lordship ouer his p*er*sone. men wold nat' be counsailled so oft'. [2273] ¶ ffor soþly þilk man þat' axeþ counsaile of a p*ur*poos. ȝit' haþ he free chois wheþer he wil wirk' by þat' counsaile or nōōn. [2274] ¶ And as to ȝoure ferþe resoñ þer as ȝe sayn þat' þe Iangelarie of wo*mm*en can hide þingges þat' þei woote nouȝt' as who seiþ. þat' a wo*mm*an can not' hide. [2275] Sire Thise woordes bene vnderstonde of wo*mm*en þat' bene Iangelers and wicked [2276] of which wo*mm*e men seiyñ þat' þre þingg*es* dryuen a man out' of his hous. That' is to seyn Smoke. dropping' of Reyn/ and wicked wyues [2277] ¶ And

such̄ wo*m*man seith̄ Salomon . þat' it were better a man were in desert' by hy*m* self . þan wiþ a wo*m*man at' home þat' is riotours . [2278] And Sire by 3oure leue [1] þat' am nat' I . [2279] ffor 3e haue ful oft' assaied my grete silence and my grete pacience . and eke how wel I can hiden and hele þinge*s* þat' men ou3ten secrely to hyde [2280] ¶ And soþly as to 3oure .v. reson̄ . where as 3e sayn þat' in wicked counsaille wo*m*men venquissh̄ men / god woote þilk is no reson in no stede . [2281] ffor vnderstondeth̄ nowe . 3e axen counsaille forto doo wikkednesse . [2282] and if 3e wil̄ wirk wickednesse and 3oure wiff restreyn þilk wikkednesse & ouercom*m*eþ 3ou by reson and by good counsaile / [2283] certis 3oure wiff ou3t' raþer to be preysed þan yblamed [2284] ¶ Thus shuld 3e vnderstonde þe philosophre þat' saiþ . In wikked counsaille wo*m*men venquyssh her husbondes [2285] And þer as 3e blamen alle wo*m*men *and* her resons I shal shewe 3ou by mony ensamples þat' mony a wo*m*man haþ bene ful good an 3it' bene . and her counsaile hoolsom and profitable [2286] Eke som*m*e men han saide þat' þe counsail of wo*m*men is eiþer do dere or to litel of price [2287] But' al be it' soo þat' ful mony wo*m*man is badde and her counsaile vile and not' worþe / 3it' han men founden ful mony a good wo*m*man and ful discrete and wise in counsailynge [2288] ¶ Loo Iacobe by counsaile of his modere Rebekka wan þe benyson of Isaak his fadere *and* þe lordship of al his // [2289] Iudith̄ by her good counsaille delyuered þe Cite of Bethulye in which̄ she dwelled out' of þe hondes of Olyfernes þat' had it' biseched and wolde it' destroye [2290] abigaille deliuered Nabell her husbonde from dauid þe [*roy qui le voloit occire, et appaisa*] þe kinge by her witte and by þe good counsailinge [2291] ¶ Hester By hure good consaile enhaunsed gretly þe puple of god in þe regne of Assuerus . The kinge [2292] and þe same bunte in good counsailynge of

mony a good wo*m*man may men telle / [2293] and moreouer whan our lorde had create Adam our forme fadere, he saide in þis wise [2294] ¶ It' is nat' good to be a man allone. make we to hy*m* an helpe s[e]mblable to him self [2295] ¶ Here may ȝe see þat' ȝif wo*m*man were nat' good and her counsaile good and profitable [2296] Oure lord god of heue*n* wolde neiþer haue wrouȝt' hem. ne called hem helpe of man. but' raþer confusion to man. [2297] And þat' seide onys a clerk in twoo vers. What' is bette þan gold. Iasper. And what' is better þan Iaspe. Wisdome. [2298] And what' is bett*er* þan wisdom Wo*m*man. and what' is bett*er* þan good wo*m*man no þinge. [2299] And sire by mony oþer resons may ȝe see þat' wo*m*men bene good [*et leur conseil bon*] and profitable. [2300] And þerfore ȝif ȝe wil trest' to my counsaile I shal restore ȝou ȝoure douȝtere hool [1] and sounde. [2301] And eke I wil do to ȝou so moche þat' ȝe haue honure in þis caas.

[2302] ¶ Whan meleby harde þe wordes of his wiff' Prudence he saide þus. [2303] I see wel þat' þe wordes of Salomon bene soþe. He seiþ þat' wordes þat' bene spoken discretely by ordin*aun*ce. bene hony combes for þei ȝeuen swet'nesse to þe soule and hoolsomnesse to þe body [2304] And wif by cause of þi swete wordes and eke for I haue assaied and preued þi grete sapience and þi grete trouþe I wil gouerne me by þi counsaile in al þinge

[2305] ¶ Now sire quod dame prudence and siþen ȝe vouche sauf to be gouerned by my counsaile I wol enforme ȝowe howe ȝe shul gouerne ȝoure selfe in chesing' of ȝoure counsaile. [2306] ȝe shal first' in al ȝoure werkes mekely bysechen to þe hiȝe god þat' he wil be ȝoure counseil*our* [2307] and shapeþ as to such entent' þat' he ȝeue ȝou counsaile and comforte as tauȝt' Thebye his sone. [2308] At' al tymes þow shalt' blesse

god and prey hym dresse þi waies. and loke alle þi counsailles bene in hym for euermore [2309] ¶ Seint' Iame eke saiþ. If eny of 3owe haue nede of Sapience. axe it' of god. [2310] and afterward' þan shal 3e take counsaile in 3oure self. and examyne wel 3oure þou3tes of such þingges as 3ou þenkeþ þat' is best' for 3oure profit'. [2311] And þan shal 3e driue from 3oure hert' þoo þat' bene contrarious to good counsayle. [2312] þat' is to sayn Ire. Couetise and hastinesse.

[2313] ffurst' he þat' askeþ counsaile of hym self certys he most' bene wiþ-out' Ire. for many causes [2314] ¶ þe furst' is þis. He þat' haþ grete Ire and wreþe in hym self he weneþ alway þat' he may doo þat' he may nat' doo [2315] ¶ And secoundly he þat' is Irous and wroth̄. he ne may nat' wel deme. [2316] [and he þat] may nat' wel [deme may nat wel] counsaile [2317] ¶ The iij. is this þat' he þat' is Irous and wroþe as saiþ Senec' ne may nat speke but' blameful þingges / [2318] and wiþ his vicious wordes he stireþ oþer folk' to angre and to Ire. [2319] And eke *sir* 3e most dryue Coueitise out' of 3oure hert'. [2320] ffor þe appostel seiþ þat' Couetise is roote of alle harmes. [2321] And trusteþ wel þat' a couetous man ne can nat' deme [ne thinke] but' only to fulfille þe eende of his couetise [2322] and certes þat' may neuer' ben accompliced. ffor euer more þe habundance þat' he haþ of Ricchesse þe more he desireþ. [2323] ¶ And sire 3ou most' also dryue [1]away from 3oure hert' hastynesse [2324] for certes 3e may not' deme for þe best' a sodeyn þou3t' þat' falleþ in 3oure hert'. ¶ but' 3e most' avise 3ou on it' ful oft'. [2325] ffor as 3e herde he[re]-to-forn' þe comon prouerbe. It' is þis þat' he þat' sone demeþ. sone repenteþ.

[2326] Sire 3e bene not' alway in like disposicioñ [2327] for certes some þinge þat' semeþ somtyme to 3ou good to do. Anoþer tyme it' semeþ to 3ou þe contrarie

[2328] ¶ Whan ȝe han taken counsaile *in* ȝoure self and so han demed by good delib*er*acioñ suchꝫ þingg*es* as ȝou semed best' / [2329] þan rede I ȝou þat' ȝe kepe it' Secre [2330] Bywrey nat' ȝoure counsaile to no p*er*sone. but' if so be þat' ȝe wenen þat' sikerly þat' þorghꝫ ȝoure bewreying' ȝoure condicioñ shal be þe more profitable. [2331] ffor Ih*esus* Cirak seiþ. neiþere to þi ffoo ne to þi freende diskeuere not' þi secre ne þi folye [2332] for þei wil ȝeue þe audience and lokinge and supportacioñ in þi presence *and* scorne þe in þine absence [2333] ¶ Anoþer clerk seiþ þat scarcely shalt' þow fynden eny p*er*sone þat' may kepe counsaile secrely. [2334] þe boke saiþ. Whilst' þat' þou kepest' þi counsaile in þine he*r*te þou kepest' it' in þi prisoñ. [2335] And whan þou bywreyest þi co*un*saile to eny wight' he holdeþ þe in his snare [2336] And þerfore it' is better hide þi co*un*saile in þine hert'. þan preien hy*m* to whoom ȝe han bywreieþ ȝoure counsaile þat' he wil kepe*n* it' clooce and stille [2337] ¶ ffor Senec' saiþ. If so be þat' þou ne may þine owne counsaile hide. how maist þou preien eny oþer wiȝt' þi secree counsaile to kepe [2338] ¶ But' naþelees ȝif þou wene sikerly þat' þi bewriyng' of þi counsaile to a p*er*sone wil make þi condicion stonden in a better plite. þan shalt' þou telle him þi counsaile in þis wise [2339] ¶ ffurst þou shalt' make no semblant' whedere þe were leuer pees or werre. or þis or þat'. ne schewe hym not' þi wille and þine entent'. [2340] ffor trest' wel þat' comonly þise counsailours bene flaterers [2341] and namely þe co*un*seilours of grete lordys. [2342] ffor þei enformen hem alway raþer to speke plesannt' wordys enclynynge to þe lordes lust' þan woordes þat' bene trewe and profitable [2343] ¶ And þerfore men sayne þat' þe riche man haþ seelden good counsaile. but' ȝif he haue it of hym' self' [2344] And aftere þat' þow shalt considere þi frendes and þine enemyes. [2345] and as touchinge þi freendes þou shalt con-

sidere ¶ whicħ of hem bene most' feiþfulł. and most wyse *and* eldest' and most' approued in counseillynge / [2346] of hem shalt' þowe axe þi counsaile as þe caas requireþ

[2347] I say not' furst' ȝe shul clepe to ȝoure counsaile ȝoure frendes þat' bene trewe [2348] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ. þat' riȝt' as þe hert' of a man deliteþ in Sauo*ur* þat' is swete. riȝt' so þe counsaile of trewe frendes ȝeueþ swetnesse to þe sowle. [2349] He seiþ also þ*at* þer may no þing' be likned to þe trewe frende. [2350] ffor certes gold nè siluer bene not' so mocħ worþ as þe good wille of a trewe frende. [2351] ¶ And eke he saiþ þ*at'* a trewe frende is a grete defence / who so þat' it' fyndeþ. certis he fyndeþ a grete tresou*re*. [2352] Than shul ȝe eke considere if þat' ȝoure trewe frendes bene discrete and wise. for þe boke seiþ Aske alway þi counsaile of hem þat' bene wise. [2353] And by þis same reson shulde ȝe clepen to ȝoure cou*n*saile of ȝou*re* frendys þat' bene of age sucħ as han sayn mocħ and bene expert' in mony þingges and bene approued in counsailinge. [2354] ffor þe boke seiþ þat' in olde men is þe sapience [*et en moult de temps est prudence*] [2355]. ¶ And Tullius saiþ þat' grete þingges ne ben not' accomplised by strenght' ne by delyuernesse of body but' by good counsaile By auctorite of p*er*sones and be science þe whicħ iij. þinges ne bene not' feble by age but' certes þei enforsen and encresen day by day. [2356] And þan shal ȝe kepe þis for a general rewle ¶ ffurst' shal ȝe kepe to ȝoure counsaile a fewe of ȝoure frendes þat' especial bene [2357] ffor Salomon seiþ Mony frendes haue þowe but' among a thousand chese þe oon to be þi counseilo*ur*. [2358] ffor al be it' soo þat' þowe furst' ne telle þi counsaile but' to a fewe. þou maist' afterward telle it' to more folk'. ȝif it' be nede. [2359] But' loke alway þat' þi counsailers haue þilk thre condicio*u*ns þat' I haue saide

byfore. þat' is to say þat' þei bene trewe and wise *and* of olde experience. [2360] and wirk' not' alway in euery nede by oon counsailere alloñ. for some it' byhoueþ be counsailed by mony [2361] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ [salvation] of þingges: is wher þer bene mony counselours

[2362] ¶ Nowe seeþ what' I haue tolde 3ou of whicñ folk' 3e shuld' be counsailed. Now wil I telle 3ou whicñ counsaile 3e au3t' eschewe [2363] ¶ ffirst' 3e shul eschewe þe counsaile of foolis. So seiþ Salomon. Take no counsaile of a foole ffor he can no counsaile. but' aftere his owne affeccioñ [2364] ¶ The boke saiþ. þat' þe proprete of a fool is þis. He troweth li3tly harme of euery wi3t'. and li3tly troweþ aH bounte [1]in hym self' [2365] Thow eke shal eschewe þe Counsaillynge of aH flaterers suche as enforsen hem raþer to preise þe persone by flaterye þan forto telle 3ou þe soþfastnesse of þingges./

[2366] ¶ Therfore Tullius seiþ ¶ Amonge alle þe pestilences þat' beñ in frendship þe grettest' is fflatery. And þerfore is moor nede. þat þowe eschewe and drede and flee from þe swete wordes of flaterers þan of eny oþer puple [2367] ¶ The booke seiþ. Thow shalt' raþer drede and fflee from þe swete wordes of flaterers and preisers þan fro þe eger wordes of þi frende þat' saiþ þe þi soþes. [2368] ¶ Salomon seiþ: That' þe wordes of a flaterer is a snare to cacchen innocentes wiþe. [2369] He seiþ also þat' he þat' spekeþ to his freende. wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce setteþ a nett' byfore his foote to cacchen him [2370] And þerfore seiþ Tullius ¶ Encline nat' þine eeres to fflaterers. ne take no counsaile to wordes of fflatery [2371] And Caton seiþ ¶ Auise þe wel and eschewe wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce. [2372] And eke þou shalt' eschwe þe counsaile of þine olde enemyes [*qui sont reconciliés,* [2373] *car il est escript: nul ne retourne seurement en la*

grâce de son ennemy.] [2374] ¶ And Isope seiþ. Ne trest' not' to hem to þe whicħ þow hast' hadde somtyme werre or enemyte. ne telle not' hem þi counsaile [2375] ¶ And senec' telleþ · þe cause whi · it' may nat' be. He seiþ where þat' grete fuyre haþ longe endured. þat' þer dwelleþ somme vapour of warmnesse [2376] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Salomon./ In þine olde foo trest' neuere. [2377] ffor sikerly þouȝe þine enemye be reconsiled and makeþ þe chere of humilite. and lowteþ to þe his hede. ne trust' him neuere. [2378] for certes he makeþ þilk fayned humilite more for his profite þan for eny loue. of þi persone. [*afin qu'il puisse avoir victoire de toi*] by swicħ feyned countenaunce. þe whicħ victory he myȝt' not' haue wiþ stryf or werre [2379] ¶ And Peter Alfons seiþ ¶ Make noon felawship wiþ þine olde enemyes. for ȝif þowe doo hem bounte. þei wil peruerten it' into wykkednesse [2380] ¶ And eke þou most' eschwe þe counsaile of ham þat' beñ þi se[r]uauntes. and beren þe grete reuerence. for perauenture þei sayñ it' more for drede þan for loue [2381] ¶ And þerfore seiþ a Philosophre in þis wise: Ther nys no wiȝt' perfitly trwe to hym þat' he to fore dredeþ [2382] ¶ And Tullius saiþ ¶ Ther is noo myȝt' so grete of noon Emperour that' longe may endure but' ȝif he haue more loue of þe puple þan drede [2383] ¶ Thow shalt' also e[s]cheu þe counsaillynge of folk þat' bene dronklewe. for þei ne can no counsaile hide [2384] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ ¶ Ther is no counsaile þer as regneþ dronknesse [2385] ¶ ȝe shul also haue in suspecte þe counsaile of suchñ folk' as counsaile ȝowe prively. oon. 'and þe contrarie openly [2386] **ffor Cassiodorie seiþ**./ That' it' is a manere scleiȝt' to hindere. whan he sweweth to doon oon þinge openly and werkeþ þe contrarie prively [2387] ¶ Thow shalt' also haue *in* suspecte the counsailing' wiþ wickeþ folke **ffor þe boke saiþ** The counsailynge of wicked folk' is alway ful

of fraude [2388] And *dauid* seiþ Blessed is þat' man þat' haþ not' folowed þe counsailling' of wikked men or schrewen [2389] ¶ Thow shalt' also eschewe þe counsaile of ȝonge folk'. for her counsaile is not' ripe

[2390] ¶ Now Sire siþ I haue shewde ȝou of such folk' ȝe shuld take ȝoure counsaille And of which folk' ȝe shul take ȝoure counsaile. and of which folk' ȝe shul folowe þe counsaille [2391] ¶ Now shal I telle ȝou howe ȝe shul examyne ȝoure counsaile. after' þe doctr*i*ne of Tullius [2392] in examynynge. þan of ȝoure counseillo*ur*. ȝe shul considere mony þingges [2393] ¶ Alþer furst' ȝe shul considere þat' in þilk þinge þat' þowe p*ur*posest. *and* vppon what' þinge þow wolt' haue counsaille þat' verrey troupe be saide and considered. This is to sayn telle trewly þi tale. [2394] for he þat' seiþ fals may not' wel be counsailed in þat' tale [in which he lyeth] [2395] And after' This þou shalt' considere þoo þingges þat' accorden to þat' þou p*ur*posest forto doo by þi counsaillours. ȝif reson. accorde þerto. [2396] & eke ȝif þi myght' may atteyne þerto. And ȝif þe more party and þe better part' of þi counsailours accorde þerto anoon. [2397] þan shalt' þou considere þat' þinge þat' shal folowe of þat' counsailleng'. as. pees. werre. grace. profite or damage and mony oþer þingges. [2398] [*et en toutes ces choses*] þow shalt' chese þe best' and wayue alt oþer. [2399] ¶ Than shalt' þow considere of what' roote is engendred þi matere of þi counsaile and what' fruyte may be conseyued and engendred þer-of [2400] ¶ Thow shalt' also considere alt þise cases from whannes þei bene sprongen, [2401] And whan ȝe han examyned ȝoure counsaille as I haue saide. which parte is þe better *and* more profitable and haue approued it' by mony wise folk' and eelde. [2402] Than shalt' þow considere if þow maist' p*er*forme it' and make of it' a good ende. [2403] ffor reson wil not' þat' eny man shuld bygynne a þinge but' ȝif he myght' p*er*forme it' as hym lest or auȝt' [2404] Ne no wiȝt' shuld

take vpon him so heuy a charge þat he myȝt not bere it. [2405] ffor þe prouerbe seiþ. He þat to mocho embraiseth destrayneþ litel · [2406] And Caton saiþ ¶ Assaie to doo suchꝫ þingges as þow hast pouer to doo. lest þat þi charge oppresse þe so soor þat þe byhoueþ to wayue. þinge þat þou hast bygonne [2407] ¶ And ȝif so be [1] þat þowe be in doute whedere þou maist *per*forme a þinge or noon. chese raþer to suffre þan bygynne [2408] **And Petrus Alfons** / saiþ: If þou hast myght to done a þinge of whichꝫ þe most repent. it is bettere nay þan ȝee. [2409] This is to sayn þat þe is bettere to holde þi tunge stille. þan forto speke. [2410] Than may ȝe vnderstonde by strenger resons. þat ȝif þou hast powere to *per*fourme a warke of whichꝫ þou shalt repent. þan is it bett*er* þat þowe suffre þan bygynne [2411] ¶ Wel sayne þei þat defenden euery wiȝt to assay a þing of whichꝫ he is in doutꝫ whedere he may *per*forme it or noon. [2412] And after whan ȝe han examyned ȝoure counsaile as I haue saide biforn. and knowen wel ȝe may *per*fo*ur*me ȝoure emprise. conforme it þan sadly til it be at an eendꝫ

[2413] ¶ Nowe is it reson and tyme. þat I shewe when and wherfore þat ȝe may chaunge ȝoure counsaillo*ur*s wiþ-out repreef [2414] ¶ Soþely a man may change his counsaille. and his p*ur*poos if þe cause sesceþ. or whan a newe cause byndeþ. [2415] ffor þe lawe seiþ þat vpon þingges þat newly betiden byhoueþ newe *con*saille. [2416] **And Senec seiþ** / ȝif þi counsaile be co*m*men to þe eeres of myꝫ enemyeꝫ chaunge þi counsaille [2417] ¶ Thow maist also chau*n*ge þi counsaille. ȝif so be þat þou fynde þat by erro*ur* or by oþer cause harme or damage may be-tide [2418] ¶ Also ȝif þiꝫ counsaille be dishonest. or ellis co*m*meþ of dishonest cause chaunge þi *con*saille [2419] **ffor þe lawes sayn** · þat al byheestes þat bene dishonest bene of no valewe.

[2420] And eke 3if it' so be þat' it' be inpossible or may not' goodly be performed or kept'.

[2421] And take þis for a general rewle þat' euery counsaile þat' is affermed so strongly þat' it' may nat' be chaunged for no condicioñ þat' may be-tide I saye þat' þilk' counsayle is wikked

[2422] ¶ This Melebius whan he had herde þis doctrine of his wiff Dame Prudence: Answerde in þis wise. [2423] ¶ Dame quod he as 3it' into þis tyme 3e han wel and connably tau3t' me. as in generall howe I shal gouerne as in * chesinge and in wiþholding' of my counsaillours [2424] But' nowe wolde I fayn þat' 3e wolden condescenden in especiall. [2425] and tel me howe likeþ. or what' semeþ 3owe by our counsaillours þat' we haue chosen in our present' nede

[2426] ¶ My lord' quod she I biseche 3owe in alle humblesse þat' 3e wil not' wilfully replie a3eins' my resons / and mystemper nat' 3our hert' þou3e I [1]say or speke þinge þat' 3ou displeseþ. [2427] ffor god woote þat' as þat' as in myn entent' I speke it' for 3oure best' for 3oure honure and 3oure profite. [2428] and soþly. I hope þat' 3oure benignite wil taken in pacience. [2429] Tresteþ me wel quod she þan þat' 3oure counsaille as in þis caas ne shuld nat' as forto speke proprely. be called a consaillinge. but' a mociõn or mouynge of foly. [2430] in which counsaille 3e han erred [*en moult de manières*]

[2431] [*Premièrement, tu as erré*] in þe assemblyng' of 3oure counsaillers. [2432] ffor 3e shuld' first' haue cleped a fewe folk' [*et puis après plusieurs*] 3if it' had bene nede. [2433] But' certes 3e han sodeynly cleped to 3oure counsaille a grete multitude of puple. fful chargeant' and ful noyous forto here [2434] Also 3e han erred. for þere as 3e shuld' oonly haue cleped to 3oure counsaille 3oure trewe freendes olde and wise [2435] 3e haue ycleped straunge folk'. 3onge folk'. fals flaterers and enemyes

reconsiled and folk' þat' done 3ou reuerence *with*out' loue [2436] ¶ Also 3e haue erred. for 3e haue brou3t' wiþ 3ou to 3oure counsaille. Ire. Coueityse. and hastynesse [2437] þe whicℏ þre þingges [*sont contraires à conseil, et*] [2438] 3e han not' avyncesed or destroyed he*m* / neiþ*er* in 3oure self ne in 3oure counsaillours as 3e ou3t [2439] ¶ 3e haue erred also for 3e han shewed to 3oure counsailers 3oure talent' *and* 3oure affection to make worre anoon and forto do vengeance. [2440] þei han espied by 3oure wordes to what' þing' 3e bene enclined. [2441] & þerfore han þei counsailled 3ou raþer to 3oure talent' þan to 3oure p*ro*phete [2442] ¶ 3e haue erred also. ffor it semed þat' 3ou suffised to haue bene counsailled by þise counsailloures oonly & *with* þat' litel avice./ [2443] Where as in so grete and so highe a nede it' had ben necessarie moo counsaillours and more delib*er*acioñ to p*er*forme 3oure emprise [2444] ¶ 3e haue erred also. for 3e haue nat' examened 3oure counsaile in þe forseide matere ne in dwe manere. as þe cace requireþ [2445] ¶ 3e han erred also for 3e han maked no dyuysioñ bytwix 3oure counsaillours. þis is to sayñ bytwix 3oure frendes & 3oure fayned co*un*saillours [2446] ne 3e han not' knowe þe wille of 3oure trewe frendes. olde and wise [2447] But' 3e han. cast' aH her wordes in an hocℏepote and enclyned 3oure herte to þe more p*ar*te and to þe gretter nombre and þer by 3e condescended. [2448] And siþ 3e wote wele þat' men shal fynde a gretter multitude of fooles þ*an* of wise men. [2449] and þerfor þe counsaillours þat' ben at congregacions and multitudes of folk' þer as men take more reward' to þe nombre þan to þe sapience of p*er*sones [2450] ¶ 3e se wel þat' [1]in suc ℏ counsaillyngg*es* fooles haue þe maistrie [2451] .Melebius answerd' ageyn and saide ¶ I graunte wel þat' I haue erred. [2452] but' þer as þowe saist' me here bifore þat' he nys nat' to blame þat' chau*n*geþ his coun-

saillours in certeyn cases and for certeyn iustꝭ causes [2453] I am al redy to chaunge my counsailours riȝtꝭ as þowe woltꝭ devise [2454] ¶ The prouerbe seiþ. þatꝭ forto do synne is mannyssh̄ But certes forto perseuere longe in synne is werke ofꝭ þe deueℍ

[2455] ¶ To'þis sentence anoon answered dame prudence and saide [2456] Examyneþ quod þan she ȝoure counsaile. and lat vs see whiche of hem haþ spoken moostꝭ resonable & taughtꝭ ȝou bestꝭ counsaile. [2457] And for as moche as þatꝭ þe examynacioñ is necessarie latꝭ vs bygynne atꝭ Cirurgiens and atꝭ þe phisicience þatꝭ furstꝭ speken in þis matere. [2458] I say ȝou þatꝭ þe Cirurgiens *and* þe phisiciens haue seiden ȝou in ȝoure counsaile discretly as hem auȝte. [2459] and in her speche seiden ful wisely as to þe office þatꝭ hem appenteþ to done to euery wightꝭ honoure and profite and no wiȝtꝭ to anoye [2460] and aftere her craftꝭ to doon grete diligence vnto þe cure of hem whicℍ þatꝭ þei han in gouernaunce. [2461] And sirꝭ riȝtꝭ as þei han answered wisely and discretely [2462] riȝt so rede I þatꝭ þei bene heghly and souereynly guerdoned for her noble speche. [2463] and eke for þei shuld do þe more ententif bysynes in þe Curacioñ of ȝoure douȝterꝭ / [2464] ffor al be itꝭ soo þatꝭ þei bene ȝoure freendes þerfore shal ȝe notꝭ suffre þatꝭ þei serue ȝou for nouȝtꝭ [2465] Butꝭ ȝe auȝtꝭ þe raþer to gerdone hem and shewe hem ȝour largesse. [2466] And as tochinge þe proposicioñ þe whicℍ þe phisiciens encresden in þis caas. þis is to sayn [2467] þatꝭ in maladies. þatꝭ oon contrarieþ is warshed by anoþer contrarie [2468] .I wold fayn knowe how þei ynderstonde þilkꝭ textꝭ And whatꝭ is her sentence [2469] ¶ Certes quod Melebius vnderstonden itꝭ in þis wise. [2470] þatꝭ riȝtꝭ as þei han [m'(ont) *fait un contraire, que je leur face un autre,* [2471] *et pour ce qu'ils (se) sont*] venged ham on me and. done me wronge Riȝtꝭ so shal I venge me vpon hem.

and done hem wronge [2472] and þan haue I cured oon contrary by a noþer

[2473] ¶ lo lo quod dame Prudence. how liȝtly is euery man enclyned to his owne desire and to his awne plesaunce [2474] Certes quod she. wordes of þe phisiciens ne shulden nat haue bene vnderstonden in þis wise. [2475] ffor certys wikkednesse is nat contrarie to wicknesse. ne vengeance to vengeaunce. ne wrong to wronge. but þei bene semblable [2476] and þerfor on vengeaunce is not warisshed by anoþer vengeaunce. ne oon wrong by a noþer wronge. [2477] but euer-ych of hem encreseþ and angreþ and greggeþ oþer. [2478] But certes þe wordes of þe phisicien shuld ben vnderstonden in þis wise. [2479] ffor goodnesse and wikkednesse ben two contraries and pees and werre *and* vengeaunce and suffrance. discord and accorde and mony oþer þingges. [2480] But certes wikkednesse shal be warsshed by goodnesse. discord by accord. werre by pees. *and* so forþ of oþer þingges. [2481] And also to hem accordeþ [*saint Pol*] þe appostel in mony places [2482] He seiþ. ne ȝeldeþ nouȝt harme for harme ne wikked speche for wikked speche. [2483] but doþ wel to hem þat don ȝou harme. and blesse hem þat sayn to þe harme [2484] *and* in mony oþer places he amoneste þ pees and accorde. [2485] ¶ But now wil I speke to ȝou of þe counsaile which þat was ȝeuen to ȝou by þe men of lawe and þe wise folk [2486] þat seiden all by oon acorde as ȝe han herd bifore. [2487] That ouer alle þingges ȝe shal do ȝoure diligence to kepe ȝoure persones and to warnestore ȝoure hous [2488] and saiden also. þat in þis ȝe ouȝt forto worchen ful wisely and bisily and wiþ grete deliberacioun [2489] And sire as to þe furst poynt þat touche þ to þe keping of ȝour persone [2490] ȝe shul vnderstonde þat he þat haþ werre shal euermore deuoutely and mekely preien by-forn alle þingges [2491] þat Ihesu crist of his mercy. wol

haue hym in his protectiõn and bene his souereyn helpinge at' his nede. [2492] ffor certes in þis world' þer nys no wiȝt' þat' may be counsailled or kepte sufficiently' wiþ-out' þe kepinge of our lord' Ihesu crist. [2493] To þis sentence accordeþ þe profete Dauid þat' seiþ. [2494] ȝif god ne kepe þe Citee in ydel waiteþ he þat' it' kepeþ. [2495] Now sire þan shul ȝe committe [*la garde*] of ȝoure persone to ȝoure trewe frendes þat' bene appreued and yknowe [2496] and of hem shul ȝe asken helpe ȝoure body forto kepe ffor catón seiþ ¶ ȝif þou hast' nede of helpe aske it' of þi frendes [2497] ffor þer is noon so good a' phisicien as þi trewe frende [2498] ¶ After þis þan shal ȝe kepe ȝou from al straunge folk' and fro leers *and* haue alway in suspecte her companye [2499] ¶ ffor Pers Alfons seiþ *þus* ne take no company by þe waye of a straunge mon. but' ȝif so be þat' þowe knowe him of a lenger tyme. [2500] And ȝif so be þat' he falle to þi companye per-auenture wiþ-outen þine assent' [2501] enquere þan as sotilly as euer þou maist' of his conuersaciõn and of his lyf byfore and feyne þi way. Say þow wolt' goo þidere as þou wilt' not' goo. [2502] and ȝif he bere a spere holde þe on þe riȝt' side. And ȝif he bere [1]a swerde holde þe on þe lift' side [2503] and so after' þis þan shal ȝe kepe ȝou wisely from al suchꝫ manere puple as I haue saide byfore and hem and her counsaile eschewe. [2504] And þan after þat' shal ȝe kepe ȝou in suchꝫ a manere [2505] þat' for eny presumpciõn of ȝoure strengthꝫ. þat' ȝe ne despise nat' þe myȝt' of ȝoure enemye and of ȝour aduersarie. so lite þat' ȝe lete þe kepinge of ȝoure persone for ȝoure presumpciõn. [2506] ffor euery wise man dredeþ his enemye. [2507] Salomon saiþ. wakeful is he þat' oft' haþ drede. [2508] ffor certes he þat' þorowe hardynesse of his hert' and þorowe þe hardynesse of hym self' haþ to grete presumpciõn him shal euel betide [2509] ¶ Than

shal ȝe euermore countrewaite, enbusshmentys and al especials. [2510] ffor. Senec' saiþ. þat' þe wise man þat' dredeþ harmes: escheweþ harmes. [2511] he ne falleþ not' into *per*iles: þat' *per*iles escheweþ [2512] ¶ And al be it' so þat' it' seme þat' þou art' in siker place ȝit' shaltowe alway doo þi diligence in kepinge of þi *per*sone. [2513] þis is to sayn be not' necligent' to kepe þi *per*sone not' oonly from þi grettest' enemyes: but' fro þi leest' enemyes. [2514] Senec' saiþ. A man þat' is wel avised he dredeþ his leest' enemye [2515] Ovide. saiþ. þat' þe litel weseℓ, wil slee þe grete Owle and þe wilde hert' [2516] And þe boke seiþ: A litel þorne may prik' a kinge ful sore. And an hounde wil holde þe wilde bore. [2517] But' naþelees I say. ¶ not' þou shalt' be so moch̄ cowarde þat' þou doute þer as it' is no drede [2518] ¶ The boke saiþ / þat' some folk' han grete lest' to desceyue. but' ȝit' þei dreden hem to be desceyued. [2519] ȝit' shalt' þou drede to be empoysened and kepe þe from þe company of scorners [2520] ¶ ffor þe booke seþ: Wiþ scorners make no companye. but' flee hem and her wordes as venyme.

[2521] Now as to þe secounde poynt' when as ȝoure wise counsailours counsailed ȝow to warnstore ȝoure hous wiþ grete diligence. [2522] I wold fayn knowe how þat' ȝe vnderstonden þilk' wordys and what' is ȝoure Sentence.

[2523] Melebius Answerd and saide. Certes I vnderstonde it' in þis wise þat' I shal warnstore myn hous wiþ towres such̄ as haue castels and oþer manere edifi[c]es and armure and arcelries [2524] by such̄ þingges as I may my *per*sone and my hous kepe and defende. þat' myn enemyes shul be in drede myn hous to approche.

[2525] To þis sentence anon answerd Dame Prudence ¶ Warnstoringe quod she of hegh̄ toures and grete edifices [appertaineth sometimes to pride [2526] Men make towers and great edifices] with̄ grete

costages and wiþ grete travaile. and whan þat' þei be accompliced. 3it' bene þei nat' worþ a stree. but' 3if þei ben deffended by trewe frendes þat' bene olde and wise./ [2527] [1]And vnderstonde wel þat' þe strengest' and þe grettest' garisoñ þat' þe riche man may haue as wel to kepe his *per*sone as his goodes. is [2528] þat' he be beloued wiþ his subiectys. and wiþ his nei3bo*urs* [2529] ffor þus saiþ Tullius ¶ That' þer is a maner garnesoñ þat' no man may venquyssh̄ ne discomfett'. And þat' is [2530] a lord to be byloued wiþ his Citeseins and of his puple

[2531] Now sir as to þe iij. poynt' where as 3oure olde and wise counsaillours seiden þat' 3owe ne au3t' not' sodeynly ne hastely proceden in þis nede. [2532] but' þat' 3ou au3t' purveien and apparailen 3ou in þis caas wiþ grete diligence *and* grete deliberacioñ. [2533] trewly I trowe þat' þei seiden ri3t' wisely and ri3t' sope. [2534] ffor Tullius seiþ ¶ In euery nede er þow bygynne it' appáraille þe wiþ grete diligence [2535] Than say I þat' in vengeance takinge in werre in bataile and in warne-storinge. [2536] er þan þou bygynne. I rede þat' þou apparaile þe þerto. and do it' with̄ grete deliberacioñ. [2537] ffor Tullius saiþ: ¶ That' longe apparaylinge to-forn þe bataile: makeþ shorte victorie. [2538] And so Cassidor*us* saiþ. ¶ The garneson is strenger whan it' is longe tyme avised.

[2539] But' now lat' vs speke more of þe counsaile. þat' was accorded by 3oure neighbours which̄ as doon 3ou reuerence wiþ-out' loue: [2540] 3oure olde enemyes reconsiled. 3oure flaterers [2541] þat' co*u*nsailden 3ou certeyn þingges prively. and openly counsailden 3ou þe contrarie [2542] ¶ The 3onge folk' also þat' counsailed 3ou to venge 3ou / and make werre anoon̄ [2543] ¶ And certes sire as I haue saide byforn̄ 3e haue gretly erred to han cleped Such̄ manere folk' to 3oure counsaile. [2544] which̄ counsailours bene nowe repreued. by þe resons to-fore saide. [2545] But' naþelees lat' nowe descende to

þe speciall. ¶ ȝe shullen furst' proceden aftere þe doctr*i*ne of Tullius [2546] ¶ Certes þe troupe of þis or þis counsaile nedeþ nat' diligently enquere. [2547] for it' is wel wist' whicℏ þei bene þat' done to ȝou þis trespace and vilanye [2548] and how mony trespasours. and in what' manere þei han to ȝou done. Alℓ þis wronge and al þis vylanye [2549] And aftere þis þan shal ȝe examyne þe .ij. condicions whiche þat' þe same Tullius addeþ in þis matere. [2550] ffor Tullius put' to a þinge. þe whicℏ he clepeþ consentinge. þis is to sayn [2551] ¶ Who ben þei and whicℏ bene þei. and how mony. þat' consenten to þi counsaile in þi wilfulnesse to doo hastely ¶ vengeaunce. [2552] And lat' vs considere also. Who bene þei and howe mony & whicℏ bene þei þat' consenten to ȝoure aduersaries. [2553] And certys as to þe [1]furst' poynt' it' is wel knowen whicℏ folk' bene þei þat' consenten to ȝoure hastif wilfulnes. [2554] ffor trewly al þoo þat' counsailden ȝou to make sodeyn werre ne bene nat' ȝoure frendes [2555] [*Or véons doncqués qui tu es et qui sont ceulx que tu tiens tant à ennemis.*] as to ȝoure p*er*sone. [2556] ffor al be it' soo þat' ȝe bene myghty and riche. certes ȝe bene but' alloon. [2557] for certes ȝe ne haue no childe but' a douȝtère. [2558] ne ȝe ne haue no breþeren ne Cosyns Germaynns ne noon oþer nygℏ kynrede./ [2559] wherfore þat' ȝoure enemyes for drede shulden stent' to plede withℏ ȝowe ne destroye ȝoure p*er*sone [2560] ¶ ȝe knowe also þat' ȝoure richesses mosten be dalt' in diuers p*ar*ties. [2561] and whan þat' euery wiȝt' haþ his parte þei ne wol not' take but' litel reward' to venge þi dethℏ. [2562] but' þine enemyes bene þre. And þei han mony children. breþeren Cosynes and oþer nygℏ kinrede. [2563] And þouȝe it' so were þow haddest' sclayñ of hem twoo or þree. ȝit' dwellen þer ynowe to wreke her deethℏ. and to slee þi p*er*sone [2564] And þouȝe so were þat' ȝoure kynrede were more siker and stedfast' þan

þe kyn of 3oure aduersaries. [2565] 3it' naþelees 3oure kynrede nys but' litel kynrede. and litel sibbe to 3owe. [2566] And þe kynne of 3oure enemyes ben nygh̄ sibbe to hem. And certis as to þat'. Her condicione is bett' þat' 3owres. [2567] Than lat' vs considere also. 3if þe counsaillinge of hem þat' counsailed 3owe to take sodeyn vengeaunce whedere it' accorde to resoñ. [2568] Certys 3e knowe wel nay. [2569] ffor as by ri3t' and resoñ þer may no man take vengeaunce on no wi3t' but' þe Iuge þat' haþ þe Iurisdictioñ of it' [2570] whan it' is ygraunted hym to take pilk' vengeance hastely or attemperally as þe lawe requireþ. [2571] And 3it' moreouere of pilk' word' þat' Tullius clepeþ consentynge. [2572] Thow shalt' considere 3it' þow my3t' and þi power my3t' consent' and suffice to þi wilfulnesse and to þi counsailours. [2573] ¶ And certes þou maist' wel say nay. [2574] for sikerly as forto speke proprely. we may do no þinge. but' oonly þing' as we may done ri3tfully. [2575] And certes ri3t'fully ne mowe 3e take no vengeaunce as of 3oure propre auctorite [2576] þan mowe 3e sene þat' 3oure power consenteþ nat' ne accordeþ not' to 3oure wilfulnesse [2577] ¶ lat' vs nowe examyne þe iij poynt' þat' Tullius clepeþ consequent' [2578] [*Tu dois doncques savoir que à vengence que tu veulx faire, est conséquent*] [2579] And þerof foloweþ a-noþer vengeaunce perile and werre. and oþer damages wiþ-out' nombre of whicħ we bene litel warre as at þis tyme./ [2580] ¶ And as touþing' þe fourte poynt' þat' Tullius clepeþ engendringe [2581] þou shalt' considere þis wronge whicħ þat is done to þe is engendred of þe hate of þine enemyes [2582] and of þe vengeance takinge vpon þat' wolde engendre anoþere vengeaunce And mochel sorowe and waastinge of Richesse as I saide eerst'.

[2583] ¶ Now sire as þan touchinge to þe poynt'. That' Tullius causes whicħ þat' is þe last' poynte [2584] þou

shalt vnderstonde þat þe wronge þat þou hast receyued haþ certeyne causes. [2585] whiche þat clerkes clepen orience. And officience. And causa longinqua and causa propinqua. This is say þe fer cause and þe nyȝe cause. [2586] The fer cause is almyȝty god þat is cause of al þingges. [2587] The nere cause is by þre enemyes [2588] ¶ The cause accidentale was hate. [2589] þe cause materiall beþ .v. woundes of þi douȝtere [2590] The cause formal is þe maner of her worching þat brouȝten ladders and clomben Inne at þi wyndowes. [2591] The cause ffynal was. for to scle þi doughtere. It letted nouȝt in as moch as in hem was / [2592] Than to speke of þe ferþe cause as to what ende þei shal come or what shal fynaly bytide of hem in þis caas. ne can I not deme but by countyng and by supposinge [2593] ¶ ffor we shul suppose. þat þei shul come to a wikked ende. [2594] by cause þat þe booke of Decrees seiþ ¶ Seeldome or wiþ grete peyne bene causes ybrouȝt to good ende whan þei bene bodely begonne.

[2595] ¶ Now sire ȝif men wold aske me whi þat ȝe suffred men to doo ȝou þis wronge and vilenye. Certes I can nat wel answere as for no soþfastnesse. [2596] ffor þe apostell saiþ. þat þe sciences and þe Iugementes of our lord god almyȝty. bene ful depe. [2597] þer may no man conprehende ne Serchen hem suffisantly [2598] ¶ Naþelees by certeyne presumpcions of coniectynges I holde and bileue [2599] þat god which þat is ful of iustice. and of riȝtwisnesse haþ suffred þis bitidde by Iustise ¶ cause resonable

[2600] ¶ Thi name is Melebye ¶ This is to sayne a man þat drynkeþ hony. [2601] thow hast ydronke so moche hony of which swete temporell richesses / and delicious honoures of þis world [2602] þat þou art dronken. and hast forȝeten Ihesu crist þine creature [2603] Thow ne hast not doon to hym such honoure and reuerence as þe auȝt [2604] ne þou ne hast nat wel taken kepe to

þe wordes of O ¶ Ovide þat' seiþ. [2605] Vndere þe hony of þe goddes of þi body. is hidde þe venyme þat' scleeþ þi soule [2606] ¶ And Salomon saiþ. ȝif þou häst' found' hony. eete of it' þat' suffiseþ the. [2607] ffor ȝif þou ete of it' out' of mesure. þou shalt' spewe and be nedy and poore. [2608] and *per*auenture criste haue þe in despite. and haþ turned away from þe his face and his eeres of mysericord' [2609] And also he haþ suffred *þat* þou hast be [1]punshed in þe manere þat' þou hast' trespased. [2610] Thou hast' doon synne ·aȝeinst' our lord crist' [2611] ffor certes iij. enemyes of mankynde þat' is to seyne þe flessh̄. þe feende. and þe worlde [2612] thowe hast' suffred hem entred into þine hous wilfully by þe wyndowe of þi body. [2613] And hast' nat' defended þi self sufficiently aȝeinst' her assawtes and her *temptacions* so þat' þei han wounded þe saule in .v. places. [2614] þis is to sayn þe dedly synnes þat' bene entred into þine hert' by þi .v. wyndowes [2615] and in þe same manere our lord *crist* haþ suffred and willed þat' þise iij. enemyes bene entred into þi hous by þi wyndowes [2616] and haue ywounded þi douȝtere in þe forsaide manre

[2617] ¶ Certes q*uod* Melebius I se wel þat' ȝe enforce ȝou moche by wordis to ouercome me in suche a manere þat' I shal not' venge me on myn enemyes. [2618] shewing' me þe periles *and* þe eueles þat' myghten falle of þis vengeaunce [2619] But' who so wold' considere in alle vengeances þe periles and euels þat' myȝten swe of vengeance takinge [2620] a mon wold neuere take vengeance and þat' were harme [2621] ffor by þe vengeaunce takinge. bene þe wikked men disseuered fro*m* þe good men. [2622] And þei þat' han wille to do wikkednesse restreynen her wikked p*ur*poos whan they sene þe punshynge and chastising' of trespasoures.

[2623] [And to this answered dame Prudence: 'Certes,' said she, 'I grant you that from vengeance come many

advantages as well as many evils; [2624] yet vengeance belongeth not to a "senglere persone," but only to the judges, and to those who have jurisdiction over evil-doers.'] [2625] And ȝit' say I more þat' as riȝt' as so senglere persone synneþ in takinge vengeaunce of a noþer man [2626] Riȝt' so synneþ þe Iuge ȝif he doo no vengeaunce on hem þat' it' haue deserued [2627] ¶ ffor Senec' seiþ þus ¶ þat' maister he saiþ is good þat' repreueþ shrewes [2628] ¶ And as Cassiodorie seiþ. A man dredeþ to do outrage whan he woote and knoweþ þat' it displeseþ to þe Iugges and þe souereyns. [2629] And anoþer seiþ ¶ The Iuge þat' dredeþ to do riȝt'. makeþ men schrewes [2630] ¶ And seint' Paule þe appostel seiþ in his epistel whan he writeþ to þe Romayns þat' þe Iuge berent' not' þe spere wiþ-outen cause. [2631] but' þei beren it' to punshe þe schrewes and mysdoers and forto defende þe good men. [2632] ȝif ȝe wil þan take vengeance of ȝoure enemyes ȝe shal retourne or haue ȝoure recours to þe Iuge þat' haþ þe Iurisdictiõ vpon him [2633] and he shal punsshe hem as þe lawe askeþ and requereþ·

[2634] ¶ A quod Melebies þis vengeance likeþ me no þinge [2635] I by-þenk me nowe and take hede. howe fortune haþ norsshed me fro my childhode. and haþ hulpen me to passe mony a stronge paas [2636] ¶ Now wil I assaien her trowinge wiþ goddes helpe þat' he shal helpe me my shame forto [1]venge.

[2637] ¶ Certes quod Prudence ȝif ȝe wil wirk' by my counsaiH ȝe shul not' assaien fortune by no way [2638] ne ȝe shul not' lene ne bowe vnto hire. after þe wordes of Senec'. [2639] ffor þingges þat' bene folily done. and þat' bene in hope of fortune shullen neuere come to good eende. [2640] ¶ And as þe same senc' saiþ. þe more clere and þe more shynynge þat' fortune is. þe more brotel and þe sonner brekeþ she. [2641] tresteþ not' on her for she nys nat' stedfast'. [2642] ffor whan þowe wenest' or trowest' to be more swre or siker of her

helpe. she wil faile þee. [2643] ¶ And *per* as 3e sayn · þat' fortune haþ norsshed 3ou from 3oure childhode. [2644] I say þat' in so mochel shal 3e þe lasse trest' in her'. and in her witt' [2645] ¶ ffor Senec' saiþ. what' man þat' is norsshed by fortune? she makeþ him to grete a foole [2646] ¶ Now þan siþ 3e desire and aske vengeaunce. and þe' vengeance þat' is done [*selon l'ordre de droit et devant le juge ne te plaist*, [2647] *et la vengence qui se fait*] in hope of fortune is perilous and vncerteyn. [2648] þen haue noon oþer remedy. but' forto haue 3oure cours vntò þe souereyn Iuge þan vengeþ alle vilanyes and wrongges. [2649] and he shal venge 3ou. After hym self witnesseþ: where as he saiþ [2650] ¶ leueþ þe vengeance to me./ & I shal doo it'

[2651] ¶ Melebius answered. 3if I ne venge me no3t' of þe vilanye þat' men han done to me. [2652] I shal somne or warne hem þat' han do to me þoo vilanyes and al oþer to doo me anoþer vilanye. [2653] ¶ ffor it' is writen. 3if þou take no vengeaunce of an olde vilanye / þow somnest' þine aduersaries to doo an newe vilanye. [2654] And also for my suffraunce men wolden doo me so moche vilanye þat' I my3t' neiþer bere it' ne susteyne it'. [2655] And so þan I shulde be kept' ouer lawe [2656] ¶ ffor men sayn In mochel suffringe shul mony þingges vnto þe whicñ þow shalt' not' mow suffre

[2657] ¶ Certes quod prudence I graunte 3ow þat' ouer mochel suffraunce is not' good [2658] But' 3it' ne foloweþ it' not' þer-of. That' euery persone to whome men doo vilany take of it' vengeaunce. [2659] ffor þat' appertaneþ & longeþ oonly to the Iuges. ffor þei shul venge vilanyes and Iniuries. [2660] And herfore þoo two autoritees þat' 3e han saide aboue ben oonly vnderstonden in þe Iuges [2661] for whan þei suffre ouer ¶ mykel þe wrongges and vilenyes to be done

wiþ-outⁱ ponshinge. [2662] þei sommone natⁱ a man al only forto doo newe wrongges butⁱ þei commaunden itⁱ [2663] ¶ Also a wise man seiþ þatⁱ þe Iuge þatⁱ correcteþ notⁱ þe synner. Commaundeþ and biddeþ hym to synne [2664] and þe Iuges *and* [1]souereynes myȝten in her londe so moche suffre of þe Shrewes and mysdoers [2665] þatⁱ þei shulden bye suchⁱ suffraunce by processe of tyme wexen of suchⁱ power and myȝtⁱ. þatⁱ þei shuld putte outⁱ þe Iuges and souereynes from her places. [2666] and atⁱ þe lastⁱ do hem lose her lordshippes

[2667] ¶ I putⁱ caas riȝtⁱ nowe ȝe had leue to venge ȝou. [2668] I say þatⁱ ȝe ben nouȝtⁱ of myghtⁱ ne powerⁱ as nowe to venge ȝou. [2669] ffor ȝif we wil make comp*a*risoñ vnto þe myȝtⁱ of ȝ*our* aduersaries. ȝe shul fynde in many þingges þatⁱ I haue shewed ȝouⁿ er þis þatⁱ her condicioñ is better þan ȝoure. [2670] And þerfore say I þatⁱ itⁱ is good as nowe þatⁱ ȝe suffre and be pacientⁱ

[2671] ¶ fferþer more ȝe knowen wel þatⁱ after þe comoñ Sawe itⁱ is a woodenesse a man to stryue wiþ a strenger. or wiþ a more myȝty man þan hym self. [2672] And forto stryue wiþ a man of euen strengthⁱ þatⁱ is to say wiþ as stronge a man as he is itⁱ is perile. [2673] And forto stryue wiþ a waikere man itⁱ is foly [2674] And þerfore shuldⁱ a man flee stryuynge as mochel as he myȝtⁱ [2675] ¶ ffor Salomon saiþ. It is a grete worship a man to kepe hym from noyse and stryf. [2676] And ȝif itⁱ so byfalle or happe þatⁱ a man of gretter myȝtⁱ and strenger þan þou artⁱ do þe greu*a*unce. [2677] stody and byse þe raþer to stille þe same greu*a*unce þan forto venge þe [2678] ¶ ffor Senecⁱ saiþ Thatⁱ he putteþ hym in grete perile. þatⁱ stryueþ wiþ a gretter man þan he is him self [2679] And Caton saiþ. ȝif a man of hier astate or of degre or more myȝty þan þou, do þe an oþer greu*a*unce suffre hym [2680] for he þatⁱ onys haþ greued þe

may anoþer tyme releue þe. and helpe þe. [2681] 3it' sette I caas 3e haue boþ my3t' and licence forto venge 3ou. [2682] I saie þat' þer bene ful mony þingges þat' shuld restreyn 3ou of vengeance takinge [2683] and make 3ou forto enclyne to suffre and forto haue pacience in þe wrongges þat' bene done to 3ou. [2684] ffurst' and forward' 3if 3e wil considere þe defautes þat' bene· in 3oure persone. [2685] for which defautes god haþ suffred 3ou to haue tribulacioñ as I haue saide byfore [2686] ¶ ffor þe Poete saiþ. þat' we ou3ten paciently þe tribulacions to take þat commen to vs whan þat' we þenken and consideren þat' we han deserued to haue hem [2687] ¶ And seint' Gregor seiþ. That' whan a man considereþ wel þe nombre of' his defautes and of his synnes [2688] þan peynes and þe tribulacioñs þat' he suffreþ semen þe lasse vnto him [2689] And in as moche as him þenkeþ his synnes· more hevie and· greuous [2690] in so moche his peyne is þe li3ter / and þe lesier vnto hym [2691] ¶ Also 3e owen to enclyne and bowe 3oure herte to take þe pacience of our lorde Ihesu crist'. As seiþ seint Petre in his epistell [2692] Ihesu crist' he seiþ haþ suffred for vs and 3euen ensample to euery man to folowe *and* to swee hym [2693] for he did neuere ¶ synne ne neuere cam a vileyns worde out' of his mouþe [2694] whan men cursed hym he cursed hem nou3t' [. . . . . *no gap*] [2695] Also þe grete pacience ¶ whiche þat' seintes þat' bene in paradis han had in tribulacions þat' þei han suffred wiþ-outen her desert' or gilt'. [2696] aught' moch stire 3ou to pacience [2697] ¶ fferþermore 3e shal conforte 3ou to haue pacience [2698] consideringe þat' þe tribulacions of þis worlde. but litel ¶ while enduren. and soon bene ypassed and goon [2699] And þe Ioye þat a man secheþ to haue by pacience in tribulacions is perdurable. after þat' þe

appostel seiþ. in his Epistel [2700] ¶ The Ioie of god he seiþ is *per*durable. þat' is to saye euerlastinge. [2701] Also troueþ and bileueþ stedfastly þat' he nys nat' wel norsshed ne wel ytauȝt' þat' cannot' haue pacience ne wil not' receyue pacience [2702] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ. That' þe doct*r*ine and þe witte of man is knowe by pacience. [2703] And in anoþere place he seiþ. þat' he þat' kepeþ hy*m* by pacience ¶ gouerneþ him by grete prudence [2704] ¶ And þe Same Salomon seiþ The angre and þe wrethful man makeþ noyses. and þe pacient' man attempreþ and stilleþ him self [2705] ¶ he saiþ also it' is more worthi to be pacient' þan for to be riȝt' stronge. [2706] And he þat' may haue lordship of his owne hert' is more to preise þan he þat' by his fors takeþ grete Citees and townes [2707] Therfore seiþ seint' Iame in his Epistel. þat' pacience in a grete vertue of *per*fectioñ.

[2708] [*Certes, dit Melli*bée*, je vous ottroye, dame Prudence, que patience est une grant vertu,*] [2709] But' euery man may nat' haue þe *per*fectioñ þat we seken. [2710] ne I. am not' of þe nombre of riȝt' *per*fit men. [2711] for myn hert' may neuer be in pees: vnto þe tyme it be venged [2712] ¶ And al be it' so þat' it' was grete perile to myne ¶ ennemyes to done me a vilanye in takinge vengeance vpon me. [2713] ȝit' token þei noon hede vppon þe perile. but' fulfilleden her wik¶ked wille and her corage [2714] And þer-for me þenkeþ men ouȝt' not' repreue me þouȝe I putte me in a litel perile to venge me. [2715] and þouȝe I doo a grete excesse. þat' is to say þouȝe I venge oon out*r*age by a noþere

[2716] ¶ O quod dame prudence ȝe say ȝoure wille. and as ȝou likeþ. [2717] But' in no caas of þe world' a man shuld' not do outrage ne excesse forto venge hy*m* [2718] ¶ ffor Cassidore seiþ þat' as euel doþ he þat' auengeþ him by outrage. as he þat' doþ þe

out*rage*. [2719] And þer-for 3e shul venge 3ou after þe ordere of ry3t' þat' is to sain̄ [1]by þe lawe and by noon excesse ne noon outrage. [2720] And also if 3e wil venge 3ou of þe outrage of 3oure aduersaries in oþer manere þan ri3t' comaundeþ 3e synnen [2721] ¶ And þerfore saiþ Senec'. þat' a man shal neuere venge schrewdenesse by schrewdenesse / [2722] And if 3e say þat' ri3t' axeþ a man to defende violence by violence. and fi3tynge by fi3tinge. [2723] certes 3e say soth̄. whan þe defence is done anoon with̄-outen interualle or wiþ-out' taryinge or delay. [2724] for to defenden hym and not' forto vengen hym. [2725] And it' bihoueþ þat' a man put' such̄ attemperance in his defence [2726] þat' men haue no cause no matere to repreuen̄ hym þat' defendeþ hym of excesse and of outrage. [*car autrement ce seroit contre droit et contre raison* (Le Mén.)] [2727] ¶ Parde 3e knowen weH þat' 3e maken noon defence as nowe forto defende 3ou but' forto venge 3ou [2728] And so sweþ it' þat' 3e han no wille to doo 3oure dede attemperally. [2729] and þerfore me þenkeþ þat' pacience is goode ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: þat' he þat' is nat' patient' shal haue grete harme

[2730] ¶ Certes quod melcby I graunte 3ou þat' whan a man is impacient' and wrooþ of þat' þat' toucheþ hym nat' and of þat' þat' perteneþ not' to hym. þou3e it' harme him it' is no wondere [2731] ¶ ffor þe lawe saiþ. þat' he is coupable. þat' entermeteþ hym or melleþ hym wiþ suche þinge as apperteyneþ nat' to hym [2732] ¶ And Salomon saiþ. That' he þat' entermeteþ hym of þe noise or of þe strif of an oþer man is like to hym. þat' takeþ þe hounde by þe eeres [2733] and [*aussi comme cellui qui prent le chien par les oreilles*] is oþer while biten wiþ þe hounde. [2734] ¶ Ri3t' in þe same wise is it' reson þat' he haue harme þat' by his impacience medleþ him of þe noise of an oþer man. wher þat' it' appertaneþ not to him [2735] ¶ But' 3e knowe wel þat' þis dede and

þis greef *and* þis dissese toucheþ me riȝt nygh. [2736] And þerfore þouȝe I be wroþe and impacient it is no mervaile: [2737] and sauynge ȝoure grace I can not see þat it myȝt gretlich harme me. þouȝe I toke vengeañce [2738] ffor I am Riccher and more myȝty þan myn enemyes bene. [2739] And wel knowen ȝee þat by money and by hauyng grete possessiõs bene all þingges of þis world ygouerned [2740] ¶ And Salomon seiþ. þat all þingges obeyen to monay.

[2741] [*Prudence, quant elle oy son mary vanter de sa richesse et de sa puissance, et soy esjouir, et*] dispreising þe poor of his aduersaries. Tho she spak and seide in þis wise. [2742] Certes dere sire I graunt ȝou þat ȝe bene riche and myȝty. [2743] and þat richesses ben good to hem þat han wel goten hem. and þat wel can vsen hem [2744] ffor riȝt as þe body of a man may not lyue wiþ-out þe saule. no more may it live wiþ-out temporal goodes. [2745] And by richesse may a man gete hym grete worship [2746] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Pamphilles. ȝif an neterdes douȝtere he saiþ be riche she may chese of a thowsand men [*lequel qu'elle veult pour son mary* [2747] *car* (Le Ménagier, tome i)] [. . *no gap in the MS.*] oon wil not forsake her ne refuse her. [2748] And þus Pamphilles seith also ¶ ȝif þou be riȝt happy þat is to say riȝt riche þow shalt fynde a grete nombre of felawes and frendes. [2749] And ȝif þi fortune that þou wexe poor. fare wel frendship and felawship. [2750] for þou shalt bene allone wiþ-oute eny companye. but ȝif it be þe company of poor folk [2751] // And ȝit seiþ þis Pamphilles more ouer þat þei þat bene thral and bonde of lynage. shullen be made worþi and noble by richessesse [2752] And riȝt so as by richesses þer commen mony goodes. Riȝt so by pouert þer commen mony harmes and euels. [2753] ffor grete pouerte con-

streyneth a man to doo mony euels [2754] ¶ And þerfore clepeþ Cassidore pouert'. þe modere ruyne. [2755] That' is to say þe modere of ouerþrowinge or falling' downe [2756] ¶ And þerfore Pers Alfons saiþ. Oon of þe grettest' aduersitees of þis world' is [2757] whan a free [man] by kinde is constreyned by pouert' to eten þe almesse of his enemye [2758] ¶ And þe Same Seiþ Innocent' in oon of his bokes. He seiþ þat' soriful and vnhappy is þe condition of a poor begger. [2759] ffor 3if he askeþ not' his mete he dyeþ for hungere. [2760] [*et se ils demandent, ils meurent de honte;*] Necessite constreyneþ hym to aske. [2761] And þerfore seiþ Salomon. That' better is to dye þan forto haue suche pouerte [2762] ¶ And as þe Same Salomon seiþ Better is to dye a bitter deeþ þan forto lyuen in swich wise [2763] ¶ By þise resons þat' .I haue seide vnto 3owe and by mony resons þat' I coude saie [2764] I graunte þat' richesses bene good to hem þat' geten hem well And vsen hem wel. [2765] And þerfore wil I shewe 3ow how 3e shul haue 3ou. and howe 3e shal bere 3ou in gaderinge of richesses. and in what' manere 3e shul vsen hem

[2766] ffirst' 3e shul geten hem with-out grete desire. by good leisere sokingly. and not' ouerhastely. [2767] ffor a man þat' is to desiringe to geten richesse. abandoneþ hym to þeft' and to all oþer evels [2768] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Salomon ¶ he þat' hasteþ hym to bysily to wexe ricche shal be noon Innocent' [2769] ¶ He saiþ also þat' þe Richesse þat' hastely commeþ to a man. sone and li3tly gooþ and passeþ from hym [2770] ¶ But' þat' richesse þat' commeþ alway litel and litel. wexeþ alway and multilieþ [2771] ¶ And sire 3e shul gete richesse by 3oure witte. and by 3oure travaile. vnto 3oure profite [2772] and þat' wiþ-outen wronge or harme doynge to eny oþere persone. [2773] ffor þe lawe

seiþ ¶ That' he ne makeþ nat' hym self riche. ȝif he do harme to a noþer wight' [2774] ¶ This is to say þat' nature defendeþ and forbedeþ by ryght'. þat' [1]no man make him self riche wiþ þe harme of a noþere personñ. [2775] ¶ And Tullius saiþ. þat' no sorowe ne no drede of dethñ ne of þouȝt' þat' may falle to a man [2776] is so· mochel aȝeinst' nature as a man to encrees his owne profite to þe harme of anoþer man [2777] ¶ And þouȝe þe grete men and þe riche men geten rychesses more liȝtly þan þou. [2778] ȝit' shalt' þou nat' be ydel ne sclowe to þi prophete. ffor þou shalt' in al þinge and in al wise fle ydelnesse [2779] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: That' ydelnesse techeþ a man to do mony eueles [2780] ¶ And þe Same Salomon seiþ. þat' he þat' travailleþ and bysieþ him to tille his londe shal ete þe brede. [2781] But' he þat' is ydel and casteþ him to doo no bysynesse ne occupacioñ shal falle into pouert' and dye for hungere. [2782] And he þat' is ydel and sclowe. can neuer fynde conable tyme forto do his profite [2783] ¶ ffor þer is a versifiour þat' saiþ. That' þe ydel man excuseþ hym in wyntere. be cause of þe grete colde. And in somer by enchesoñ of þe grete hete [2784] ¶ ffor þise causes seiþ Catoñ ¶ Wakeþ and enclyneþ ȝou not' ouermoche forto sclepe. for ouer moche rest' norssheþ and causeþ mony vyces [2785] ¶ And þerfore seiþ seint' Ierom ¶ Doþ somme good dedys þat' þe deuel whichñ is oure enemye ne fynde ȝou nat' vnocupied. [2786] ffor þe deuel ne takeþ not' liȝtly vnto his worchinge suchñ as he fyndeþ occupied in goode werkes

[2787] ¶ Than þus in geting' of Richesse ȝe moten flee ydelnesse / [2788] ¶ and afterward' ȝe shul vse þe richesse whichñ ȝe han geten by ȝoure witte and by ȝoure travaile [2789] in suchñ a manere þat' men holde ȝou nat' to scarce ne to sparinge. ne to fool large. þat' is to sayn ouer large a spendere [2790] ¶ ffor riȝt' as men blamen an Auarous man by cause of his scarsete and chyncherie [2791] In þe same manere is he blamed

þat' spendeþ ouer largely. [2792] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Catoñ. vse he saiþ þe Richesse þat' þou hast' ygeten. [2793] in such a manere. þat' þer be no matere ne cause to calle þe neiþer wrecche ne chynche. [2794] ffor it' is grete shame a man to haue a poor hert' and a rich purs [2795] ¶ He seiþ also þe goodes þat' thow hast' geten vse hem by-mesure þat' is to say. spende mesurably [2796] ffor þei þat' folyly waasten and dispenden þe goodes þat' þei haue. [2797] whan þei han no more *pro*pre of her owne þei shape hem to take þe goodes of a noþer man. [2798] ¶ I say þan þat' ȝe shal flee Auarice / [2799] vsinge ȝoure richesse as in such manere þat' men say not' þat' ȝoure goodes bene yburied. [2800] but' þat ȝe [1]haue hem in ȝoure myght' and in ȝoure weldinge [2801] ffor þe wise repreeueþ þe Auerous man and seiþ in two versus. [2802] Wherto and whi bereþ a man his goodes by his Auarice and knoweþ wel þat' nedes he most' deye. [2803] for deþ is þe ende of euery man as in þis present' lif [2804] and for what' cause or encheson ioyneþ he him or knytteþ he hym so fast' vnto his goodes [2805] þat' all his wittes mowe not' disseuere hym or departen hym fro his goodes. [2806] and knoweþ wel or aught' knowe þat' whan he is dede he shal no þinge bere wiþ him out' of þis world [2807] ¶ And þerfore seiþ seynt' Austyne. That' þe Auerous man is likned into helle. [2808] þat' þe more it' swoloweþ. þe more desire it' haþ to swalowe and deuowre [2809] And as wel as ȝe wolde eschwe to be cleped an Auarous man or chynche [2810] as wel shul ȝe kepe ȝou and gouerne ȝou so and in such a wise so þat' men ne cleped ȝou not' *fool* large [2811] ¶ Therfore seiþ Tullius The goodes he seiþ of þine hous shuld nat' bene hidde ne kept' so cloos but' þat' þei myȝt' be opned by Pite and by bonairte [2812] þat' is to sayn to ȝeue hem *par*te þat' han grete nede [2813]

Ne þi goodes shuld not' bene so open to be euery mannys goodes [2814] ¶ Afterward' in getinge of 3oure richesse & in vsyng' of hem 3e shul alway haue þre þingges in 3oure hert'. [2815]. þat' is to sayn. our lorde god. conscience and good name [2816] ¶ ffirst' 3e shul haue god in 3oure hert' [2817] and for no richesse 3e shul doo no þinge wh̄ich̄ may in eny manere displese crist' þat' is youre creatour' and 3our' maker'. [2818] ¶ ffor after þe worde of Salomon. it' is better to haue a litel good with þe loue of god [2819] þan to haue moche good and tresour' and lese þe loue of' his lorde god [2820] ¶ And þe prophet' seiþ. þat' better it' is to bene a good man, and haue a litel good and tresour'. [2821] þan to be holden a shrewe and haue grete Ricchesse. [2822] And 3it' say I ferþermore þat' 3e shulden alway doon 3our' bisynesse to gete 3ou richesses [2823] so þat' 3e gete hem wiþ good conscience [2824] ¶ And þe Appostel saiþ. Ther nys no þinge in this world' of which̄ we shuld haue so grete Ioye as whan our conscience bereþ vs witnesse of good [2825] ¶ And þe wise man saiþ. The substañce of a man is ful good whan synne nys nat' in his coscience [2826] ¶ Afterward' in getinge of 3oure richesses / and in vsing' of hem [2827] þe most' haue grete bysynesse and grete diligence þat' 3oure [1]good name be alway kept' and conserued [2828] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ That' better it' is and more availleþ a man to haue good name þan to haue grete richesse [2829] ¶ And þerfore he saiþ in a noþer place Doo grete diligence seiþ Salomon in kepinge of þi frend' and of þi good name. [2830] ffor it' shal lenger abide wiþ þe þan eny tresour' be it' neuere so precious. [2831] And certes he shuld not' be cleped a gentil man. þat' after god and good conscience all þingges left' ne doþ his dyligence and bysynesse to kepen his good name [2832] ¶ And Cassidore saiþ: þat' it' is signe of a gentill hert' whan a man desireþ and loueþ to haue a goode name./

[2833] ¶ And þerfore seiþ seintꝰ Austyne. Ther bene two þingges þatꝰ are necessarye and nedefuƚƚ. [2834] & þatꝰ is good conscience and good loos. [2835] thatꝰ is to sayn good conscience to þine owne *per*sone inwardꝛ And good loos for þi neighbour outwardꝛ. [2836] And he þatꝰ tresteþ him so moche in his good conscience [2837] þatꝰ he displese and setteþ atꝰ nouȝt his good name or loos. *and* rekkeþ notꝰ þouȝe he kepe notꝰ his good name. he nys but a crueƚƚ cherle

[2838] ¶ Sire now haue I schewed ȝou how ȝe shuld doo in kepinge rychesse and howe ȝe shuldꝛ vsen hem [2839] ¶ I see wel þatꝰ for þe trustꝰ þatꝰ ȝe haue in ȝoure ricchesse. ȝe wil meuen werre and bataille [2840] I counsaile þatꝰ ȝe bygynne no werre. in trestꝰ of ȝoure Richesse. ffor þei ne suffisen notꝰ werres to Mayntene [2841] ¶ And þerfore saiþ a Philosophre. Thatꝰ man þatꝰ desireþ *and* wil algates haue werre. shal neuere haue suffisaunt. [2842] ffor þe Richer þatꝰ he is þe gretter dispence mote he make ȝif he wil haue worship or victorie [2843] ¶ And Salomon saiþ þatꝰ þe gretter richesse þatꝰ a man hathꝫ. þe gretter dispendours he haþ. [2844] And dere sir al be itꝰ soo. þatꝰ for ȝoure richesse ȝe mowe haue mochel folkꝰ. [2845] ȝitꝰ byhoueþ itꝰ notꝰ. ne itꝰ is notꝰ good to bygynne werre. þer as ȝe may in oþer manere haue pees vnto ȝoure worship and profite [2846] ¶ ffor þe victorie of batailles þatꝰ bene in þis worldꝛ lithꝫ notꝰ in grete nombre or multitude of puple. ne in vertue of man. [2847] butꝰ itꝰ lithꝫ in þe wille and in þe hand of ourꝰ lord god almyȝty [2848] ¶ And þerfore Iudas makabeus whichꝫ was goddys knyȝt [2849] whan he shuld fiȝtꝰ aȝeinst his aduersarie þatꝰ had a gretter nombre and a gretter multitude of folkꝰ And strenger þan was þis puple of Makabe. [2850] ȝitꝰ he recomforte his lytel ¹companye and saide riȝtꝰ in þis wise [2851] ¶ Also liȝtly quod he may *our* lord god almyȝty ȝeue victorie to fewe folkꝰ

as to monye [2852] ffor þe victory of bataille commeþ not' by þe grete nombre of puple [2853] but' it' commeth fro our lord of heuene. [2854] And dere sire for as moch̄ As þer nys no mạn certeyn ȝif it' be worþ þat' god ȝeue hym victorie [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] or nouȝt'. aftere þat' Salomon seiþ. [2855] Therfore euery man shulde gretly drede werrus to bygynne [2856] And by cause þat' [in] batailles [are] many p*er*iles [2857] & [it may] happen oþer while þat' as sone is þe grete man sclayn as þe litel man [2858] ¶ And as it is ywritte in þe secon̄d' book' of kingges The dedes of batailles bene auenturous and no þinge certeyn. [2859] for as liȝtly is oon̄ hurt' wiþ a spere as a noþer [2860] And þerfore it' is grete perile in werre. Therfore shuld a man flee and eschewe werre in as mochel as a man may goodly ./ [2861] ffor Salomon seiþ: He þat' loueþ perile shal falle in perile

[2862] After þat' dame prudence had spoken in þis manere Melebi*us* answerd' and saide. [2863] I see wel dame *þat'* by ȝoure faire wordes and by ȝoure resons þat' ye han schewed me. þat' þe werre likeþ ȝou no þinge. [2864] But' I haue not' ȝit' herde ȝoure counsaile howe I shal doo in þis nede.

[2865] Certes quod she I counsaile ȝo^{u} þat' ȝe accorde wiþ ȝoure aduersaries *and* þat' ȝe haue pees *with* hem [2866] ¶ ffor seint' Iame seiþ in his Epistel' ¶ That' by concord' and pees þe smale richesses wexen grete [2867] And by debate and discord' þe grete richesse fallen doun. [2868] And ȝe knowe wel þat' oon of þe grettest' and most' souereyn þinge þat' is in þis world' is vnite and pees [2869] And þerfore saiþ our lord Ih*es*u crist' to his apostel in þis wise [2870] ¶ Wel happy and blessed bene þei þat' louen and pu[r]chasen pees for þei bene called children of god [2871] ¶ A quod Meleby nowe se I wel þat' ȝe loue not' myn h[o]noure and my worship. [2872] ȝe knowen wel þat' myne

aduersaries haue bygonnen þis debate and brigge by her outrage [2873] And 3e See wel þat' þei ne requiren ne preien me nat' of pees ne þei asken not' to be recounsailled. [2874] wil 3e þan þat' I goo meke and obeye me to hem. and crye hem mercye. [2875] ffor soth þat' were not' my worship. [2876] ffor ri3t' as men sayñ þat' ouer grete hu*m*blesse engendreþ dispisinge. so fareþ it' by to grete hu*m*ilite & mekenesse

[2877] ¶ Than bygan dame prudence to make semblaun*t*' of wreth and saide. [2878] Certes sire sauf 3oure grace I loue 3o*ur*' honoure and 3oure profite as I doo myn owne and euere ha'ue done [2879] ne 3e ne mowen not' sayn þe cont*r*arie. [2880] And 3it' 3if I had saide þat' 3e shulde haue p*u*rchased þe pees *and* þe reconsiliacioñ I ne had not' moche mystake me ne saide amys [2881] ffor þe Wise man seiþ. The dissencion bygynneþ by a noþer man. *and* þe reconsilynge by þi silf. [2882] And þe p*r*ophete saiþ. fflee schrewdenesse and doo goodnesse [2883] ¶ Seke pees and folowe it' in as moche as in þe is. [2884] ¶ 3it' seiþ he not' þat' 3e shul Swe raþer to 3oure aduersaries for pees þan þei shullen to 3ou. [2885] ffor I knowe wel þat' 3e bene so hard' herted. þat' 3e wil do no þing' for mee [2886] ¶ And Salomon seiþ: þat' he þat' haþ ouer harde an hert'. at' þe last' shal myshappe and mystide

[2887] ¶ Whan Melebius had seye dame prudence make semblaun*t*' of wreth he saide in þis wise [2888] ¶ Dame I prey 3ou þat' 3e be not' displesed of þingges þat' I saye. [2889] ffor 3e knowe wel þat' I am angry and wroop and þat' is no wondere. [2890] and þei þat' bene wrooþ. weten not' wel what' þei doon ne what' þei seyn [2891] ¶ And þerfore the p*r*ophete seiþ. That' trowbled eyen haue no clere si3t'. [2892] But' saiþ on and counsaile me as 3e likeþ. for I am redy to doo ri3t' as 3e wil desire. [2893] and if 3e repreue me of my foly I am þe more holden to loue 3ou and to preise

3ou [2894] ¶ ffor Salomon saith That he þat reproueþ hym þat dooþ foly. [2895] he shal finde gretter grace þat he þat deceyueþ hym wiþ swete wordes

[2896] Than said Dame prudence. I make no semblant of wreþe ne of anger but for 3oure grete profite [2897] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: he is more wrooþ þat repreueth or chideþ a foole for his folye schewing him semblañt of wreþe [2898] þan he þat supporteþ hym or preiseþ him in his mysdoynge at laugheþ at his foly [2899] ¶ And þis same Salomon seiþ afterward þat by þe soriful vese of a man þat is to sayn by sory and heuy countenaunce of a man [2900] þe foole correcteþ and amendeþ him self

[2901] ¶ Than sayde Meleby I shal not conne answere to so mony resons as 3e putten to me and shewen / [2902] saiþ shortely 3oure wille. and 3oure counsaile and I am al redy to fulfille and performe it

[2903] ¶ Than Dame prudence diskeuered al her wille vnto hym and saide [2904] I counsaile 3ou þat 3e abouen al þinge maken pees bytwene god *and* 3owe [2905] and beþ recoñsailled vnto him and to his grace. [2906] ffor I haue seid 3ow here byfore ¶ God haþ suffred 3ou to haue þis tribulacioñ and dissese for 3oure synnes. [2907] And if 3e doo as I say 3owe [1]god wil sende 3oure aduersaries vnto 3ou [2908] and make hem to falle at 3oure fete redy to 3oure wille and 3oure comaundement [2909] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþe: Whan þe condicion of man is plesaunte and likinge to god [2910] he chaungeth þe hertes of þe mannes aduersaries and constreyneþ hem to bysechen him of pees and of grace [2911] ¶ And I prei 3ou lat me speke wiþ 3oure aduersaries in privy place. [2912] for þei shal not knowe it be 3oure wille ne 3oure assent. [2913] And þan whan I knowe her wiH and assent: I may counsaile 3ou þe more suerly

[2914] ¶ Dame quod Meleby doþ 3our wiH and

3oure lyking' [2915] ffor I putte me fulli in 3oure disposicioñ and 3oure ordyn*ãu*nce

[2916] ¶ Than dame prudence whan [she] segħ þe wille of her husbonde and she delyuered her and toke avice by hure self [2917] þenkinge by her self' how she my3t' bringe þis nede vnto a goode conclusioñ and a good eende [2918] ¶ And whan she see3e her tyme she sent' for þise aduersaries to come vnto her into a pryvy place [2919] and schewed wisely vnto hem þe greet' goodnesse þat' comme þ of pees. [2920] and þe grete harmes *and* periles þat' ben in werre. [2921] and saide to hem in a goo[d]ly manere howe þat' hem ou3ten to haue grete repentance [2922] of þe Iniurie and wronge þat' þei hadden ydone. to Meleby her lorde and vnto her and vnto her dou3ter'.

[2923] And whan þei herden þe goodly wordes of dame Prudence [2924] þei weren so supprised and rauisshed and hadden so gret. Ioie of her' þat' wondere was to telle [2925] ¶ O lady quod þei 3e ¶ han schewed vnto vs þe blissinge of swetnesse aftere þe Sawe of dauid þe *pro*phete. [2926] ffor þe reconsilinge which we ne bene not' worþi to haue in no manere. [2927] but' we ou3t' to requiren it' wiþ grete contricioñ and hu*m*ilite [2928] 3e as 3oure grete goodnesse haþ presented vnto us [2929] Now se we wel þe science and þe konyng' of Salomoñ is ful trewe [2930] for he seiþ þat' swete wordes multiplien and encresen freendes. and maken schrewes to be debonayre and meke

[2931] Certes quod þei we putten oure dede and al our matere. *and* cause alhoolly in 3oure good wille [2932] and bene redy to obeye to þe speche and þe comaundement' of my lord Melebye [2933] ¶ And þerfore our dere and benigne lady we preien 3ou and bysechen 3ou as mekely as we conne or mowen [2934] ¶ þat' [1] it' like vnto 3oure grete goodnesse to fulfille in dede 3oure goodly wordes [2935] ffor we consideren and knowen

þat we han offended and greued my lorde Melebie out of mesure [2936] so fer forþ þat we bene nat a power to maken his a[men]dys. [2937] and þerfore we oblie and bynde vs and our frendes forto doo al his wille and his comaundement [2938] But *per*auenture he haþ such hevynesse and suc̄h wreth̄ to vs ward by cause of our defence [2939] þat he wil enioyne vs suche peyne as we may not bere ne susteyne [2940] ¶ And þerfore noble lady we biseke to 3oure wo*m*manly pite. [2941] takeþ suc̄h avisement in þis nede þat we ne our frendes ben not disherited ne distroied þorgh̄ oure foly

[2942] Certis q*uo*d Prudence it is an harde þinge and ri3t perilous [2943] þat man put him al vtterly in þe arbitracioñ and Iugement and in þe myght and power of his enemyes [2944] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ Leueþ and 3eueþ credence to þat I shal sayn ¶ I say q*uo*d he 3if puple and gouernours of holy church̄ [2945] to þi sone. to þi wif and þi frende. ne to þi broþer. [2946] nè 3eue þou neuere my3t ne maistrie of þi body while þou lyuest [2947] ¶ Nowe sith þat he forfendeþ. þat man shuld not 3eue to his broþer ne to his freende þe my3t of his body [2948] Than by a strenger reson he forfendeþ and forbedeþ. a man to 3eue hym self vnto his enemye [2949] ¶ And naþeles I counsaile 3owe þat 3e ne mystrest not my lorde [2950] for I woote wel and knowe verrely þat he is debonaire and meke. large *and* curtays. [2951] *and* no þinge desirous ne coueitous of good ne ricchesse. [2952] ffor nys no þinge in þis world þat he desireþ. saue oonly worship and hono*ur* [2953] ¶ fferþermore I knowe wel and I am ri3t swre þat he wil no þinge doo in þis nede wiþ-out counsaile of me. [2954] And I shal so worche in þis cause þat by þe grace of *our* lorde god 3e shul be recounsailled vnto vs.

[2955] Than seide þei wiþ oon vois. Worshipful

lady we putten vs and oure ¶ goodes al fully in ȝoure wille and in ȝoure disposisicioñ [2956] and bene redy forto come whan̄ daȳ þat̄ it̄ likeþ vnto ȝoure noblenesse to lymyte vs or asigne vs [2957] forto make oure obligacioñ and be bounde as stronge as it̄ likeþ vnto ȝoure goodnesse [2958] þat̄ we may fulfille þe will of ȝow *and* of my lord̄ Melebye.

[2959] And whan dame prudence had ¶ herde þe answers of þise men she bad hem go ageyn prively [2960] And she retorned to her lord̄ Meleby and told hym how shē fand his aduersaries ful repentaunte [2961] knowlechynḡ ful lowly her synnes and trespases / and howe þei weren redy to suffren al peyne. [2962] requirynḡ and preyinḡ hym of mercye *and* pite

[2963] ¶ þan saide Meleby he is wel worþ to haue pardone and forȝeuenesse of his synne. þat̄ excuseþ nat̄ his synne. [2964] but̄ knowlecheþ and repenteþ hym askinḡ Indulgence [2965] ¶ ffor Senec̄ say. There is þe remyssioñ and forȝeuenes: wher as þe confession is. [2966] ffor confession is neighbour to Innocence. [2967] ¶ And he saþ in an oþer place: þat̄ he þat̄ haþ shame of his synne and knowlecheþ it: is worþi remyssioñ. And þerefor̄ I assent̄ and conferme me to haue pees. [2968] But̄ it̄ is good þat̄ we doo it̄ not̄ wiþ-out̄ þassent̄ of oure frendes

[2969] Than was prudence riȝt̄ glad and Ioyful and saide þis [2970] ¶ Certes sire quod she ye han wel and goodly answerd̄. [2971] ffor riȝt̄ as by the counsaile of assent̄ and helpe of ȝoure frendes ȝe haue beñ stired to venge ȝou. and make werre. [2972] Riȝt̄ so wiþ-outen her counsaile shal ȝe not̄ accorde ȝou ne haue pees wiþ ȝoure aduersaries [2973] ¶ ffor þe lawe saiþ. Ther nys no þinḡ so good by way of kynge as þinge to bene vnbounde by hym þat̄ it̄ was ybounde

[2974] And þan Dame prudence wiþ-outen delay or tarynge sent̄ anoon Massagers for her kynne and for her olde frendes whicħ þat̄ were trewe *and* wise [2975]

and tolde hem by order in þe presence of Me[le]bye al þis matere as it' is aboue expressed and declared. [2976] and preyed hem þat' þai wolde ȝeuen her avice *and* counsaile what' best' were to doo in þis nede [2977] ¶ And whan Melibies frendes had taken her avise and deliberacioñ of þis forseide mat*er*e [2978] and hadden examyned it' by grete bysynesse and grete diligence. [2979] þei ȝaf ful counsaille forto haue pees *and* rest'. [2980] And þat' Melebius shuld' receyuen wiþ good hert' his aduersaries to forȝeuenesse and Mercy.

[2981] ¶ And whan dame prudence had herd' þassent' of her lord Melebius and þe counsaile of his frendes [2982] accorde wiþ her wille and her entencioñ [2983] she was wonderly glad in hert' and saide [2984] Ther is and olde prouerbe quod She seiþ: þat' þe goo[d]nesse þat' thou maist' doo þis day do it' [2985] and abyde nat' til [*le soir ne*] to morowe. [2986] And *per*for' I counsaile ȝou þat' ye sende ȝoure massagers whicħ þat' bene discrete and wise. [2987] vnto ȝoure aduersaries Telling' hem in ȝo*ur* bihalf' [2988] þat' ȝif þei wil treté of pees and accorde. [2989] þat' þei shapen hem wiþ-oute delay or taryng' to come vnto vs. [2990] Whicħ þinge was p*er*fourmed in dede. [2991] And whan þise trespasours and repentynge folk of her folies þat is to say þe aduersaries of melebye [2992] hadden herd' what' þe massagers saiden vnto hem. [2993] þei were riȝt' glad and Ioiful and answerden ful mekely and benygnely [2994] ȝeeldinge graces and thonkingges to her lorde Melebie and to al his companye [2995] and shopen hem wiþ-oute lay to goo wiþ þe massagers and obey to þe Comaundement' of her lorde Melebius

[2996] ¶ And riȝt' anoon þei token her way to þe courte of Meleby [2997] and token to hem some of her trewe frendys to make feiþ for hem and forto bene her borowes [2998] ¶ And whan þei were com*m*en to

þe presence of melebius he seide hem þise wordes [2999] It' stondeþ þus quod Melebie and soþ it' is þat' ȝe [3000] causelees and wiþ-out' skille and reson [3001] haue done grete iniuries and wronges to me and to my wiff Prudence And to my ¶ douȝtere also. [3002] ffor ȝe han entred into myn hous by violence [3003] and haue done such outrage þat' alle men knowe wel þat ȝe han deserued þe deeþ [3004] And þerfore wil I knówe and witt' of ȝou [3005] whebere ȝe putte þe punsshment' and þe chastisement' and þe vengeaunce of þis outrage in þe wiH of me and of my wif Dame Prudence or ȝe wil not

[3006] Than þe wisest' of hem þre answerd for hem alle and seide [3007] ¶ Sire quod he we knowe wel þat' we bene vnworþi to come vnto þe Suerte vnto so grete [a lord] and so worþi as ȝe bene. [3008] ffor we han so gretely mystaken vs and haue offended and gilted in such a wise. ageyn ȝoure hegh lordship. [3009] þat' trewly we han deserued þe deeþ. [3010] But' ȝit' for þe grete goodnesse and debonairte þat' aH men don witnesse of ȝoure *per*sone / [3011] We submytten vs to ȝ*our* excellence and benygnyte of ȝoure *gra*cious lordship. [3012] for we bene redy to obey to aH ȝoure comaundementes [3013] bysekinge ȝou þat' of ȝoure merciable pite ȝe wil considere our grete repentaunce and lowe submyssion [3014] and graunt' us forȝeuenesse of our*e* outrageous trespas and offence. [3015] ffor wel we knowen þat' ȝoure liberaH grace and mercie strecche þ forþere into goodnesse þan doþ our outrageous trespas *in*to wikkednesse. [3016] [1]al be it' þat' cursedly and dampnably we han ygilt' aȝeinst' ȝour*e* grete lordship

[3017] ¶ Than Melebye toke hem vp fro þe grounde ful benygnely [3018] and receyued her oblacioñs *and* her londes by her oþes vpon her plegges and borowes. [3019] And assigned hem a certeyn day to retourne vnto his courte [3020] forto accepte and to receyue þe sentence and

Iuggement' of þat' Melebye wil comaunde to be done to hem by þise causes to-fore seide. [3021] whicħ þingges ordeyned / euery man · retou*r*ned home to his hous

[3022] ¶ And' whan þat' Dame Prudence segħ her tyme. she f[r]ayned and asked her lorde [3023] what' vengeaunce he þouȝt' to take on his aduersaries

[3024] To whicħ Melebius answerd' and saide. Certys q*uod* I I thenk' and p*ur*poos me fully [3025] to disherite he*m* and al þat' euer*e* þei haue and forto putte hem in exile for euere moo

[3026] ¶ Cert*is* quod dame Prudence þis were a cruel sentence *and'* mochel aȝeinst resoñ. [3027] ffor ȝe þene riche ynouȝe and haue no nede of o*þer* mennys good /. [3028] and ȝe myȝten lightely gete ȝou a coueitous name [3029] Whiche is a vicious þinge and ouȝte to bene eschewed' of euery man [3030] ¶ ffor aftere þe sawe of þe word' of þe apostel Coueityse is roote of alle harmes [3031] And þerfore it' were better' to ȝou to lese so mochel good of ȝoure owne. þan forto take of her good in þis manere. [3032] ffor bettere it is to lese good witħ Worship þan it' is to wynne good wiþ vileny and shame./ [3033] And euery man ouȝt' to doo his diligence of his bysynesse to geten hym a good name. [3034] And ȝit' shal he not' oonly bysyen him in kepinge his good name [3035] But' he shal also enforsen him alway to doon som*me* þinge by whicħ he may renouelle his good name [3036] ¶ ffor it' is written ¶ The olde good lose or good name of a man · is sone done or goon or passed whan it' is not' newed ne renouelled [3037] And as touching' þat' ȝe sayn ȝe wil exile ȝoure aduersaries [3038] þat' þenkeþ me mocħ aȝeinst' resoñ. and out' of mesure [3039] considered. þe power þat' þei han ȝeuen ȝou vpon hem self [3040] ¶ And it' is writen ¶ that' he is worþi to lesen his privelegge þat' mysvseþ þe myȝt' and þe power þat' is ȝeuen hym [3041] And I sette caas ȝe myȝt' enioyne hem þat' peyne by riȝt' and lawe [3042] which I

trowe ȝe mowe not' doo [3043] I say ȝe myȝt' not' put' it' to execucioñ *per*auenture / [3044] and þan were it' likly to retourne to þe werre as it was byforne [3045] And þerfore ȝif ȝe þan wol þat' men doñ [1]ȝou obeisaunce ȝe most' deme more curtaisly [3046] This is to sayn ȝe most' ȝeue more esy sentences and Iuggementys. [3047] ffor it' is writen þat' he þat' most' curteisly comaundeþ to hy*m* men most' obeyen [3048] ¶ And þerfore I prey ȝou þat' in þis necessite and in þis nede ȝe cast' ȝou to oouercome ȝoure hert'. [3049] ffor Senec' saiþ. He þat' ouercom*m*eþ his hert' ouercom*m*eþ twies./ [3050] ¶ And Tullius saiþ'. Ther nys no þing' so' comendable in a grete lord' [3051] as whan he is debonaire and meke and apaiseth̄ hym self lightly'. [3052] And I prey ȝou þat' ye wil forbere nowe to do vengeaunce [3053] in such̄ a maner þ*at* ȝ*our* good name may be kept' and conserued [3054] and þat' men mow han a cause and matere to preise ȝou of pite and of mercy [3055] and þat' ȝe haue no cause to repent' ȝou of þinge þat' ȝe doon̄ [3056] ¶ ffor Senec' saiþ. He ouercom*m*eþ in an euel manere þat' repenteþ hym of his victorie. [3057] Wherfore I prey ȝou lat' mercy be in ȝoure hert' [3058] to þe effecte and entent' þat' god almyȝty haue mercy on ȝou in his last' Iuggement' [3059] ¶ ffor seint' Iame seiþ in his Epistel ¶ Iuggement' wiþoute mercy shal be do to hym þat' haþ no mercy on another wiȝt'

[3060] Whan Melebius had herd' þe grete skilles and resons of dame Prudence and her wise enformaciōn and techinge. [3061] His hert' gan enclyne to þe wille of his wif. considerynge her trewe entent'. [3062] Confermed. hym anōn and contened fully to worchen aftere her counsaile [3063] and þonked god of whome procedeþ al goodnesse þat' hym sent' a ¶ wif of so grete discreciōn [3064] And whan þe day come þat' his aduersaries shuld' apperen in his presence [3065] he speke

to hem ful goodely And saide in þis wise. [3066] Aĩ be it soo þat of 3oure pride and hegh̃ presumpciõn and foly. and of 3oure negligence and vnkonyng [3067] 3e han mysborn 3ou. and trespased vnto me [3068] 3it for as moche as I See and byholde 3oure grete humilite [3069] and þat 3e bene sory and repentaunte of 3oure giltes. [3070] It constreyneþ me to do 3ou grace./ and mercy [3071] and wherfore I receyue 3ou to my grace. [3072] And for3eue 3ou vtterly al þe offences Iniuries and wrongges þat 3e have done a3einst me and myne [3073] to þis effecte and to þis eende þat god of his endelees mercye [3074] wil at þe tyme of our deyinge for3eue vs our giltes þat we han trespased vnto hym in þis wrecched world. [3075] ffor doutelees3if we bene sory and repentaunte of þe synnes and giltes in þe which̃ we han trespased in þe si3t of oure lorde god. [3076] he is so free and so merciable. [3077] þat he wil for3eue vs oure giltes [3078] and brynge vs to þe blisse þat neuere haþ eende .AmeN.

¶ **Here endeþ chaucers tale of melebye**

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe Monke./ [on leaf 246, back]

Whan ended was my tale of Meleby
And of Prudence and her benygnyte
Our hoost saide as I am feiþful man
And by þe corps precious Matrian
I had leuer þan a barel of ale.
That good loue my wif had herd þis tale
ffor she nys no þinge of such pacience
As was þilk Melebies Dame Prudencé
By goddes bones whan I bete my knaues
She bringeþ me forþ þe grete clubbed staues
And crieth Slee þoo dogges euerychon
And breke of hem boþ bak and boon
And 3if þat eny neighbour of myne
Wil nat to my wif in church enclyne
Or be so hardy to hure do trespas
Whan she commeþ hoom she rampeþ in my face
And crieþ fals coward kepe and wreke þi wiff
By goddes bonys I wil haue þi knyff
And þow shalt haue my distaff and go spynne
ffrom day to nyght þus she wil bygynne
Allas shé seiþ þat euer I was yshape
To wedde a Milksop or a coward ape
That wil be ouercome wiþ euery wi3t
Thow darst not stonde by þi wyues ri3t
þis is my lif but 3if þat I wil fi3t
Out at þe door anoon I mot me di3t
Or ellys I am lest but 3if þat I.
Be like a wilde lyon fool hardy.
I wote wele she wil do me sclee som day
Somme neighhoure of myne and þennes renne away
ffor I am perilous wiþ knyf in honde
Al be it I dar nat her withstonde

ffor she is bigge in Armes be my faiṫ
þaṫ shal he fynde þaṫ hir mysdoþ or saiþ
But laṫ vs passe away fro þis matere
My lorde þe Monke quod he be mery of chiere [leaf 247]
ffor ȝe shul telle a tale trewly
Loo Rouchesteṙ stantṫ here fastṫ by
Ride forþ myn owne lord breke notṫ ȝoure game
Butṫ by my trouþe I knowe nouȝtṫ ȝoure name
Whedere shal I calle ȝou my lorḋ dan Ioħn
Or danne Thomas or danū Alboñ
Of whatṫ hous be ȝe by ȝoure fadeṙ kyn
Itṫ is a gentile pasture þaṫ ȝe goon In
Thow artṫ notṫ like a penannte or a goostṫ
Thus to þe Monke seide oure oste
Vppon my faiþe þou artṫ some officere
Som worþi Sexteyñ or som selerere
ffor by my fadere saule as to my dome
Thow artṫ a maistere whan þou artṫ atṫ home
No poor cloistrere ne no novise
Butṫ gouernour boþ wily and wise
And þer-wiþ-al of braune and of bonys
A wel farynge *per*sone for þe nonys
I pray god ȝeue hym confusioñ
Thaṫ þe furstṫ brouȝtṫ to Religioñ
ffor þou woldestṫ haue bene a tredeforþ ariȝtṫ
Haddestṫ thou as grete leue as þou hast myȝtṫ
To p*er*forme al þi lustṫ in engendrure
Thow haddestṫ ygete mony a creature
Allas whi werestṫ þow so wide a cope
God ȝeue sorowe to me and I were þope
Notṫ oonly þou buṫ euery myȝty man.
Thouȝe he were shore brode vpon þe pan.
Shuld haue a wiff for al þe worlḋ is lorū
Religion haþ take vp al þe cōrn
Of tredyng: and we burile men bēū buṫ shrympes.
Of feble trees þer co*mm*en symple ympes.

This makeþ þat oure heires bene so sclendere
And feble þat þei may not wel engendere
This makeþ þat our wyues wil assay
Relygious folk for þei may bettere paye
Of Venes payment þan may we
God woot no lasshebourues pay ȝe [leaf 247, back]
Be nat wroþe my lorde þouȝe I play
ffor ofte in game a soþe I haue herd say.
This worþi monke toke all in pacience
And saide I wil doon al my diligence
As fer as sowneth unto honeste
To telle ȝou a tale or two or þre
And ȝif þe list to herken hiderwarde
I wil ȝou say þe lif of seint Edward
Or elles furst tregedies wil I ȝou telle
Of which I haue an hundred in my Selle
Tregedie is forto seyn a certeyn storie
As olde bookes make vs memorie
Of hem þat stood in grete prosperite
And is falle out of hie degree
Into Miserye and endeþ wrechedly
And þei bene versefied comonly
Of sex fete of which men callen exametron
In proose eke bene endited mony on
In metere eke and in sondry wise
loo þis claring auȝt ynow suffise
Now herkeneþ ȝif ȝou like to here
But furst I ȝou biseche in þis manere
þouȝe I be ordred tel not þise þingges
Be it of Popes Emperours or kynges
After her Age as men may writen fynde
But telle hem som byfore and some behynde
As it commeþ nowe in my remembraunce
Haue me excused of myn ignoraunce

¶ **Here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe monke**

[*No breaks between the stanzas in the MS, except for the red headings.*]

And here bygynneþ þe monkes tale [*on leaf 247, back*]

I wol by-waile in ma[ne]re of tregedie ¶ þe tale
þe harme of hem þat' stonden in hie degrie
And fallen so þat' þer nys no remedye
To bringe hem out' of her aduersite
ffor certeynly whan fortune list to flee
þer may no man of hir' þe cours wiþholde
Lat' no man trest' on blynde *prosperite*
Beþ ware of þise ensamples trewe *and* olde [leaf 248]

¶ **Primo de Lucifero**:

At' lucifere þouȝe he an aungel were
And nat' a man. but' at' hym I wil bygynne
ffor þouȝe fortune may noon aungel dere
ffroo hiġ degre þer felle he for hys synne
Downe into helle wwere he ȝit' is Inne
O lucifer briȝtest' of aungels alle
Now art' þou Sathanas þat' maist' nat twyhne
Out' of myserie in whicħ þat' þou art' falle

¶ **De Adam**./

Loo Adam in þe feelde of Damyssene
Wiþ goddes oune fyngers wrouȝt' was he
And nouȝt' bygeten of mannes sperme vnclene
And wolt' al Paradys sauyng' oon tree
Had neuere worldly man so hie degre
As Adam vnto he wyþ nyce gou*er*nañce
Was dryue out' of his higħ *prosperite*
To laboure and to helle and to meschañce

¶ De Sampsone

Lo sampson þat' was annunciate
By þe Aungel longe er his natiuite
And was to god almyȝty consecrate
And stoode in noblesse while þat he myȝt see
Was neuer such a noþer as was he
To speke of strengthe, and þerto hardynesse
But' to his wyues tolde he his secree
Thourgh which he sclouȝe hym self for wrecchednesse

¶ Sampson þis noble and myȝty champioñ
Wiþ-oute wepen saue his hondes tway
He sclough and also to-rent' þe lyoñ.
Toward' his weddyng' walking' by þe way
His fals wif coude hym so wel plese *and* pray
Til she his counsaile knewe *and* she vntrewe
To his foos his counsaile gan to wrye
And hym forsoke and toke anoþer newe

Thre hundred foxes toke Sampson for Ire
And alle her tailes he to-gyder bonde.
And Sette þe foxes tailles a fire [leaf 248, back]
ffor he in euery taile had knytte a bronde
And þei brent' al þe cornes of þat' londe
And al her oliuerus an vynes eke
A thowsand he sclough eke wiþ his honde
And had no wepon but' an asses cheke

Whan þei were sclayn so þrested hym þat he
was wel nye lorn wherfor he gan to preye
þat' god wolde of his peyne haue som pite
And sende hym drynke or ellys most' he deye
And out of his asses cheke þat' was so dreye
Out' of a wonge toth spronge anoñ a welle
Of whiche he dronk' ynouȝe shortly to [. .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] telle

By verray force at' Algason vpon a ny3t'
Maugre the philistiens of þat' Cite
þe gatys of þat' toune he haþ vp pli3t'
And on his bak caried hem haþ he
Hie vpon an hille þat' men my3t' See
O noble almy3ty sampson leef and dere
Haddest' þou nat' to wommen told þi secre
In al þis world ne had ben þi pere

This Sampson neiþer Sither dronk ne wyne
Ne on his hede come neiþere rasour' ne Shere
[. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
ffor al þe strengt̄h in his heres were
And fully xx^{ti} wynter 3eer by 3ere
He had of Israel þe gouernaunce.
But' he shal wepe mony a tere
ffor wo*m*men men bryngen to meschaunce

To his lemmon his Dalyaunce he told'
That' in his herus al his strengthe lay
And falsly to his foomen she hy*m* sold'
And sclepinge in her barme vpon a day
She made to clippe or shere his heer away
And made his foomen all his craft' to aspyen
And whan þat' þei foond̄e hy*m* in þis aray
þei bounde hym fast' and put' out' his yen

But' er his heer was yclipped or shaue
Ther was no boonde wiþ which̄ men my3t' hy*m* bynde
But' now he is in p*ri*son put' in a kauc [leaf 219]
Where as þei made hym at' þe querne grynde
O noble Sampson strengest' of mankynde
O whilom Iuge in glorie & richesse
Now maist' þow wepe wiþ þine eyen blynde
Siþens þow art' from wele falle into wrecchednesse

The eende of þise catyfs was as I shal say
His ffoomen made a feestꝫ vpon a day
And made hym as her foole to-forn hem play
And þis was [in] a temple of a grete aray
But ꝫ at ꝫ þe lastꝫ he made a foule afray
ffor he two postes shoke and made hem falle
And downe fiłł temple and al þer itꝫ lay
And sclough̄ hym self and eke his foomen alle

This is to say þe princes euerechon̄
And eke a thowsand bodyes were þere sclayn̄
Wiþ fallingꝫ of þe grete temple of ston̄
Of Sampson ne wil I no more sayn̄
Be ware of þise ensamples olde *and* playn
þatꝫ no man telle her counsaile to her wyves
Of suche þinge as þei wolde haue secre fayn
ȝitꝫ þatꝫ itꝫ touche her lymmes or hir lyues.

¶ De Ercule./.

Of Ercule this souereyn conquerour
Syngen his werkes lewde and high̄ renoun.
ffor in his tyme of strength̄ he bere þe flour
He slowe and raftꝫ þe skyn fro þe lyoun .
He of Sentawres laide þe boostꝫ a doun
He Arpies sclowe þe cruel briddes felle
He golden apples byraftꝫ þe dragoun
He drowe outꝫ Serbyrois þe hound of helle

He sclowe þe cruel tyrauntꝫ Buserus
And made his hors to frete hym flessh̄ *and* bon̄
He sclough̄ þe verrey serpentꝫ venemous
Of Achiles two hornes breke he on̄
An he sclowgh̄ Cacus in a kaue of ston̄
He sclowgh̄ þe geaunte Anteus þe strongꝫ
He sclowe þe grisly boore and patꝫ anon̄
And bare þe hede vpon his nekꝫ longe [leaf 249, back]

Was neuer wiȝt siþen þe world bygan
þat sclowe so mony monstres as did he
þorgh-out þis wide world his name ran
What for his strength and for his bounte
And euery Rewme went he forto See
He was so stronge no man myȝt hym lette
And boþ þe worldes ende saiþ trophe
In stede of bondes he a piler sette

A lemman had þis noble Campioñ
That hight Dianyre fresshe as may
And as þe clerkes maken mencioñ
She haþ hym sent a shert fresh *and* gay
Allas þis shert and welaway
Evenymed was subtilly wiþ-alle
That ere þat he had wered it half a day
It made his bones from his flesshe falle

But naþeles some clerkes her excusen
By ooñ þat hight Nessus þat it maked.
Be as be may I wil her not accusen
But on his bakke þe shert he weres al naked.
Til þat his flesshe was for þe venyme blaked
And whan he segh noon oþer remedye
In hote cooles he haþ hym-self raked
ffor wiþ no venyme deyned he to dye

Thus sterf þis worþi myghty Ercules
Lo who may trust on fortune eny throwe
ffor hym þat foloweþ al þis world of prees
Er he be ware is oft yleide ful lowe
fful wise is he þat hym self can knowe
Beþ ware for whan þat fortune lest to glose
þan waiteþ she her man doun to throwe
By suche a way as he wold leest suppose

¶ De rege Nabugodonosor. /

The myȝty trone þe precious tresóur
The glorious sceptre and real mageste
þat had þe kynge Nabugodonosor
Wiþ tunge vnneþ may / discrived be
He twyes nam Ierusalem þe Cite [leaf 250]
The Vessell of þe temple he wiþ hym lad
At Babiloyne was his souereyn See
In which his glorie and his delit he had.

The fairest children of þe blood Royal
Of Ierusalem he ded do gilde anonon
And maked eche of hem to bene his cherle
Amon[ge] all oþer Danyel was oon
þat was þe wysest childe of euerychon
ffor he þe dremes of þe kynge expowned
Wher as in Caldey clerk was þer noon
þat wist to what fyne his dremes sowned

This prowde kynge lete make a stature of gold
Sixty cubites longe and Seuen in brede
To whiche ymage boþ ȝonge and olde
Comaunded he to loute and haue in drede
Or in a fornays ful of flawmes rede.
He shal be brent þat wold nat obeye
But neuere wold assent vnto þat dede
Danyel ne his ȝonge felawes tweye

This kynge of kynges prowde was and elate
He wende god þat sitte in maieste
Ne myght hym nat byreue of his estate
But sodeynly he lost his dignyte
And like a beest hym semed forto be
And ete hay as an oxe and lay þerout
In reyne wiþ wilde beestes walked he
Til a certeyn tyme was come aboute

And like an Egles fetheres was his heeres
His nailes like briddes clawes were
[Til] God releued hym a certeyn ȝeres
And ȝaf hym witte and þan wiþ mony a tere
He þonked god and euere his lyf in fere
was he to doon amys in more trespas
And or þat tyme ylaide was on his bere
He knewe wel þat god was ful of myȝt and *grace*.

De Baltazar *dicti Regis* Nabugodonosor filio.

His soñe whicℏ þat hiȝt Baltazar
That heelde þe regne aftere his faders day [leaf 250, back]
He by his fadere couþe not be war
ffor proude he was of hert and of aray
And eke an ydolater was he ay
His higℏ astate assured hym in pride
But fortune cast hym doune *and* þer he lay
And sodeynly his regne gan devide

A feest he made vnto his lordes alle
Vppon a tyme and made hem bliþe be
And þan his officers can he calle
Gooþ bryngeþ forþ þe vessels *quod* he
Whicℏ þat my fader in his *prosperite*
Out of þe temple of Ier*usalem* byraft
And to oure heghe goddes þonke wee
Of honur þat our elders wiþ vs laft

His wif his lordes and his concubynes
Ay dronken þe whiles her appetite last
Out of þise noble vessels sondry wynes
And on a wal þis kyng his eyen cast
And sawe an honde armelees þat wrote ful fast
ffor fere of whicℏ he quoke and sighed sore
This honde þat baltazar made so soor agast
Wrote mane techel phares *and* no more

In al þat' londe Magytien was *þer* noon
þat' couþe expoune what' þis *lettre* ment'
But' Danyel expouned it' anoon
And saide king' god þi fader sent'
Glorie and honour' Regne tresour and rent'
And he was proude and god no þing' dradde
And þerfore god grete wrethē vpon hym Sent
And hym by-raft' þe regne þat' he hadde

He was out' cast' of ma*n*nys co*m*panye
Wiþ asses was his habitacioñ
And ete hay as a beest' in wete *and* drye
Til þat' he knewe by grace *and* by resoñ
That' god of heuene haþ domynaciañ
Ouer euery regne and euery creature
And þan had god of hym compassioñ
And hym restored his regne and his figure [leaf 251]

Eke þou þat' art' his sone art' proude also
And knowest' aH þise þingges privelý
And art' rebel to god and art' his foo
Thow drank' eke of his vessels boldly
Thi wif eke and þi wenches synfully
Drank' of þe same vessels sondry wynes
And beried fals goddys cursedly
*þer*fore to þe shapen grete peyn es

This hand was sent' fro god þat' on þe waH
wrote mane techel phares trest' me
Thy regne is done þou waiest' not' at aH
Devided is þi regne and it' shal' be
To Medes and to *per*ses ȝeuen quod he
And þilk' same nyȝt' þe kyng' was sclawe
And Darius occupieþ his degre
They he þerto nad neiþer riȝt' ne lawe

Lordynggᵉs her-by ensamples mowe ȝe take
How þatˢ in lordship is no sikernesse
ffor whan fortune wil a man forsake
He bereþ away his regne and his richesse
And eke his frendes boþ more and lesse
And whatˢ man haþ frendes þorowe fortune
Mishappe wil make hem enemyes I gesse
This prouerbe is ful soþe and ful commune

¶ De Cenobia :/

CEnobia of Palamere þe quene
As writen Persiens of her noblesse
So worþi was in Armes and so kene
þatˢ no wiȝtˢ passed hure in hardynesse
Ne in lynage ne in oþer gentilnesse
Of þe kyngges blood of percy is she descended.
I say þatˢ she nad notˢ moostˢ fairenesse
Butˢ of hure Shap she myȝtˢ notˢ be amended

Fro childhode I fynde þatˢ she fledde
Office of wommen and into woode she wentˢ
And Mony a wilde hertes blode she shedde
wiþ arowes brode þatˢ she to hym sentˢ
She was so swift þatˢ she anoon hem hentˢ [leaf 251, back]
And whan þat she was elder she woldˢ kille
Lyoñs. lybardes and beres alto-rentˢ
And in hure armes weelde hem atˢ her wille

She durstˢ wilde beestes dennes seke
And renne in þe mountayn al þe nyghtˢ
And sclepe vndere a bussh̄ she coude eke
Wrastelen by verray force and myghtˢ
Wiþ eny yongˢ man were he neuer so wiȝtˢ
Ther myghtˢ no þinge in her Armes stonde
She kepte her maidenhode from euery wiȝtˢ
To no man deyned hure to be bonde

But at þe last her frendes han hure maried
To Odonak a prince of þat Cite
Al were it so þat she hem longe taried
And ȝe shal vnderstonde how þat he
Haþ suche fantasies as had she
But naþelees whan þei were knyt in fere
þei lyueden in Ioie and in felicite
ffor eche of hem had oþer leef *and* dere

Sauf oon þinge that ȝe nolde neuere assent
By no way þat he shulde by hire lye
But onys for it was her pleyn entent
To haue a childe þe world to multiplie
And also sone as she myȝt aspie.
That she was nouȝt wiþ child *with* þat dede
þan wil she suffre hym doon his fantasie
Eftsone and not but onys out of drede

And ȝif she were wiþ childe at þilke cast
No more shulde he playe þilke game
Till xl^ti^ daies were past
Than wolde she onys suffre hym doo þe same
Al were this Odenake wilde or tame
He gate no more of hure. for þus she saide
It was to wyues lechery an shame
In oþer caas if þat men wiþ hem plaide

Twoo sones by þis odynak had She
The whiche she kepte in vertue and *in* letture
But nowe vnto oure tale turne wee [leaf 252]
I say þat worshipful creature
And wise þer-wiþ and large *with* mesure
So penyble in þe werre and curteyse eke
No more labour myȝt in werre endure
was noon þouȝe in al þis world men shuld seke

Hire Riche aray myȝt' not' be tolde
As wel in vessel as in cloþinge
She was al clad in perry and in gold'
And eke she laft' not' for noon huñtynge
To haue of sondry tungges folk' knowing'
whan þat' she leisere' had and forto entende
To lerne bookes was al hure likynge
How she in vertue myȝt' her lyf dispende

And shortely of þis storie forto entrete
So dughty was her husbonde as she
That' þei conquered mony regnes grete
In þe Orient' wiþ mony a faire Cite
Appertenent' vnto þe mageste
Of Rome and wiþ stronge hond helde hem fast'
Ne neuer myȝt' her foomen doon hem flee
Ay whiles þat' Odenake dayes last'

Her batailles who so lest' hem forto rede
Ageyn sopere þe kyng' and oþer moo
And howe þat' all þe processe felle in dede
whi she conquered and what' titel had þerto.
And after of her mescheef *and* of her woo
Howe þat' she was byseged and Itake
Lat' hym vnto my maister Petrarke goo.
þat' writte Inowe of þis I vndertake.

Whan Odenak' was dede she myȝtily
þe Regnes heelde and wiþ hur prȏpre honde
Aȝeinst' her foos she fauȝt' trewly
þat' þer nas kyng no prince in al þat londe
þat' he nas glad ȝif he þat' grace fonde
þat she ne wolde vpon his lond' werreye
wiþ hire þei made alliance by bondē
To bene in pees *and* lat' hure ride and pleye /

The Emperour of Rome Claudius [leaf 252, back]
Ne hym byforn þe Romayne galiene
Ne durst' neuer be so coragius
Ne noon ermyne ne noðn Egipciene
Ne Surryene ne noon Arabiene
Wiþ-in þe feelde þat' durst' wiþ hire fiȝt'.
Lest' þat' she wolde wiþ hure hondes hym scleen
Or wiþ her mayne putten hem to fliȝt'

In kyngges habite went' her sonys twoo
As heires of her regnes alle
And hermanno and Tymalao
Her names were as perciens hem calle
But' ay fortune haþ in her hony galle
This myȝty qwene may not' longe endure
ffortune out' of her regne made her falle
To wrecchednesse and to mysauenture

Aurelion whan þat' þe gouernaunce
Of Rome come into his hondes tweye
He shope vpon þis quene to do vengeaunce,
And wiþ his legyons he toke his waye
Toward' Cenoby and shortly forto seye
He made hur flee and at' þe last' her hent'
And fettred hure and eke her children tweye
And wan þe londe and home to Rome is went'

Amonge þise oþer þingges þat' he wan
her chare þat' wrouȝt' was with gold' and perre
This grete Romayn þis Aurelian.
haþ wiþ hym lad for þat' men shuld see
Byforn hys trihumphe walkeþ she
Wiþ Gilt' cheynes in her nek' hongynge
Corowned she was as after her degre
And ful of Perry charged her cloþinge

Allas fortune she þat' whilom was
Dreedful to kyngges and to emperours
Now gaureþ alle þe puple on hir allas
And she þat' helmed was in stronge stoures
[. . . . . .*no gap in the MS.*]
Shal on her hede bere a Vitremyte
And she þat' bare þe sceptre ful of floures
Shal bye a dystaf her coste forto quite [leaf 253]

[*Peter the Cruel, of Spain.*]

O noble o worþi peter glory of Spayñ
Whoom fortune helde so hiȝe in maieste
Wel ouȝt' men þi pitous deeþ complayñ
Thī bastard broþer made þe to flee
And aftere at' a siege by subtilte
Thowe were bytraied and lad to his tent'
Wher as he wiþ his owne honde sclogh̄ þe
Succeedynge in þi regne and in þi rent'

The felde of snowe wiþ þe Egle blak' þer-Inne [*Bertrand du Guesclin.*]
Caught' wiþ þe lyme rodde colours as þe glede
He brewe þis cursednesse and al þe synne
þe wicked nest' was werker of þis nede.
Nouȝt' charles Olyfere þat' ay toke good hede
Of trouþe of honure but' Armorekke [*Oliver de Mauny of Britanny.*]
Geniloñ Olyuer corupte for nede
Brouȝtest' þis worþi king' in suchē brekke

[*Peter of Cyprus.*]

¶ worþi Petre kynge of Cipre alsoo.
That' Alisaunder wan by high maistrie
fful mony a heþen wrouȝtest' þou for woo.
Of whichē þine owne leeges had enuye
And for no þing' but' for þi chyualrie
They in þi bed han sclayn þe by þe morue
Thus gan fortune gouerne *and* gie
And out' of Ioie bringe into sorowe

[*Bernabo Visconti, of Milan.*]

Of Melane grete Barnabo Viscounte
God of delite and scourge of lumbardie
Whi shuld' not' I þi fortune acounte
Siþ in estaat' þou clomben were so hie 3592
Thy broþer sone þat' was þi double alie
ffor he þi Neuewe was *and* sone in lawe
Wiþ-in his prison made þe to die
But' whi ne howe wote I þat' þou were sclawe 3596

[*Ugolino, Count of Pisa.*]

Of the Erle Hugelyne of pise þe languo*ur*
Ther may no tunge telle for pite
But' litel out' of Pise stant' a tour'
In whiche towre in prison put' was he 3600
And wiþ hym bene his litel children þre
þe eldest' scarcely .v. ȝere was of age [leaf 253, back]
Allas fortune it' was grete crueltee
Suc̄h briddes forto putte into a cage 3604

¶ Dampned he was to dye in þat' prisoñ
ffor Roger whic̄h þat' bisshop was of pise
Had on hym made a fals suggestioñ
Thorgh whic̄h þe puple gan on hy*m* arise 3608
And putten him in prison in suc̄h a wise
As ȝe han herd and mete and drinke he had.
So smal þat' vnneþes it may suffise
And þerwiþal it' was ful poor and bad 3612

In a day byfelle þat' in þat' houre
Whan̄ þat' his [mete] was wonte to be wrouȝt'
þe Gailour' shette þe doores of þe toure
He herde it' wel but' he seegh̄ it nouȝt' 3616
And in his hert' anoon þer felle a þouȝt'
þat' þei for hunger' wolde done hy*m* dyen
Allas quod he allas þat' I was wrouȝt'
þer-wiþ þe teeres felle from his eyen. 3620

His ȝonge sones þre þer were of age
Vnto hym seide fadere whi do ȝe wepe
whan wil þe Gailoure brynge our potage
Is þer no morsel brede þat' [ye] doo kepe
I am so hungry þat' I may nat' sclepe
Nowe wolde god þat' I myȝt' sclepen euere
þan shuld noon hungre in myn herte crepe
þer nys no þinge sauf brede þat' me were leuere

Thus day by day þis childe gan to crie
Til in his faders barme adoune it lay
And saide fare wel fadere I mote dye
And kissed his fadere and dyed þe same day
And whan þe wooful fadere did hym say
ffor woo his armes two he gan to bite
And saide allas fortune and welaway
Thy fals whele my woo I may al wite

His childer [wende] þat' hit' for hunger was
þat' he his armes gnowe *and* nouȝt' for woo.
þei seiden fadere do not' so allas
But' raþer ete þe flessh̄ vpon vs twoo. [leaf 254]
Our flesshe þou ȝaf vs take our flessh̄ vs froo
And ete ynouȝe riȝt' þus to hym þei saide
And after þat' wiþ-Inne a day or twoo
þei leide hem doune in his lappe *and* dayde

Hym self dispeirede eke and for hu[n]ger starf'
Thus ended is þe myȝty erle of pise
ffor highe astate fortune fro hym carf
Of his tregetrie it' ouȝte ynouȝe suffise
Who so wil here it' in a lenger wise
Redeþ þe grete poete of ytaile
þat' hiȝte Daunte, for he can it' devise
ffrom poynt' to poynte for no þing' wil he faile.

¶ De nerone Imperatore.

Al þouȝe þat' Nero were as vicious
As eny feende þat' lieth ful lowe adoune
ȝit' he as telleþ vs swetheneus
This wide world' had in subieccioñ
Both̃ east' and west' and Septemptrioñ
Of Rubies Saphires and peerles white
Were al his [cloþes] browd[ed] vp and doune
ffor he [in] gemmes grete gan delite

More delicate more pompous of araye
More proude was neuere Emperour þan he
þat' ilke cloþe þat' he had wered a day
Aftere þat' tyme he nolde it' neuer see
Nettes of gold threde had he grete plente
To fisshen in Tibre whan hym list' to pleye
His lustes [were] as lawe in his degre
ffor fortune as his frende wold hym obeye

He Rome brent' for his delicasie
The Senatoures he sclouȝe vpon a day
To here howe þat' men wolde wepe *and* crie
And sclouȝe his broþer and by his sustere [lay]
His modere made he in pitous aray
ffor he her wombe sclitte to byhold'
wher he conceyued was so welaway
That' he so litel of his moder tolde.

No teer out' of his eyen for þat' siȝt' [leaf 254, back]
Ne came but' saide a faire womman was she
Grete wondere is þat' he cowde or myȝt'
Be Domes man of her dede bewte.
The wyne to brynge comaunded he
And dronke anoon noon oþer woo he made
Whan myȝt' is Ioyned vnto cruelte
Alas to depe wil þe venyme wade

In ȝouthe a maister had þis emperour
To teche hym letture and curtesye
ffor of moralite he was þe floure
As in his tyme but ȝif bokes lye
And whiles his maister had of hym maistrie
He made hym so conynge *and* so souple
That longe tyme it was or tyrannye
Or eny vice in hym durst vncouple

This Seneca of which [that] I devise
By cause Nero had of hym such drede
ffor he for vices wold hym chastise
Discretely as by worde and nat by dede
Sire wolde he sayne an Emperour mot nede
Be vertuous and hate tyrannye
ffor which he hym in bathe made to blede
On booþ his Armes til he most dye

This Nero had eke of a custumance
In ȝouþe aȝeinst his maister forto rise
Which afterward hym þouȝt a grete greuance.
Therfore he made hym dye in þis wise
But nathelees þis Senec þe wise
Chees in a bathe to dye in þis manere
Raþer þan han a noþer tormentri[s]e
And þus haþ Nero sclayn his maister dere

Now felle it so þat fortune lest no lenger
þe highe Pride of Nero to cherice
ffor þouȝe he were stronge ȝit was she strenger
She þouȝte þus by god I am to nyce
To sette a man þat is fulfild in vice
In heghe degre and Emperour hym calle.
By god out of his sete I wil him trice.
whan he leest weneþ sonnest shal he falle.

[leaf 255]

The puple roos vp on hym on a nyȝt
ffor his defaute and whan he it aspied.
Out of his doores anoon he haþ hym diȝt
Allone and þer he wende haue bene alied.
He knokked fast and ay þe more he cried
The faster schitten þei þe doores alle
þo wist he wel he had hym self mysgied.
And went his way no lenger dorst he calle

The puple cried and rombled vp and doun
That wiþ his eeres herde he what þei seide
Where is þis fals traitour þis Neroun
ffor fere almost out of his witte he breide
And to his goddes pitously he seide
ffor socoure but it myȝt nat be-tyde
ffor drede of þis him þouȝt þat he dyde
And ranne into a gardeyne hym to hyde

And in þis gardyne fonde he cherles tweye
That sitten by a fuyre ful gret *and* rede
And to þe cherles twey he gan to preie
To scleen hym and to girden of his hede
That to his body whan þat he were dede
Were no despite ydon for his diffame
Hym self he sclowȝe he coude no better rede
Of which fortune lough and made a game

[*Holofernes.*]

Was neuere Captayne vnder a kinge ¶ De Olyferno./
þat regneþ more putte in subiectioun
Ne strenger was in feelde of al þinge
As in his tyme ne gretter of renoun
Ne more pompous in high presumpcioun
Than olyferne which that fortune ay kest
So lycorously and lad hym vp and doun
Til þat his hede was of er þat he wist

Not' oonly þat' this world' haþ of hym awe
ffor lesinge of Richesse and of liberte
But' he made euery man renaye his lawe
Nabugodonosor was lord' saide he. 3752
Noon oþer god shulde honoured be [leaf 255, back]
Aȝeinst' his heest' no wiȝt' dar trespace
Saue in Betulia a stronge Cite
Wher Eliachym a preest' was of þat' place 3756

But' take kepe of þe deth of Olyferne
Amydde þe hooste he dronke lay al nyȝt'
Wiþ-Inne his tente large as is a beerne
And ȝit' for al his pompe and al his myȝt' 3760
Iudith a wo*m*man as he lay vpriȝt'.
Sclepinge his hede of smote *and* fro his tent'
fful prively she stale from euery wiȝt'
[. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] 3764

[*Antiochus.*]

What' nedeþ it' of kynge Antiochus ¶ **De Antiocho Rege**
To telle his high and Ryal maieste
His hie pride his werke venymus
ffor suche anoþer was neuer noon as he 3768
Redeþ which þat' he was in machabe
And redeþ þe proude wordes þat' he seide
And whi he felle fro his p*ro*sperite
And in an halle how wrechedly he deide 3772

Fortune hym had enhaunsed so in pride
That' verrely he wende he myȝt' atteyne
Vnto þe sterres vppon euery side
And in a balaunce to wey þe mounteyne 3776
And alle þe floodes of the See Restreyne
And goddes puple had he most' in hate
Hem wolde he sclee in torment' *and* [in] peyn
wenynge þat' god ne myȝt' his pride abate 3780

And for þat' Nichamour and thymothe
wiþ Iwes were venquysshed myȝtely
Vnto þe Iwes suc̄h an hate had he
That' he bad graþed his chare ful hastifly
And swore and saide ful dispitously
Vnto Ierusalem he wolde eítsone
To wreke his Ire on it' ful cruelly
But' of his purpos he was lette ful sone

God of his manace hym so sore smote
Wiþ vnvysible wounde ay vncurable
That' in his guttes carf soo and bote
That' his peynes were importable [leaf 256]
And certeinly þe wrec̄h was resonable
ffor many mannys guttes did he peyne
But' fro his purpoos cursed and dampneable
ffor al his smerte he nolde hym restreyne

But' bad anoon apparaile his Ooste
And sodeynly er he was of it' ware
God daunted al his pride and al his boost'
ffor he so sore felle out' of his chare
That' hurte his lymmes and his skyn to-tare
Soo þat' he ne myȝt' goo ne ride
But' in a chaier men about hym bare
Al for-brused boþ bak' and side

The wreth̄ of god hym smote so cruelly
That' in his body wikked wormes crepte
And þer wiþ al he stonke so horryblye
That' noon of alle his mayne þat' hym kepte
whedere þat' he woke or ellis sclepte
Ne myght' not' þe stynk' of hym endure
In þis meschief he wailled and eke wepte.
And knewe god lorde of euery creature

To alle his hooste and to hym self also
fful wlatsom was þe stink' of his careyne
No man myȝt' hym bere to ne froo.
And in his stynk' and in his horrible peyne
He starfe ful wrechedly in a mounteyne
Thus haþ þis robbour and homycide
That' mony a man made to wepe and pleyne
Suchⁿ guerdon as by-longeþ vnto pride

[*Alexander the Great.*]

The Storie of Alisaundre is so comune. ¶ De Alexandro Rege
That' euery wiȝt' þat' haþ discrecioun
Haþ herd' somwhat' or aⁿ of his fortune
This wide world' as in conclusioun
He wanne by strengthⁿ or for his hie renoun
They weren glad for pees vnto hym sende
þe pride of man and beest' he laid adoun
Wher so he come vnto þe worldes ende

Comparison myȝt' neuere be maked.
Bytwix hym and anoþer conquerour [leaf 256, back]
ffor al þis world for drede of hym Haþ quaked.
He was of knyghthode and of fredom flour'
ffortune him made þe heir' of hur' honour
Saue wyne and wommen no þing' myȝt' a-swage
His hegⁿ entente in armes and laboure
So was he ful of louying' corage

What' pite were it' to hym þouȝe I ȝou tolde
Of Darius and an hundred thowsand moo.
Of kyngges Princes. and Erles bold'
Whichⁿ he conquered and brouȝt' into woo
I say as fer as man may ride and goo.
The worlde was his what' shuld' I more devise
ffor þouȝe I write and told' ȝou euer moo.
Of his kinghode it' myȝt' not' suffise

Twelue 3ere he regned as saiþ Machabe
Philippes sone of Macedoyne he was
That furst was kinge of Grece þe cuntree
O worþi gentile Alisaunder alas
That euer shuld [thee] falle Such̄ a caas
Enpoysened of þi folk þou were
Thine. *sise*. fortune haþ turned into an aas
And 3it for þe ne weppe she neuere a tere

Who shal 3eue teeres men to compleyne
The deeþ of gentilnesse and of ffraunchise
That al þe worlde weelded in his demeyne
And 3it him þou3t hit my3t not suffise
So fful was his corage of high̄ emprise
Allas who shal me helpe to endite
ffals fortune and poyson to despise
The which̄ twoo of al this woo I wite

[*Julius Cæsar.*]

By wisdome manhode and by labour ¶ **Iulius Cesar/.**
ffro humblehede and fro Roial Maieste
Vp-roos he Iulius þe Conquerour
That all̄ þe Occident by londe and See
By strengthh̄ of honde or ellis by trete
And vnto Roome made hem tributarie.
And Sithens of Rome þe Emperour was he /
Til þat fortune wexe his aduersarie [leaf 257]

A Mighty Cesar þat in Tessalye.
Aȝeinst Pompius fader þine in lawe
That of þe Orient had al þe chyualrie
As fer as þat þe day bygynneþ dawe
Thogh̄ þou þorgh̄ þi knyghthode haþ hem take and sclawe
Sauf fewe folk þat wiþ Pompius fledde
Thorghe which̄ þou puttest al þe orient in awe
Thonke fortune þat so wel þe spedde

But now a litel while I wil bywaile
This Pompeus þis noble gouernour
Of Roome whiche þat fleigh at this bataille
I saye oon of his men a fals traitour
His hede of smote to wynne hym fauour
Of Iulius and hym þe hede brouȝt
Allas Pompey of the Orient conquerour
That fortune vnto such a funte brouȝt

TO Rome aȝeine repeireþ Iulius.
Wiþ triumphe laureat ful high
But on a tyme Brutus Cassius
þat euere had of his astate Envie
fful priuely had made Conspiracie
Aȝeinst þis Iulius in subtile wise /
And cast þe place in which he shuld dye
With boydekyns as I shal ȝou devise

This Iulius to þe Capithole went
Vppon a day as he was wonte to goon
And in þe Capitole anoon hym hente
This fals Brutus and his foule foon
And stiked hym wiþ boydekyns anon
Wiþ mony a wounde and þus þei lete hym lye
But neuere grunte he at no stroke but oon
Or ellis at twoo but ȝif his storie lye

So manly was þis Iulius of herte
And so wel loued estately honeste
That þouȝe his dedly woundes so sore smerte
His mantel ouer his hippes cast he
ffor no man shuld se his priuete
And as he lay on dyinge in a traunce [leaf 257, back]
And wist verrely þat dede was he
Of honeste ȝit had he remembraunce

¶ Lucane to þis storie I recomende
And to Sweton and Valerius also.
That' of His storie writeþ word *and* ende
How þat' þise grete conquerours twoo
ffortune was furst' frende and siþen a foo/
No man ne trust' vpon his fauour longe
But' haue hure in a-waite euermoo
Witnes on alle þise conquerours stronge

[*Cresus.*]

This riche Cresus whilom kyng' of lyde
O whicħ Cresus Cyquus sore hym dradde
ȝit' was he kauȝt' amonges al his pride
And to be brent' men to þe fure hym ladde
But' suche a Reyne doune fro þe walken shadde
þat' sclouȝe þe fuyre and made hym to eskape
But' to be war ȝit' no grace he hadde
Til fortune on þe galous made hym gape

Whan he askaped was he can not' stent'
ffor to bygynne a newe reyne aȝeine
He wende wele for þat' fortune hym sente
Suche happe þat' he askaped þorȝe þe reyne
þat' of his foos he myȝt' not' be sclayn
And Suche a sweuen vpon a nyȝt' he mette
Of whicħ he was so proude and so fayñ
That' in vengeance he al his hert' sette

Vpon a tree he was as hym þouȝt'
Ther Iubiter hym wassħ boþ hals *and* Side
And Phebus eke ā faire towale hym brouȝt'
To drye hym wiþ an þerfore wex his pride
And to his douȝtere þat' stood hym beside
Whicħ þat' he knewe in his sentence habounde
He bad hure telle hym what' it' signyfied
And she his dremes byganne riȝt' þus expounde

The tree quod she þe galous is to mene
And Iubiter bitokeneþ snowe and reyne
And Phebus wiþ his towale so clene.
Thoo bene the sone stremes forto sayn [leaf 258] 3944
Thow shalt an honged be fadere certayn
Rayn shal þe wassh and sonne shal þe drye
Thus warned she hym ful plat *and* ful playn
His douȝter [which] þat called was Phanye 3948

An honged was Cresus þe proude kinge
His Roial trone myȝt hym not availe
Tregedie is noon oþer maner þinge
Ne can in synnynge cry ne bywaile 3952
But þat fortune alway wil assaile
wiþ vnware stroke þe regnes þat bene proude
ffor whan men trusten hir þan wil she faile
And keuere her briȝt face wiþ a clowde 3956

¶ **Thus endeþ þe monke his tale**

And here bygynneþ þe nonpreestꝭ his prologe

¶ The prologe
[*on leaf* 258]

Ho quod þe knyȝtꝭ no more good of þis
That ȝe han said is riȝtꝭ ynowe ywis
And mochel more for litel heuynesse
Is riȝtꝭ ynoughꝫ to mochel folkꝭ I gesse [*no gap in Petworth*] 3960
[I sey for me / hit is a gret disese [**Addit. MS 5140,** *on leaf* 272 *and back*]
Wher as men haue ben / in gret welth and ese
To here of her sodeyn falle allas
And the contrarye / is Ioye and gret solas 3964
And whan a man hathꝫ be / in poor estat
And clymbeth vp / and waxethꝫ fortunat
And ther abidithꝫ / in prosperite
Suchꝫ thyng is gladsom / as thynkethꝫ me 3968
And of suchꝫ thyng / were goodly for to telle
ya quod our hoost / bi seynt poules belle
ye sey soth / this monk hath clappid lowd
He spak how fortune / coueꝛed was with a clowd 3972
I nat nere what / and also tragedie
Riȝt now ye herde / and parde no remedie
I[t i]s forto be wailyng and compleyne
ffor that that is don / and also it is a peyne 3976
As ye han seid to heerꝭ of hevynesse
Sir monk nomore of this / so god you blesse
[You]rꝭ tale anoyethꝫ / alle this companye
Such thyng / is nat worth / a bottirflye] [**Addit. MS 5140,** *extract stops*]
ȝoure tales done vs no sporte ne game
Wherfore sirꝭ monke or daun pers by ȝourꝭ name
I prey ȝou hertely telle vs somwhatꝭ ellys
ffor sikerly ne were þe Clynkyngꝭ of ȝourꝭ bellis 3984

That' on 3oure bridel honge on euery side
By heuene kynge þat' for vs alle deyde
I shuld er þis haue falle doun for sclepe
Al þough [þe] sclouþe had neuer be so depe
Than had 3oure tale ben told in veyn
ffor certeynly as al þise clerkes seyn
wher as a [man] may haue non audience
Nou3t' helpeþ it' to telle his sentence
And wel I woote þe substaunce is *in* me
3if eny þinge shal wel reported be
Sir' say somwhat' of huntyng' I 3ou preie
Nay quod þis monke I haue no lust' to pleie
Now lat' anoþer telle as I haue told'
þan spak our hoost' *with* rude speche *and* bold'
And saide vnto þe nonnes preest' anon
Come nere sir' preest' Come hider' Sire Iohn [leaf 258, back]
Telle vs suche þingges as may our hertis glade
Be bliþ þou3e þou ride vpon a Iade
What' þou3e þine hors be boþ foule *and* lene
3if he wil serue þe rek' nat' a bene
Loke þat' þi hert' be mery euermoo.
3is sir' quod he 3is hoost' so mote I goo
But' I be mery Iwis I wil be blamed.
And Ri3t' anoon his tale he haþ atamed.
And þus seide to vs euerychon
My tale I wil bygynne anon [*spurious*]

¶ **Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe nonnes preste**

And here bygynneþ þe nonne preest' his tale

[*on leaf* 258, *back*]

A poor wydowe somdel stope in age
was whilom dwelling' in a narowe cotage
Besides a groue stonding' in a dale
This widowe of which I telle 3ou my tale
Sipens þilk day þat' she was last' a wiff
In paciens lad a ful sympul liff'
ffor litel was hur' Catel and hur' rent'
By Husbondry of such as god her sent'
She fonde hure self and eke her doughtred twoo
Thre large sowes had she *and* no moo.
Thre kyen and eke a shepe þat' hight' malle
fful soty was hur' boure *and* eke her halle
In whiche she ete mony a sclender mele
Of poynant' sause hir' neded neuer a dele
No deynte morsel passed hur' þrote
Hir' diete was acordant' to her cote
Replecio ne made her neuer seke
Attemper diete was all her' phisike
And exercise and hert' sufficiañce
The goute letted hur no þing' to daunce
Ne poplexie shent' not' her hede
Nóo wyne dronke she neiþer white ne rede
Her boord was serued most' wiþ white *and* blake
Milk' and broune brede in which she fond no lake
Seyned Bacon and somtyme an eye or tweye
ffor she was as It' were a manere of a deye [leaf 259]
A gardyne she had enclosed al aboute
Wiþ stikkes and a drie diche wiþ-oute
In which she had a cok' þat' hi3t' chauntilere
In alt' þe londe of crowing' was his pere

His mouþ was myrier þan þe mery orgoñ
On masse daies þat in þe churche gooñ
Wel sikerer was þe crowyng in his logge
þan is a clokke or an abbay orlogge
By nature he crewe eche ascencioun
Of Equinoxial of þilke toun
ffor whan degrees .xv. were descended.
þat knewe he þat it myȝt not bene amended
His Combe was redder þan þe fyne Curaĥ
And bateled as it were a castel waĥ
Ilike azure were his legges and his toone
His bille was blake and as þe gete it shone
His nailles witter þan þe lily floure
And ylike burnysshed gold was his coloure
This gentile Cok had in his gouernaunce
Vij. hennys forto doon his plesaunce
Whicĥ weren his sustres and his paramours
And wonder like to hym as of colours
Of þe whicĥ þe fairest hwed vnder þrote
Was clepe fair Damysel Pertilote
Curtais she was discrete and debonaire
And Companable and bere her self so faire
Siþens þilke day þat she was vij. nyȝt olde
That trewly she haþ þe hert in holde
Of Chauntelere loukyn in euery liţ
He loued hure so þat wel was hym þer wiţ
But suchĥ a Ioie as it was to here hem singe
Whan þat þe briȝt sonne gan to sprynge
In swete accorde my lief is fare a londe
ffor þilke tyme as I haue vnderstonde
Beestes and briddes coude speke *and* synge
And so byfelle þat in þe dawynge
As Chauntecleer amonges his wyues alle
Sat on his perch þat was in þe halle [leaf 259, back]
And next hym sat þis faire Pertilote
This Chaunteclere gan gronen in his þrote

As a man þat is in his dreme drecched sore
And whan þat *Per*tilote þus herd hym rore
She was a-gast and seide hert dere
What eileþ 3ou to grone in þis manere
3e bene a verray scleper fy for shame
And he answerd and saide þus madame
I prey 3ou þat 3e take it not a greef
By god me mette þat I was in suc̄ mescheef
Ri3t nowe *þat* 3it myn hert is sore afri3t
Nowe god [quod] he my sweuen rede ari3t
And kepe my body out of foule *prisoun*
Me mette þat I romed vp and do*un*
Wit̄-in our yerde wher as I segh̄ a beest
Was lik an hounde and wold haue made arest
Vpon my body and wold haue had me ded̄e
His colour was bytwix white and red
And tipped was his taille and boþ his Eeres
Wiþ blak vnlike þe remenaunt of his heeres
His snowte smal with glowinge eyen tweye
3it for his loke almost for fere I dye.
This caused me my gronyng doutelees
A voy quod she fie on 3ou hertelees
Allas quod she for by þat god aboue
Now han 3e lost myn hert and my loue
I can not loue a coward by my faiþe
ffor certes what so eny wo*m*man seiþe
We alle desiren 3if it my3t be
To han̄ husbondes hardy wise *and* free
And secre ne noo nygard ne ne fooh̄
To hym þat is a-gast of euery tooh̄
Ne noon avouto*ur* by þat god aboue
How durst 3e seyn for shame vnto 3o*ur* loue
That eny þing my3t make 3ou a-ferde
Haue 3e no mannys hert *and* han a berde
Allas and conne ye be a-gast of swuenes.
No þing god woote but vanite in sweuen is [leaf 260]

Sweuens engendren of replexions
And oft' of fume and of complexions
Whan humours bene to habundañte in a wi3t'
Certes þis dreme which̄ 3e han had to ny3t'
Comm*e*þ of þe grete sup*er*fluite
Of 3oure rede Colere p*ar*de
Which̄ causeþ folk to dreme her dremes
Of Arowes and fires wiþ rede lemes
Of Rede beestes þat' willen h*em* bite
Of contek' and of whelpes grete and lite
Ri3t' as þe humour of Malecolie
Causeþ [ful] mony a man in sclepe to crye
ffor fere of beeres and boles blake
Or ellis blake deuels wil h*em* take
Of oþer humoures couþe I telle also
That worken mony a man in slepe ful woo.
But' I wil passe as li3tly as I can
Loo.Caton which̄ þat' was so wise a man
Seid he not' þus ne do no force of dremes
Now sire quod she whan we flee fro the bemes.
ffor goddis loue as takeþ som *laxatif*
Vp p*er*ile of my saule and of my liff
I counsaile 3ou þe best' I wil not lye
That' boþ of colour and of Malencolie
3e purge 3ou and for 3e shul not' tarie
þou3e þat' in þis toun*e* is no*n* Apotecarie
I shal my self to herbes techen 3ou
which̄ shal be 3oure here *and* 3o*ur* prowe
And In þe Gardeyne two herbes shal I fynde
þe which̄ han of her pr*o*prete by kynde
To purgen 3ou by-neþe and eke aboue
fforȝeteþ not' þis for goddes awne loue
3e bene ful Colerike of complexioñ
Where þe sonne in his assencioñ
Ne fynde 3ou replete of 3o*ur* humo*ur*s hote
And if it' doo I dar wel lay a grote

þat' 3e shul haue a feuer terciane.
Or an ague þat' may be 3our bane [leaf 260, back]
A day or twoo 3e shul haue dygestyues
Of wormes er 3e take 3oure laxatyues
Of laureal Centaure and of fumytere
Or ellis of Ellibore þat' groweþ þere
Of Catapuce and of gatys-buries
Or Erbe Ive grouyng' in oure 3eerd *per* mèry es
Pek hem vp riȝt' as þei growe and ete hem Inne
Be mery husbonde for 3our' fader kynne
Dredeþ no dreme I can say 3ou no more
Madame quod he gramercy of 3oure lore
But naþelees as touching Danne Catoun
That' haþ of wisdome suc̄ grete renoun
By god men may in olde bokes rede
Oon of þe grettest' auctour out' of drede
Of mony a man more of auctorite
Than euer caton was so mot' I the
That al the reuers seyn of þis sentence
Han han wel founden by experience
That' dremes bene significaciōns
As wel of Ioie as tribulaciōns
That' folk enduren in þis lif present'
It' nedeþ nat' to make of þis noon argument'
The verrey preef sh̄weþ it' in dede
Oon of þe grettest auctour out of drede
Saiþ þus þat' whilom two felawes went'
On Pilgrimage in ful good entent
And happed so þei commen into a toune
Wher as þere was suc̄ congregacioun
Of puple and eke of streite herbygage
þat' þei fande not' as moche as a cotage
In whiche þei boþ myght' ylogged be
Wherfore þei mosten of necessite
As for þat' nyȝt' departen of companye
And eche of hem goþ to his hostelrye

And toke his logginge as it wolde falle
That oon of hem was logged in a stalle
ffer in a 3eerde wiþ oxen of þe plou3e
That oþer man was logged wel ynou3e [leaf 261] 4188
As was his auenture or his fortune
þat vs gouerneþ al as in commune
And so by-felle longe er it were day
This man mette in his bed þer as he lay 4192
How þat his felawe gan on hym calle
And saide Allas for in an oxes stalle
This ny3t shal I be murþered þer I lie
Now helpe me dere broþere er I dye / 4196
In al hast come to me he seide
This man out of his sclepe for fere abreide
But whan þat he was wakened out of his sclepe
He turneþ hym and toke of þis no kepe 4200
Hym þou3te his dreme was no3t but a vanyte
Thus twies in his sclepinge dremed he
And at þe .iij. tyme 3it his felawe
Come as he þou3te I am nowe Isclawe 4204
Biholde my blody woundes depe and wide
Arise vp erly in þe morowe tide
And at the west gate of þe toun *quod* he
A cart ful of donge þer shalt þou see 4208
In which his body is hidde ful priuely
To þilke carte aresten boldely
My golde caused my murder soþ to sayn
And tolde hym euery poynt how he was sclayn 4212
Wiþ a ful pitous face pale of hwe
And trest wel his dreme he fonde ful trwe
ffor on þe morowe as sone as it was day
To his felawes Inne he toke þe way 4216
And whan he come to þis oxes stalle
Aftere his felawe he bygan to calle
The ostelere answerd hym anon
And saide Sir 3oure felawe is goon 4220

As sone as day he went' out' of þe toune
This man gan falle in grete suspecioun
Remembryng' hym on his dremes þat' he mette
And forþ he goþ no lenger wold' he lette
Vnto þe west' gate of þe toune and foñde
A donge cart' as he went' to donge þe londe [leaf 261, back]
That' was araied in þe same wise
As ȝe han herde þe dede man deuyse
And wiþ an hardy hert' he gan to crie
Vengeaunce and iustice on þis vilanye
My felawe murdred is þis same nyȝt'
And in þis carte he lith̃ gapinge vp riȝt'
[I crye out / on the mynystres quod he [Addit. MS 5140, on leaf 276, back]
That sholde the lawe keep in this Cite
Harrow allas / here lith̃ my felawe sleyn
What sholde I more / vnto this tale seyn
The people out sterte / and caste the carte to grounde
And in the myddis of the donge thei founde] [Addit. MS extract ends]
The dede man þat' murdred was all̃ newe
O blisful god þat' art' so Iust' and trewe
Loo how þat' þou bywreiest' mordere alway
Murder wil out' þat' see wee day by day
Morder is so wlatsom and so abhomynable
To god þat' is so Iust' *and* resonable
þat' he ne wil not' suffre it hilled be
Theigh̃ it' abide a ȝeer or twoo or þre
Murder wil out' þis is my conclusioun
And riȝt' anoon mi*n*istres of þe to*u*n
Haþ hent' þe Carter and [ful] sore hy*m* pyned
And eke þe Ostilere so fer engyned
That' þei biknewe her wikkednesse anoon̄
And weren honged by þe nek' bone
Here may men see þat dremes bene to drede
And certes in the same boke I rede
Riȝt' in þe next' chapitere I rede of þis
I gabbe not' so haue I Ioie or blis

Two men þat' wolden haue passed þe See
ffor certeyn cause in to a fer contre
If þat' þe wynde ne had be contrarie
That' made hem in a Cite forto tarie
That' stood ful merye vpon an hauen side
But' on a daye a3einst' þe euentide
The wynde gan chaunge and blowe as hym lust'
Iolif and glad þei wenten vnto rust'
And Casten hem ful erly forto saile
But' herken how oo man felle in grete perile
That' oon of hem in scleping' as he lay
Hym mette a wonder dreme a3einst' þe day
Hym þou3t' a man stood be his beddys side
And hym commaunded þat' he shuld' abide. [leaf 262]
And saide hym þus if þou to morn wende
Thowe shalt' be dreynt' my tale is at' an ende
He woke and tolde his felawe what' he meitt'
And preide him his viage forto lette
As for þat' day he preide hym to abide
His felawe þat' lay by his beddys side
Gan forto laugh and scorned ful fast'
No drem quod he may myne hert' agast'
That' I wil lette forto do my þingges
I sette not' a strawe by dremyngges
ffor sweuenes bene but' vanytees *and* Iapes
Men dreme alway of owles *and* of apes
And of mony a mase þer-wiþall
Men dremen of þinge þat' neuere [shal]
But' siþen I see þou wit' here abide
And þus forsclewþen wilfully þi tyde
God woote it' rewþ me and haue good day
And þus he toke his leue and went' his way
And er that' he had half his cours assailed
I not' whi ne what' meschaunce it' ailed
But' casuely þe shippes botme rent'
And ship and man vnder þe water went'

In siȝt' of oþer shippes hym beside
That' wiþ hym sailled att þe same tyde
And þerfore he seide Pertelote so dere
By suche ensamples olde maist' þou lere
That' no man shulde be to rechelees
Of Dremes for I say þe doutelees
That' in mony a dreme ful sore is forto drede
Lo in þe lif of seint' kenelyne I rede
That' was kenulphus sone þe noble kynge
Of Mertenrike how kenelyne mette a þinge
A litel er [he] was murde[re]d on a day
His murdre in his Auysioñ he say
His norice him expowned euery dell
His sweuen and bad hym for to kepe hym well
ffor treson but' he was seuen ȝere olde
And þerfore litel tale haþ he tolde [leaf 262, back]
Of eny dreme so holly was his herte
Be god I had leuer þan my sherte
That' ȝe had herd' his legende as haue I
Dame Pertelote I say ȝou trewly
Macrobyus þat' writ' þe avisioñ
In affrike of þe worþi Ciprioñ
Affermeþ dremes and seþ þat' þer' bene
Warnynge of þingges þat' men after sene
And ferþermore I pray ȝou lokeþ well
The olde testament' of Danyell
ȝif he heelde dremes of eny vanyte
Rede eke of Iosepħ and ye shal See
Wheder dremes be somtyme I say not alle
Warnyng' of þingges þat' shul after' falle
Loke eke of Egipte þe kinge danne Pharao
His bakere and his botelere also'
Wher þei ne felt' noon effecte in dremes
Who so wil seche of sundry rewmes
May reden of dremes mony a wonder' þinge
Loo Cresus whicħ þat' was of lyde þe kynge

Mette he not þat he satte vpon a tre
Which signified he shuld anhonged be
Lo here Adromacha Ectors wiff
That day þat Ector shuld lete his lif
She dremed on þe same nyȝt byforn
How þat þe lif of Ector shuld be lorn
ȝiff þilk day he went into bataile
She warned hym but it myȝt not availe
He went forto fiȝten naþelees
But he was sclayn of Achilles
But thilk tale is alto longe to telle
And eke it is nygh day I may not dwelle
Shortly I say as for conclusioñ
That I shal haue of þis avisioñ
Of aduersitees *and* I say ferþ*er*more
That I ne wil telle of laxatifs no store
ffor þei bene venemous I wote riȝt wel
I hem diffie I loue hem neue*r*e a dele [leaf 263]
NO lat vs speke of merþe and stent al þis
Madame p*er*tilote so haue I blisse
Of oo þing god haþ sent me large grace
ffor whan I se þe bewte of ȝoure face
ȝe bene so scarlet rede aboute þe eyen
It makeþ al my drede for to dyen
ffor also siker as in principio.
Mulier est hominis confusio
Madame þe sentence of þis latyn is
Wo*m*man is mannys ioy and his blisse
ffor whan I fele on nyȝt ȝour soft side
Al be it þat I may not on ȝou ride
ffor þat oure perche is made so narowe alas
I am so ful of Ioye and solas
þat I defie boþ sweuen and dreme
And wiþ þat word I fleegh doune fro þe beme
ffor it was day and eke his hennes alle
And wiþ a chukke he gan hem forto calle

ffor he had founden a corn lay in þe ȝerde
Real he was no more afferd
He ffeþered Pertelot xx^ti tyme
And drad as oft er it were prime
He lokeþ as it were a grym lyoun
And on his toes he roomed vp and doun
Hym deyned not to sette his fete on grounde
Ay chokked he whan he had a corne found
And to hym þan ronne his wyues all
Thus Royal as a prince in his hall
Leue I þis chauntelere in his pasture
And aftere wil I telle of his auenture
Whan þe monthe þe whiche þe world byganne
That hiȝt marche whan god first made man
Was Complete and passed were also
Siþens Marche bygan .xxx^ti daies *and* twoo.
Byfelle þat chauntelere in his pride
His seuen wyues welken hym byside
Cast vp his eyen to þe briȝt sonne
That in þe signe of Taurus was ronne [leaf 263, back]
Twenty degrees and oon and somwhat more
He knew by kynde and by noon oþer lore
That it was prime he crewe wiþ blisful steuen
The sonne he saide is clumben vp to heuen
xl. degres and oon and more ywis
Madame Pertelote my worldes blisse
Herken how þise blisful briddes singe
And se þe fresshe floures how þei springe
fful is myn hert of Reuel and of solas
But sodeynly hym felle a soriful caas
ffor euer þe latter and of Ioie is sone ygoo
And comonly ofte tyme it falleþ soo
And if arthour coude faire endite
He in cronicle myght Sauely write
As for a souereyn notabilite
Nowe euery wise man herken me

This story is as trewe I vndertake
As is þe booke of launcelote de lake
That' women holde in ful gret reuerence
Now wil I turne aȝein to my sentence
A Col foxe [ful] of scleiȝt' and iniquite
That' in þe groue had wonned ȝeeres þre
By higħ ymagynacioñ to-fore cast'
þe same nyght' þorgħ-out' þe hegges brast'
Into þe ȝeerd' þer chauntelere þe faire
was wonte and eke his wyues to repaire
And in a bedde of wortes stille he lay
Till it' was passed vndren of þe day
Waitynge his tyme on chaunteler to falle
As gladly done þise homycydes alle
That' in a-waite ligge to murdre men
O fals murdere rowkyng' in þi den
O newe Scariot' o . newe Genyloñ
ffals dissimylour o greke Syñon
þat' brouȝtest' troye al vtterly to sorowe
O chauntelere acursed be þat' morowe
þat' þou into [þi] ȝeerd' flegħ from þe bemes
Thow were ful wel ywarned by þi dremes
That' ilke day was *perilous* to þe
But' þat' ,þat' god a-fore wote most' nedes be
Aftere þe opynyon of certeyn clerkes
Wittnesse of hym þat' eny clerk es
That' in scole [is] grete altercacioñ
In þis mater and grete disputacioñ
And haþ b̄ene of an C. thousand men /
But' I ne can[not] bult' it to þe brenne
As can þe holy doctour augustyne
Or boys or þe Bisshop Bradwardyne
Whedere þat' goddys wille a-fore wetyng'
Streyneþ me nedely forto doon a þing'
Nedely clepe I symple necessite
Or ellis ȝif þe free chois be *graunted* me

4404 4408 4412 4416 4420 [leaf 264] 4424 4428 4432 4436

To do þat' same þing' or do it' nou3t'·
Thou3e god forwote it' er it' was wrou3t'
Er of his wetyng' streyneþ neuer a dele
But by necessite condicionele
I wil not' haue to done of such̄ matere
My tale is of a cokke as 3e shullen here
That' toke his counsaile of his wif with sorowe
To walken in þe 3eerde vpon þe morowe ·
That' he had mette þe dreme þat' I 3ou tolde
Womm[an]es counsaile is ful ofte colde
Wo*m*m[an]es counsaile brou3t' vs first' to woo
And made Adam from paradys to goo .
Ther' he was ful mery an wel at ese
But for I note whom I my3t displese
If I counsaile of wo*m*men wold blame
Passe ouere for I seide it' in my game
Rede awters wher þei trete of such̄ matere
And what' þei seyne of wo*m*men here
Thise bene þe cokkes wordes and not myne
I can no harme of no wo*m*man devyne
ffaire in þe sonde to bath̄ hur merely
lith̄ p*er*telote and al hure susters bye
A3einst' þe sonne and chauntelere so fre
Songe meryer þan þe meermaiden in þe See [leaf 264, back]
ffor phisialogus saiþ witterly
How þat' þei syngen wel and merely
And so byfelle as he cast' his ye
Amonges þe wortes vppon a botterflie
He was war of this fox þat' lay ful lowe
No þinge ne lust' hy*m* þan for to crowe
But' cries anon cok' cok' and vp he sterte
As a man þat' was affraied in his herte
ffor naturelly a beest' desireþ to flee
ffro his contrarie if he may it See
þou3e he neuer had seye it' erst w*ith* his ye
This chauntelere whan he hy*m* gan aspie

He wold haue fledde but' þat' þe fox anoñ
Saide gentile sir' allas what' hast þou doñ
Bene 3e affraied of me þat' am 3oure frende
Certes sir' þan ben 3e vnhende
If I to 3ou wil harme or vilanye
I am not' come 3our' counsaile to aspie
But' trewly þe cause of my comynge
was oonly to harken how þat' 3e singe
ffor trewly 3e han as mery a steuen
As aungel haþ þat' is in heuen
Ther-with̄ 3e han in musike more felinge
þan had boys or eny þat' can synge
My lorde 3our' fadere god his saule blisse
And eke 3oure modere and hur' gentilnesse
Han in myn hous' bene to 3ou grete ese
And Certes sir' riȝt' fain wold' I 3ou plese
But' for men speken of syngynge I wil seye
So mot' I brouke myn eien tweye
Sauf 3e I ne herd' neuer man so synge
As did 3oure fader in þe mornynge
Certes it' was of hert' al þat' he songe
And forto make his vois þe more stronge
He wold so peyn hym þat wiþ both his yen
He most' wynke so loude he did crien
And stonden on his typtoon þerwiþal·
And strecche forþ his nek' longe *and* smal̄ [leaf 265]
And eke he was of such̄ discrecioñ
That' þer nas no man in no regioñ
That' him in songe or wisdom myȝt' passe
I haue wel red daun Burnel þer as
Amonge his vers þer was a cok'
[That] ffor a preestes sone ȝaue hym a knok'
Vpon his legge whiles he was ȝonge *and* nyce
He made hym forto lese his benefice
But' certeyn þer nys noon comparisoñ
Bytwix þe wisdom and discrecioñ

Of 3oure fadere and of his subtilite
Now syngeþ sir' for scint' charite
Lat' see conne 3e 3oure fadere countrefete
This Chauntelere his wenges gan to bete
As man þat' coude nat' his tresoñ aspie
So was he rauessed wiþ his flaterye
Allas 3e lordes mony a fals flatour
Is in 3our court' and mony a losengour'
That' plesen 3ou more by my feiþ
That' he þat' soþfastnesse vnto 3o^{u} seiþ.
Redeþ Ecclesiastre of flaterye
Beþ ware 3e lordes of her trecherye
This Chaunteclere stood high vpon his toos
Strecchinge his nek and held his eien cloos
And gan to crowe loude for þe nones
And daun Russel stert' vp al at' ones
And by þe Gargaige hent' Chaunteclere
And on his bak toward' the wood hy*m* bere
ffor 3it' was ther no man hy*m* swed
O Destany þat' mai̇st' not' bene eschewed'
Allas þat' chaunteclere fel fro þe bemes
Allas his wif ne rou3t' not' of dremes
And on a friday felle all þis meschāunce
O Venus þat' art' goddes of plesaunce
Siþens þat' þi *seruaunte* was þis chaunteclere
And in þi *ser*uise did al his powere
More for delit' þan þe world' to multiplie
Whi woldest' þou suffre on þi day to dye [leaf 265, back]
O Gaufrede dere maistere souereyñ
þat' whan þe worþi kinge Richard' was sclayñ
Wiþ shot' compleyndest' his deþ so sore
Whi ne had I nowe þi sentence *and* þi lore
þe ffriday forto chide as did 3e
ffor on a friday shortely sclayne was he
þan wolde I shewe howe þat' I coude playne
ffor chaunteclere and for his peyne

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Certus suc̃ crye ne lamentacioñ
was of ladies made whan þat' *Ilyon*
Was wonne. and pirrus *with* his streiȝt' swerd'
Whan he hent' king' Prian by þe beerd' 4548
And sclayn hym as seide *Enneidos*
As maden all þe hennes *in* þe cloos
Whan þei had seie of chaunteclere þe siȝt'
But' souereyn dame p*er*telote shriȝt' 4552
wel lodder þan did Hasdrubaldes wif'
whan þat' her husbonde had lost' his lif'
And þat' þe romaynes had brent' Cartage
She was so ful of torment' *and* of Rage 4556
That' wilfully into þe fire she stert'
And brent' her self wiþ a stedfast' hert'
O wooful hennys riȝt' so c*ri*den ȝe
As whan þat' Nero brent' þe Cite 4560
Of Rome criden þe Cenato*ur*s wyues
ffor þat' her husbondes shulden lese her lyues
wiþ-outen Gilt' [þis] Nero haþ hem sclayn
Now wil I turne to my tale aȝein 4564
This sely widowe and hure douȝters two
Herden þe hennys crien and make woo
And out' atte door sterten þei anoon
And segh þe fox toward' þe groue goon 4568
And bare on his bak þe Cok away
They criden out' and harawe *and* welaway
A ha þe fox and after' hy*m* þei ran
And eke wiþ staues mony an o*þer* man 4572.
Ran Coll̃ our dogge. talbot *and* Garlonde
And Malkyn wiþ her dystaf in hure honde [leaf 266]
Ran cowe and calf and eke the verrey hogges
Sore afferd' for berking' of dogges 4576
And shetinge of men and wo*m*men eke
þei ronne so þeire hert*es* þei þouȝt' to breke
þei ȝelden as feendes doñ in helle
The dogges criden as men wold' hem quelle 4580

Out' of the hyues come þe swarme of bees
The gees for fere flowen in þe trees
So hidous was the noise .O benedicite
Certes he Iak' strawe and his mayne
Ne made neuer showtes half so shrille
whan þat' þei wolde eny flemmyng kille
As þat' ilk' day was made vpon þe fox
Of bras þei brouȝt' bemes and of box
Of horn and boon in whicħ þei pouped
And þerwiþal þei schrited and showted.
It semed as þat' heuene shulde falle
Now good I prey ȝou harkeneþ alle
Lo how fortune turneþ sodeynly
The hope and eke pride of her envie
This cok/ þat' lay vppon the fox bak'
In al his drede vnto þe fox spak'
And saide Sire if I were as ȝe
ȝit' shuld I say as wis god helpe me
Turne aȝeine ȝe proude cherles alle
A verrey pestilence vppon ȝou falle
Nowe am I come vnto þis wodys side
Maugre ȝoure hede þe cok shal here abide
I wol hym ete in feiþ and þat' anoñ
The fox answerde in faiþ it' shal be doñ
And [as] he spak' þat worde al sodeynly
This Cok' brak from his mouþ delyuerly
And higħ vppon a tree he flegħ anoñ
And whan þe fox segħ þat' he was goñ
Allas quod he O chauntelere allas
I haue quod he done to ȝou trespas
In as mocħ as I made ȝou aferd'
Whan I ȝou hent' and brouȝt' out' of þe ȝerde [leaf 266, back]
But' sire I did it' not' in no wicked entent'
Commeþ doune and I shal telle ȝou what' I ment'
I shal saie soþ god helpe me soo
Nay þan quod he I schrewe vs boþ twoo

And first' I schrewe my self boþ blood and bones
ȝif þou bigile me ofter þan ones
Thow shalt' no more wiþ þi flaterie
Do me swynk' and wink' wiþ myn ye
ffor he þat' wynket' whan he shuld see
As wisly god lat' hym neuer þee
Nay quod þe fox god ȝeue hym meschaunce
That' is so vndiscrete of gouernaunce
That' Iangeleþ whan he shuld haue pees
Loo such is forto be rechelees
And necligent' and trusteþ on flaterie
But' ȝe þat' holden þis foly
As of a Cok' of a fox and of an henne
Takeþ þe Moralite good men·
ffor seint' poule seiþ al þat' writen is
To our doctrine it' is writen ywis /
Takeþ þe fruyte and lat' þe chaf be stille
Nowe good god if it' be þi wille
As seiþ my lorde so make vs all good men
And bringe vs al to his blisse Amen.

Thus endeþ þe preestes tale

GROUP H. FRAGMENT IX.

§ 1. THE MANCIPLE'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

And þus [on leaf 230, back]
bygynnes þe manciples tale.

WEte ȝe noȝt where stont a litel toune ¶ The prologe/
Which þat is cleped bob vp and doune
Vnder þe blee in Caunterbery waye
Ther gan our hooste to Iape and playe
And saide Sirres donne is in þe myre
Is þer no man for preiere ne for hyre
That wil awake our felawe behinde
A theef myȝt hym robbe and bynde
Se howe he nappeþ for goddys bones.
Awaite he wil falle from his hors at ones
This is a coke of londoñ wiþ meschaunce
Do hym come forþ he knoweþ his pen*aun*ce [leaf 267]
ffor he shal telle a tale be my fay
Al þouȝe it be nat worth a botel of hay
Awake þou coke god ȝeue þe Sorowe
What aileþ þe to slepe so by þe morowe;
Hast þou had fleen to nyȝt or þou art dronke
Or hast þou al nyȝt wiþ som quene yswonke
So þat þou maist not holde vp þine hede
This Coke þat was [ful] pale and no þing rede
Saide to oure hooste so god me blesse
As þer is holden on me such heuynesse
That I not wheder me were leuer sclepe
Than þe best Galon wyne in chepe

wel quod þe manciple it' wil done eso
To þe Sir' Coke and to no wi3t' mysplese
whiche þat' riden in þis company
þat' soo our hoost' wil of his curtesy
I wil as nowe excuse þe of þi tale
ffor in good fay þi visage is ri3t' pale
þine eyen dasen as me þenkeþ
And wel I woot' þi breth̄ sore stynkeþ
That' shewe þ þou nart not' wel disposed.
Of me certaine þou shalt' not' bene glosed.
See howe he goleth þis dronken wi3t'
As þowe he wolde swoune anoñ ri3t'
Hold cloos þi moupe man by þi fader kyn
The deuel of helle sette his foote *per*In.
Thy cursed breeth̄ wil affecte vs alle
ffy stynkinge hogge foule mot' þe byfalle
Now takeþ hede sirs of þis lusty man
Now swete sir wil ye Iust' at' þe fan
Therto me þenkeþ 3e be wel yshape
¶ I trowe 3e han dronken wyne grape
And *þat* is whan men ploy *with* a strawe
And wiþ þis speche þe coke wex al wrawe
[And on the Maunciple. gan to nodde fast' [MS Reg. 17 D 15, *leaf* 285]
ffor lak' of' speche. and downe the hors hym cast'
Where as he lay til that' men hym vptoke
This was a faire cheuache. of' a cooke
Allas that' he nad. hold' hym bi his ladiH
And or that' he ageyn. were in his sadiH]
Ther was grete schovuyng' to *and* froo
To lift' hy*m* up and mykel care *and* woo
So vnweldy was þis appalled goost'
And to þe manciple þan speke our hoost' [leaf 267, back]
By cause drink' haþ Dominacioñ
Vppon þis man by my sauacioñ
I trowe he wolde lewdely telle his tale
ffor were it' wyne or ellis moyst' ale

That' he haþ dronken he spekeþ *in* his nose
And galpeþ fast' and eke he haþ þe pose
He haþ also to doo more þan ynogh̄
To kepe hym and his capel out' of þ^e^ sclouȝgh̄
And if he falle fro his capel eft' sone
Than shal we alle haue ynogh̄ to done
In liftinge vp of his heuy corps
Telle on þi tale of hym make I no force
But' nowe Maunciple *in* feiþ þou art' to nyce
Thus openly to repreue hym of his vice
Anoþer day he wil perauenture
Recleyme þe and bringe þe to lure
I mene he speke wold of smale þingges
As forto pynchen at' þi rekenynges
That' were not' honest' ȝif it come to preef'
Nowe quod the maunciple þat' were a gret' meschcef
So myȝt' he bringe me in þe snare
ȝit' had I leuer paien for þe mare
Which̄ he rit' vpon þan he shuld' *with* me strive
I wil not' wreþ hym as mot' I þrive
what' þat' I spak I saide it' *in* my bourde
And wote ȝe what' I haue here *in* a gourde
A drauȝt' of wyne ȝe of a ripe grape
And riȝt' anoon ȝe shul se a good Iape
This Coke shal drynk' þerof ȝif þat I may
Vp peyne of deþ he wil nat' say me nay
And certeynly to tellen as it' was
Of þis vessel þe Coke dronk' fast' alas
What' nedeþ hit' he dronk' ynouȝe to-forn
And whan he had poped *in* his horn
To þe Manciple he toke þe gourde ageyn
And of þat' drinke þe Coke was wonder feyn̄
And þonked hym in such̄ wise as he coude
Than gan oure hoost' to laughen wondere loude [leaf 263]
And saide I see wel it' is necessarie
Where þat' we goon good drink' wiþ vs to carie

ffor þat' wil turne rancour and dissese
To pees and loue and mony a wronge to sese
O Bachus blessed be þi name
That' so can turne ernest' into game
Worship and þonk' be vnto þe
ffor of þis matere ȝe gete no more of me
Telle on þou manciple I þe pray
Wel sir' quod he now herkeneþ what' I say

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe Manciple

¶ The Tale.

And here bygynneþ þe manciple his tale [on leaf 268]

WHan Phebus dwelt here *in* þis erþe adoun
As olde bokes maken mencioun
He was þe most lusty bachilere
Of al þis world and eke þe best archere
He slough Phiton þe serpent as he lay
Sleping ayeinst þe sonne vpon a day
And mony a noþer worþi noble dede
He wiþ his bowe wrouȝt as men may rede
Pleien he coude on euery mynstralcie
And syngen þat it was a melodye
To harken of his cleere voys þe soun
Certes þe kynge of Thebes Amphioun
That wiþ hys syngging walled þat cite
Coude neuere synge half so wel as he
Therto he was þe semeliest man
That is or was siþ þe world bygan.
What nedeþ it is fetures to discrive
ffor in þis world was noon so faire alyue
He was þer-with fulfilled of gentilnesse
Of honure and of *par*fit worþinesse
This Phebus þat was flour of bachelerie
As wel in fredom as in Chiualrie
ffor disport and in signe eke of victorie
Of Pheton so as telleþ vs þe storie
was wont to beren in his honde a bowe
Now haþ þis Phebus in his hows a crowe [leaf 268]
Which in a Cage he fostred mony a day
And tauȝt it to speke as men doon a Iaye

White was þis crowe as is a white swan
And countrefeted þe speche of euery man
He cowde whan he shuld telle a tale
Ther-wiþ in al þis londe þer nys no nyȝtyngale
That cowde by an hundred thousan dele
Synge so mery and eke so wel
Now had þis phebus in his hous a wif
Which þat he loued more þan his owne lif
And nyght and day did euer diligence
Her for to plese and done reuerence
Sauf oonly ȝif I þe soþ shal sayn
Ialous he was and wold haue kept hure fayn
ffor hym were loþe Iiaped forto be
And so euery man wold in such degre
But al for nauȝt for it availeþ noȝt
A good wif þat is clene of werk *and* þoȝt
Shuld not be kepte in noon awaite certeyn
And trewly þe labour is *in* veyn
To kepe a schrewe for it wil not be
This hold I for a verrey nycete
To spille labour forto kepe wyues
Thus writen olde clerkes in her lyues
But nowe to *pur*pos as I first bygan
This worþi phebus dooþ al þat he can/
To plesen hure wenyng by such plesaunce
And for his manhode and his gou*ern*aunce
That no man shuld haue put hy*m* from hir *gr*ace
But god it wote þer may no man enbrace
As to destroie a þinge which þat nature
Haþ naturelly sette *in* a creature
Take eny bridde and put it in a cage
And doo al þine entent and þi corage
To fostere it tenderly wiþ mete *and* drink
Of alle deyntise þat þou canst by-þenk
And kepe it also clenly as he may
Al þouȝe his Cage of gold be neuer so gay [leaf 269] 168

3it hap þis brid by twenty þousand fold
Leue in a forest þat is wilde and cold
Goon ete wormes and suche wrecchednesse
ffor euer þis bridde wol doon his bysynes
To escape out of his cage if he may
His liberte þe bridde desireþ ay.
Lat take a cat and fostre hym wel *with* mylk
And tendere flesshe and make his couche of silk
And lat hym seen a mous goo by þe walk
And anoon he wayueth mylk flessh and alk
And euery deynte þat is in þe hous
Suche appetit hap he to ete a mous
Lo here hap lust his domynaciōn
And appetit flemeþ discreciōn
As þe wolf hap also a vileyns kynde
The lewdest wolf þat she may fynde
Or leest of reputacioñ þat wil she take
In tyme whan hur lust to haue a make
Alle þise ensamples speke I. by þise men
That bene vntrewe and no þing by *wom*men
ffor men han euer a likerous appetit
On lower þing to *per*forme her delite
Than on her wyues bene þei neue*re* so faire
Ne neuere so trewe ne so debonaire
fflesshe is so newefongel wiþ meschaunce
That we ne konne no þinge han plesaunce
That sowneþ in vertue eny while
This Phebus which þat þouȝt vpon no gile
Deceyued was for al his Iolite
ffor vnder hym anoþer had she
A man of litel reputaciōn
Not worþ to phebus i*n* co*m*parisoñ
The more harme is it happeþ oft soo
Of whoch̄ þer co*m*meth mochel harme *and* woo
And so byfelle whan phebus was absent
His wif anoon hap for her le*m*man sent

Here lemman certes þis is a knauyssh speche
ffor3eueþ it me and þat I 3ou biseche [leaf 269, back]
The wise Plato seiþ as 3e may [1]rede [[1] *first* here rede],
þe Word mot nedes accorde wiþ þe dede
3if men shal telle *pro*prely a þinge
The worde mot Cosyn be to þe workinge
I am a boistous man riȝt þus say I
Ther nys no difference trewly
Bitwix a wif þat is of hie degre
3if of her body dishonest she be
And a poor wenche oþer þan þis
3if it so be þei wirk boþ amys
But þat þe gentile is in state aboue
She shal be cleped his lady as *in* loue
And for þat oþer is a poor wo*m*man
She shal be cleped his wench *and* his le*m*man.
And god it woote myn owne der broþer
Men sayn þat oon lith as lowe as doþ þat oþer
Riȝt so bitwix a titles tyraunt
And an houlaw[2] and a þeef erraunt [[2] *or* houlaw]
The same I say þer nys no difference
To Alisaunder was tolde þat sentence.
That for þe tyraunt is of gret*er*e myȝt
By force of mayne for sclen doun riȝt
And brennen hous and home and make al playn
Lo þ*er*fore is cleped a Capitayn
And for þe outlaw haþ but smal mayne
And may not doon so grete an harme as he
Ne bringe a contre to so grete meschief
Men clepen hym an outlay or a þeef
But for I am a man not text wel
I wil not telle of Titus neuer a dele
I wil go to my tale as I byganne
Whan phebus [wif] had sent for her le*m*man
Anoon þei wrouȝten al her lust volage
This white crowe þat henge ay *in* þe cage

Bihelde her werk' and saide neuer a word'
And whan þat' home was come Phebus þe lord'
þis crowe songe Cokkow. cokkow. Cukkowe
What' brid quod phebus what' songe singest' thowe [leaf 270]
Ne were þou wonte so merely to synge
That' to myn hert' ffil was a reioysinge
To here þi vois allas what' songe is þis
By god quod he I synge nat' a mys
Phebus quod he for al þi worþinesse
ffor al þi bewte and þi gentilnesse
ffor al þi songe and al þi mynstralcye
ffor al þi waytinge blered is þine ye
Wiþ oon of litel reputaciõn
Nouȝt' worþ to þe as in comparisoñ
The mountaunce of a gnatte so mote I thryue
ffor on þi bed þi wiff' I segh̃ hym swyve
What' wil ȝe more þe crawe anoon hym tolde
By sad tokens and by wordes bolde
How þat' his wif' had doon her leccherie
Hym to grete shame and to gret' vilenye
And tolde hym oft' he segh̃ it' wiþ his eyen
This Phebus gan awaiward' forto wryen./
Hym þouȝt' his sorowful hert' brast' atwoo
His bowe he bent' and sette þer-Inne a floe
And in his Ire haþ he his wif sclayñ
This is þeffecte þer nys no more to sayñ
ffor sorowe of which̃ he brak' his mynstralcie
Boþ harpe and lute. gitern and sawtrie
And eke he brak' his harowes *and* his bowe
And after þat' þus speke he to þe crowe
Traitour quod he wiþ tunge of scorpioñ
Thou hast/ me brouȝt' to my *con*fusioñ
Allas þat' I was wrouȝt' why ner I dede
O dere wiff o. gemme of lustihede
þat' were to me so sad and eke so trewe
Now liest' þou dede wiþ face pale of hwe

fful giltles þat durst I swere ywis
O Rakel hounde to doon so foule amys
O trouble witte .o. yre rechelees
That vnavised smytest giltlees
O wan-trest ful of fals suspeciōn
Wher was þi witt and þi discrecioñ [leaf 270, back]
O euery man be war of rechelesnesse
Ne trow no þinge wiþ-out strong witnesse
Smyte not to sone er þow wit why
And be avised wel and soberly
Er ȝe doon eñy executiōn
Vppon ȝoure Ire for suspeciōn
Allas an Mł. folk han rakel yre
ffully fordoon or brouȝt hem in þe myre
Allas for sorowe I wil my self scle
And to þe Crawe o fals þeef saide he
I wil þe qwite anoon þi fals tale
Thow songe whilom like a nyȝtyngale
Now shalt þou fals þeef þi songe forgone
Eke þi white fetheres euerechone
Ne neuer in al þi lif shalt þou speke
Thus shal men on a traitour ben ywreke
Thowe and þine ospringe euer shul be blake
Ne neuer swete noys shul ȝe make
But euer crie aȝeinst tempest *and* reyne
In tokenynge þat þorgh̄ þe my wif is scleyn
And to þe crowe he stert and þat anone
And pulled his white feþeres euerechone
And made hym blak and raft hym al his songe
And eke his speche and out atte dore hym sclonge
Vnto þe deuel to whoom I hym bitake
And for þis caus bene al[le] crowes blake
Lordyngges by þis ensample I ȝou preie
¶ Beþ war and takeþ kepe what þat ȝe seie
Ne telleþ neuer no man ȝoure liff
How þat anoþer man haþ diȝt þi wiff

He wil ȝou hate mortelly certayn
Dann salomon as wise clerkes sayn
Techeþ a man to kepe his tunge wel
But as I seide I am not text wel
But napelees þus tauȝt me my dame
My sone þenk on þe crowe a goddys name
My sone kepe wel þi tunge and kepe þi frende
A wicked tunge is wors þan a feende [leaf 271]
My sone from a feende men may hem blisse
My sone god of hise endelees goodnesse
Walled a tunge wiþ teeþ and lippes eke
ffor man shuld hym avise what he speke
My sone ful oft for to mochel speche
Haþ mony a man be spilt as clerkes teche
But for litel speche avisely
Is no man shent to speke generally
My sone þi tunge shuldest þou restreyñ
Att al tyme but whan þou dost þi peyn
To speke of god in honure *and* preiere
The furst vertue sone ȝif þou wilt lere
Is to restreyne and kepe wel þi tonge
Thus lernen children whan þei bene ȝonge
My sone of moche speking euel avised
Ther lasse speking had ynow suffised
Comeþ moche harme þus was me told *and* tauȝt
In mochel speche synne wanteþ nauȝt
Woost þou wherof a Rakel tunge serueþ
Riȝt as a swerd forkutteþ and for-kerueth
An arme a twoo my dere sone riȝt soo
A tonge kitteþ frendship al a twoo
A Ianglere is to god abhomynable
Rede Salomon so wise and honurable
Rede Dauid and his Psalmes. rede Senek
My sone speke not but *with* þi hede þou bek
Dissimule as þou were deef if þat þou here
A Iangelere speke of parilous matere

þe fflemyngꝭ seiþ and lerne itꝭ ȝif þe listꝭ
Thatꝭ litel Iangelinge causeþ mochl ryst
My sone ȝif þou no wikked word hastꝭ seide
The ther notꝭ drede forto be bywreiede
Butꝭ he þatꝭ haþ myssaide I dar wel sayn̄
He may by no way clepe his wordꝭ agayn̄
þingꝭ þatꝭ is saide. is saide *and* forþ itꝭ goþ
þouȝe hy*m* repentꝭ or be he neuer so looþ
He is his þral to whom þatꝭ he haþ saide
A taile of which̄ he is nowe euel a-payde [leaf 271, back]
My sone be war and be notꝭ auto*ur* newe
Of tydingges whedere þei be fals or trewe
Where so þou come amonges hie or lowe
Kepe wel þi tunge and þenkꝭ vpon þe crowe
¶ **þus endeþ þe prologe of þe manciple.**

GROUP I. FRAGMENT X.

§ 1. THE BLANK-PARSON LINK.

[This is really a link between some unwritten Tale and the Parson's. It has been made into the Manciple-Parson Link (or Yeoman-Parson by the Christ-Church MS) by Chaucer's copiers, though not meant for it.]

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe p*er*sone [*on lf* 271, *bk*]

BY þat' þe manciple had his tale ended
þe sonne fro þe southñ is descended.
So lowe þat' he was nau3t' to my si3t'
Degrees *nyne and twenti*[1] as of hight' [1 *MS* xxix]
Ten of þe clok it' was so as I gesse
ffor xj foote or litel more or lesse
My shadowe was at' þilke tyme as þer
Of suche fete as my lengthe parted were
In sex foote equal of p*ro*porcioñ
þer-wiþ þe moones exaltacioñ
I mene libra alway gan ascende
As we were entringe at' a throppes ende
ffor wiþ our hoost' as he was wont' to gye
As in þis caas our Ioly companye
Saide in þis wise lordyngs euerechoñ
Now lakkeþ vs no tale more þat' oon
ffulfilled is my sentence *and* my degre
Who wil nowe telle a tale lat' see
Almost' fulfilled is myn ordyn*au*nce
I prei to god so 3eue hym ri3t' good ch*au*nce
That' telleþ þis tale to vs lustely
Sir' preest' quod he art' þou a vikarie
Or art' thou a p*er*sone sei þe soþ by þi feye
Be what' þou be ne breke nat' our pleye

ffor euery man sauf þou haþ told his tale
Vnbocle and schewe whatꝰ is in þi male
ffor trewly me þenkeþ by þi chere
Thow shuldestꝰ knetꝰ vp wel a grete matere
Telle vs a fable anoon for Cokkes bonys
This person answerdꝫ al atꝰ onys
þow getestꝰ fable noon ytoldꝫ for me
ffor Poule þatꝰ writeþ vnto Timothe· [leaf 272]
Repreuen hem þatꝰ waiven soþfastnesse
And tellen fables and such wrechednesse
Whi shuld I shewen draf outꝰ of my festꝰ
Whan I may shewe whete if þatꝰ me lestꝰ
ffor whicꝫ I say if þatꝰ þe lustꝰ to here
Moralite and vertuous matere
And þan þatꝰ ȝe wil ȝeue me audience
I wil ful fayne atꝰ cristes reuerence
Doon ȝou plesaunce leeful as I can
Butꝰ trusteþ wel I am a soþeren man
I can notꝰ gestꝰ. rum ram. ruf by letterꝰ
Ne god woote Ryme hold I butꝰ lite betterꝰ
And þerfore if ȝou lustꝰ I nyl natꝰ glose
I wil ȝou telle a mery tale in prose
To knytte vp al þis feestꝰ and make an ende
And Ihesu for his grace witꝰ me sende
To schew ȝou þe way in þis viage
Of þilkꝰ parfite glorious pilgrimage
Thatꝰ hightꝰ Ierusalem celestiaꝫ
And if ȝe vouchesauf anoꝫ ȝe shaꝫ
Bygynne vpon my tale for whicꝫ I prey
Telle ȝourꝰ avis I can no better seye
Butꝰ naþelees þis meditaciōn
I puttꝰ aye vnder correccion
Of clerkes for I am notꝰ textꝰweꝫ
I take butꝰ þe sentence trusteþ weꝫ
Therfore I make protestacioꝫ
Thatꝰ I wil stonde to correccioꝫ

Vpon þis woord we han assented sone
ffor as it' semed it' was forto done
To enden in som vertuous sentence
And forto ȝeue hym space *and* audience
And bad our hoost' he shulde to hym seie
þat' alle we to telle his taile hym preye
Our' hoost' had þe wordes for vs alle
Sir' preest' quod he now faire mot' ȝou byfalle
Say what' ȝou lust' and we shullen gladly here
And wiþ þat' word' he saide in þis manere [leaf 272, back]
Telleþ quod he ȝoure meditacioun
But' hasteþ ȝou þe sonne wil a-doun
Beeþ fructuous and þat' in litel space
And to do wel god sende ȝou his grace.
¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe persons tale

THE PARSON'S TALE.

A TREATISE ON PENITENCE, IN 3 PARTS:

Part I. On **Penitence**, and its 1st requisite **Contrition (A)** (p. 593—612).
Part II. On its 2nd requisite, **Confession (B)** (p. 612—679).
Part III. On its 3rd requisite, **Satisfaction (C)** (p. 679—684), with the Writer's Leave-taking and Retractations (p. 684-85).

PART I. (p. 593—612).

ON PENITENCE, AND ITS 1ST REQUISITE, CONTRITION.

Proem on Jeremiah vi. 16. The Tale is to be on *Penitence* as a full noble way to lead folk to Christ, and is to treat of
i. 'what is Penitence' (p. 594).
ii. 'whennes it is cleped Penitence'. [*not in the Tale.*]
iii. 'in how manye maneres been the accioums or werkynges of Penitence' (p. 594-5).
iv. 'how many speces ther been of Penitence' (p. 595).
v. 'whiche thynges apertenen and bihouen to Penitence' (p. 595—682: nearly all Parts I and III, and all Part II).
vi. 'whiche thynges destourben Penitence' (at end of Part III, p. 682) (p. 593).
i. **Penitence** defined, by *a.* St Ambrose; *b.* 'som doctour'; *c.* the writer. Its requisites: 1. bewailing of sins; 2. purpose to have shrift, to do satisfaction, never to sin again, to continue in good works (p. 594).
[ii. *not given.*]
iii. The 3 actions of Penitence: 1. Baptism after sin; 2. not to do deadly sin after baptism; 3. not thus to do venial sin (p. 594-95).
iv. The 3 speces or kinds of Penitence: 1. Solemn (to be put out of church, or do open penance); 2. Common (to go naked on pilgrimage); 3. Private (p. 595).
v. The 3 necessities or requisites for Penitence (p. 596—682):
A. Contrition of heart (p. 596—612).
B. Confession of mouth (Part II, p. 612—679).
C. Satisfaction (Part III, p. 679—682).
Penitence avails against 3 things, by which we wrath Christ (p. 595).
A. Contrition is the root of Penitence, whose stem bears branches and leaves of Confession, and fruit of Satisfaction.
Contrition also bears a seed of grace, whose heat draws men to God. (Simile of the child and his nurse's milk.)
Penance is the tree of life (p. 596).
Four Points to be known about Contrition:
1. What it is; 2. the causes that move a man to it; 3. how to be contrite; 4. what it avails the soul (p. 597).
2. The 6 Causes that should move a man to Contrition:
a. Remembrance of Sins (p. 597-8).
b. Whoso does sin is the Thrall of Sin (p. 598-99).
c. Dread of the Day of Doom and the Pains of Hell (p. 599—604). These described: the Doom (p. 599-600); Job's 'lond of mysese and of derknesse' (p. 600-1); the 3 shames in hell against (1) 'Honours, (2) delices, and (3) richesses' (p. 611); poverty in 4 things: no treasure, food, clothing, or friends (p. 602); and no delights of the 5 senses. The pain shall be eternal (p. 603). Hell is orderless (p. 603-4). The 7 causes why the damnd have lost all hope (p. 604).
d. Remembrance of the good works we've left undone, and the loss of the good works done while we were in sin (p. 604-6). Deadly sin wipes out all good works formerly done (p. 605); and no good works can be done in deadly sin (p. 605-6). The new French song, *J'ai tout perdu mon temps* (also quoted in Chaucer's late poem of *Fortune*).

e. Remembrance of Christ's suffering for our sins (p. 606). In man's sin, every ordinance is turnd up-so-down (p. 607). For this disorder Christ sufferd (p. 608).
f. The hope of 3 things: 1. Forgiveness of Sins, 2. the Gift of Grace to do well, 3. the Glory of Heaven (p. 609).
3. How to be contrite. Contrition must be universal and total: for sins of thought, for desires against God's law, for wicked words as well as wicked deeds (p. 610). Contrition must be angwishous and continual (p. 609-11).
4. How Contrition helps the soul. It sometimes delivers a man from sin; destroys the prison of hell; cleanses the soul; changes the son of Wrath to the son of Grace (p. 611-12).

PART II (*no.* V. *continued*).

B. CONFESSION (THE 2ND REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE) (p. 612—679).
B. Confession. § 1. (l. 317) 'what is confession' (p. 612).
§ 2. 'wheither it oghte nedes be doon or noon' (p. 672-9).
§ 3. 'whiche thynges been couenable to verray Confession' (p. 674-79).

CONFESSION, § 1.

1. 'Confession is verray shewynge of synnes to the preest' (l. 318) (p. 612). We must understand too
a. (l. 321) 'whennes that synnes spryngen' (p. 612—15).
b. 'how they encreessen' (p. 615-16; 672-74).
c. 'whiche they been' (p. 616—672).
1.*a.* Sin sprang from the fall of Adam (p. 612). The legend of Adam and Eve told (p. 613). From Adam we took Original Sin, and were born sons of eternal damnation; but Baptism rescues us; though we keep liability to temptation, or Concupiscence (p. 613-14).
Concupiscence, or the nourishing and occasion of sin. St Paul and St Jerome's temptations (p. 614-15).
1.*b.* How Sin grows in a man. 1. by Concupiscence; 2. Subjection to the Devil; 3. Hesitation; 4. Doing, the Sin becoming Actual (p. 615-16).
1.*c.* Sin is *a.* venial, *β.* deadly (or mortal).
a. 1. Venial Sin defined. It skips into Deadly Sin. (Simile of the drops of water into a vessel's hold drowning the ship;) (p. 616).
β. 1. Deadly Sin defined (p. 617).
a. 2. Of divers small venial sins, hardly thought sins (p. 617-18); eating, drinking, talking, too much; using your wife too much; not visiting the sick (p. 617); talking vanities at church, &c. (p. 618). Cure of venial sins by love to Christ, prayer, confession, good works, receiving the Sacrament, holy-water, &c. (p. 618).
1.*c.* *β.* 2. *The Seven Deadly Sins.* The Chieftains, head and spring, of all other Sins (p. 619).
i. Pride (p. 619-26), and its Remedy (p. 626-8).
ii. Envy (p. 628-30), and its Remedy (p. 630-1).
iii. Ire or Anger (p. 631-42), and its Remedy (p. 642-5).
iv. Accidie or Sloth (Discontent, Ennui) (p. 645-49), and its Remedy (p. 650-1).
v. Avarice or Covetousness (p. 651-7), and its Remedy (p. 657-8).
vi. Gluttony (p. 658-9), and its Remedy (p. 660).
vii. Lechery (p. 660-8), and its Remedy (p. 668-72).
i. PRIDE (p. 619—626). Its 16 (and more) Twigs. 1. Disobedience, 2. Boasting, 3. Hypocrisy, 4. Despite, 5. Arrogance (p. 619), 6. Impudence, 7. Swelling of Heart (rejoicing in harm done), 8. Insolence, 9. Elation, 10. Impatience, 11. Contumacy, 12.

Presumption, 13. Irreverence, 14. Pertinacity, 15. Vain-glory, 16. Jangling (chattering).
A private kind of pride (the Host's Wife's and Wife of Bath's[1]), wanting to go to offering first, &c. (p. 620).
Two kinds of Pride, *a.* 'within man's heart', *b.* without; *b.* being the sign of *a.*, 'as the gaye leefsel atte Taverne is sign of the wyn that is in the Celer'[2] (p. 620-21), *b.* outside pride.
a. in dear clothing, 1. superfluity of it: its cost, furring, chisel-holes, dragging in the dung, waste of material (p. 621), unfitness for giving to the poor: 2. scantness of it: showing men's privy members, and buttocks (like a she-ape's rump), and the former as half-flayd, in parti-colourd hose[3]. The 'outrageous array of Women' (p. 623).
β. in horses (p. 623), and vicious grooms to tend 'em; plate-harness, &c.
γ. in household: keeping too many retainers or servants, who oppress the poor (p. 624).
δ. in table: not asking the poor to feasts; having burning and ornamented dishes[4]; too costly cups, &c., and too choice minstrelsy (p. 624).
What Pride sins are deadly, and what venial (p. 624).
The Sources of Pride (p. 624): goods of Nature, Fortune, Grace (p. 624). The Folly of Pride in any of these goods of Nature: 'we ben alle of o fader and of o mooder, and . . of o nature'[5]. The general signs of *Gentleness.* (The flies calld 'bees', and their stingless king) (p. 625); 3 gifts of Grace; 3 of Fortune. The brittleness of popular praise[6] (p. 626).
The Remedy against Pride.
Humility or Meekness, and its 3 kinds: in 1. heart, 2. mouth, 3. works. 4 kinds of each of these (p. 626-27).
ii. Envy (p. 627-30): defined by the Philosopher and St Augustine. It springs from Malice (p. 627).
Malice; 2 kinds of: 1. hardness of heart, or recklessness; 2. opposing truth (p. 627).
The 2 kinds of Envy (p. 628): 1. sorrow at other men's prosperity; 2. joy at other men's harm: whence comes
Backbiting; 5 kinds (p. 628): 1. praise with a *but* at the end; 2. turning well-meant things upside down to ill ones; 3. lessening a neighbour's goodness; 4. putting one man above another; 5. glad listening to scandal (p. 628).
Grudging or murmuring (p. 628): 1. against God (p. 629); 2. Murmuring from avarice, 3. from pride, 4. from envy; 5. among Servants, who say 'the Devil's *Paternoster* 6. Murmuring from ire or hate: thence, *a.* Bitterness of Heart, *b.* Discord, *c.* Scorning; *d.* Accusing (p. 629); *e.* Malignity (p. 630).
The Remedy against Envy (p. 630-31).
Love of God and one's neighbour. How a man shall love his neighbour. How an enemy is included in the name 'neighbour' (p. 630). 3 Remedies of Love, against 3 deeds of Hate (p. 631). Love is the medicine that casts out the venom of Envy from man's heart (p. 631).
iii. Ire or Anger (p. 631-42), and its 2 kinds: *a.* good Ire or Wrath (p. 632); *b.* wicked Ire, and its 2 kinds: sudden ire, and ire of malice aforethought (p. 632-33).
Three Shrews that forge in the Devil's furnace: Pride, Envy, and Contumely (p. 633).

[1] Melibe-Monk Link, B. § 11; and General Prologue, A.
[2] Chaucer's father no doubt had a sign outside his wine-shop or tavern in Thames Street, London.
[3] The outspoken and somewhat coarse abuse of the new fashions in dress is a great change from Chaucer's admirable Third-Period chaff of the moral short-comings of the monks and friars, &c., in the Prologue and middle Tales. If this is not change of man, it's change of mood.
[4] Chaucer must have seen plenty of these when he was page, valet, and squire.
[5] Compare Chaucer's *Gentleness*, &c. [6] Compare Clerk's Tale, Part VI, st. 135.

(FOR PETWORTH 607 *b*)

Wrath takes away a man's wit and spiritual life (p. 634).
Fruits of Wrath: 1. Hate. 2. War and wrong. 3. Manslaughter, *a.* spiritual; *b.* bodily (p. 634).
a. The 3 kinds of spiritual Manslaughter (3, calld 6 in MSS. p. 634): 1. by Hate. 2. by Backbiting. 3. Giving wicked Counsel, by Fraud (p. 634).
b. bodily Manslaughter: slaying with your tongue, giving orders or counsel to slay a man (p. 634).
Manslaughter in deed: its 4 (that is, 7) kinds (p. 635): 1. by law: a Justice condemning a man to death; 2. justifiable homicide, in defence of one's own life; 3. by misadventure: shooting an arrow, &c.; 4. a woman overlying her child; 5. a man making a woman barren by drinks, &c., killing the fœtus within her, shedding his seed in the wrong place; a woman killing the child in her womb; 6. a woman killing her child (after birth) for shame; 7. a man by lechery or blows killing a fœtus.
(Sixteen) other sins coming from Ire or Anger.
1. blaming or despising God, as hazarders do (Cp. *Pardoner's Tale*) (p. 635); and those who treat of the Sacrament of the altar irreverently (p. 636).
2. Attry anger: making angry false excuses for sin.
3. Swearing, which dismembers Christ (p. 636).
a. Of lawful Swearing, before a Judge: its 3 conditions, and its motives; *b.* God's name and Christ's, not to be taken in vain (p. 637); *c.* swearing for gentility or manliness (p. 638); *d.* swearing suddenly; *e.* of Adjuration and Conjuration by enchanters and necromancers; *f.* of Divination by Dreams, &c.; *g.* of Charms for Wounds and Maladies (p. 638).
4. Lying (p. 638), and its 6 kinds.
5. Flattering. How Flatterers are the Devil's Nurses, his Enchanters and Chaplains (p. 639).
6. Cursing that comes of irous heart: Malison.
7. Chiding and Reproach (p. 640); (specially a chiding wife[1]) (p. 640-41).
8. Scorning (p. 641).
9. Giving wicked Counsel (p. 641).
10. Sowing and making Discord (p. 642).
11. Double tongue (p. 642).
12. Betraying of Counsel (p. 642).
13. Menace.
14. Idle words.
15. Jangling (chattering) (p. 642).
16. Japing (joking) (p. 642-43).

The Remedy against Anger (p. 643-5). Debonairtee and Patience (p. 643). Four kinds of grievances, and their remedies: 1. wicked words, 2. loss of goods, 3. harm of body, 4. outrageous labour (p. 644).
Incentives to Patience. Story of the Philosopher and Child (p. 644-45). Obedience comes from Patience (p. 645).

iv. ACCIDIE, or SLOTH (Discontent, Ennui) (p. 645-49), is an enemy to the 3 states of man,—1. innocence (p. 645), 2. prayer (p. 646), 3. grace;—and to one's livelihood. Its 12 bad consequences (p. 646): 1. Sloth (and its remedy); 2. Dread to begin good works (p. 646); 3. Wanhope, or Despair (and its Remedy) (p. 647); 4. Somnolence (p. 648), and 5. Negligence, or 6. Recklessness, and the Remedy for each; 7. Idleness; 8. *Tarditas*, or tarrying before turning to God (p. 649); 9. Lachesse, or giving up a good work begun; 10. Coldness; 11. Undevotion; 12. Worldly sorrow (p. 649).

The Remedy against Accidie (p. 650-51): Fortitude or Strength, and its 5 kinds. 1. Magnanimity[2] or great Courage; 2. Faith or Hope; 3. Assurance; 4. Magnificence; 5. Constancy (p. 651).

[1] Does Chaucer here refer to his former wife?
[2] Miswritten 'Magnificence' in Ellesmere and Lansdowne MSS.

v. AVARICE (p. 651-57). The difference between Avarice and Covetousness (p. 651); and between an Idolater and an avaricious man (p. 652). Of Covetousness, and lords' extortion from their bondmen: "humble folk been Cristes freendes" (p. 652-53). The Duty of lords to their thralls or churls. Of those that pillage Holy Church (p. 653-54); lords who plunder the poor are like wolves (p. 654). Of Deceit between Merchant and Merchant (p. 654). Of honest bodily Merchandise (the surplus of one country may be sent to help another) (p. 654). Of spiritual Merchandise, or Simony, and its 2 kinds (p. 655),—thieves that steal Christ's souls get livings (p. 655-56);—Hasardry or Games of Chance (p. 656). Other outcomes of Avarice (p. 656): 1. Lying, 2. Theft (bodily and spiritual) (p. 656-57), 3. False Witness, 4. False Oaths (p. 657).

The Remedy against Avarice (p. 657): Mercy and Pity, and reasonable Liberality (p. 658). Of foolish largess (p. 658).

vi. GLUTTONY (p. 658-59), and its 5 kinds (p. 659): 1. Drunkenness, or the burial of man's reason; 2. a troubled spirit; 3. bad way of eating; 4. distemperd bodily humours; 5. forgetfulness. Or, as St Gregory says, 1. eating too soon; 2. eating too delicate food; 3. taking too much; 4. troubling too much about cooking food; 5. eating greedily: these are the 5 fingers of the devil's hand (p. 659).

The Remedy against Gluttony (p. 660): Abstinence, and its fellows. Temperance, Shame, Content with plain food, Moderation, Soberness, Sparing (p. 660).

vii. LECHERY (p. 660). Its punishment in the Old Testament (p. 660). Adultery, and the desire of it (p. 661-62).

The 5 fingers of the Devil's other hand (p. 662); 1. foolish looking; 2. villainous touching; 3. foul words; 4. kissing (old dotards, and dry dogs at a rose-tree (p. 662); and how a man should love his wife); 5. the stinking deed of lechery (p. 663). Its kinds: 1. Fornication. Taking a maid's maidenhead, or 100th fruit (p. 663). 2. Adultery, defined. 3. Harms following from it: *a.* breaking of faith; *b.* theft (of the wife's body from her husband (Joseph and Potiphar's wife), and of her soul from Christ); *c.* breaking God's commandment, and defouling Christ (p. 664). Of Harlots and Bawds (p. 665). Adultery is set between Theft and Manslaughter. More kinds of Adultery: 1. by Men bound by Religious Vows, &c.; 2. those in Holy Orders (p. 665). Lecherous Priests are like a free Bull in a town, and they eat raw flesh of folk's wives and daughters (p. 666); 3. by man and wife copulating for pleasure only (p. 667); 4. copulation with kinsfolk, spiritual (or godchildren) or fleshly (blood relations). 5. the abominable unmentionable sin; 6. Pollution, of 3 kinds: 1. too rank humours; 2. weakness (p. 667); 3. evil thoughts (p. 668).

The Remedy for Lechery (p. 668): I. Chastity and Continence.

1. in Marriage. (The true effect of Marriage. One husband to have one wife (p. 668). How a man should behave to his wife (p. 669). How the wife should be subject to her husband (p. 669), and be moderate in behaviour, discreet in words, &c. (p. 669-70). The 3 causes for which man and wife may copulate (p. 670): *a.* begetting of children; *b.* to pay the mutual debt of their bodies; *c.* to avoid lechery (p. 670). The 4th cause, pleasure, is deadly sin (p. 670-71).)
2. In Widowhood; 3. Virginity (p. 671).

II. Special avoidance of causes of lechery: *a.* eating and drinking; long sleeping; *b.* the person who'd tempt you (p. 671-72). (I wish I could tell you the Ten Commandments; but it's too high doctrine (p. 672).) [End of *Confession*, § 1, *c.*]

Sin is in heart, mouth, deed, by the 5 Wits (p. 672).

(FOR PETWORTH 608 *a*)

§ 1. *b.* (see p. 615-16.) The 7 Circumstances that encrease or aggravate sins (p. 672). 1. the person who sins (male or female, &c.); 2. the kind of sin (fornication or homicide); 3. the place it was committed in (as in a church, by a priest) (p. 673); 4. for what motive; 5. the number of times it was committed; 6. by what temptation; 7. how it was committed; and all other circumstances (p. 674).

CONFESSION, § 2, § 3 (p. 674-79).

Profitable Confession, and its 4 (= 3) *Conditions* (p. 674):
1. sorrowful bitterness of heart (p. 674); its 5 signs: *a.* shamefastness (like the Publican's) (p. 675); *b.* humility; *c.* fulness of tears (p. 675); *d.* no hesitation (like the Magdalen) for shame; *e.* obedience to receive penance laid on you (p. 675).
2. speedy Confession (p. 676); its 4 Conditions: *f.* that it be well thought over; *g.* the greatness and number of sins must be understood; *h.* the sinner must be contrite, and *i.* avoid occasions of sins.
3. Shrift must be made to one man, not more (p. 676).

True Shrift, and its 10 *Conditions* (p. 677): 1. that it be of free will; 2. that it be lawful (both sinner and priest, Popish); 3. that it be not despairing of Christ's mercy; 4. that a man accuse himself only, and not another; 5. that it be not lying (accusing oneself of sins never committed) (p. 678); that it be by one's own mouth, and not by letter; 7. that the sin be not painted with fair words; 8. that the shrift be to a discreet priest; 9. that the shrift be not made for vain-glory, but for fear of Christ; 10. that the shrift be not made suddenly, for a joke (p. 678). You may be shriven more than once for the same sin; and should be houseld once a year (p. 679).

PART III (*no.* v. *continued, and no.* vi.).

SATISFACTION (THE 3RD REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE) (p. 679—684).

In *a.* Alms. *β.* bodily punishment.

a. Alms and its three kinds (p. 679): 1. Contrition of heart. 2. Pity for one's neighbour's faults. 3. Giving good counsel to other's souls and bodies (food, visits in prison, burial). These Alms should be done privily, if possible (p. 680).

β. Bodily Punishment (Penance), of 4 *kinds:* 1. Prayers (chiefly of the Paternoster, whose expounding I leave to Masters of Theology) (p. 680). 2. Watching, and its 3 kinds: forbearing, *a.* meat and drink, *b.* worldly jollity, and *c.* deadly sin (p. 681). 3. Fasting, and its 4 kinds: Liberality to poor folk; spiritual gladness of heart; not grudging at fasting; reasonable eating. 4. Virtuous teachings, or Discipline: *a.* by word, writing, or example; *b.* by wearing hairshirts, &c., next your skin, scourging yourself, taking evils and injuries patiently (p. 682). [End of no. v. in Part i; p. 593.]

vi. The 4 Things that disturb Penance [no. vi, or last §, of p. 593 at foot] (p. 682). 1. Dread, and its remedy. 2. Shame, and its remedy. 3. Hope: *a.* of long life, and *b.* consequent overconfidence in Christ's mercy (p. 683). 4. Wanhope, or Despair of Mercy; its 3 kinds: *x.* from great and long continued sin; *y.* from falls-back into sin; *z.* from not being able to persevere in goodness (p. 683).

The fruit of Penance (p. 683-4).

EPILOGUE.

The Author's Leave-taking, and Lament over, and Withdrawal of, his Sinful Books, &c. (p. 684-85).

[*Petworth MS, on leaf* 272, *back.*]

[*There are no breaks in the MS. Tyrwhitt's are kept here to prevent slight differences in the texts throwing the Six-Text out of gear.*]

And here bygynneþ þe person his tale. ¶ Capitulum xxiiij^m^.
Ieremie vj^to^. ¶ State super vias & videte & interrogate de Semitis / antiquis que sit/ via bona & ambulate in ea. & inuenietis refrigerium animabus vestris:

[75] O Wre swete lord^e^ god of heuene þat^t^ no man wil perisshe but^t^ wil þat^t^ we commen all^l^ to the knowlecch̄ of hym and to þe blisful lif þat^t^ is perdurable [76] ammossheþ vs by þe prophet^t^ Ieremye þat^t^ seiþ. in þis wise [77] ¶ Stondeþ vp-on þe wayes and seeþ and askeþ of olde Patthes þat^t^ is to sayne of olde sentences which̄ is þe good way [78] and walkeþ in þat^t^ way and 3e shul here refresshyng^e^ for 3oure saules. &c^c^ [79] ¶ Mony bene þe waies espiritual þat^t^ leden folk^e^ to oure lord^e^ Ihesu crist^t^ and to þe regne^e^ of^f^ glorie. [80] Of which̄ way þer is a ful / noble waye and a ful couenable which̄ may not^t^ faile to man / ne to womman þat^t^ þourgh̄ synne haþ mysgoon from þe ri3t^t^ way of Ier*usalem* Celestiall^l^ [81] ¶ And þis way is cleped Penytence of which̄ men shuld^e^ gladly harken *and* enquere wiþ al his herte [82] to wete what^t^ is Pen*aunce*. and whi it^t^ is cleped penitence / and in how mony maners bene þe accions of worchynge of penytence. [83] and howe mony spices þer bene of penytences. and whiche þingges appertenen and byhouen to penytence. [and] which̄ þingges distrouben penytence ¶ Nota de pan*tencia*./

¶ Ambrosius

[84] ¶ Scynt' Ambrose seiþ. That' penitence is þe laynyng' of man for þe gilt' þat' he haþ done. [1]What' is penytence[1] and no more to doon eny þinge for which hym ouȝt' to playne. [85] And somme doctour' seiþ. Penytence is þe waymentyng' of man þat' soroweþ for his synne. *and* pyneþ hym self for he haþ mysdone. [86] Penytence wiþ certeyn circumstaunces is verray repentaunce of man þat' halt' hym self in sorowe and oþer payn for his giltes. [87] And for he shal be verrey penytent'. he shal first' bywaillen þe synnes þat' he haþ done and stedfastly proposed in his hert' to haue shrift' of mouþ and to doon satisfaccioñ [88] and neuere to doon þinge for whiche [2]hym ouȝte more to be-wayle or to compleyn and to contynue in good werkes or ellis his repentaunce may not' availe. [89] ffor as seiþ ysidere ¶ he is a-Iaper and a gabber and no verrey repentaunt' þat' eft'sone doon þinge for whiche hym ouȝt' to repent' [90] wepinge and nouȝt' forto stint' to do synne may nouȝt' auaile [91] ¶ But' naþeles men shullen hope þat' at' euery time þat' man / falleþ be it' neuer so oft' þat' he may arise þorgh penytence. if he haue grace // But' certeynly it' is grete dout'.

[1—1] *A sidenote copied into the text.*]

¶ Isidore./

¶ gregorius./

[92] ffor as seiþ seint' *gregorie*. Vnneþes ariseþ he out' of his synne *þat'* is chargeþ wiþ þe charge of euel vsage. [93] annt' þer-fore repentaunt' folk' þat' stint' forto synne and forlete synne. er þat' synne forlete hem holy churche holt' hem siker of her sauacioñ [94] ¶ And he þat' synneþ and verrely repenteþ hym in his last' [day]. holy church ȝit' hopeþ his saluacioñ by þe grete mercy of' our lord Ihesu crist' for his repentaunce. but' take þe siker way certeyn:

¶ tres accione[s] penitencie I^a. accio.

[95] And now siþens I haue declared ȝou what' þinge is penitence ¶ Now shul ȝe vnderstond' þat' þer bene iij. actions of penytence [96] ¶ The first' is þat' a man be baptist' aftere þat' he haþ synned [97] ¶ Seynt' Austyn seiþ But' he be penitent for his olde synful lif' he may no bygynne þe newe

clene lif. [98] ffor certes if he be baptised wiþ-out' penitence of his olde gilt'. he resceyueþ þe mark of bapteme. but' not' þe grace ne þe remyssion of his synnes til he haue repentaunce verray [99] ¶ Anoþer defaute is þis. þat' men doon dedly synne aftere þat' þei han resceyued bapteme [100] ¶ The iij. defaute is þat' men falle in venyal synnes after' her bapteme fro day to day. [101] þerof seiþ seynt' Austyne. þat penitence of good and humble folk. is þe penitence of euery day

2ª. accio.

3ª. accio./

¶ Augustinus

[102] ¶ The spices of penaunce bene þre. þat' oon of hem is solempne Another is comune. and the iij. is prive. [103] Eche penaunce þat' is solempne is in two maners. as is to be put' out' of holy church̄ in lent' for sclaughtere of children and such̄ maner þingges [104] ¶ Another is whan man haþ synned openly of whiche synne þe fame is openly spoken in þe contre. and þan holy churche by Iuggement' distreyneþ hym forto doo penaunce opẽn. [105] Somme penaunce is þer is þat' prestes enioynen men. comonly in certeyn caas as forto goon perauenture naked in pilgrimage. or bare þe feet' [106] ¶ Privey penaunce is þilk þat' men doon al day for privey synnes of which̄ we shryuen vs prively and receyuen prive penaunce

¶ þe spices of penaunce

¶ penitencia communis

¶ De secreta penitencia

[107] [1]¶ Now shalt' þou vnderstond' what' by[ho]ueþ and is necessarie to verrey parfite penytence and þise stonden on þre þingges. [108] Contricion of hert'. confession of mouþ. And satisfactiõ [109] ¶ ffor which̄ seiþ Iohñ Grisostom ¶ Penytence distreyneþ man to accept' benignely euery peyne þat' is enioyned hym wiþ contriciõn of hert' and shrift of mouþe. wiþ satisfaccion and worching' of al manere humilite. [110] And þis is fruytful penytence aȝeinst' iij. þingges in whiche we wreþen our lord' Ihesu crist'. [111] þis is to / sayn be delite in þenkinge. by rechelesnesse in spekinge, by wikked synful worchinge. [112] and aȝeinst' þise

¶ Grisostomus

¶ How penaunce may be likned to a tree

wikked giltes is penytence. þat may be likned vnto a tre [113] The rote of þis tree is contricioñ *þat* hideþ hym in þe herte of him þat' is verrey repentaunt'. riȝt as þe roote of a tree hideþ hy*m* in þe erþe. [114] ¶ Of þe roote of cont*ri*cion sprynge*þ* a stalk' þat' bereþ braunches and leeues of confessio*n*. and fruyt' of satisfactio*un* [115] ¶ ffor which Crist' seiþ in þe gospell ¶ Doþ digne fruyte of penytence. for by þis fruyte may men knowe þis tre. and not' by þe roote þat' is in þe hert' of man. ne by þe braunches ne by þe leeues of confessioñ

¶ Textus.

[116] ¶ And *per*fore our lord Ihesu *crist'* seiþ þus By

¶ Of þe seed of contricioun.

þe fruyte of hem shul ȝe knowe hem [117] ¶ Of þis roote springeth a sede of grace. .þe which sede is modere of sikernesse. þus þis sede is eger and hote. [118] The grace of þis / sede springe*þ* of god þorowe þe remembraunce of þe day of dome. and on þe peynes of

¶ Salomon.

helle [119] ¶ Of þis matere seith salomon. þat' in þe degre of god man forleteþ his synne [120] The hete of this sede is þe loue of god / and þe desiring' of þe Ioie *per*durable. [121] þis hete drawe*þ* · þe hert' of man to god' and doþ him hate his synne. [122] ffor soþly þer nys no þinge þat' sauo*ure*þ so wel to a childe as þe mylk' of his norice. ne no þing' is to hym more abhominable þat' þilk' mylk' what' it' is medled wiþ oþer mete. [123] Riȝt so þe synful man *þat* louep his synne. hy*m* semeþ þat' it' is to hym most' swete of eny þinge. [124] But' fro þat' tyme þat' he loueth sadly our lord Ihesu crist and desireth þe lif *per*durable. ther nys to hym [no þing] more abhominable. [125] ffor soþ. þe lawe of god is þe loue of god. ffor which

¶ De *prophet*a./

Dauid þ^e^ *pro*phet' seiþ. I haue loued þi lawe and hated wikkednesse ¶ he [þat] loueth god kepeþ his lawe and his

¶ Daniel./

worde. [126] This reson seiþ þe *pro*phete Daniell in spirit' vppon a vision of Nabugodonosor whan he [1]counsailled hym to doo pen*aun*ce. [127] Pen*aun*ce is þe tree of' liff to hem / þat' it' receyuen. And he þat' holdeþ hym

in verrey penytence is blessed aftere þe sentence of Salomon. ¶ Salomon.

[128] In þis penitence or contriciõn man shal vnderstonde .iiij. þingges. þat is to seyn what is contriciõn and whiche bene þe causes þat meuen a man to contriciõn and howe he shuld be contrite. and what contricioñ availed to þe soule. [129] Than is it þus. þat contricioñ is þe verrey sorowe þat a man receyueþ in his hert for his synnes with sad purpoos to schryuen hym and to do penaunce and neuere more to do synne. [130] And þis sorowe shal be in þis manere as seith seint Bernard ¶ It shal be greuous and hevie and ful sharp and poynant in hert. [131] ffirst for a man haþ a-gilt his lorde *and* his creature. and more sharpe and poynant: for he hath agilt his fadere celestiall. [132] And 3it more sharpe and poynant ffor he haþ wreþed and agult hym þat bou3t hym. þat with his precious blood haþe delyuered vs fro the boondes of synne and fro þe cruelte of þe deueil. and fro þe paynes of helle. [133] ¶ The causes þat ou3ten to meuen a man to contricioñ beñ .vj. ¶ ffurst a man shal remembre him of his synnes. [134] but loke þat þilk remembraunce be to him no delite by no way. but gret shame and sorowe for his gilt. ffor Iob seiþ. Synful men doñ werkes worþi of confessioñ. [135] And þerfore seiþ Ezechie. I wil remembre me al þe 3eeres of my lif. my bitternesse of myn hert [136] ¶ And god seiþ in þe apocalips ¶ Remembre 3ou from whennes þat 3e be falle. ffor byforn þat tyme þat 3e synned 3e were þe children of god. and lymmes of þe reigne of god. [137] But for 3oure synne 3e bene woxe þrall and foule. and membres of þe feende. hate of aungels sclaunder of holy churcñ. *and* foode of þe fals serpent perpetuele matere of the fuyre of hell [138] and þat more foule and abhomynable for 3e trespasen so often tyme as doþ þe houndo þat turneþ to eten his vomyte. [139] And 3it

¶ Sex mouimenta ad contricionem.

¶ Iob./

¶ Ezechiel.

¶ Apocalypsis./

bene ȝe foulere for ȝoure longe contynuyng' in synne and ȝoure synful usage. for whicħ ȝe* bene roten in ȝour synne as a beest' in his dunge. [140] ¶ Suche maner of þouȝtes maken a man haue shame for his synne
¶ Ezechiell and no delite. As / god saiþ by þe prophete Ezechiele [141] ¶ ȝe shul remembre ȝou of ȝoure waies: and þei shul displese ȝou soþely ¶ Synnes beñ þe waies þat' lede folk to hell

[142] ¶ The ij. cause þat' ouȝt to / [1]make a man to haue disdeyne of synne is þis. That' as seiþ seint'
¶ Petrus Peter ¶ Who so doth synne: is þral to synne and synne putteþ a man in gret' þraldome. [143] And þer-
¶ Ezechiele fore seith þe prophete Ezechiel ¶ I went' soryful in disdeyn of my silf. Certes ¶ wel auȝt' a man haue disdeyn of synne and wiþ-drawe / hym from þat'
¶ Seneca þraldom and vilanye. [144] And lo what' seiþ Seneca ¶ In þis matere he seiþ þus ¶ Thouȝe I wist' þat' neiþer god ne man ne shuld' neuere knowen it'. ȝit' wolde I haue desdeyne forto / do synne. [145] And the
¶ Seneca / same Seneca seiþ ¶ I am born to gretter þingges þan to be þrall' to my body. [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [146] A [fouler] þral may no man ne *wom*man make of his body þan ȝeue is body to synne [147] A[l] were it' the foulest' cheerle or womman þat' lyueþ and leest' of valewe. ȝit is he chaunged and most foule and more in seruitute. [148] euer' fro þe hyer degre þat' man falleþ: þe more is he þrall' and more vnto god and to þe world vile and abhomynable. [149] O / ȝood god wel auȝt' men haue desdeyn of synne. siþen þat' þorgħ synne. þer he was free nowe is he maked boonde. [150] & / þerfore seiþ seint
¶ Augustinus./ Austyn. ¶ If þou haue desdeyn of þi seruaunt if he a-gilt' or synne. haue þou þan disdeyn þat' þou þi silf shuldest' do synne. [151] Take reward' of þine valewe þat' þou / ne be to foule to þi self. [152] Allas wel ouȝten þei þan to haue desdeyne to be

seruauntes and þralles to synne and sore bene ashamed of hem self. [153] ¶ þat god of his endeles goodnesse haþ sett hem in hie astaat' and 3euen hem witt'. strengtħ of body. helþe. bewte. and prosperite. [154] and bou3t' hem fro þe deep with his hert' blood. þat' þei so vnkyndely a3einst' gentelnesse àquiten hym so vilenistly to sclowghter of her owne soules. [155] ¶ O good god. 3e wommen þat' bene of so grete bewte. remembreþ 3ou of þe prouerbe of Salamon ¶ He ¶ Salomon. [156] likneþ a fair' womman þat' is a foole of her body. ylik to a ryng' of gold' þat' is wreþed in þe Groyne of a sowe. [157] ffor ri3t' as a sowe ¶ wroteþ in euery ordure. So wroteþ she her bewte in stynkinge ordure of synne

[158] ¶ The iij cause þat' ou3t' to meuen a / man to contricioñ and dredo of þe day of dome. and of þe / horrible peynes of helle. [159] ffor as seint' Ierom seiþ ¶ Ieromias / ¶ Att' euery tyme þat' me remembreþ of þe day of dome I quake [160] ffor whan I ete or drinke or doo what' so I doo / euer me semeþ þat' þe trompe sowneþ in myn ere. [161] Riseth vp [1] þat' bene dede and commeþ to þe Iuggement'. [162] O Good god mochel. oweþ a man to dredo suchi Iuggement' per as we shulne bene alle as seiþ seint' Poule by-forne the strete of our lord' Ihesu ¶ Paulus crist' [163] wher as he shal make a general congregacioñ. Wher as no man had be absent'. [164] for certes þer ne veileþ noñ assoyn ne excusacioñ [165] and not' only þat' our defautes shullen / be Iugged but' eke þat' all our werkes shul openly be knowe [166] And as seint' Bernard' seiþ. There ne ¶ Bernardus shal no pledyng' availe ne no sleiȝt' we shul 3euen reknyng of euery ydel word' [167] Ther shul we haue a Iugge þat' may not' be deceyued. ne corrupte and whi for certes al oure þou3tes ben diskeuered as to hym. ne for preiere ne for mede he wil not' bene corrupte. [168] And þerfore seiþ Salomon. þe wreþe of god ¶ Salomon wil not' be corrupte / And þerfor seiþ Salomon ¶ þe / wreche ¶ Idem.

of god ne wil not' spare no wi3t' for preier ne for 3ift'. And
per¶fore at' þe day of dome þer nys no hope to escape.
[169] Wherfore Anselme seiþ ¶ fful grete
Angwissh shullen þe synful folk' haue at' þat tyme
[170] Ther shal be þe sterne and þe wroþe Iuge sitte aboue
and vnder hym þe horrible pitte of helle open to di-
stroye hym þat' most' byknowe his synne. which
synnes openly bene shewed byforn god and biforne
euery creature. [171] And on þe left' side moo deuels /
than hert' may þenk' forto harie and to drowe
þe synful soules / to þe pyne of helle. [172] And wiþ-
in þe hertes of folk' shal be þe bitynge conscience
and wiþ-out' forþ shal be þe world' al brennynge.
[173] whidere shal þan þe wrecched synful soule flee /
to hide hym. Certes he may not' hide hym. he most'
come forþ and schewe hym. [174] ffor certes as seiþ
¶ Ieronimus seint' Ierom ¶ The erþe shal cast' hym out' of hym.
and þe see also and the Eiere. þat' shal be ful / of
þondere clappes / and li3tynge [175] Now soþly
who so wil remembre hym of þise þingges I gesse
þat' his þingges shal not' turne hym into delite. but' to grete
sorowe for drede of the payne of helle. [176] And þer-
¶ Iob./ fore seiþ Iob. ¶ Suffre lord þat' I may a while
biwaile and wepe or I goo and wepe wiþ-out' retournynge to þe
derk londe keuered wiþ þe derknesse of deþe [177]
to þe londe of myssese and of derknesse. where as is
shadowe of deeþ. wher as þer nys noon oþer or-
dyn*aun*ce. but' grisly drete þat' euere shul last' [178]
¶ Loo here may 3e seen þat' Iob preied of respite a while
to bywepe and waile his trespas. ffor soþly oo / day of
respite is bettere þan al þe tresoure of þis world' [179] And
[1] for as moche as a man may acquite hym self to forn god
by penitence in þis world' and nou3t' by tresour' þerfor
shuld he prei to god to 3eue hym respite a while to
bywepen and bywaillen his trespas [180] ffor certes al
þe sorowe þat' a man my3t' make fro þe bygynnynge

of þe worlde nys but a litel þinge at þe regarde of þe sorowe of helle [181] ¶ The cause why þat Iob clepeþ helle þe londe of derknesse. [182] Vnderstondeþ þat he clepeþ it londe or erþe. for it is stable and neuere shal faile. derknesse. for he þat is in helle haþ defaute of liȝt materiall [183] ffor certes þe derke liȝt þat shal come oute of þe fire þat euere shal brenne shal turne hym al to peyne þat is in helle. ffor it shewep hym to þe horrible deuels þat hym tormenten [184] keuered wiþ þe derknesse of depe [. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . [185] . . . .
no gap in the MS.] bene þe synnes þat þe wrecched / man haþ don̄ which̄ þat distourben hym to se þe face of god. riȝt as a derk cloude bytwix vs and þe sonne. [186] londe of myssese by cause þat þer bene .iij. manere of defautes aȝeinste þre þingges þat folk of þis worlde han in þis present liff. þat is to say honours. delices. and Richesse. [187] Aȝeinst honour han þei in helle shame and confusion̄. [188] ffor wel ȝe woote þat men clepen honour þe reuerence þat men doon to man. But in helle nys noon honur ne reuerence. ffor certes no more reuerence shal be do to a kinge þan to a knaue [189] ¶ ffor which̄ god seith by þe prophetys wordes Ieremye. ¶ Thilk folk þat me despisen ¶ Textus Ieremie shullen bene despised. [190] ¶ Honur is eke cleped gret lorde Ther shal no wiȝt / seruen oþer. but of harme and torment ¶ Honure is eke cleped grete dignite and highnesse. But in helle shul þei bene al for-troden of deuels. [191] as god seiþ The horrible deuels shal goon and come vpon þe hedes of dampned folk And þis is for as moche as þe hier þat þei were in þis present lif. þe more shullen þei bene abated and defouled in helle. [192] ¶ Aȝeinst þe richesse of þis worlde. shullen þei haue myssese and pouerte. and þis pouert shal be .iiij. þingges [193] in defaute of tresour. of which̄

¶ Dauid propheta

Dauid þe prophete seiþ ¶ The riche folk þat enbraceden and oneden in al her hert to tresoure of þis world shullen sclepe in þe sclepinge of deþ. As no þinge shul þei fynden in her hondes of al her tresour [194] ¶ And more ouer þe dissese of helle shal bene in þe defaute of mete and drynk. [195] ¶ ffor god seiþ þus by moyses ¶ Thei shullen be wasted *with* hunger and þe briddes of helle shal deuoure hem *with* bitter deþ and þe galle of þe dragon [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] her morsell. [196] And ferþer ouer her myssese shal bene in defaute of cloþinge. ffor þei shullen be naked in body as of cloþing sauf þe fuyr in which þei brenne and oþer filþes. [197] and naked shul þei bene of saule. of al manere vertues which þat is þe cloþinge of saule. Wher bene þan þe gay Roobes and þe soft shetes and þe smal / shertes [198] ¶ loo what seiþ god to hem by þe prophete Ysay ¶ That vndere hem shullen be strawed motthes. and her couertours / shul be of wormes of helle [199] ¶ And ferþer ouere her dissese shal / bene in defaute of frendes. ffor he nys not poor þat haþ good / freendes. but þer nys no frende. [200] ffor neiþer god ne creature / shal be frende to hem. and euery of hem shal haten oþere wiþ dedly hate. [201] The sones of þe doughtren shullen rebellen aȝeinst þe fadere and modere and kynrede aȝeinst kynrede and chiden and despisen euereh of hem oþer boþ day and nyȝt As god seiþ by þe prophet Michias [202] ¶ And þe louyng children. þat whilom loued so flesshly euereh oþer. wolden euereh of hem eten oþer if þei myȝt. [203] ffor howe shuld þei loue hem to-gydere in þe peynes of helle. whan þei hated eche of hem oþer in þe prosperite of þis lif. [204] ffor trust wel her flesshly loue was dedly hate as seiþ þe prophete dauid ¶ who so þat loueþ wickednesse he hateþ his saule. [205] and who þat hateþ his owne soule. certes he may loue noon oþer wiȝt

¶ Deus per moysem

¶ Isayas./

¶ Machias./

¶ Dauid./

in no manere. [206] and þerfor in helle is no frendship. But euer þe moo flesshly kynredes þat bene in helle. þe more cursyngꝑ þe more chydingē. and þe more dedly hate þer is amonges hem [207] ¶ And forþermor þer shal be defaute of al manor delyces. ffor why þe delices ben þe appetites of þe .v. wittes. as. siȝt. heryng. smellynge. sauerynge and towchynge. [208] But in helle her siȝt shal be ful of derkenesse and of smoke and ful of teeres. and her heryng ful of waymentynge and of gnaistynge of teeþ as seith Ihesus / crist [209] ¶ her nose- ¶ Ihesu
þrelles shullen be ful stynkyng stynks ¶ And as seiþ
Isay þe prophete. Her saueryng shal be ful of bitter ¶ Isayas.
galle. [210] and touchyng of her body ykeuered
wiþ fuyr þat neuere shal be quenched. and wiþ wormes
þat never shul dye ¶ As god seiþ / by þe mouþ of ¶ Ihesus./
ysay. [211] ¶ And for as moch as þei shullen not wene
þat þei may dyen for peyne. and by her deþ flee fro
peyne. [1]þat may þei vnderstonde by þe worde of Iob. ¶ Iob.
þat seiþ. There as is þe shadowe of deþe [212] ¶ Certes
a shadowe haþ þe liknesse of a þinge of which it is
shadowe. But shadowe nys not þe same þinge of which it is
shadowe. [213] Riȝt so fareþ þe peyne of helle. it is
like deeþ for þe angwisshe horrible. *and* why for it
peyneþ hem euere as þoo men shulden dye anon But
certes þei shullen not dye. [214] ffor as seiþ seynt
Gregorie. ¶ To wrecched, Catyfe shal be deþe wiþ-out ¶ Gregorius./
deþe. ande ende wiþ-outen ende. and defaute wiþ-out
failynge. [215] for her deþe shal alway lyve. and her
eende shal euermor bygynne and her defaute shal not
faile. [216] And þerfore seiþ seint Iohn þe ¶ Iohannes
euaungeliste They shullen folowe deþ and þei shul Euangelista
not fynden hym. And þei / desiren to deye. and deþe
shul flee fro hem / [217] And eke Iob seith That in helle ¶ Iob./
is noon order ne rewele [218] And al be it soo þat god haþ
created al þing in riȝt ordre and no þing wiþ-

out' ordere. but' alle þingges ben ordred and nombred. ȝit' naþelees þei þat bene dampned bene no þinge in order ne holden / noon order'. [219] for þe erþe ne shal bere hem no fruyte. [220] ffor as þe / *prophete* dauid seiþ ¶ God shal destroy þe froyte of þe erþe as fro / hem. ne watere shal ȝeue hem no moystere. ne þe eyre no refresshynge. ne þe fuyre no liȝt'. [221] ffor as seiþ seynt' Basile. þe brennyngges of þe fuyre of þis worlde shal god ȝeuen to hem in helle þat' bene dampned. [222] But' þe liȝt' *and* þe clernesse shal be ȝeuen into heuene to his children./ Riȝt as þe good man ȝeueþ flesshe to his children. and bonys to his houndes [223] for þei shullen have noon hope to escape seiþ Iob. At' þe last' þat' ther shal horrour and grisly drede dwelle. wiþ-outen ende [224] ¶ Horroure is alway drede of harme þat' is to come and þis drede shal euer dwelle in þe hertes of hem þat' bene dampned. and þer-fore han þei lorn al' her hope. for vij. causes. [225] ffirst' for god þat' is her Iuge shal be wiþ-oute mercy to hem. ne þei may not' plese hym. ne noon of his halowes. ne þei may ȝeue no þinge for her raunsom. [226] ne þei han no voys to speke to hym. ne þei may nat' flee fro peyne ne þei han no goodnesse in hem þat' þei may schewe to delyuere hem fro peyne [227] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Salomon ¶ The wikked man dyeþ: and whan he is dede he shal haue no hope to / eskape fro peyne. [228] who so shame wolde wel vnderstonde and bythenk' hym wel on þise peynes and þat' he haþ deserued þe same peynes / for his synne. Certes he shuld' haue more talent' to sike and to wepe [1]þan for syngen and to pley. [229] ffor as seiþ Salomon. Who so þat' had þe science forto knowe þe peynes þat' bene establisshed and ordeyned / for synne he wold make sorowe. [230] Thilk' science as seiþ seint' Austyn Maketh a man to weymenten in his hert'

¶ *dauid prophete*./ ¶ Basilius./ ¶ Iob./ ¶ Salomon./ ¶ Salomon ¶ *Augustinus*.

[231] ¶ The iiij. poynte þat' aught' make a man

haue contrition is þe soryful remembraunce of þe good þat he haþ lost to doon here in erþe. and eke þe good / þat he haþ lorne [232] ¶ Soþly þe good werkes þat he haþ lost eiþer þei bene þe good werkes þat he haþ wrouȝt er he felle into dedly synne Or ellys þe good werkes þat he wrouȝt þe while he lay in synne [233] ¶ Soþly þe good werkes þat he did byforne þat he fille in synne ben all mortefied and astonyed and dulled by þe oft synnynge [234] That oþer good werkes þat he wrouȝt þe whiles he lay in synne þei bene vtterly dede as to þe liff perdurable in heuene. [235] Than / þilk good werkes þat bene mortefied by oft synnynge which good werkes he did þe whiles he was in charite ne mowen neuere / quicken aȝein with-outen verrey penytence. [236] And þerfore seiþ god by þe mouþe of Ezechiele þat is þe riȝtful man. Re- ¶ Ezechiele
tourne aȝein from his riȝtwissnesse and to worch wikkednes shal he lyue. [237] nay. ffor all þe good werkes þat he haþ wrouȝt ne shul neuere be in remembraunce for he shal deye in his synne. [238] ¶ And vpon þilk chapitere seiþ seint Gregorie thus. than we shulde vnder- ¶ *Gregorius super Ezechielem*
stonde þis principaly. [239] þat whan we doon dedly synne. it is for noȝt þan to reherce or drawe into memorie þe good werkes þat we han wrouȝt biforn. [240] ffor certys in þe wirking of dedly synne þer nys no trest to no good werk þat we han doon to-forne / þat is to sayn as forto haue þer-by þe lif perdurable in heuene [241] [. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] Whan we han contricion. [242] But soþly þe good werkes þat men / doon whiles þat þei bene in dedly synne. for as moch as þei weren doon in dedly synne þei mowe neuer quycken aȝein [243] ffor certes þing þat neuere haþ lif ! neuere may quycked. And naþelees al be it þat þei ne availe nouȝte to han þe lif perdurable ȝit availen

þei to abreggen of þe peyne of helle or ellis to geten temporell richesse. [244] Or ellis þat' god wil rather enlumyne and / lighten þe hert' of þe synful man to han repentaunce. [245] and eke þei availen forto vsen a man to do goode werk' þat' þe fende / haue þe lasse power of his soule [246] ¶ And þus þe curtaise Lord Ihesu crist' ne wil þat' no good werk' be lost'. ffor in somwhat' it' shal availe. [247] But' for as moche as þe good werkes [1]þat' men doon whan þei bene in þis liff' bene al mortefied by synne folowinge. And eke sithens al þe good werkes þat' men done þe whiles þei bene in dedly synne bene vtterly dede as forto haue þe lif perdurable [248] ¶ wel may þat' man þat' no good werk ne / dooþ · syngyn þilk newe songe. Iay tout perdue moñ temps et moñ labour [249] ffor certes synne byreueþ a man goodnes and nature and eke þe goodnes of grace [250] ¶ ffor soþ þe grace of þe holy goost' fareþ as fuyre þat' may nȯt' be ydell. ffor fire failleþ / anoon as it' forleseþ his worchinge [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [251] þan leseþ þe synful man þe goodnes of glorie þat' oonly is bihiȝt' to good men þat' labouren and worken [252] wel may he be sory þen that' oweþ al his lif to god as longe as he lyueþ haþ lyued and eke as longe as he shal bene þat' no goodnes ne haþ to pay wiþ his dette to god. to whom he oweþ al his lif. [253] ffor trust' wel he shal ȝeue acountes as seiþ

¶ Bernardus seint' Bernard' of alle þe goodes þat' han bene ȝeuen hym. in þis present' lif and how he haþ hem dispended. [254] not' so moch̃ þat' þer shal not' perisshe an heer of his hede. ne a moment' of an / houre ne shal not perisshe of þis tyme þat' he ne shal ȝeue of it' a rekenynge

[255] ¶ The .v. þinge þat' ouȝt' to meue a man to contricion is remembraunce of þe passion of our Lord Ihesu crist' suffred' for oure synnes [256] ffor as seiþ

¶ Bernardus seynt' Bernard' whiles þat' I lyue ¶ I shal haue remem-

braunce of þe travailes þat' our lord Ihesu crist' suffred in preching' [257] in werynesse in travailynge. his temptacions whan he fasted. his longe waking' whan he preied. his teeres whan þat' he wepte for pite of good puple. [258] þe woo and þe shame and þe filþe þat' men seiden to hym oft foule spittyng' þat men / spitten on his face / and þe buffettes þat' men ȝauen hym of þe // foule mouþes and of þe repreeus þat' men to hym seiden. [259] Of þe nailles wiþ þe which̄ he was nailled to þe cros. and of all̄ þe remenaunte of his passion̄ þat' he suffred for my synnes. / and no þinge for his gilt'. [260] And ȝe shul vnderstond' þat in mannys synne is euery maner order' of ordynaunce turned vp so doun. [261] ffor it' is soþ þat' god and reson̄ and sensualite and þe / body of man bene so ordeyned þat' euerech̄ of þise iiij. þinggꝭ shuld haue lordship of þat' oþer. [262] As þus. god shuld' haue lordship ouer reson̄. and reson ouer sensualite. and sensualite ouer þe / body of man. [263] And soþly whan man synneþ al þis ordere of ordynaunce is turned vp so doune [264] ¶ And þerfore þan for as moch̄ [1]as þe reson of man wil not' be subiette ne obeysaunt' to god' þat' is his lord by riȝt' þerfore leseþ it' þe lordship þat' it' shuld haue in sensualite and eke ouer þe body of man. [265] And whi for sensualite rebelleþ þan aȝeinst' reson̄. And by þat' way leseth̄ resoun his lordship ouer sensualite and ouere þe bodye. [266] ffor riȝt' as reson is rebelle to god. riȝt' so is boþ Sensualite rebell̄ to reson and þe body also. [267] ¶ And certes this ordynaunce and þis rebellion̄. oure lord Ihesu crist' aboutȝ' vppon his precious body ful dere and herkeneþ in which̄ wyse. [268] ffor as moche þan is reson̄ rebelle to god. þerfore is man worþi to haue sorowe and to be dede [269] ¶ This suffred our lord' Ihesu for man aftere þat' he had be bytraied of his disciple and destreyned and

bounde so þat' þe blood brast' out' at eu*er*y naile of his
¶ Aug*ustinus*. hondes as seiþ seint' Austyn [270] ¶ And ferþermore
for as moche as reson of man wil not' daunte Sensu-
alite whan it' may. therfore is man worþi to haue shame.
and þis / suffred our lorde Ihesu crist' for man whan þei
spitten in his visage [271] ¶ And ferþer ou*er*e for as
moch̄ þan as the catif body of man is rebelle
boþ to reson and to sensualite. þerfore is it' worþi þe
deeþ [272] ¶ And þis suffred our lord Ihesu crist' for man
vpon þe crosse wher as þer was no p*ar*te of his body
free with-oute grete peyne and bitter passioñ [273]
and al þis suffred Ihesu crist' þat' neuer forfeited
[. . . . . .
. . *no gap in the MS.*] To mochel am I peyned for þe
same þingges þat' I neuer deserued and to mochel defoiled
for frendship þat' man bene worþi for to haue [274] And þer-
¶ Bernard*us* fore may þe synful man wel saye as seiþ seint' Bernard'
¶ Acursed be þe bitternesse. [. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [275] ffor certes
aftere þe dyuers discordaunces of oure wikkednes
was þe passion of Ihesu crist' yordeyned in dyuers þingges
[276] as þus. Certys synful man saule [is] bytraied
of the deuel by coueityse of temp*er*ele prosp*er*ite and
scorned by disceite whan he cheseþ flesshly delites and
3it' is he tormented by impacience of aduersite. and by-spette
by s*er*uage of subieccioñ in synne / and at' þe last' it' is
sclayn fynally. [277] ffor ¶ þis disordin*aun*ce of synful man
was Ihesus *crist'* first' bytraied and aftere þat' was he bounde
that' come forto vnbynde vs of synne *and* of peyne [278]
¶ Than was he byscorned þat only shuld' be
honoured. in alle þingges of al þingges. [279]
Than was his visage þat' au3t' be desired to be seyn
of al mankynd' [1]In whicḥ visage aungels desiren to
loken vileynsly byspitte. [280] Than was he scourged
þat' no þing' gilt' And fynaly þan was he /
crucified and sclayn [281] Than was he accomplised þe

wordes of Ysay / He was wounded for ¶ ysaias!/.
our mysdedys and defouled by oure vilanyes. [282]
¶ Now sipens þat' Ihesu crist' toke vppon hym self' þe
peyne of al oure wikkednesse ¶ Michel ou3t' synful
men by-wepe and by-waile þat' for his synnes goddis sone
of heuene shuld al þis peyne endure [283] ¶ The sixt'
þinge þat' au3t' meue man to contricioñ is þe hope
of iij. þingges. þat' is to say for3euenes of synne
and þe 3ift' of grace wel forto doo. And þe / glorie of
heuene wiþ þe whicħ god shal guerdon man for his
good dedys. [284] and for as moche as Ihesu crist'
3eueth vs þise 3iftes of his larges and of his souereyn
bounte. þerfor is he cleped / Ihesus Nazarenus rex
iudeorum. [285] Ihesus is forto seyn Saueour or sa-
uaciōn on whoom mēn shullen hope to haue for3euenesse of
synnes whicħ þat' is proprely sauacioñ of synnes
[286] ¶ And þerfore seide þe aungel to Iosepħ. þow ¶ qualiter an-
clepest' his name Ihesus þat' shal saue his puple from her gelus locutus est Iosepho./
synnes [287] And here-of seiþ Seint' Petrer ¶ Ther nys
noon oþer name vnder heuene þat' is 3eue to eny man
by whicħ a man may be saued. but' oonly Ihesus. [288]
Nazarenus is as moche for to seyn as florsshinge in
whicħ a man shal hope þat' he þat' 3eueth hym remissioñ
of synnes shal 3eue also hym grace wel to doo for
in þe floure is hope of fruyte in tyme comynge and in
for3euenesse of synnes hope of grace wel to doo. [289] I
was at' þe door of þine hert' seith Ihesus and cleped forto
entre. He þat' opneþ to me shal haue for3euenesse of
synne [290] I wil entre into hym by my grace and
soupe wiþ hym by þe good werkes þat' he shal doñ
whicħ werkes bene þe foode of god. and he shal soupe
wiþ me by þe grete Ioie þat' shal be 3eue to hym [291]
Thus shal man hope. þat' for his werkes of penaunce
god shuld 3eue hym his regne as he bihoteþ hym in the
gospel

[292] ¶ Now shal man vnderstonde in whicħ

manere shal be þis contricioñ I say þat it shal bene vniversale and total This is to saie. a man shal be verrey repentaunt for al his synnes þat he haþ doon in delite of his þouȝt. ffor delite is ful perilous [293] ffor þer bene twoo / manere of consentyngges that oon of hem is cleping consentynge of affectioñ whan a man is meued to do synne and deliteþ hym longe forto þenk on þat synne [294] he haþ reson aperceyued / [1]wel þat it is synne aȝeinst þe lawe of god [. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] al þouȝe his reson ne consent not to doon þe synne in dede. [295] ¶ ȝit seyn somme doctours þat suche delite þat dwelleth longe it is ful perilous al be it neuere so lite [296] And also a man shuld sorowe namely for al þat euere he haþ desired aȝeinst þe lawe of god wiþ parfite consentynge of his resoñ. ffor þerof is no ¶ doute þat it is dedly synne in þe consentinge [297] [. . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] and into dede. [298] Wherfore I say þat mony men. ne repenten hem neuer of suchꝰ þouȝtes and delices ne neuere shryuen hem of it but only of þe dede. of grete synnes outward. [299] wherfore I say þat suchꝰ wicked delites and wicked þouȝtes bene subtile bygylers of hem þat shullen be dampned [300] ¶ More ouere man ouȝt to sorowen for his wicked wordes and for his wicked dedys ffor certes þe repentaunce of a syngulere synne and noȝt repent of al her oþer synnes. or ellis repente hym of al his oþer synnes and not of syngulere synne may not availe. [301] ffor certes god almyȝty is al good. and þerfore he forȝeueþ alꝰ or ellis riȝt nouȝt [302]
¶ *Augustinus.* and hereof seiþ seynt Austyne ¶ I wote certeynly [303] þat god is enemye to euery synner ¶ and how þan he þat obserueþ oon synne. shal he haue forȝeuenesse of þe

remenaunt of his oþer synnes. Nay [304] ¶ And forþer ouere / contricion shulde be woundes soryful and anguisshous and þerfore ȝeueþ hym god pleynly his mercye. And / þerfore whan my soule was angwisshous wiþ-in me I had remembraunce of god þat my preiere myght come to hym. [305] ¶ fferþer ouer contricioñ most be continuell. and þat men han stedfast purpoos to shryue hym and forto amende hym of his lif. [306] ffor soþly þe whiles contritioñ lasteþ man may haue hope of forȝeuenes. And of þis commeþ hate of synne. þat destroieþ synne boþ in hym self and eke in oþer folk at his power. [307] ffor whiche seiþ dauid / ¶ ȝe þat louen / god haten wikkednes. ffor ¶ Dauid./ tresteþ wel to loue god is forto to loue þat he loueþ. and hate þat he hateþ nota

[308] ¶ The last þing þat men shal vnderstond in contricioñ is þis. wherof availeþ contricioñ ¶ I say þat somtyme contricioñ delyuereþ man fro synne. [309] of whicñ þat dauid seiþ. I say (quod dauid) ¶ Dauid./ þat is do say ¶ I purpose me fermely to shryve me. And þou lord relesedest my synne. [310] And riȝt so as contritioñ [1]availeth not wiþ-outen sad purpoos of shrift [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]. or Satisfactioñ wiþ-out contricion. [311] And more? ¶ Contricion destroieþ þe prison of helle and maketh it waike and febleþ þe strengthes of þe deuels and restoreþ þe ȝift of þe holy goost and of all vertues [312] and enterly clenseþ þe saule of synne and delyuereþ þe soule from þe peyne of helle and fro þe company of deuels and fro þe seruage of synne. and restoreþ [it] to all goodys espirituell into þe company [and] comunyoñ of holy churche. [313] And ferþer ouer it makeþ hym þat whilom was þe sone of yre þe sone of grace. And all thise þingges he proueþ by holy writt. [314] and þerfore he þat wil sette his entent to / þise þingges he is

wis. ffor soþ he shuld not' þan in al his liff haue corage to synne But' þan his body and al his hert' tõ þe seruise of Ihesu crist' and þerof done him homage. [315] ffor certes our swete lord Ihesu crist' haþ spared vs so / deuourly in our folies þat' ȝit' he ne had pite of mannys / soule a sory songe myȝt' we alle synge. ¶ **Explicit' prima pars penitencie. Incipit' secunda / pars eiusdem./**

¶ 2a pars penitencie

[316]

¶ THe seconde parte of penitence is confessiõ þat' is signe of contricioñ [317] ¶ Now shul ȝe vnderstonde what' is confessioñ. and whedere it' ouȝt' nedes to be or noon. and whicñ þingges bene conable to verrey confessiõ

[318] ¶ ffirst' shalt' þou vnderstonde þat' confessioñ is verrey shewinge of synnes to þe preest' [319] þis is to sey verrey. ffor he mot' confessen hym of al þe condicions þat bylongen to his synne as ferforþ as he can. [320] al mote be seide and no þing' excused ne hid ne forwrapped. and nouȝt' auaunte him of his good werkes. [321] ¶ And forþer ouer. It is necessary to vnderstonde whennes þat' synne springeþ and how þei encresen. And whicñ þer bene

[322] in spryngynge of synnes. as seiþ seint' poule in þis wise. / ¶ That' riȝt' as by a man. synne entred furst' into þe ¶ worlde. and þorghe þat' synne deide. Riȝt' so þilk deeþ entreþ into al men þat' synden. [323] And þis man was // Adam by whom þat' synne entred into þis world' whan he brak' þe comaundement' of god. [324] and þerfore he þat' first' was so myghty þat' he shuld' not' haue deyde. bycame suche oon þat he most' nedys dye whedere he ¶ [1]wolde or noon. and al his progeny þat' is in þis world' þat' in þilk manere synne dyen. [325] Loke þat' in þe astate of Innocentys ¶ whan A[dam a]nd Eue

naked weren in paradise. and no þing shame ne hadden of her nakednesse. [326] How þat serpent þat was most wily of alle oþer beestes þat god haþ maked seide to þe wo*m*man ¶ Comaunded god to 3ou 3e shulde not eten of euery tree in paradys [327] ¶ The wo*m*man answerd of þe fruyte q*uo*d she of þe trees in paradise we feden vs. But soþly of þe froyte of þe tree þat is in þe myddel of paradys god for-bede vs forto ete ne not touche it. lest p*ar*auenture we shuld dyen [328] ¶ The serpent saide to þe wo*m*man. nay. nay. 3e shullen deye of dethe. ffor soþ god woote þat what day þat 3e eten þerof. 3o*ur* eien shullen open. and 3e shullen ben as goddys knowynge good [and] harme [329] ¶ The womman seie þat þe tree was good to fedynge and faire to þe eyen and delitable to. þe si3t she toke of þe fruyte of þe tree and ete of hit./ and 3af it to her husbonde and he eete. and anoon þe eyen of hem boþ opned / [330] and whan þat þei knewe þat þei were naked þe[i] sewed of fige leeues in manere of breche to hiden her membres [331] ¶ Here may 3e see þat dedly synne haþ furst suggestion of þe feende as scheweþ here by the naddere. And afterward þe delit of þe flessh as scheweþ here by Eua. And after þat þe consenting of þe reson as scheweþ by. adam [332] ¶ ffor trust wel þo3e so were þat þe fende tempted oon þat is to saie þe flessh. And / þe flessh had delite in þe þewte and þe froyte deffended 3it certes til þat reson þat is to sayn Adam consented. to þe etinge of þe fruyte þat stood hi3e in astate of Innocence. [333] þilk Adam toke þilk synne of Originall. ffor of hem flesshly descended. bene we alle and engendred. of vile and corrupte matere. [334] And whan þe soule is putt in our body. ri3t anoon is contracte origynal synne. *and* þat was eerst but only peyne of concupiscens: is afterward boþ peyne and synne. [335] And þerfore be we alle yborn sones of

wreth and of dampnacioñ perdurable if it' nere baptisme þat' we receyuen' whicħ bynymeþ vs þe Culpe. But' forsoþ þe peyne dwelleþ wiþ vs as þe [1] temptacion whicħ peyne hiȝt' concupissens. [336] And þis concupissence whan it' is wrongfully disposed or ordeyned in man it' makeþ hym to coueite coueitise of flessħ flesshly synne by siȝt' of his eyen as to erþly þingges and eke couetise of hynes of pride of hert'

[337] ¶ Now as to speke of þe furst' Coueitise þat' is concupiscence After þe lawe of *our* membres þ*at* weren lawfully maked and by' rightful Iuggement' of god. [338] I say for as moche as man is not' obeysaunt' to god þat' is his lord' þerfo is his fleissħ to hym disobeisaunt' þorghe concupiscens [. . . . . .

. . . . . .

[339] . . . . . .

. . . *no gap in the MS.*] it' is impossible but' if he be tempred. somtyme in his flessħ and anoyed to synne [340] And þis þing' may not' faille as longe as þat' he lyueþ. it' may wel wexe feble and faile. by vertue of bapteme and by þe *grace* of god. þourghe penitence. [341] but' fully shal it' neuere quenche þat' he ne shal somtyme be neued in hy*m* self. but' he were all refreyned by siknes or by malefice of sorcerie or cold drinkes

¶ Paulus :/ [342] ffor what' seiþ seint' Poule. þe flessħ coueiten aȝeint' þe ¶ spirit'. and þe sprit' aȝeinst' þe flessħ þei bene so contrarie and so striuen þat' a man may not' allway as he wolde [343] ¶ The same seint' paule aftere his grete pen*aun*ce in water and in lond' in water by nyght'. and in day by grete p*er*ile and in grete peyne in londe and enfamyne and thrust' in colde and cloþes. & onys scorned almost' to þe deþe. [344] ȝit' seid he allas I catiff man. who shal deliuere me from þe p*ri*son

¶ Ieromin*us* of my catif body [345] And seint' Ierom whan he longe tym had wonned in deserte where as he had no company. but' beestes. wher as he had

no mete but' herbes. and watere to his drink'. ne no' bed / but' þe naked erþe. for whiche his flessh̄ was blak' as an'/ Ethiopen for hete and neighe destroied for colde [346] 3it' seide he. þe brennynge of lecherie boiled in al his body. [347] Wherfore I wooto wel sikerly þat' þei bene desceyued þat' saien þat' þei ne bene not' tempted in her body. [348] Witnesse of seynt' Iame þe apostel. ¶ Iacobus:/ þat' seiþ þat' euery wi3t' is tempted in his owne concupiscence. þat' is to say þat' euerich̄ of vs haþ matere and occasion to be tempted of þe norsshinge of synne þat' is in his body. [349] And þerfor seiþ seint' Iohñ ¶ Iohannes Euangelista./ þe Euangelist' ¶ 3if þat' we seyne þat' we be wiþ-outen synne we disceyuen our self'. *and* trouþe is not' in vs.

[350] Now [1]shullen 3ee vnderstonde in what' manere þat' synne wexeþ and encreseþ in man. The furst' þing' is þilk' norshyng' of synne of which̄ I spak' byforn þilk' concupiscens [351] and after þat' commeþ þe subiecciou̇n of the deuel. þis is to saye the deueles bely þi which̄ he bloweþ in man þe fire of concupiscence. [352] ¶ And aftere þat' a man by-þenkeþ hym whedere he wil doo or noon þilk þinge to which̄ he is tempted [353] and þan if þat' a man wiþstonde and waye Off þe furst' entisinge of his flessh̄ and of þe feende þan is it' no synne And if it' so be þat' he do not' soo þan feleþ he anōn a flaumbe of delite [354] and þan it' is good to be ware and to kepe hym wel. Or ellis he wil falle anon into consentyng' of synne and þan wil he do it' if he mowe haue tyme and space. [355] And / of þis matere seiþ Moyses by ¶ Moyses:/ þe deuel in þis manere. The fende seiþ I wil chace and pursue þe man by wicked suggestions and I wil hent' hym by mouyng' or stiringe of synne And I wil departe my prise or my prey by deliberacioun. and my lust' shal be accomplised by delite ¶ I wil drawe my swerde in consentynge. [356] ffor certes ri3t' as a sweerde departeþ a þinge in twoo peces Ri3t'

so consentinge departeþ god fro man and than wil I sclee hym wiþ myn honde in dethe / of synne. þus seiþ þe feende [357] ffor certes þan is a man al dede in saule and þus is synne conplised by temptacion by delite and by consentinge and þan is synne cleped [1] aūuiel // [1 ū for ct or cc]

[358] ffor soþe synne is in two maners / eiþer it is venial synne or dedly synne. ¶ Soþly whan man loueþ eny creature more þan Ihesu crist our creature þan is it dedly synne And venial synne it is if man loue Ihesu crist lasse þan hym ouȝte. [359] for soþ þe dede of þis venial synne is ful perilous. ffor it amenuseþ þe loue þat man shuld haue to god more and more [360] And þerfor if a man charge more hym self wiþ mony suc̄ venyal synnes. certes but if it so be þat he somtyme discharge hym of hem by shrift þei may ful liȝthly amenuse in hym al þe loue þat he haþ to Ihesu crist [361] and þis scipped venial into dedly synne. ffor certes þe more þat a man chargeþ his saule wiþ venial synnes. þe more is he enclyned to falle in dedly synne [362] And þerfor lat vs nat be negligent to discharge vs of venyal synnes. ffor þe prouerbe seiþ þat mony smale makeþ a grete. [363] And harken þis ensample A grete wawe of the See commeþ somtyme wiþ so grete a violence þat it drencheþ þe shippe and þe same harme doon somtyme þe smale dropes of water þat entreþ þorgh̄ a litel creues into þe thorrok and into þe botme of þe shipp. if men be so necligent þat men ne [2] discharge hem not by tyme [364] And þerfore al þouȝe þere be difference bytwixe þise twoo causes of drenching. algates þe ship is dreint [365] ¶ Riȝt so fareþ it somtyme of dedly synne and of annoyous / venyal synnes whan þei multiplie in a man so gretly þat þilk worldly þingges þat he loueþ þorgh̄ which̄ he synneþ venyally is as grete in his hert as þe loue of god or more [366]

And þerfor þe loue of euery þinge þat' is not' bysette in god ne doon principaly for goddes sake al þof a man loue it' lasse þan god. 3it' is it' venyal synne. [367] And dedly synne whan þe loue of eny þinge. weieþ in þe hert' of a man as moch̄ as þe loue of god. or more [368] more dedly synne as seiþ seint' Austyn̄. ¶ Augustinus is whan man turneþ his hert' fro god which̄ þat' is verrey souereyne bounte þat' may nat' chaunge. and 3eueþ his hert' to a þinge þat' may change and flitte. [369] and certes þat' is every þinge sauf god only of heuene. ffor soþ is 3if þat' a man 3if his loue þe which̄ þat' he oweþ al to god wiþ al his hert' vnto a creature. certes as moche of loue as he 3eueth to whiche creature so moche [he] byreueþ fro god [370] and þerfore dooþ he synne. ffor he þat' is dettour to god ne 3elde þ not' al his dette to god þat' is to sayn al þe loue of his hert

[371] ¶ Now siþens a man vnderstondeþ generally which̄ is venyal synne. þan is it conable to tellen of special synnes which̄ þat' mony a man *par*auenture ne demeþ hem not' synnes ne schryuen hem nat' of þe same þingges and 3it' naþelees þei bene synnes [372] and soþly as clerkes writen þis is to say. þat euery tyme þat a man eteþ or drinkeþ more þan suffiseth to þe sustinaunce of his body in certeyn he doþ synne [373] ¶ And eke whan he speke þ more þan it nedeþ. it' is synne. eke whan he harkeneþ not' mekely þe complaynt' of þe poore. [374] eke whan he is in hele of body and wil not' fast' whan o*þ*er men fast' withouten cause resonable. Eke whan he sclepeþ more þan nedeth̄ or whan he co*mm*eþ by þilk' encheson̄ late to church̄ or to o*þ*er workys of charite. [375] Eke whan he vseþ his wiff wiþ-outen souereyne desire of engendrure to honure of god. Or for þe entent' to 3elde to his wiff þe dette of his body. [376] Eke whan he wil not' visite þe seke or þe p*r*isoners when he maye.

Eke if he loue wiff or child or eny worldely þing' more þan reson requireþ. Eke if he flatere or blaundissh more þan hym ouȝt for eny necessite./ [377] ¶ Eke if he amenuse or wiþdrawe þe almesse of þe poor./ [1]¶ Eke if he apparailleþ his mete more deliciously þan nede is. or ete it to hastely by licourousnesse [378] ¶ Eke if he tale vanytees at þe churche or at goddes seruise. or þat he be a talker of ydel wordys of foly or of vilanye. for he shal ȝeelde accountes of it at þe day of dome [379] ¶ Eke whan he bihoteþ or assureþ to done þingges þat he may not perfourme ¶ Eke whan þat by liȝtnesse of foly [he] mysscieþ or scorneþ his neighbour [380] ¶ Eke whan he haþ eny wikked suspeciõn of þinge per he ne wote of it no soþfastnesse [381] ¶ Thise / þinges and moo wiþ-out nombre bene synnes as seiþ seynt Austyne

¶ Augustinus.

[382] ¶ Now shul men vnderstonde þat al be it soo þat noon / erþely man may eschwe alle venial synnes. ȝit may he refreyn hym by þe brennyng' loue þat he haþ to our lord Ihesu crist *and* by preiers and confessioun and oþer good werkes so þat it shal but litel greue.

¶ Idem./

[383] ffor as seiþ seynt Austyne. If a man loue god in such manere þat al þat euere he dooþ is in þe loue of god / or for þe loue of god verreyly. for he brenneþ in þe loue of god. [384] ¶ loke howe moche þat a drope of watere þat falleþ in a fournays ful of fuyre annoyeþ or greueþ so moche annoyeþ a venyal synne vnto a man þat is parfit in þe loue of Ihesu crist [385] ¶ Men may also refreyne venyal synne by þe receyuynge of þe precious body of Ihesu crist [386] By receyuyng' eke of holy watere. by almes dede. by general confessiõn of confiteor at þe mas. at complyne. and by blessing' of bisshoppys and of preestes and by other good werkes.

¶ Sequitur de septem *pe*ccatis mortalib*us*. scili*cet* de Sup*er*bia. et' eor*um* dependencijs. circu*m*stancijs & spectantibus. /.

[387]
¶ Now is it' bihouely þinge to tellen whicħ bene dedly synnes þat' is to say Caytifnesse of synnes al þei renne in cooles. but' in dyuers manere ¶ Now bene þei cleped Caytif' for as moche as þei bene cheef. and spryngen of alł oþer synnes [388] Of þe roote of þise vij. synnes. pride is þe. general rote of al harmes. ffor of þis roote springen certeyn braunches. as Ire. Envie. Accidie. or scloweth. Auarice. or couetise to comon vnderstondinge. Glotenye. and lechery. [389] And euerich of þise chief' synnes haþ his braunches and his twigges. as shal be declared in her chapiters folowynge.

[De superbia.]

[390] And þouȝe so be þat' no man can / telle vtterly þe nombre of þe twigges and of þe harmes þat' commeþ of pride. ȝit' wil I shewe a party of hem as ȝe shul vnderstond'. [391] Ther is **Inobedience Auaauntinge. Ypocresie. Despite. arrogance. Imprudence. Swellinge of her'. Insolence. Elacioun. Pertinacie. veynglorie: Inpacience ¶ strif. Contumacie. presumcioun. irreuerence** ¶ and mony anoþer' twigge' þat' I can not' declare [392] ¶ Inobedient' is he þat' disobeieþ for despite to þe comaunment' of god and to his souereyns and to his goostly fadere [393] ¶ Auaunt'our is he þat' booste þ for þe harme or of þe bounte þat' he haþ doon [394] ¶ Ipocresie is hee þat' hideþ hym to shewe hym suchi as he is. and schewe þ hym suche as he is not' [395] ¶ Dispitous is he þat' haþ disdeyne of his neighbours þat' is to sayn of his euen / cristen or haþ despite to doo þat' hym ouȝt' to doo [396] ¶ Arrogance is he þat' þenkeþ þat' he haþ þilk' bountes in hym that he haþ not'. or

weneþ þat' he shuld haue hem of his desertes. or ellis þat' he demeþ þat' he be. þat' he nys nouȝt' [397] ¶ Impudent' is he þat' for his pride haþ no shame for his synne [398] ¶ Swelling' of herte is he. whan a man reioyseþ hym of harme þat' he haþ doñ [399] ¶ Insolent' is he. þat' despiseþ in his Iuggement' al oþer folk as to regarde of his valewe and of his connynge. and of his spekinge. and / of his berynge [400] ¶ Elacioñ is whan þat' he ne may neiþer suffre to haue maistrie ne felawe [401] ¶ Inpacient' is he þat' wil not' bene ytauȝt' ne vndernome of his vices and by strif werreieþ / trouþe wittyngly and defendeþ. his folye [402] ¶ Contymax is he þat' þorghe his indignaciõn is aȝeinst' euerich auttorite or power of hem þat' bene his souereyns [403] ¶ Presumpciõn is he. whan a man takeþ an emprise þat hym ouȝt' not' to doo. or ellis he may it' nouȝt doo and þat' is called Surquidrie ¶ Irreuerence is whan men done nat' honure þer' as hem ouȝt' to doon. and waiten to be reuerensed [404] ¶ Pertynacy is. whan a man defendeþ his foly. and trusteþ to moche to his owne witte. [405] ¶ Veyngloríe is forto haue pompe and delite in temporel heuynesse and glorifie hem in worldly estates [406] ¶ Iangelynge is whan a man speketh to moche toforn folke and clappeþ as a mylle. and takeþ no kepe what' he saiþ.

[407] and ȝit' is þer a privey spice of pride þat' waiteþ first' to be halowed or he wil be salwed' al be he lasse worþi þan þat' oþere is parauenture and eke he waiteþ or desireþ to sitte or to goo aboue hym in þe way or kys paxe or bene ensensed or goon / to offringe byforn his neighbour [408] and such [. . . .

. . . . . .

. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] a proude desire to be magnyfied / and honoured to forn þe puple.

[409] ¶ Nowe beñ þere twoo maners of pride. þat' oon of hem is wiþ-in þe herte [1]of man and þat'

oþer is wiþ-outⁿ [410] ¶ Of whicℏ soþly þe for seide þingges and moo þan I haue seide appertenaunte to pride þatⁿ is in þe herte of man. And þerto oþer spices of pride bene wiþ-outen [411] Butⁿ naþelees oon of þise spices of pride is signe of þatⁿ oþer/ Riȝtⁿ as / þe gay lecueseℏ attⁿ tauerns is signe of þe wyne þatⁿ is in þe salere. [412] As þis is in mony þingges as in speche and in countenaunces. And in outrageous arayeof cloþinge / [413] for certes of þis nad he no synne in cloþinge. Cristⁿ wold notⁿ so sone haue noted and spoke of þe cloþinge of þilkⁿ riche men in þe gospeℏ [414] ¶ And as seiþ seyntⁿ. Gregore. þatⁿ precious cloþingⁿ is coupable for þe derþe of hitⁿ. and for his soþnesse and for his straungenesse. and for his disgisenesse and for þe superfluite. or for þe inordinate scantnesse [. . . . [415]

¶ Nota de superbia vestimentorum.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]

[416] as to þe furstⁿ synne þatⁿ is in superfluyte of cloþinge whicℏ þatⁿ makeþ itⁿ so dere to harme of þe puple [417] þatⁿ only þe costⁿ of enbrawdynge. þe degyse endentynge or barringe. owdyngⁿ palynge. or bendinge. and semblable waastⁿ of cloþinge in vanyte [418] Butⁿ þer is also costlewe furringe in her gownes / so mocℏ pownsenynge of Chisels to maken holes. so mochel daggyngⁿ of sheres [419] forþwith the Superfluyte in lengtℏ of þe forseide gownes trailynge in þe dunge and in þe myre on hors and eke on foote as wel of man as of womman þatⁿ al þilk traillyngⁿ is verrely as in effecte waasted. consumed. thredbare and roten wiþ dunge raþer þan itⁿ is ȝeuen to þe poor to grete damage of þe forseidⁿ poor folkⁿ [420] and þat in sondrie wise This is to seyn. þe more þatⁿ clooþ is waasted þe more mote itⁿ costⁿ to þe puple for þe scarcenesse [421] ¶ And forþerouere if itⁿ so be þatⁿ þei wolde ȝeue suche pounsoned and

dagged cloþing' to þe poor folk'. it' is not' conuenient' to were for her estate ne suffisaunt' to bete her necessite to kepe hem from þe desperaunce of þe firmament' [422] ¶ On þat oþer side to speke of þat' disordynat' scanternesse of cloþinge as bene thise Cutted scloppes or hanselynes þat' þorgh̄ her schortnesse ne keuere not' þe shameful membres of man to wikked entent' [423] Alas somme of hem shewen þe Shappe and þe bote of þe horrible swollen menbres þat' semeþ like to þe malady of hirnia in the wrapping' of her hosen. [424] and eke þe buttokkes of hem þat faren as it' were þe hynder part' of asshe ape in þe ful of þe mone. [425] And more ouer the wrecched swollen membres þat þei / shewe þorgh̄ disgisinge in departinge of her hosen white *and* [1] rede semeþ þat' half hyre shameful prive membres weren flayne [426] and so be þat' þei departen her hosen in oþere colours as is white and blak' or white and blewe or blak' and rede and so / forþ. [427] þan ne semeþ it' as by variaunce of coloure þat' half' þe party of his privey membres bene corrupte by þe fuyr of seynt' Antonye or by cancre or by oþer such̄ meschaunces [428] ¶ ȝit' of þe hyndere parte of her buttokkes it' is ful horrible forto see. for certes in þat' party of her body þer as þei purgen her stynkinge ordure [429] þat' foule party shewe þei proudely to þe puple in despite of honeste. which honeste þat' Ihesu crist' and his frendes' obserued to shewe in his lif [430] ¶ Now as to outragious aray of wommen god woote þouȝe þe visage of hem semen ful chaaste and debonaire. ȝit' notefyen þei in her aray of a-tyre likerousnesse and pride [431] ¶ I say not' þat' honeste in cloþinge of man and womman is vnconable. but' certes þe superfluite or þe disordynate scantite of cloþinge is reproueable [432] ¶ Also þe synne of anornament' or apparaile in þingges þat' appertenen to ridynge. as into mony delicate horses þat' bene holden

for delite. þat þei bene so faire. fatte and costlewe. [433] and also mony a vicious knaue Meyntened by cause [of hem] and in to curious harnays and in sadels. In cropours in peytrellis and brideH keuered wiþ precious cloþe and riche barres and plates of golde and of siluere. [434] ffor which god seiþ by Sakarye þe prophete ¶ I wil confounde þe riders of suche horses [435] ¶ This folk' taken litel rewardinge of þe rydinge of goddes sone of heuene and of his harnays whan he rode vpon an asse and had noon oþer harnayes but' cloþes of his poor disciples. ne w[e] ne rede not' þat' euere he rode on oþer beest' // [436] I speke þus of þe synne of superfluyte and not' for þe resonable honeste whan reson it requireþ. [437] And ferþer / ouer certes pride is gretly notefied in holdinge of grete mayne whan þei bene of litel profit' or of riȝt' of no profite [438] And namely whan þat Mayne is feleṇous and damagous to þe pupłe by hardynesse of hie lordship or by wey of office. [439] ffor certus such lordes foylen þan her lordshipes to þe deuel of helle whan þei sustene þe wikkednesse of her mayne [440] ¶ Or ellis whan þise folk' of lowe degree. as þilk þat' halden ostelers. sustene þe þeft' for her ostilers and þat' is in mony [1] maners of disceytes. [441] Thilk' manere of folk' bene þe flies þat' folowen þe honye Or ellis þe houndes þat' folowen þe Careyñ which forseide folk strangłen spirituelly her lordshipes. [442] ffor which þus seiþ Dauid þe prophet ¶ Wikked deþ mote come on þilk lordeshipes and [god] ȝeue þat' þei mote descende a doune into helle. ffor in her houses bene iniquitees and shrewdenesses and not' god of heuene. [443] And certes but' if þei done amendement' Riȝt' so as god ȝaf his blessinge to Pharao by þe seruise of Iacob. & to Laban by the seruise of Ioseph. Riȝt' so god wil ȝeue his malison to suche lordshippes as to sustene þe wikkednesse of her seruauntes [. . . .

¶ Zacharia propheta

¶ Dauid propheta./

. . *no gap in the MS.*] [444] ¶ Pride of þe table appereþ eke ful oft'. for certes / riche men bene cleped to feestes and poor folk' ben putte away and rebuked [445] in excesse of dyuers metes and drynkes and namely suche manere of bake metes [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] and of semblabled waast so þat' it' is / abusion forto þenk' [446] and eke in grete preciousnesse of vesselł *and* curiosite of Mynstralcie by þe whicł̄ a man is stired þe more to delices of luxurie [447] If so be þat' he sette his hert' lesse vpoń *our* lord Ihesu crist' certeyn it' is a synne And certeynly þe delites / myȝt' bene so grete in þe caas þat' men myȝt' liȝtly falle by hem into dedly synne [448] ¶ The Espices þat' sourden of pride. soþly whan þei sourden of malice ymagyned and avised and forn cast'.. or ellis of vsage bene dedly synnes. it' is no doute. [449] And whan þei sourden by freelte vnavised sodeynly and sodeynly wiþdrawe aȝein. alł bene þei greuous synnes I. gesse þat' þei be not' dedly [450] ¶ Nowe myght' men aske wherof þat' pride sourdeþ and springeth̄. And I say somtyme it' springeþ of þe goodes of nature and somtyme of þe goodes of fortune. and somtyme of þe goodes of grace. [451] Certes þe goodes of nature stonden in þe goodes of body or goodes of soule [452] Certes þe goodes of body bene hele of body strength̄ delyuernesse. beute. gentrie. ffraunchises [453] ¶ Goodes of nature of þe saule bene good wiþ sharpe vnderstondinge sotile engin ¶ vertu material. good memorie [454] ¶ Goodes of fortune ben richeses hye degrees of lordshipes. preisynges of þe puple [455] ¶ Goodes of grace bene sciences. power to suffre spirituełł trauaile benygnitees vertuous contemplacioń. wiþstondyng' of temptacioń and semblable þingges [456] of whicł̄ forseide goodes certes it' is a ful grete foly a man to priden hym in eny of hem alle. [457]

Now as forto speke of goodes of nature. god wote þat somtyme [1]we han hem in nat*ure* as moche to *our* damage as to our p*rofit* [458] As forto speke of helþe of body: certys it passeþ ful liȝtly. and eke it is ful oft encheson of þe siknesse of þe saule for god wote þe flesshⁱ is a ful grete enymye to þe soule And þerfore þe more þat a body is hool þe more be we i*n* perile to falle [459] ¶ Eke forto p*ride* hym in his strenghte of body it is an hie foly for certes þe flesshⁱ coueiteþ aȝeinste þe spirit And ay þe more stronge þat þe flesshⁱ is: þe sorier may þe saule be [460] ¶ And oueral þis strengthⁱ of body and worldly hardnesse causeþ ful often many men to perile and meschaunce [461] ¶ Eke forto p*ride* hy*m* of his gentrie is ful grete foly. ffor often tyme þe gentry of þe body. bygynneþ þe gentry of the saule And eke we bene al of oon fadere and al of oo modere. and al we be of oo nature roten and corrupte boþ riche and poor [462] ¶ fforsoþ a manere gentrie is to preise þat apparailleþ mannys corage wiþ vertues of moralitees and makeþ hy*m* c*ristes* child [463] ¶ ffor tresteþ wel þat ouer what man þat synne haþ maistrie he is verrey cherle to synne.

[464] ¶ Nowe bene þere general þingges of gentilnesses. as schewyng of vices or ribawdry and s*er*uage of synne. in worde. in werk. in co*ntenaun*ce [465] & vsyng vertu. Curtesie. and clennesse and to be liberal þat is to sayn / large by mesure. ffor þilk þat passen mesure is foly and synne [466] ¶ A noþer is to remembre hym of bounte þat he of oþ*er*e folk haþ receyued. [467] Anoþ*er*e is to be benigne of his sogette. wher-fore as seiþ Senek. Ther is no þinge more ¶ Seneca conable to a man of hie estate þan debonairte [468] ¶ And þerfore þise flies þat men / clepen bees whan þei maken her kynge þei chesen oon þat haþ no prikke wherwiþ he may stynge [469]

¶ Anoþer is a man to haue a noble hert' and a diligent' to atteyn to hie vertuous þingges [470* *see after* 474 *and Hengwrt and Petworth MSS.* . . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
[471] ¶ Certes also who þat' prideþ hym in þe goodes of fortune he is a ful grete fool. ffor somtyme is a man a ful grete lord' by þe morowe: þat' is a wrecche and a caytif er it' be nyght' [472] And somtyme þe [. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] delites of a man ben cause of þe greuous malady þorgh̄ which̄ he dyeth̄ [473] Certes þe commendacioñ of þe puple is somtyme ful fals and ful/ brutile forto trest'. This day þei preise to morowe þei blame. [474] God woote desire to haue commendaciōn eke of puple haþ caused deþe to mony a bisy man [*470] Now certys a man [1]to pride hym in goodes of grace is eke an outrageous foly for þilk' 3iftes of grace þat' shuld haue turned hym to goodnesse and to medecyne. turneþ hym to venym and to confusioñ as seith seynt Gregor. [475] ¶ Now syþens þat' so is þat' 3e han vnderstonden what is pride. and which̄ bene þe spices of it' and whennys pride sourdeþ and springeþ

¶ gregorius

[*The Remedy against Pride.*]

¶ Remedium contra ¶ Superbiam

[476] Now shal 3e vnderstonde which̄ is þe remedy a3einst' pride. and þat' is humilite or mekenesse [477] þat' is a vertue þorgh̄ which̄ a man haþ verrey ¶ knowlecch̄ of hym self and holdeþ of hym self no pris ne deynte as in regarde of his desertes consideryng' euer his freelte [478] ¶ Now bene þer thre maners of humilite. as humilite in hert' annoþer in mouþ / and þe iij. is in werkes [479] ¶ The humilite of herte is in iiij. maners. þat' oon is whan a man boldeþ hymself as nou3t' worþ by-fore god in heuene. Anoþer is whan he despiseþ

noon oþer man [480] ¶ The iij. is whan he rekketh nouȝt þoȝe / men holde hym nouȝt worþ ¶ The iiij. is whan he nys not sory of his humiliaciōn [481] ¶ Also þe hūmilite of mouþ is in 4 þingges In attemprure speche and in humblesse of speche. And whan he byknoweþ wiþ his owne mouþ þat he is such as hym þenkeþ þat he is in his hert. Anoþer is whan he preiseþ þe bounte of anoþer man and noþeng þerof amenuseþ [482] humilite ¶ Eke in werk is in 4. maners. The furst is whan he putteþ oþer men to-forn hym. The secounde is to chese þe lowest place ouerall The iij. is gladly to assent to good counsaile [483] ¶ The 4. is gladly to stonde to þe award of his souereyn or of hym þat is hier in degre Certeyn þis is a grete werk of humilite.

¶ De Peccato. Inuidie.

¶ De inuidia :/

[484] Aftere pride wil I speke of þe foule synne of envie whiche þat is as by þe word of þe philisophre sorow of oþere mannys prosperite And aftere þe word of seynt Austyne. it is sorowe of oþer mennes wele and Ioie of oþer mennys harme [485] ¶ This foule synne is platly aȝeinst þe holy goost. al be it so þat euery synne be aȝeinst þe holy goost. ȝit for as moche as bounte appertenep proprely to þe holy goost. and envie commeþ proprely of malice þerfore is proprely aȝenist þe bounte of þe holy goost [486] ¶ Now haþ malice ij. spices. þat is to sayn hardnes of herte. And wikkednesse or ellis þe flessh of a man is so blynde þat he [1]considereþ not þat he is in synne [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] whiche is þe hardnesse of þe deueil [487] ¶ That oþere spice of envie is whan þat a man / werreþ trouþe whan þat he wote þat it is trouþe. And eke whan þat he werreieþ þe grace of þat god haþ ȝeue to his

neiȝboure. and al þis is by envie [488] Certes þan is envie þe worst' synne þat' is. ffor soþly al oþer synnes bene somtyme aȝein oo special vertue [489] But' certes envie is aȝeinst' alle vertues and of alle goodnesses for it' is sory of alle bountes of neighbour. and in þis manere it' is dyuers from alle maner synnes. [490] ffor wel vnneþes is þer eny synne þat' it' ne haþ somme delite in hym self sauf only envie þat' euer haþ in [hym]self anguyssh and sorowe [491] ¶ The spices of envie bene þise. þer is furst sorowe of oþer mennys goodnesse and of her prosperite [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] is kyndely matere of Ioye. þan is enuye a synne aȝeinst' kinde. [492] ¶ The seconnde spice of envie is Ioie of oþer mennys harme. [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [493] Of þis seconnde spice commeþ bakbitynge [. . *no gap in the MS.*] or detraccioñ and þat haþ ij. spices as. thus: ¶ Somme man preiseþ his neiȝbour by a wikked entent'. [494] for he makeþ alway a wikked knotte at' the last' ende. alwey he makeþ a but' at' þe last' ende. þat' is digne and more blame than worþe is al the plesinge [495] ¶ The seconnde spice is þat' if a man be good. and 'doþ and saiþ a þinge to good entent' þe bakbiter wil turne al þe goodnesse vp so doun to his schrewde entent' [496] ¶ The iij. is to amenuse þe bounte of his neighboure [497] ¶ þe .4. spice of bakbityng' is þis. þat' if men speke goodnesse of a man wil þe bakkbyter sayn parfay such a man ȝit' is bette þan he in dispreysinge of hym that' men preise [498] ¶ The .v. spice is forto consent' gladly harken þe harme þat' men speken of oþer folk'. þis synne is ful grete and ay encreseþ after þe wikked entent' of þe bakbiter [499] ¶ aftere bakbitynge commeþ grucchynge or murmuraunce and somtyme it' springeþ of inpacience aȝeinst' god and somtyme aȝeinst man

[500] Aȝeinſt' god it' is whan a man gruccheth aȝeinst þe peyn of helle or aȝeinſt' pouert' or losse of cateℓ or aȝeinst reyne or tempeſt' or ellis gruccheþ þat' shrewes han prosperite. or ellis good men han aduersite. [501] and alle thise þingges shuld men suffre paciently. for þei commen by the riȝtful Iuggement' and ordinaunce of god [502] ¶ Somtyme [1] commeþ grucchinge of auarice as Iudas grucched aȝeinst þe Mawdelene whan she ennoynted þe hede of oure lorde Ihesu crist' wiþ her precious oynement' [503] This maner of murmur' is suc̄ as whan men grucchen of goodnesse and þat' men selue done er þat' oþer folk doon of her owne Cateℓ [504] ¶ Somtyme commeþ murmur of pride / as whan symon þe phiryse grucched aȝeinst Maudeleyn. whan she approched to Ihesu crist' and wepte at' his fete for her synnes. [505] And somtyme it' sourdeþ to envie whan man diskeuereþ a mannys harme þat' was pryvey̆ or bereþ hym / on honde þinge þat' is fals [506] ¶ Murmur' eke is oft' amonges seruauntes þat' grucchen whan her souereynes bidden / hem to doon leeful þingges. [507] and for as moche as þei dure not' openly say nay. ne wiþsaye the comaundementz of her souereyn̄. ȝit' wil þei saye harme and grucche and murmure priuely for verrey despite. [508] whic̄ wordes men clepe þe deuels Pater noster. Thouȝe so be þat' þe deuel had neuere Pater noster. but' þat' folk' ȝeuen it' suc̄ a name. [509] Somtyme it' commeþ of Ire or of prive hate þat' norssheth̄ rancour' in hert' as afterward I shal declare. [510] þan commeþ eke bitternesse of hert' þorgh̄ whic̄ bitternesse euery good dede of his neiȝbour' semeþ to hym bitter' and vnsauery [511] Than commeþ discord þat' vnbyndeþ al maner of frendship Than commeþ scornynge of [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] his neiȝbour' al doo he neuer so wel [512] ¶ Than commeþ accusinge as whan a man sekeþ occasion̄ to annoyen his

neighbour' whicℏ þat' is like þe craft of þe deuel þat' waiteþ boþ nyȝt' and day to accusen vs alle [513] ¶ Than commeth malignite þorgℏ whicℏ a man annoyeþ his neighbour' prively if he may [514] And if he noȝt' ne may algate his wikked wille ne shal not' wante. as forto brenne his hous prively. or enpoysen or scleen / his beestes and semblable þingges

¶ Remedium *contra* Inuidiam [*from the margin*]

[515] ¶ Now wil I speke of þe remedie aȝeinst' þis foule synne of Envie ¶ ffirst' is þe loue of god principal and louyng' of hym self and of his neighbour. ffor soþly þat' oon ne may not' be wiþouten þat' oþer [516] And trust' wel þat' in þe name of þi neighbour' þou shalt' vnderstonde þe name of þi broþer ffor certes al we han oo fader flesshly. and oo Modere [1]that' is to say Adam and Eve and eke oo fadere spirituel þat' is to say god of heuene [517] Thine neiȝboure art' þou holden forto louen And willen hym al goodnesse and þerfore seiþ god loue þine neigbour' as þine self þat is to say to saluacioñ boþ of lif and of saule [518] And more ouer þou shalt' loue hym in word and benigne amonesynge and chastisynge and conforte hym in his anoyes and prey for hym wiþ al þine hert [519] ¶ And in/ dede þou shalt' loue hym in suℏ wise þat' þou shalt done to hym in charite as þow woldest' men did to þine owne persone. [520] & þerfore þow shalt' not' done hym no damage ne wikked worde ne harme in his body ne in his catel ne in his saule by entising' of wikked ensample. [521] þow shalt' not' desiren his wif ne noon / of his þingges ¶ Vnderstonde eke þat' in þe name of þi neighboure his comprehended his enemye. [522] Certes a man shal loue his enemye for þe comaundmentz of god And soþely þi frende shalt' þou loue in god. [523] I say þine Enemye shalt þou loue for goddis sake by his comaunde-

ment'. ffor if it' were reson þat' man shuld hate his enemye. forsoþ god wold' not' receyue vs to his loue þat' bene his enemyes [524] aȝeinst' iij manere of wrongges þat' his enemye doþ to hym he shal do þre þingges as þus. [525] Aȝeinst hate and rancour of hert' he shal loue hym in hert'. Aȝeinst' chidynge and wikked wordes. he shal prey for his enemye. Aȝeinst' þe wikked dede of his enemye he shal doon hym bounte [526] ffor crist' seiþ. Loueþ ȝoure enemyes and preieþ for hem þat' spekeþ ȝou harme And eke for hem þat' ȝou chasen and purswen and doth bounte to hem þat' yow haten ¶ Loo þus comaundeþ vs our lord Ihesu crist' to doo to oure enemyes. [527] ffor soþly nature dryueþ vs to loue our frendes. And parfay oure enemyes han more nede to loue þan our frendes. and þei þat' more nede haue certes to hem shal men doo goodnes. [528] and certes in þilk' dede haue [we] remembraunce of þe loue of Ihesu crist' þat' deyed for his enemyes. [529] And in as moche as þilk' loue is þe more greuous to perfourme so moche is more grete þe merite And þerfore the louyng' of our enemye haþ confounded þe venyme of þe deueH. [530] ffor riȝt' as þe deuel is discomfited by humilite riȝt' so is he wounded to the deeþ by þe loue of oure enemye [531] Certes þan is loue þe medecyne þat' chaseth out þe venym of Envie fro mannys herte [532] The spices of þis pas shullen be more largely declared in her chapiters folowinge

¶ De Ira / [*from the margin*]

[533]

Aftere Envie wil I declare þe synne of Ire ffor soþly who þat' haþ Enuye vpon his neiȝbour' anoon comonly he wil fynde hym matere of wreth in worde or in dede aȝeinst' hym to whoom he haþ envie [534] And as wel commeþ Ire of pride

as of enuye. ffor soþly he þat' is proude or envious is liȝtly wrooþ

[535] This synne of Ire aftere þe descriuynge of ¶ ‖ *Augustinus* seint' Austyne is wikked wiH to bene auenged. by worde or by dede ‖ [536] Ire aftere þis Philisophre is þe veruent' blood of man yquykked in his hert' þorgh which he wil / harme to hym þat' he hateþ. [537] ffor certes þe hert' of man. by eschawfynge and moovinge of his blood waxeþ so trouble þat' he is out' of aH Iugement' of resoun [538] ¶ But ȝe shullen / vnderstonde þat' Ire is in two maners þat' oon of hem is good and þat' oþer is wikked [539] The good is by Ialousie of goodnesse þorgh þe whicH a man is wroþe wiþ wikkednesse [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] And þer- ¶ *sapiens.*/ for seith þe wise man þat' Ire is bette þan play [540] This Ire is *with* debonairete and it' is wrooþ wiþ-outen bitternesse not wroþ aȝeinst' þe man but' wrooþ wiþ þe mysdede of þe man. As seiþ þe prophete *david* **Irascimini & nolite peccare** [541] ¶ Now ynderstonde þat' wikked Ire is in two maners þat' is to seyn sodeyn Ire or hastif Ire wiþ-outen avisement' and consentynge of his resoN [542] þe menyng' and þe sens of þis is þat' þe resoN of a man ne consent' not' to þilk' sodeyn Ire and þan is it' venial [543] Anoþer Ire is ful wikked þat' commeþ of vilany of herte avised and cast' bifore wiþ wikked wiH to do vengeaunce and þerto his reson consenteþ. and so soþly þis is dedly synne [544] ¶ This Ire is so displesaunt to god þat' it troubleþ his hous and chaseþ þe holy goost' out' of manne saule [. . . . .

as fuyre is more myȝty to distroye erþly þingges þan another elementꝫ Riȝtꝫ so Ire is myȝty to destroye alꝫ spirituel þingges. [548] Loke howe þatꝫ fire of smale gledys thatꝫ bene almostꝫ dede vnder asshen wollen quykꝫke aȝein whan þei bene touched wiþ bremstone Riȝtꝫ soo Ire wil euermore quikke a-ȝein whan itꝫ is touched by pride þatꝫ is kered in mannys hertꝫ. [549] ffor certes fire may notꝫ come outꝫ of no þinge butꝫ if itꝫ were firstꝫ in þe same þingꝫ naturelly as fire is drawen outꝫ of þe flyntes wiþ steele [550] And riȝtꝫ so as pride is often matere of Ire Rightꝫ so is rancoure norssher and keper of þe [551] Ther is a maner of tree as seiþ seint Isodere þatꝫ whan men ¶ Isodre maken fire of þilk tree and keuereþ þe cooles of itꝫ with asshen soþly þe fuyre of itꝫ wil lastꝫ lastꝫ al a ȝere or more [552] ¶ And riȝtꝫ so fareþ itꝫ of rancour whan he is onys conceyued in þe hertis of somme men. Certeyne itꝫ wil lastꝫ perauenture from oon / Ester day til anoþer day or more [553] Butꝫ Certes þilk man is ful ferre from þe mercy of god al þilk while

[554] ¶ In þis forsaide deuels fornays þer foorgen. thre shrewes Pride þatꝫ alꝫ bloweþ and encreseþe þe fire by pride and wikkedꝫ wordes. [555] Than stantꝫ Envie and holdeþ þe hote yren vppon þe hertes of man wiþ a peire of longe tongges of longe Rancour [556] and þan stantꝫ þe synne of contynnynge or strif and þeestꝫ and bateretꝫ and forgeþ by vileyns reprouyngges [557] ¶ Certes þis cursed synne annoyeþ boþe þe man hym self and eke to his neighbour. ffor soþly al ¶ mostꝫ al þe harme þatꝫ eny man doþe to his neighboure commeþ of wrathꝫ. [558] ffor certes outrageous wraþe doþ alꝫ þatꝫ euer the deuel hym comaundeþ for he ne spareþ neiþer cristꝫ ne his swete modere [559] And in his outrageous angre & Ire allas allas ful mony one atꝫ þatꝫ tyme feleþ in his / herte ful wikkedly

boþ of crist' and of all his halowes. [560] Is not' þis a cursed vice [. . . . . .
. . . . . * *no gap in the MS.*] his debonaire wif espirituell þat' shulde kepen his saule [561] Certes it' bygynneþ eke goddys dieu lordship and þat' is mannys saule and þe loue of his neigbours It' striveþ eke alday ayeinst' þe trouþe. It' reueþ hym þe quiete of his hert' and subuerteþ his saule

[562] ¶ Of Ire commen þise stynkinge engendrures. ffirst' hate þat' is olde wreþe discord' þorgh which a man forsakeþ his olde frende þat' he haþ loued ful longe. [563] and þan commeþ werre and euery manere of wronge þat man doth to his neighbour in body or in catell [564] ¶ Of þis cursed. [1]synne of Ire commeþ eke mannys sclaughtere And vnderstondeþ wel þat' homycide þat' is mannys sclaughtere is in dyuers wise Some manere of Omycide is espirituel and somme is bodely. [565] Spirituel mannesslaughter is in vj. þingges ffirst' by
¶ Iohannes. hate as seiþ seint' Iohn. That' he þat' hateþ his broþer is an homicide. [566] [Homicide] Is eke by bakbytinge. of
¶ Salomon whiche bakbiters seiþ salomon. þat' þei han. twoo swerdes with which þei scleen her neighbours. ffor soþly as wikked is to bynyme his good name as his liff [567] ¶ Omycide is eke in 3euynge of wikked counsaile by fraude as forto 3eue / counsaile to array wikkedly custumes and taliages [568] Of which seiþ
¶ Idem Salomon ¶ lyoun rorynge. bere hungry bene like to cruel lordshippes in wiþholding' or a-breggynge of þe Shepe or þe hire of þe wages of [. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] þe almesse of poor folk' [569] ffor which þe wise man seiþ ffedeþ hym þat' almost dieþ for hunger. for soþly but' þou fede hym þou scleest' hym. and alle þise bene dedly synnes [570] Bodyly mansclaunter is whan þou scleest' hym wiþ þi tunge in oþere manere as whan þou comaundest' to sclene a man or ellis 3euest' hym counsaile to scleen a

man. [571] Mansclaughtere in dede is in foure maners That' oon is by lawe Riȝt as a Iustice dampneþ hym þat' is copable to þe deeþ But' lat' þe Iustise be ware þat' he do it' riȝtfully. and þat' he do it' not' for delit' to spille bloode. but' for riȝtwisnesse. [572] Anoþere homycide is doon for necessite as whan a man scleeþ anoþer in his defendaunt' and þat' he may noon oþer wise eskape for his owne deþe. [573] But' certeynly if he may eskape wiþout' sclaughter' of his aduersary and scleþe hym he doþ synne and he shal bere pen*aun*ce as for dedly synne [574] ¶ Eke if a man by caas or auenture shete an arowe or cast' a stone wiþ whiche he scleeþ a man it' is homycide [575] ¶ Eke if a wo*m*man by necligence ouerleiþ her childe in sclepinge it' is homycide. and dedly synne. [576] Eke whan a man distourbeþ concepcioñ of a childe or makeþ a wo*m*man barayn by drynkinge of venemous herbes þorgh̄ which̄ she may not' conceyue or scleeþ a childe by drynkes or ellis putteþ in certeyn material þingges in her secre places to sle þe child' [577] or ellis doþ vnkinde synne by which̄ man or wo*m*man shedeþ his nature in manere or in place þer as a childe may not' be conceyued or ellis if a wo*m*man haþ conceyued and hurte he[r] self and scleeþ her childe ȝit' is it' homycide [578] ¶ What'. say we eke of wo*m*men þat' Mordren her children for drede or worldly shame certes an horrible homicide [579] Homicyde is eke if a mon approcheþ to a wo*m*man by desire of leccherie þorghe which̄ þe childe is pershed or ellis smyteþ a wo*m*man witingly þorgh which̄ she leseþ her childe alł þise bene homycides and horrible dedly synnes / [580] ȝit' co*m*meþ þerof Ire and mony moo synnes as wel in worde as in þouȝt' and in dede as he þat' aretteþ vpon god or blameþ god of þinge of which̄ he is hym self gilty or dispiseþ god and alł his halowes as done þise cursed hasardours

in dyuers cuntrees. [581] þis cursed synne doon þei whan þei felen in her hert' ful wikkedly of god and his halowes [582] ¶ Also whan þei treten vnreuerently þe sacrament' of þe autere Thilk' synnes is so grete þat' vnneþes may it' be relesed but' þat' mercy of god passeþ his werkes it' is so grete and he so benigne. [583] Than commeþ of Ire attry Angre whan a man [is] sharpely amonased. in his shrift to forlete synne [584] þan wil he be angry and answere hokerly and angerly or defende and excuse his synne by vnstedfastnesshe of his flessh or ellis he did it' forto holde company with wise felawes. or ellis he seiþ þe fende entised / hym [585] or ellis he did it' for his 3ouþe. or ellis complexioñ is so corragious that' he may not' forbere. or ellis it' is his destanye as he seiþ vnto a certeyn age. or ellis he seiþ hit' commeþ hym of gentilnesse of his owncestres and semblable þingges [586] ¶ Alle þise manere folkes so wrappen hem in her synnes þat' þei ne wol not' delyuere hem self. Soþly no wi3t' þat' excusel hym wilfully of his / synne may not' be delyuered of her synne til þat' he mekely byknoweþ his synne [587] ¶ Aftere þat' commeþ sweringe þat' is expresse a3einst' þe comaundement' of god. and þis bifalleþ oft'
¶ Textus of anger and of Ire [588] God seiþ þou shalt not' take þe name of þi lorde god in veyn nor in ydeH ¶ Also
¶ Matheus our lorde Ihesu crist' seiþ by þe word' of seynt' Mathewe [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [589] Ne wil 3e not' swere in al manere. Neiþer by heuene for it' is goddes trone. ne by þe erþe for it' is þe benche of his fete [1]ne by Ier*usalem* for it' is þe cite of a grete kynge Ne by þine hede. for þou maist' not' make an heer white ne blak' [590] But' seiþ by 3our' 3ee 3ee. and nay nay and what' þat' is more it' is eueH þus seith crist' [591] ¶ ffor cristes sake ne swereþ not' so synfully in dismembringe of crist' by soule

herte bonys and body for certes it' semeþ þat' 3e þenk þat' þe cursed Iwes ne dismenbred / hym nou3t' ynou3e þe precious p*er*sone of crist' But' 3e dismembren hym more [592] And if so be þat' þe lawe compelle 3ou to / swere þan rꝙwleþ 3ou after þe lawe of god in 3oure swerynge as seiþ Ieremye 4^to^. cap*itu*lo. [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] Thou shalt' kepe thre condicions. Thou shalt' swere in trouþe in doom and in ri3twisnesse [593] This is to sayn þou shalt' swere sooþ. for euery lesinge is a3einst' crist' ffor crist' is verrey trouþe And þenk wel þis þat' euery grete swerer not' compelled lawfully to swere þe wounde shal not' departe fro his hꝙs þe whiles he vseth such vnlieful sweringe [594] ¶ Thow shalt' swere eke in doom whan þow arte constrayned by þi domes man to witnesse þe trouþe [595] ¶ Eke þou shalt' not' swere for envie ne for fauour' ne for mede but for ri3twisnesse for declarynge to worship of god and in helping of þine euencristen [596] And þerfore euery man þat' takeþ goddis name in ydel or falsely swereþ wiþ his mouþ or ellis takeþ on hym. þe name of crist' to be called a cristen man and lyueþ a3einst' cristes lyuyyng' and his techinge alle þei taken goddes name in ydell [597] ¶ Loke eke what' seiþ seint' Petere *Actus* 4^o^. Non est' aliud nomen sub cœlo. Ther nys noñ oþer name seiþ seint' Peter vnder heuene y3euen to men in which þei mote be saued þat' is to seyn but' in þe name of Ih*es*u crist [598] ¶ Take kepe eke how þat' þe precious name of Ih*es*u crist' as seiþ seynt' paule Ad philipens*es* 2^o^ In n*o*m*in*e Ih*es*u &c*etera*. That' in þe name of Ih*es*u euery knee of heuenly creatures or erþly or of helle shuld bowen for it' is so hi3e and so worshipfull that' þe cursed fende in helle shuld tremblee to heren it' nempned [599] than semeþ it' þat' men þat' sweren / so horribly by his

¶ Ieremie quarto capitulo

¶ Iurabis in veritate in iudicio et iustitia [*same side-note and quotation in the Sompnour's Tale. MS. leaf 219, back*]

¶ Petrus: /

¶ Ad philipenses

blessed name þat þei dispisen it more boldely þan did þe cursed Iwes. or ellis þe deuel þat trembleþ whan he hereþ his name

[600]. ¶ Now certes sipens þat swerynge but it be doo al lawfully is holy defended me The wors is forswering falsly. and 3it nedelees.

[601] What say we eke of hem þat deliten hem in swerynge and holden it a gentrye or a manly dede to swere grete oþes And what of hem þat of verrey vsage ne cessen not to swere grete oþes al þe cause not worþ oon strawe Certes þis is horrible synne [602] swering sodeynly wiþ-out avisement is eke a synne [603] ¶ But lat vs nowe goo to þilk horrible and cursed / swerynge of adiuracioñ and coniuracioñ as doñ þise fals enchauntours or nigromanciens in basyns ful of water or in a bri3t swerde. in a sercle or in a fuyre or in a shulder bone of a shepe [604] I can not seyn. but þat þei doôn cursedly and ¶ dampnably a3einst crist and al þe feiþ of holy chirchē.

[605] What say we of hem þat byleuen on dyuynales as by fli3t or by noys of briddes or of beestes or of sorte by *Egrimauncye*. by dremes. by chirking of doores by gnewyng of rattye or crakinge of howses. and suchē maner wrecchednesse [606] Certes al þis thynge is defended by god and by holy churche for // whichē þei bene acursed to þei come to amendement þat on suchē filþe setten her byleue [607] ¶ Charmes for woundes and maladies of men or of beestes if þei taken eny effecte it bene *per*auenture þat god suffreþ it for folk shuld 3eue þe more faiþe and reuerence to his name

[608] ¶ Now wil I speke of lesyngges whichē generally is fals signyfiaunt or woord in entent to deceyuen his euen cristen [609] ¶ Some lesing is of whichē þer *com*meþ noon auau*n*tage to no wi3t and somme lesyng turneþ to þe ease eiþer prǫfit of a man and to

damage of a noþer man [610] A noþere lesing is for to saue his liff or his cateℓ. Anoþer lesynge commeþ of delit' forto lye In whicℏ delite þei willen / forge a longe tale and peynte it' wiþ alℓ circumstannces. wher alle þe grounde of þe tale is fals [611] ¶ Some lesynge commeþ for he wil sustene his word' and some lesing' commeth of recchelessnesse with-outen avisement' and Semblable þingges

. [612] ¶ Lat' vs nowe touche þe vice of fflaterie whicℏ ne commeþ not' gladly but' for drede or for coueityse. [613] fflatery is generally wrongfuℓ presinge. fflaterers bene þe deuel norrces þat norsheþ his chylldren wiþ mylk of losengry. [614] ffor soþ seiþ Salomon! þat' flaterie is wors þan detracciōn. ffor. somtyme detraccioñ makeþ an haunteyn man be þe more humble. ffor he dredeþ detraccioñ But' certes fflaterye makeþ a man to vnℏaunten his hert' and his countenaunce [615] ¶ fflaterers bene þe deuels Enchaunters for þei make a man to wene of hym self be like þat' he nys not' like [616] Thei bene like Iudas þat' bytraied [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] a man to selle hym to his enemye þat' is to þe deueℓ [617] ¶ fflaterers bene þe deuels Chapileyns þat' synggen euer Placebo [618] I rekken flaterye in þe vices of Ire. ffor oft tyme if a man be wrooþ wiþ a-noþere þan wil he flater some wiȝt' to susteyne hym in his quereℓ ¶ Salomòn.

[619] Speke we now of suchℏ cursyng' as commeþ out' of yrous herte ¶ Malisouñ may be seide generally Euery maner power of harme suchℏ cursyng' byreueþ man fro þe regne of god. as seiþ seynt' paule [620] And oft' tyme suchℏ cursing' wrongfully retourneth aȝein to hym þat' curseþ as a brid retourneþ aȝeiñ to his owne nest' [621] And ouer al þing' men ouȝt' eschewe to curse her children and ȝeue to þe deueℓ her engendrure as ferforþ as in hem is ¶ Certes it' is a grete perile and grete synne. ¶ Paulus.

[622] Lat' vs þan speke of chidynge and reproche
which bene grete woundes in mannys hert ffor
þei vnsewen þe semes of ffrendship in mannys hert'.
[623] ffor certes vnneþes may a man pleynly ben
accorded wiþ hym þat' haþ hym openly reyled and
reproued and disclaundred þis is a ful grisly synne
¶ Textus./ ¶ And crist' seiþ in þe gospel [624] ¶ And take kepe nowe
þat' he þat' reproueþ his neighbour eiþere he reproueþ
hym by som harme of peyne þat' he haþ on his body.
as meseH croked harlot' or by some synne þat' he doþ
[625] ¶ Now if he reproue hym by harme of peyn
þan turneþ þe prophete to Ihesu Crist'. ffor peyne is
sent' by þe riȝtwis sonde of god and by his suffraunce
be it' meselrye or maym or maladie [626] *and* if he
reproue hym vncharitably of synne as þou hullour þou
dronklewe harlot' and so forþ þat appertenеþ þat
to þe roioysyng' of þe deueH þat' euer haþ ioye
þat' men doñ synne [627] ¶ And certes chyding' may
not' come but' of vileyns hertes. ffor after þe
habundaunce of þe hert' speke þ mouþ ful oft'
[628] And ȝe shullen vnderstonde þat' loke by eny way
whan eny man shal chastise a noþer þat' he be ware
fro chydyng' or reprouynge ffor trewly but' he be
ware he may ful liȝtly quykkеn þe fyre of angre and of
wretth whicH þat' he shuld' quenche. and perauenture
scleeþ [1]him þat' he myȝt' chastise wiþ benyg-
¶ Salomon./ nyte [629] ¶ ffor as seiþ Salomon ¶ The amyable tunge is
þe tree of lif þat' is to saye of lif spirituel. and
a disselaue tũnge scleeþ þe spirit' of hym þat'
reproueþ and eke of hym þat' is reproued [630] ¶ Loo
¶ Augustinus./ what' saiþ seint' Austyñ ¶ Ther nys no þinge ylike þe
¶ Paulus./ deuels child' as he þat' oft' chideþ ¶ Seynt Poule seiþ
eke ¶ I þe Seruaunte of god by-houeþ not' to chide. [631] and
howe þat' chydyng' is a vileyns þinge bytwix al
manere folk. ȝit' is it' certes most' vnconnable
by-twix a man and his wiff. for þer nys neuer rest'

¶ And þerfor seiþ Salomon ¶ An hous þat is vnkeuered ¶ Salomon.
in reyn and dropping and a chidyng wiff bene ylike
[632] a man þat is in a dropping hous in mony
places. they hee eschewe þe dropping in oon place
it droppeþ on hym in a noþer place ¶ So fareþ it be
a chiding wiff. but she chide hym in oo place she
wol chide hym in anoþer [633] And þerfore better is ¶ Idem.
a morsel of brede with Ioye þan an hous ful of
delices wiþ chidynge seiþ Salomon [634] ¶ And
poule seiþ O ye wommen be ye subiectys to youre ¶ Paulus./
husbondes as byhoueþ in god. And ye-men loueþ youre-
wyves. Ad colonisenses .3°.

[635] ¶ Afterward speke we of scornynge which is a
wikked synne And namely whan he scorneþ a man for
his good werkes. [636] for certes suche scorners
faren like þe foule tode þat may not endure to
smelle þe swete sauour of þe vyne what it
florssheþ [637] ¶ Thise scorners bene partyng felawes
wiþ þe deuel. for þei han Ioie whan þe deuel
wynneþ and sorowe whan he leseþ [638] ¶ They bene
aduersaries to Ihesu crist for þei haten þat he loueþ
þat is to say sauacioñ of saule

[639] ¶ Speke we nowe of wikked counsaille. ffor he þat
wikked counsaille yeueth is a traitour. ffor he discoyueþ
hym þat trusteþ in hym Vt Achitofel, de Absolonem
¶ But naþelees yit is it wikked counsaile ffirst ayeinst hym
self [640] for as seiþ þe wise man Euery fals
lyuyng haþ his propre in hym self þat he þat
wille anoy anoþer man he annoyeþ furst hym self.
[641] And men shullen vnderstonde þat man shal not
take his counsaille of fals folk ne of to angry folk or
greuous folk ne of folk þat louen specialy to moche her owne
profite ne to moch worldly folk namely in counsailling
of saules

[642] ¶ Now commeþ þe synne of hem þat
maken discorde amonges / folk which is a synne þat

crist hateþ vtterly and no wonder is. ffor he deyed forto make concorde. [643] And more shame ¯done þei to crist [1]þan did þei þat hym crucifie ffor god loueþ better þat frendship be amonges folk þan he dīd his owne body þe which he ȝaf for vnitees. therfore bene þei likned to þe deuel þat euer is about to make discord

[644] ¶ Now commeþ þe synne of double tunge. such as speken faire to-fore folk and wikkedly behynde or ellis þei / maken semblaunt as þouȝe þei speken of good entencioñ or ellis in game and pley and ȝit þei speke of wikked entent

[645] ¶ Now commeþ bywreying of counsaille þorgh which a man is defamed vnneþes may he restore þe damage

[646] ¶ Now commeþ manace þat is an open foly ffor he þat open manaseþ he treteþ more þan he may performe ful often tyme

[647] ¶ Now commeþ ydel wordes þat is wiþ-outen profite of hym þat speke þe wordes. *and* eke of hym þat harkeneþ þoo wordes // or ellis ydel wordes. ben / þoo þat bene nedelees or wiþ-outen entent of naturel profite. [648] and al be it þat ydel wordes be somtyme venial synne ȝit shuld men doute hem. for we shullen ȝeue rekenyng of hem to-fore god

¶ Salomon

[649] ¶ Now commeþ Iangelynge þat may not come wiþ-oute synne. And as seiþ Salomon ¶ It is signe of a-pert foly [650] and þerfor a philisophre seide whan a man asked hym how men shulde plese þe puple. And he answerd to mony good werkes and speke fewe Iangelynggs

[651] ¶ After þis commeþ þe synne of Iapes. þat bene deuels apes. for þei maken folk to lauȝe at her Iaprie as folkes doon at þe gaudes of an ape. Suche Iapes defendeþ seint Poule [652] ¶ Loke how þat vertuous wordes and hooly conforten hem

þat travaillen in þe seruise of criste Riȝt so conforten þe vileyns words and knakkes of Iapers hem þat trauaillen in þe servise of þe deueH [653] ¶ Thise bene þe synnes / þat commen of þe tunge þat commen of Ire and of other synnes

[*Remedies against Ire.*]

[654] ¶ The remedye aȝeinst Ire is a vertue þat men clepen mansuetude þat is debonairete and eke a nother vertue þat men clepe pacience [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]

[655] ¶ Debonairte wiþdroweþ and refreyneþ þe styryngges and þe meuyngs of mannys corage in his hert and suclı manere þat þei ne skippe not out by anger ne by Ire [656] suffraunce suffreþ swetly al þe annoyaunces and þe wrongges þat men doon to a man outward [657] ¶ Seint Ierom seiþ þus of debonairte þat hit dooþ noon harme to no wiȝt ne seiþ for noon harme þat men hym done ne sayn He ne eschaungeþ nouȝt aȝeinst his resoñ. [658] This vertue som / [1]somtyme commeþ of nature ¶ ffor as seiþ þe philisophre. A man is a quyk þinge by nature. debonaire and treteable by goodnes But whan debonairte is enfourmed by grace. it is þe more worþ ¶ Ieronimus

[659] ¶ Pacience þat is anoþer remedye aȝeinst Ire is a vertue þat suffreþ swetely euery mannys goodnesse and is not worþ for non harme þat is doon to hym [660] ¶ The philisofre seiþ þat pacience is þilk vertue þat suffreþ debonairly aH þe outrages of aduersite and euery wikked worde. [661] This vertue makeþ a man like to god. and makeþ hym his owne dere childe as seiþ crist. This vertu discomfiteþ þine enemye And þerfore seiþ þe wise man If þou wilt venquyssh þine / ennemye. lerne to suffre [662] And þou shalt vnderstonde þat a / man suffreth four maner

of greu*aun*ce in outward' þingges. a3einst which foure he mote haue iiij. maners of paciences./

[663] ¶ The furst greu*aun*ce is of wikked wordes. þilk greu*aun*ce suffreþ Ihesu crist' wiþ-outen grucchinge ful paciently whan þe Iwes despised hym and reproueden hy*m* ful oft' [664] Suffre þou þerfore paciently. ffor þe wise man eke seiþ ¶ If þou stryue wiþ a fool þoughe þe fool be wroþ. or þou3e he lau3e algate þou shalt' haue no rest. [665] That' oþer greu*aun*ce outward' is forto haue damage of þi catell ¶ Ther a3einst' suffred crist' ful paciently whan he was dispoilled of al þat' he had in this liff and þat' nas but' his cloþes [666] ¶ The iij. greu*aun*ce is a man to haue harme in his bodyę. and þat' suffred crist' ful paciently in all his passioñ [667] ¶ The iiij. greu*aun*ce is in an outrageous labour' *in* werkes. wherfore I say þat' folk þat' maken her seru*aun*tes to travaille to greuously or out' of tyme as in holy days. soþly þei doon grete synne. [668] Here a3einst' suffred crist' ful paciently and taught' vs patience whan he bare vpon / his blessed shulder' þe crois vpon which' he shuld' suffre dispitous deeþ. [669] Here may men lerne to be pacient'. ffor soþly not' oonly cristen men bene pacient' for þe loue of Ihesu crist' and for guerdoñ of þe blisse of heuene and of þe blisful liff þat' is p*er*durable But' certes þe olde paynyms þat' neuere were cristen com-menden & vseden þe vertue of pacięnce

¶ Sap*iens*

¶ Philo*sophus*

[670] A philisophre vpon a tyme þat' wold' haue beten his disciple for his grete trespace. for which' he was gretly ameued and brou3t' a 3eerd' to scoure þe [1]childe [671] and whan þe childe segh' þe 3eerde he seide to his maist*er* what' wil 3e doo. I wil bete þe quod his maistere. for þine correctiou*n*. [672] ffor soþ quod þe childe 3e ou3t' first' correcte 3oure self' þat' haþ lost' 3oure pacience for þe gilt' of a childe. [673] ffor soþ quod þe maister al wepinge þu

saiest' þe sooþ. Haue þou þe 3erde my dere sone and correcte me for myn Inpacience [674] ¶ Of pacience commeth obedience þorgh̄ which̄ a man is obedien to crist' and into alle hem to which̄ he ou3t' be obedient' in crist' [675] and vnderstonde wel þat' obedience is parfite whan men doon gladly and hastely wiþ good hert' entierly al þat' he shuld do. [676] Obedience / generally is to perfourme þe doctrine of god *and* of his souereins to whiche hym ou3te to bene obeysaunt' in al ri3twisnesse

¶ De peccato accidie [*from margin*]

[677] Aftere þe synnes of Envie .I wil speke of þe synne of Accidie. ffor Envie blyndeþ þe hert' of a man. And Ire troubleth a man. and accidy makeþ hym hevye .þou3tful and wrowe [678] ¶ Envie and Ire maken bitternesse in hert' which̄ bitternesse is / modere of accide and bynymeþ hym þe loue of al goodnes þat' is accyde þe angwissh̄ of a trouble hert' and seynt' Austyne seiþ it' is anoye of goodnesse and anoy of harme. [679] / Certes þis is a dampnable synne for it' dooþ wronge to Ihesu crist' in as moch̄ as he nymeþ þe seruice þat' men ou3t' to doo Ihesu crist' wiþ al diligence as seiþ salomon / ¶ Salomon./ [680] But' accide dooþ noon suche diligence He doþ al þing' wiþ anoy and wrawnesse sclaknesse and escusaciõn and wiþ dulnesse and vnlust' ¶ ffor which̄ þe booke seiþ. Accursed be he þat' doþ þe seruise of god negligently [681] Than is accidy enmye to euery estate of man for certes þe estate of man is in þre maners. [682] eiþer It' is þe estate of Innocence as was þe estate of Adam byforn þat' he felle in to synne in which̄ estate he was halden to wirche as in heryng' and in adourynge of god [683] ¶ Anoþer estate is þe estate of synful men in which̄ estate men ben halden

to labour in preying' to god for amendement' of her [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] synnes [684] ¶ Anoþer estate is þe estate of grace in whicħ estate he is halden to do werkes of penitence and certes to aⁿ þise þingges is accidye / enemye and contrary for he loueþ no bysynes at' aⁿ [685] ¶ Now certes þis foule synne accidye is eke a ful gret' enemye to þe liflode of þe body for it' haþ no purvyaunce ⁊ aȝeinst' temporel necessite ffor it' is forslewþe and for-slugge þ and distroieþ al good temporels by rechelesnesse

[686] The iiij. þinge is þat' accidie is like hem þat' bene in þe peyne of helle by cause of her slouþe and of her heuynesse. for þei þat' bene dampned bene so bounde þat' þei ne' may wel do ne wel þenk'. [687] Of accidy commeþ first' þat' a man is anoied and encombred to doon eny goodnesse and makeþ þat' god haþ abhomynacioñ of such accidye as seith seynt' Ioħn

¶ *sanctus Iohannes./*

[688] ¶ Now commeþ sleuthħ *þat'* wil not' suffre noon hardnesse ne no penaunce ffor soþ slouþe is so tendere and so delicate as seiþ Salomon þat' he wil not' suffre noon hardnesse ne penaunce and þerfore he sheendeþ aⁿ þat' he dooþ [689] aȝeinst' his roten herted synne of accidie and slouþe shulde men exercise by hem self to done good werkes and manly and vertuousli cacchen corage wel to done þenkyng' þat' our lorde Ihesu crist' quiteþ euery good dede be it' neuere so lite./ [690] Vsage of labour is a grete þing' for it' makeþ as seiþ Seynt' Bernard' þe laborers to haue stronge armes and harde Synewes and slouthe makeþ hem feble and tendere [691] Than commeth drede forto bygynne to wirkes ffor certes he þat' is enclyned / to synne hym þenkeþ it' is so grete an emprise forto vndertake to do werkes of goodnesse [692] [. . . . . .

¶ Salomon

¶ Bernardus

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . *no gap in the MS.*] as seiþ Seintꝑ *gregorie*.

[693] ¶ Now commeþ wanhope þatꝑ is despeire of þe mercy of god þatꝑ commeþ somtyme of to mocℏ outrageous sorowe and somtyme of moche drede ymagynynge þatꝑ he haþ do so mocℏ synne þatꝑ itꝑ wil notꝑ auaille hym þouȝe he wolde repentꝑ hym and forsake synne and doon good [694] þorȝe whicℏ dispeire or drede he boundeneþ his hertꝑ to euery maner synne as seiþ seintꝑ Austyne [695] ¶ Whicℏ dampnable synne if þatꝑ it contynue vnto his ende. itꝑ is cleped synnyngꝑ in þe holy goostꝑ [696] This orible synne is so perilous þatꝑ he þatꝑ is despeired þer nys no felonye ne no synne þatꝑ he douteþ for to doo as shewed wel by Iudas [697] Certes þen abouen alℏ synnes is þis synne mostꝑ displesauntꝑ to cristꝑ and mostꝑ aduersarie to cristꝑ. [698] Soþly he þatꝑ dispeireþ he is like þe cowardꝛ champioñ recreauntꝑ and seiþ creauntꝑ wiþouten nede Allas / alas / nedeles is he recreauntꝑ [1]and seiþ creauntꝑ[1] and nedeles / despeired [699] ffor certes þe mercy of god is euer redy to þe penytent. itꝑ is abouen alℏ his werkis [700] ¶ Allas can a man notꝑ [2]vmbyþenke hym of þe gospel of Luke xvº. Where as crist seiþ þatꝑ as wel shal þer be ioye in heuene vpon a synful / man þatꝑ doþ penytence þan vppon 90. 19.Riȝtful . men þatꝑ [. . . . *no gap in the MS.*] neden to penytence [701] ¶ Loke forþer in þe gospelℏ þe Ioye and / þe feestes of þe good man þatꝑ had lostꝑ his / sone. Whan his sone wiþ repentaunce was retourned to his fadere. [702] Can / þei notꝑ remembre hem eke þatꝑ as seiþ seintꝑ luca xxiiiº. Hou þatꝑ þe þeef þatꝑ was honged besides Ihesu cristes side ¶ Lord remembre on me whan þou commest into þi regne. [703] ffforsoth seide cristꝑ to day shaltꝑ þou be wiþ me in paradys [704] Certes þerꝑ nys noon so horrible synne of

¶ Augustinus

[1—1] *repeated in MS.*]

¶ Lucæ xxvº.

¶ Lucæ xxiijº

man þat it ne may in his lif be destroied by penytence þorgh vertue of þe passioun and of þe deeþ of crist [705] ¶ Allas what nedeþ man þan to be despeired siþens his mercy so redy is to aske and haue [706] ¶ þan / commeþ sompnolence þat is scluggy sclumbringe which makeþ a man be hevie and dulle in body and in saule and þis synne commeþ of slouþe [707] And certys þe tyme þat by way of resoñ men shuld not sclepe þat is by þe morowe but if þer were cause resonable [708] ¶ ffor soþly in þe morowe tyde is most conable a man to say his preiers and for-to þenken on god. and to honouren god and to ȝeuen almesse to þe poor þat first commen in þe name of criste [709] ¶ Lo what seiþ Salomon. who so wil by þe morowe awake to seke me. he shal fynde [710] ¶ Than commeth necligence or rechelesnesse þat rekketh of no þinge and how þat ignoraunce is modere of al harme ¶ Certes necligence is þe norice. [711] necligence ne doþ no force whan he shal done eny þinge whedere he do it wel or badly

¶ Salomon.

[712] ¶ Of þe remedie of þise two synnes as seiþ þe wise / man þat he þat dredeþ god spareþ not to done þat hym ouȝt to done [713] and he þat loueþ god. he wil do diligence to plese. god by his werkes and abounden hym self wiþ al his myȝt wel forto doon. [714] þan commeþ ydelnes þat is þe ȝate of al harmes. An ydel man is like to a place þat haþ no walles þe deueH may entre on euery side or shete at hym at discouerte by temptacioñ on euery side [715] This ydelnesse is þe thurrok of al wikked and vyleyns þouȝtes. and of alle Iangelinges trowfuls and al ordure [716] ¶ Certes þe heuene is yȝeue to hem þat wil laboure. and nouȝt to ydel folk ¶ Eke *dauid* [1] seiþ þat þei ne be not in þe labour of men. ne þei shul not be whipped wiþ men þat is to say in purgatorie

¶ sapiens

¶ dauid

[717] ¶ Certes þan semeþ it'. þei shul be tormented wiþ þe deuel in helle but' if þei done penitence

[718] ¶ Than commeþ þe synne þat' men clepen tarditas as was a man is so lattred and so tarying' er he wil turne to god. and certes þat' is a grete foly. he / is like hym þat' falleþ in þe diche and wil not' arise. [719] And / þis vice commeþ of fals hope. þat' he þenkeþ he shal lyue longe. but' þat' hope failleth ful oft'

[720] Than commeth lacchesse þat' is he þat' whan he bygynneþ eny good werk. anoon / he wil forlete it' and stynt'. as done þei þat' han eny wiȝt to gouerne and ne taken of hym no more kepe anoon as þei / fynden eny contrary or eny anoye [721] ¶ Thise ben þe newe shipardes þat' laten her shepe wetyngly go renneu to þe / wolf þat' is in þe breres or doon no force of her owne gouernaunce [722] ¶ Of þis commeþ pouerte and distruction boþ of spirituel and of temporel þingges. Than commeth a manere of coldnesse þat' freseþ aH þe hert' of a man [723] ¶ Than commeth vndeuocioñ þorghe whicH a man is so blent'. And as seiþ seint' Bernard' haþ suH langour in soule þat' he may neiþere rede ne synge in holy churcH ne þenk on deuocioñ ne travaille wiþ his hondes in no good werk þat' it' ne is / to hym vnsauery and al appalled [724] þan wexeþ he sore and / sclowe and slumbry and sone wil be wrooþ and sone is / enclyned to hate and to Envie [725] ¶ Than commeþ þe synne of worldly sorowe. whicH þat' is cleped tristicia þat' scleeþ a man. as seiþ seint' Paule [726] ffor certes suH sorowe wirkeþ to þe deeþ of þe saule and of þe body ¶ Also for þerof commeth þat a man is annoyed of his owne liff [727] Wherfore such sorowe shorteþ ful often þe lyf // of a man er þat' his tyme commen is by way of kinde

¶ Bernardus

¶ Tristicia /

[*The Remedy against Accidie.*]

[728] ¶ Aȝeinst þis horrible Synne of Accido and þe braunches of þe same Ther is a vertue þat' is called ¶ ffortitudo./ ffortitudo or strenght þat' is an affeccioñ þorgh which a man despiseþ al noyous þinge [729] ¶ This vertue is so myȝty and so vigorous: þat' it' dar wiþstonde myȝtely and wrastel aȝeinst' þe Sawtes of þe deuelh and wisly kepen hym self fro periles þat' bene wikked [730] for it' enchaunseþ and ẽnforseþ þe soule [1] riȝt' as accidy abateþ it' and makeþ it' feble. ffor þis fortitudo may endure by longe suffraunce þe travailes þat' bene conable

[731] ¶ This vertue haþ mony spyces ¶ The furst' is cleped magnanimitas. þat' is to / saye grete corage. ffor soþly þer byhoueþ grete corage aȝeinst' Accidye lest' þat' it' swelowe þe soul by þe synne of sorowe. or destroy it' by wanhope. [732] This vertu makeþ folk vndertake harde þingges. and greuous þingges by her owne wille wisely and resonably [733] And for as moch as the deuel fighteþ aȝeinst' man. more by queynteyse & by scleight' þan by strenghthñ *per*fore a man shal withstonde hym by witte and by resoñ and by discrecioñ [734] ¶ Then ben / þer þe vertues of feiþ and hope in god *and* in his seyntes to atcheuen and accomplise þe good werkes in which he *pur*poseþ feermely to contynue [735] ¶ Than *com*meþ suerte or sikernesse and þat' is whan a man ne douteþ no travaile in tyme *com*mynge of þe good werk' þat' a man / haþ bygonne [736] ¶ Than *com*meþ Magnificence. and þat' is to sayn whan a man doþ and *per*fourmeþ grete werkes of goodnesse. þat' he haþ bygonne. and þat' is þe ende whi þat' men shuld doo good werkes. ffor in þe acco*m*plesing' of good werkes lith þe grete guerdoun [737] ¶ Than is þer constaunce þat' is stablenesse of corage and þis shulde be in hert' by stedfast' feiþ and in mouþe and in

berynge and in chere and in dede [738] ¶ Eke þer bene moo / special þingges and remedies aȝeinst Accidie in dyuers werkes and in consideracions of þe pyne of helle and of þe Ioye of heuene and in þe trust' of þe grace of þe holy goost' þat' wil ȝeuen hym myȝt to pe*r*fourmen his entent'

¶ De auaricia.

[739]

Aftere Accidie wil I speke of avarice and of couetytise of which̄ synne seiþ seint' Poule þat' þe Roote of all synne is coueitise ¶ And Thimothe*i* 2° *Capitulo*. [740] ffor trewly. whan þat' þe hert' of a man is confounded in it' self and trouble and þat' þe saule haþ lost' þe co*m*forte of god þan sekeþ he an ydel solace of worldly þingges

¶ De Auaricia ¶ Paulus ¶ Timothei secundo.

[741] ¶ Auarice aftere þe scripcion̄ of seynt' Austyne is a likerousnesse in herte to haue erþely þingges. [742] Som [1]oþer folk' seyn þat' auarice is forto p*ur*chace mony erþely þingges and no þinge ȝeue to hem þat' han nede. [743] And vnderstonde þow wel þat' auarice nys not' oonly in land' ne catell but' somtyme in science and in glorie and in euery manere of outrageous þingges is auarice and coueitise [744] And þe difference ytwix Auarice and couetise is þis Coueitise is forto coueite suche þingges as þow hast' not' And auarice is forto wiþholde' and kepe suche þingges as þou hast' wiþ-out' riȝtful nede [745] Soþly þis Auarice is a synne þat' is ful dampnable for al holy writte curseþ it and spekeþ aȝeinst' it' ffor it' doþ wronge to Ihesu crist' [746] for it byreueþ hym þe loue þat' men to hym owen and turneþ it' bakward' aȝeinst' all' resoñ [747] and makeþ þat' þe auaricious man haþ more hope in his catel þan in Ihesu crist' And

Augustinus

[. . . . . .
. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [748] þerfore seiþ

¶ Ephesianos 5° capitulo

seyn Paule Ephes*ios* .5°. That' auerous man / haþ more hope in his þraldome of ydolatrie

[749] ¶ What' differenee is ytwix an ydolastre and an auarous man but' þat' an ydolastre and an auarous man ne haþ but' a mawmet' or twoo: and þe auaricious man haþ monye ffor certes euery floreyn in his Coffre is his mawmet' [750] And certes þe synne of Maumetrie is þat' god in þe ten / comaundmentes as bereþ' witnesse in Exod*i capitulo* .xx°. [751] Thou / shalt' haue no fals goddes byforn me. Ne þou shalt make to þe no grauen þinge. Thus as is an Auaricious man [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] ¶ And ydolastre [752] þorgh his synne of Auarice and of coueitise commen þise hard' lordshippes þorgh which men ben strayned by taliages. custumes and tariages more þan / her duete or reson is ¶ And ellis take þei of her bonde men amercementz which myghten more resonably be cleped extorcions þan amercymentz. [753] Of which amercymentes and raunsonynge of boond men some lordes Stuardes seyn þat' it' is rightfull for as moche as a cherle haþ no temporell þinge. þat' it' ne is his lordes as þei sayne. [754] But' certes þise lordshippes doon wronge þat' byreuen her bonde folk' þingges þat' þei neuere ne 3af hem / Aug*ustinus* de Ci*vitate* li*bro* ix°. [755] ¶ Sooþ is þat' þe condicion of þraldome and þe furst' cause of þraldome is for synne. G[e]nes*is* v^to^.

¶ Exod*i* xx°. capitulo

¶ Augustinus de civitate. libro. ix°

¶ Genesis .5^to^

[756] Thus may 3e seen þat' þe gilt' deserueth thraldom [1]But' not' nature [757] Wherfor þise lordes ne shuld not' moche glorifie hem in her lordship siþens þat' by natureh condicions þei bene [not] lordes ouer her þralles. but for þat' þraldom come furst' by desert' of synne. [758] And ferþer ouer þer as þe lawe seiþ þat' temporell goodes of bonde folk bene þe goodes of her lordshippes 3e þat' is forto vnderstonde þe goodes of þe Emperour to defende hem in her right' but' not' to robbe hem ne to reue hem. [759] ¶ And þerfore

¶ Seneca

seiþ Senec'. Thy prudence shuld lyue benignely wiþ þine þraƚƚ. [760] Thilk' þat' þou clepest' þine þraƚƚ bene goddys puple. ffor humble folk bene cristes frendes þei bene contubernial wiþ þe lord'

[761] ¶ Thenk' eke þat' suche sede as churles ¶ springen: of suche seed springgen lordes. as wel may þe cherle be saued as þe lorde. [762] þe same deþ þat' takeþ þe cherle. þe same deeþ takeþ þe lorde. wherfore I rede do riȝht' so wiþ þi cherle as þou woldest' þi lorde did wiþ þe if þou were in his plite. [763] Euery synful man is a cherle to synne ¶ I rede þe Certes þat' þou lorde worche in suche wise þat' þi cherles raþer loue þe than drede þe [764] ¶ I woote wel þer is degree aboue degre as resoñ is and skiƚƚ is þat' men / done her devoyre þer as it' is dwe But' certes extorcions and despites of ȝoure vnderlyngges is dampnable.

[765] And forther ouer vnderstonde weƚƚ þat' conquerours or tyrauntz maken ful often þralles of hem þat' bene born of as Royal blood as bene þei þat' hem conqueren. [766] This name of thraldome was neuere knowe erst' til þat' Noe seid þat' his sone ¶ De Noe Canaan shuld be þraƚƚ to his breþereu for his synne. [767] ¶ What say we þan of hem þat' pillen and done extorcions to. holy churche ¶ Certes þe swerd' þat' me ȝeuen furst' to a knyght' whan he is newe dubbed signifieþ þat' he shuld defende holy churcħ and nouȝt' robbe it' and who so dooþ is a traitour' to crist'. [768] as seiþ seynt' Austyne ¶ They bene ¶ Augustinus deuels wolfes. þat' stranglen þe shepe of *Ihesu criste* and bene wors þan wolfes. [769] ffor soþly whan þe wolf haþ ful his wombe. He stynteth to strangle shepe. But' soþly þe pylours and distroyours of good of holy churcħ ne doon not' so for þei ne stynte neuere to pillen. [770] Now as I haue seide so siþens so is [1]þat' synne was furst' cause of thraldome Than it' is

þus þat' þilk tyme þat' al þis world' was in synne þan was al þis worlde in þraldome and in subiectiõ./ [771] But' certes siþen þe tyme of grace cam god' ordeyned þat' some folk shuld be more highe in estate and hie degree. and some folk more lowe and þat' euerych shulde be serued in his estaat/ and *in* degre. [772] And þerfore in some contrey þer þei bene þralles whan þei / han turned hem to þe feiþ þei maken her þralles free out' of þraldome And þerfor certes þe lorde oweþ to his man þat' þe man oweþ to his lorde [773] ¶ þe pope clepeþ hym self seru*aun*te of Seru*aun*tes of god. But' for as moche as þe state of holy churc̃h ne myȝt' not' han bee ne þe comon profite ne myȝt' han be kept' ne pees and rest' in erþe but' if god had ordeyned þat' som men han hier degre and so*mm*e men lowere [774] ¶ þerfor was souereynte ordeyned to kepe and mayntene and defende her vnderlyngges or her subiectes in resoñ as ferforþe as it' liþe in her power and not' to distroye hem ne as ferforþ confounde. [775] wherfore I say þat' þilk' lordes þat' bene þilk' wolfes þat' deuouren þe possessions or þe catel of poor folk wrongfully wiþ-out*en* mercy or mesure [776] þer shullen resceyue by þe same mesure þat þei han mesured to poor folk' þe mercy of Ihesu crist' but' it' be amended [777] ¶ Now co*mm*eþ despite bytwix Marchaunt' and marchaunt'. And þou shalt' vnderstonde þ*at'* Marchaundise is in mony maners. þat' oon is bodyly & þat' oþer is goostly. þat' oon is leeful and þat' oþer is dishonest and vnlieful [778] ¶ of þilk bodily marchau*n*dyse þat' is leeful and honest' is þis þat' þer as god hath̃ ordeyned þat a regne or a contre is sufficient' him self þan is it' honest' and lieful þat' of þe habundaunce of þis cuntre þat' men helpe anoþer cuntre þat' is more nedye [779] and þerfore þei mote be Marchauntz to bringe from þat' oon cuntre to þat' oþer her march-

aundise../ [780] ¶ That' ope*re* marchaundise þat' men haunte wiþ fraude trecherye and disceyte wiþ lesyngge*s* and fals oþes is cursed and dampnable. [781] ¶ Espirituel Marchaundise [1]is p*ro*prely Symonye þat' is ententif desire to by þenk' espirituel that' is þing' þat' app*er*teyneþ to þe sentuaty of god and to cure of þe soule. [782] This desire if so be þat' a man do hys diligence to *per*fourme it' al be it' þat' his desire ne take noon effecte ȝit' is it' to hym a dedly synne and if he be ordred he is aregulere [783] ¶ Certes Symony is cleped of Symon magus þat' wolde haue bouȝt' þe temporel Cateħ./ þe ȝift' þat' god had ȝeuen / by þe holy goost' to seint' Peter and to þe apostels./ [784] And þerfore vnderstondeþ þat' boþ he þat' selleþ and he þat' byeth̄ þingges espirituħ bene cleped Symonyals be it' catel be it' procurynge or by flesshly preier of his frendes or of spirituel frendes [785] [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] Soþly if þei prey for hy*m* þat' is not' able ne worþi. it' is Symonye. If he take þe benefice and if he be worþi and able he nys noon. [786] ¶ That' oþer maner is if a man or a wo*m*man preyeþ for folk to au*aun*sen hem / only for wikked flesshly affectiō̄ þat' þei han vnto þe p*er*sones and þat' is in foule Symonye. [787] But' certes in seruice for whicħ men ȝeuen þingges espirituels vnto her seru*aun*tes It' most' be vnderstonde *þat'* þe seruise most' be honest' and ellis not'. and eke þat' hit be wiþ out' barganynge and þat' þe p*er*sone be able. [788] ffor as seiþ seint' Damasie ¶ Alle þe synnes of þe world' at' þe regarde of this synne bene as a þinge of nouȝt'. ffor it' is þe grettest' synne þat' may be aftere [2]þe synne of lucifer[2] and of antecrist' [789] for by þis synne god forleseþ þe churche and þe soule þat' he bouȝt wiþ his precious blood by hem þat' ȝeuen chirches to hem þat' bene not digne. [790] ffor þei putten in þeues þat'

¶ Damasius

[2—2 *repeated in MS.*]

stelen þe soules of Ihesu crist and distroyeþ his patrymoyne [791] by suche vndigne preestes and curates han men þe lasse reuerence of þe sacramentes of holy churche. And suche ȝeuers of churches putten out' þe children of' crist. and putten in þe churche þe deuels owne sone. [792] þei sellen þe soules þe lombes shulden kepen to þe wolf þat' strangleþ hem and þerfore shul þei neuere haue parte of þe pasture of lambes þat is þe blisse of heuene. [793] ¶ Now commeþ hasardy with his a[1]purtyn*aun*ces as tables and Rafuls of which commeþ disceite fals oþes chidyngges and all ravanys blasphemynge and reneiynge of god and hate of his neghbours waast' of good in spendyng' of tyme and somtyme m*a*nnys sclaught*er* [794] Certes hasardours ne may not' be wiþ-out' grete synne þe whiles þei haunte þat' craft [795] Of Auarice commeþ eke lesingges. þeeft' and fals witnesse. and fals oþes and ȝe shal vnderstond*e* þat' þise bene grete synnes and expresse aȝeinst' þe comaundementz of god as I haue said' [796] ¶ ffals witnesse is in worde and eke in dede In worde as forto byreue þine neiȝbours good, name by þi fals witnessinge or byreue hy*m* his Catell or his heritage by þi fals witnessinge. whan þou for Ire or for mede or for envie berest' fals witnesse or accusest hym. or excusest hym by þi fals witnesse. or ellis excusest' þine self falsly. [797] ware ȝou questmongers and notaries. Certes for fals witnessyng' was Susanna in grete sorowe & peyn and mony anoþer moo [798] ¶ The synne of þeft is eke expres aȝeinst goddes heest' and þat' in two maners corporell and spirituell [799] [Corporell] as for to take þine neighbours catell aȝeinst' his wille. be it' by force or by scleight' by it' by mette or by mesure. [800] By stelynge eke of fals enditementz vpon hy*m* and in borowinge of þine neighbours Catell in entent' neuer to pay. And semplable þingges [801] espirituell þeft' is sac*ri*lege þat' is to seyn hurt-

Of Hasardry

¶ De falso testimonio

¶ De ffurto

ynge of holy þingges or of þingges sacred to crist in two maners by resoñ of þe holy place as churches or chirch̄ hawes. [802] for euery vyleyns synne þat' men doon in suche places may be cleped Sacrilegge or euery violence in þe semblable places./ ¶ Also þei þat' wiþdrawen falsly þe riȝtes þat' longen to holy church̄. [803] And pleynly and generally sacrilege is to ȝeue holy þinge fro holy place. or vnholy þinge out' of holy place. or holy þing' out' of vnholy place

[*The Remedy against Avarice.*]

[804] ¶ Now shul ȝe vnderstonde þat' þe releuyng of Auarice is misericord' and pite largely taken./ ¶ And men' myȝten axen why þat' misericorde and pite is releuynge of auarice [805] ¶ Certes þe Auarous [1]man scheweth no pite ne misericord' to þe nedeful man ffor he deliteþ hym in þre kepingges of his tresoure and not *in* þe reskowinge ne releuing' of his euencristen and þerfore speke I furst' of misericorde ... [806] þan is misericorde as seiþ þe philosophre ¶ A vertue by whiche þe corage of a man is stired by þe myssese of hym þat' is myssesed [807] vpon which̄ misericord followeþ pite in *per*fourmynge of charitāble werkes of misericord'. [808] And certes þise meuen man to þe misericord' of Ihesu crist' þat' hym self for our gilt' suffred deeth̄ for misericord' and forȝaue vs our origynal synnes [809] and þer-by relesed vs fro þe peyne of helle and amenuseþ þe peynes of purgatorie by penytence. and ȝeueþ grace wel to doo. and at' þe last þe Ioie of heuene [810] The spices of misericorde bene as forto lene. and forto ȝeue / and forto [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] relees. and for to haue pite in hert' and compassioñ of þe meschief of his

¶ Reuelacio Auaricie

¶ Philosophus

euencristen. and eke. chastise þer as nede is [811] ¶ Anoþer maner remedy aʒeinst Auarice is resonable largesse. But soþly here byhoueth þe consideracioñ of þe grace of Ihesu crist and of his temporell goodes and eke of þe goodes perdurables þat crist ʒaue vs. [812] and eke to haue remembrannce of þe deep þat he shal haue he noot not whan. and eke þat he shal forgoon all þat he haþe [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] dispended in good

[813] ¶ But for as moche as some folk bene vnmesurable men ouʒten eschewe fool largesse þat men clepen waast [814] Certes he þat is fool large ne ʒeueth not his catell. but he leseþ his catell. Sooply what þinge þat he ʒeueþ for veyn glorie as to Mynstralles and to folk forto byreuen his renoun in þe world he haþ do / [synne and non] almesse. [815] ce[r]tes he leseþ foule his good þat he ne sekeþ no þinge of his good but synne. [816] he is like to an hors þat sekeþ raþer to drink drovy or troubly watere þan of þe clere welle [817] And for as moche as þei ʒeue þere as þei shuld not ʒeue to hem apperteyneþ þilk malysoñ þat criste shal ʒeuen at þe day of dome to hem þat shul be dampned. /

De Gula /

¶ Gula ./. [818] Aftere Auarice commeþ glotonye whicñ is expresse eke aʒeinst þe comaundement of god ¶ Gloteny is vnmesurable appetit to ete. or to drink or ellis to doon ynogh to þe vnmesurable and discord coueityse to ete and to drynk [819]. ¶ This synne corrumpeþ al þis world as is wel shewde in [1]in þe synne of ¶ Paulus Adam and of Eua ¶ Loo eke what seiþ seynt Paule of gloteny [820] ¶ Mony seiþ seint Paule gooñ of whicñ

I haue oft' seide to ȝou. and' nowe I seie it' wepynge þat' þei bene Enemyes of þe crois of crist' of which̄ þe ende is deep and of which̄ her woombe is her god and her glorye in confusion of hem þat' so saueren erþely þingges [821] he þat' is vsant' to þis synne of glotenye he ne may no synne wiþstonde. he / mote bene in seruage of all vices. for it' is þe deuels hoorde þer [he] hideþ him and resteþ [822] ¶ This synne haþ mony spices ¶ The furst' is drcnknes þat' is þe horrible sepulcre of mannys reson̄ And þerfore whan þat' a man is dronken. he haþ lost' his reson̄ and þis is dedly synne [823] ¶ But' certes whan a man is nat' wonte to straunge drynk and perauenture ne knoweþ not' þe strength of þe drynk' or haþ feblenesse in his hede or haþ travailled þorgh̄ which̄ he drinkeþ þe moore al be he sodeynly cauȝte wiþ drink' it' is no dedly synne. but' venial [824] ¶ The secounde spice of Gloteny is þat' þe spirit' of a man wexeþ al trouble. for dronknesse byreueþ hym þe discrecion̄ of his witte [825] ¶ The þred spice of gloteny is whan a man deuoureþ his mete and haþ no riȝt-ful maner' of etynge [826] ¶ The fourte is whan þorgh̄ þe grete habundaunce of his mete þe humours of his body bene distempred [827] ¶ The v. is forȝetelnesse by to mochel drynkynge. ffor which̄ somtyme a man forȝeteþ by þe morowe what' he did at' Eue or on þe nyȝt' byfor

[828] ¶ In oþer manere bene distincte of vices & spices of glotenye aftere seint' Gregorie ¶ The furst' is forto ete by- ¶ Gregorius
fore tyme. The secounde whan a man geteþ hym to delicate mete [829] ¶ The iij. is whan men taken to moche ouere mesure ¶ The 4 is curiosite wiþ grete entent' to maken and apparailen his mete ¶ The .v. is forto ẽten to gredely [830] Thise bene the .v. fyngers of þe / deueles honde. by which̄ he draweþ folk' to synne

[*The Remedy against Gluttony.*]

¶ Remedium./ [831] ¶ Aȝeinst' glotenye is the remedy abstinence of his þody as seiþ Galien. but' þat' hold' I not' meritorie if he do it' only for þe helþ of his body ¶ Seynt'
¶ Augustinus. austyne wil þat' abstinence be doon for vertue & wiþ pacience [832] ¶ Abstinence he seiþ is litel worþ. but' if a / man haue good wille þerto / and but' if it be enforced by pacience and by charite and þat' men doon it' for goddys / sake and in hope to haue þe blisse of heuene

[833] ¶. The felowes of abstynence. bene attemperaunce þat' haldeþ þe mene in alle [1]þingges ¶ Eke shame þat' eschewe þ alł dishoneste. Suffisaunce þat' sekeþ no riche metes ne drinkes ne dooþ noo force of noon / outrageous apparaillynge of mete [834] Mesure also þat' restreyneþ by resoñ þe delaue appetite of etynge. Sobrenesse also þat' restreyneþ þe outrage of drynk. [835] Sparyng' also þat' restreyneþ þe delicate eese to sitte longe atte mete and softly // wherfore some folk' stonden of her owne wille and to eteñ at' þe lasse leisere

¶ De luxuria Sequitur./

[836]

¶ Luxuria Aftere Gloteny commeþ lecherye. ffor þise two synnes ben so nygh̄ Cosyns þat' often tyme þei wil not' departe./ [837] God woote þis synne is ful displesaunt' þing' to god. ffor he / seiþ hym self. do no lecherye. And þerfore he putteþ grete peynes aȝeinst' þis synne. As in þe olde lawe. [838] ¶ If woman þral were taken in þis synne. she shuld be beten wiþ staues to þe dethe And if she were a gentile woman she shulde be sclayn with̄ stones And if she were a bishoppes douȝter' she shuld be brent' by goddis comanndement' [839] ¶ ffurþermore by þe synne of lecherye god draynt' al þe world' at' þe

diluve. And after þat' he brent' .v. Citees' wiþ liȝt' and sonke hem into helle

[840] ¶ Nowe lat' vs speke þan of þilk' stynkinge synne of lechery. þat' men clepen aduoutrie of wedded folk þat' is to say if þat' oon of hem be wedded or ellis booþ [841] ¶ Seint' Iohn seiþ þat' þe aduoutrers schullen be in helle in a stynk' brennyng' of fuyre and of bremstoon. In fuyre for lechery. In bremstone for þe stynke of her ordure [842] ¶ Certes þe brekinge of þis sacrament' is an horrible þinge. it' was made of god hym self in Paradise and confermed by Ihesu crist' as wittnesseþ seint' Mathewe in̄ þe gospell ¶ A man shal lete fadere and modere and take hym to his wiff and þei shul be twoo in oo flessh̄ [843] ¶ This sacrament' bytokeneþ þe knyttyng' to-gidere of crist' and of holy churche. [844] and nat' oonly þat' god forbad aduoutrie in bedde. but' eke he comaunded þat' þou shuldest' not' coveyte þine neighbours wiff [845] ¶ In þis heest' seiþ seint' Austyne is for-boden al manere coueitise to doon lecherie ¶ Loo what' seiþ seint' Mathewe þe .v. chapitle / in þe gospell. þat' who so seeþ a woman to coueitise of his lust. he haþ doon lecchery wiþ her in his hert [846] ¶ Here may ȝe see þat' not' oonly þe dede of this synne is forbode: but' eke þe desire to doon þat' synne [847] ¶ This cursed [1]synne annoyeþ greuously hem þat' it' haunten and first' to her saule for he obligeþ it' to synne and to peyne of þe deeþ / þat' is perdurable. [848] vnto þe body annoyeþ it' greuously also for it' drieþ hym and waasteþ hym / and [. . *no gap in MS.*] of his blood he makeþ sacrifice to þe feende of helle. hit' waasteþ eke his catell and his substannce. [849] & certes if it' be a foule þing' a man to waast' his catell on wommen. ȝit' is it' a foulere þinge whan þat' for such̄ ordure wommen dispenden vpon men her catell and her substannce [850] ¶ This synne as seiþ the prophete byreueþ man and woman her good fame and al her honure and it' is ful plesaunt to þe deuel. for þerby

¶ *Sanctus Iohannes.* /

¶ *Augustinus*

¶ *Matheus*

¶ *Propheta.* /

wynneth he þe . most' partie of þis world' [851] And riȝt' as a marchannte deliteþ hym most' in chaffare þat' he haþ most' auauntage of Riȝt'. so deliteþ þe feendè in þis ordure

[852] this is þat' oþer hand of þe deuel wiþ .v. fyngres to cacche þe puple to his vilanye [853] ¶ The first' fynger is þe foolissh̄ lokinge of the foolyssh̄ man or the folissh̄ womman þat' scleeþ riȝt' as þe basilicok scleeþ folk' by þe venyme of his / sight'. ffor þe Coueityse of þe eyen ſoloweþ þe couetise of þe herte [854] ¶ That' oþer fynger is þe vileyns touchynge in wicked maner' And þerfore seiþ Salomon̄. þat' who so toucheþ and handleþ a womman. he fareþ like hym þat' handleþ þe scorpion̄ þat' styngeþ and sodeynly scleeþ þourgh̄ his enuenemynge. As who so toucheþ warme picch̄. he shent' his fyngres [855] ¶ The iij is foolissh̄ wordes þat' fareþ lich̄ fire þat' brenneþ . þat' riȝt' anoon brenneþ þe herte. [856] ¶ The iiij. is þe kissynge: And soþly he were a grete fool þat' wolde kysse þe mouþ of a brennyng' ouen or of a forneys. [857] And / more fooles bene þei þat' kissen in vileynye for þat' mouþ is þe mouþe of helle. And namely þise olde dotardes holours ȝit' wil þei kisse þouȝe þei may not' do. and smatere hem [858] ¶ Certes þei bene like to houndes. ffor an hounde whan he commeþ by þe Rosere or by oþer bewtees þouȝe he may not' pisse. ȝit wil he heuene vp his legge and make countenaunce to pisse. [859] And for þat' mony man weneth̄ þat' he may noȝt' synne for no likerousnesse þat' he doþ with̄ his wiff Certes þat' opynyon̄ is fals ¶ God woote a man / may scle hym self wiþ his owne knyff. And maken hym drunke wiþ his owne tunge [860] Certes be it' wif or childe or eny worldly þing' þat' he loueth to-fore god it' is his mameut' and he is his ydolastre [861] ¶ A man shuld loue his wiff by discrecion̄ pacientlý and temperally And þan is she as it'

were his suster' [862] ¶ The .v. [1]fynger' of þe deuels honde is þe stynkynge dede of lecherie [863] Certes þe .v. fyngers of glotenye þe fende putte in þe wombe of a man. and wiþ þise .v. fyngers of lecherie he gripeþ hym by þe Raynes forto þrowe hym into þe fornais *of helle. [864] þer as þei / shul han þe fuyr' and þe wormes þat' euere shul lasten. and wepyng' and waillyng'. sharp hunger' and þrest'. Grislynesse of deuels þat' shullen alto treden hem wiþ-outen respite and *with*outen eende [865] ¶ Of lecchery as I seide sourden dyuers spices As fornicacion þat' is bytwix man and wo*m*man þat' bene not' maried. and þis is dedly synne and aȝeinst' nature. [866] for al þat' is enemye and destructioñ to nature is aȝeinst' nature. [867] P*ar*fay þe reson of a man telleth hy*m* eke wel þat' it' is dedly synne for as mocℏ as god forbode lechery. And seint' Paule ȝeueþ hym þe regne þat' is due to no wiȝt ¶ But' to hem þat' doon dedly synne [868] ¶ A noþer synne of lechery is forto byreuen a maide of her maidenhode. ffor certes he þat' so dooþ he caccheth a mayde out' of þe hiest' degree þat' is in þis present' liff [869] and byreueþ hure þilk' pr[e]cious fruyte þat' þe boke clepeþ þe hundred fruyte I ne can not' say it' in noon oþer way in englissℏ. but' in latyne it' hight' Centesim*us* fructus [870] Certes he þat so doþ is cause of mony damages and vilenyes moo þan eny man can rekne Riȝt' as he somtyme is cause of all Damages þat' beest*es* doon in þe feelde þat' brekeþ þe hegge or þe closure þorowe whicℏ he distroieþ þat' may not' be restored. [871] ffor certes no more may maidenhede be restored. þan an harme smyte fro þe body may retourne aȝein to wexe. [872] She may haue mercy þis wote I well if she doo penitence. but' neuer shal it' be þat' she nas corrupte. [873] And al be it' so þat' I haue spoken somwhat' of aduoutrie. it' is good to shewen moo p*er*iles þat' longen to aduoutrie forto eschewe þe foule

synne of [874] aduoutrie ¶ Auoutry in latyne is forto seyne approchinge of an oþer mannys bed. þoorgħ whicħ þoo þat' whilom were oo flessħ. abounden her body to oþer persones [875] ¶ Of þis synne as seiþ þe wise man commeþ mony harmes ¶ ffirst brekinge of þei feiþ. And certes feiþ is keye of cristendome [876] And whan þat' feiþ is broke and lorne. soþly cristendome stant'. [veyne] And wiþ-out' fruyte [877] þis synne is eke a þeef./ ¶ ffor þeeft' generalli to speke is forto Reue a wiȝt' his þing' aȝeinst' his wille. [878] Certes þis is þe foulest' þeft' that may be. whan [1]a womman steleþ her body from her husbond' and ȝeueþ it' to her holour to defoule her' and steleþ her soule from crist' & ȝeueþ it' to þe deuel. [879] This is a foule[r] þeft' þan forto stele or breke þe chalice from þe autere. ffor þise aduoutrers breken þe temple of god spirituelly and stelen þe vesseħ of grace þat' is þe body and þe saule. ffor whicħ crist'
¶ Paulus. shal destroien hem as seiþ seynt' Paule. [880] ¶ Soþly of þis þeft' douted gretly Iosepħ whan þat' his lordys wif preide hym of vilanye whan he saide ¶ lo my lorde howe my lady haþ take to me vnder my ward' al þat' he haþ in þis world'. ne no þing' of his ouȝt' of my pouer' but' oonly ȝe þat' bene his wiff [881] and howe shuld' I þan doon þis wikkednesse & synne so horribli aȝeinst god. god it' forbede. Allas al to litel is suche trouþe now yfounde [882] ¶ The iij. harme is the filþe þorowe þe whicħ þei breken þe comaundemen of god and defoulen þe autere of her matrimoyne þat' is crist' [883] ffor certes in so moche as þe sacrament' of mariage is so noble and so digne. So moche it' is þe gretter synne forto breke it'. ffor god made mariage in paradys in þe estate of Innocence to multiplie mankynde to þe seruice of god. [884] and þerfore is þe brekinge þerof greuous. Of whicħ breking' commen fals heires often tyme þat' wrongfulli occupien folkes heritage and þerfore wil crist' putte

hem out' of þe regne of heuene þat' is heritage to good folk [885] ¶ Of þis breking' commeþ eke oft' tymes þat' folk vnware wedden or synnen with her owne kynrede. and namely þilk' harlottes þat' haunten bordels ¶ Of thise fool wommen þat' mowen be likned to a comune gonge wher as men purge her ordure [886] ¶ What' say we eke of putours þat' lyuen by þe horrible synne of Putrie and constreynen wommen ȝe somtyme his owne wiff or his childe as doon þise bawdes to ȝeelden hem a certeyn rent' of her bodily putrie Certes þise bene cursed synnes [887] ¶ Vnderstondeþ eke þat' aduoutrie is sette gladly in the x. comaundementz bytwix þeft' and mannys sclaughter. for it' is þe grettest' þeft' þat' may be. ffor it' is þeeft' of body and soule [888] and it' is like homycide ffor it' kerueþ a twoo and brekeþ a twoo hem þat' furst' were ymaked oo flessh̄. and þerfor by þe olde lawe þei [1]shuld be sclayn [889] But' naþelees by þe lawe of Ihesu crist' þat' is þe lawe of pite whan he saide to þe womman þat' was / founde in aduoutrie and shuld' haue bene sclayn wiþ stones aftere þe wille of þe Iwes as was her lawe ¶ Go quod ihesu crist and haue no more wille to do synne or wil no more to do synne [890] Soþly vengeaunce of aduoutrie is a-warded to þe peyne of helle but' it' be destroubled by penaunce [891] ¶ ȝit' bene þere moo spices of þis cursed synne. as whan þat' oon of hem is religious or ellis booþ. or of folk þat' bene entred into ordere as subdeken or deken or preest' or hospitalers. and euer þe hier þat' he is in ordere þe gretter is þe synne [892] The þingges þat' gretly aggreggen. his synne is þe breking' of his avowe of chaastite whan he receyueþ order'. [893] And ferþer ouer. sooþ is þat' holy order' is cheef of all þe tresour of god. And his especial syngne and marke of' chaastite to shewe þat' þei bene Ioyned to chastite which̄ þat' is þe moost' precious lif þat' is. [894] And eke þise ordred folk' bene specially tytled to god. and of þe

special mayne of god. ffor whicħ whan þei doon dedly synne þei bene þe special traitours of god and of his puple. ffor þei lyuen of þe puple to prey for þe puple. And while þer bene suchē traitours her preiers availlen not' to þe puple./ [895] ¶ Preestes bene as aungels as by
¶ Paulus. þe dignite of hir mysterye ¶ But' forsoþ seynt' poule seiþ. þat sathanas transformeþ hym into an-aungeH of liȝt'. [896] Soþly þe preest' þat' haunteþ synne he may be likned vnto þe aungel of derknesse. transformed in þe aungel of liȝt' ¶ He semeþ aungel of liȝt'. but' forsoþ he is aungel of derknesse [897] ¶ Suche preestes bene þe sones of Belye. as scheweþ in þe boke of kyngges þat' þei weren þe sones of Belial þat' is þe deueH [898] Belial is to say wiþ-out' Iuge. and so faren þei. hem. þenke þei bene free and han no Iuge no more þan haþ a free boole þat' takeþ whicħ kowe þat' him litek in þe toune. [899] So faren þei by wemmen. ffor riȝt' [as] a fre bulle is ynouȝe for al a toune RiȝtՎ so is a / wikked preest' corrupte ynough for al a parissħ or aH a cuntree [900] Thise preestes as seiþ þe boke ne kon nott þe mysterye of preesthode to þe puple. ne god ne knoweþ [1]hem nouȝt' They ne holden hem nouȝt' a-paide as seiþ þe boke of soden flessħ þat' was to hem offred but' þei toke by force þe flesshe þat' is rawe [901] Certes riȝt' so þise schrewes ne holdene hem not' a-paide of rosted flessħ and soden flessħ wiþ þe whicħ þe pupeH fedden hem in grete reuerence. But' þei wil haue rawe flessħ as folkes wyues and her doughtren [902] ¶ And certes wommen þat' consenten to her harlotrie done grete wronge to crist' and to holy churche and to alhalowes and to aH saules ffor þei byreuen al þese hym þat' shulde worshipen crist' and holy churcħ and prey for cristen saules [903] And þerfore han suche preestes and her lemmans eke þat' consenten to her leccherie þe malisoñ of þe/ courte cristen to þei come to amendement'

[904] ¶ The iij spice of aduoutrie is somtyme by-twene a man and his wiff. & þat' is whan þei taken no reward in her assemblynge but' only to her flesshly delite as seiþ seint' Ierom. [905] and ne rekken of noþinge but' þat' þei bene assembled by cause þat' þei bene ymaried. al is good ynouȝe as þenkeþ to hem [906] But' in suche folk haþ þe deuel pouer as seide þe aungel Raphael to/ Thobie. ffor in her assemblynge þei putten Ihesu crist' out' of her hertes and ȝeue hem self to aH ordure [907] ¶ þe iiij spice is þe assemblynge of hem þat' bene of her kynrede. or of hem þat' bene of oon affinite or ellis wiþ hem wiþ þe whicH her faders or her kynrede han deled wiþ in þe synne of lecherie This synne makeþ hem liche houndes þat' taken no kepe of kynrede [908] and certes Parentela is in two maners oiþer / goostly or flesshly. Goostely as forto delen wiþ her gossipes [909] ffor riȝt' so as [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] is his godfader his fadere espirituel ffor whicH a wo*m*man may in no lasse synne assemble wiþ her Gossipe þan wiþ her owne flesshly broþere [910] ¶ The v. spice is þilk' abhominable synne of which þat' no man vnneþes ouȝt' to/ speke ne write // Naþelees it' is openly rehersed in holy writt' [911] [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] speke of horrible synne Certes holy writt may-not' be defouled no more þan þe sonne þat shyneþ on a myxen./ [912] ¶ Anoþer synne appertineþ to lecherie þat' co*m*meþ in sclepinge and þis synne co*m*meþ oft' to hem þat' bene maydens and eke to hem þat' bene corrupte And þis synne men clepen pollucioñ þat' commeþ in iiij. maners [913] Somtyme of a langwisshing' [1]of body for þe humours bene to rank' and habundañt' in þe body of man. somtyme for þe infirmite for þe feblesse of þe vertue retentif' as phisik makeþ menciōn. somtyme for sorfete of mete and drinke [914] and somtyme for

¶ Ieronomus

¶ Angelus Raphael

vileyns þouȝtes þat bene enclosed in mannes mynde whan he gooþ to sclepe whicħ may not bene wiþ-outen synne fro whiche þei may not kepe hem wisely or ellis may men synne ful greuously

¶ Remedium *contra* luxuriam

[915] ¶ Now commeþ þe remedy aȝeinst leccherie and þat is, generalli chaastite and contynence at refreyneþ al þe disordeyne meuyngges þat commen of flesshly talentes [916] And euere þe gretter merite shal he haue þat most restreyneþ þe wikked enchawfinge of ordure of þis synne and this is in two maners / þat is to sayn: chaastite of mariage and chastite of widowhede [917] ¶ Now shalt þou here þat matrimoyne is leeful assemblyng of man and woman þat resceyuen by þe vertue of þe sacrement þe boond þorgħ whicħ þei may not bene departed in alł hir liff þat is to say. þe whiles þei lyuen boþ. [918] this is as / seiþ þe book a ful grete sacrament. god made it as I haue saide in paradis and wold hymself be born in maryage. [919] and for [to] halowe mariage he was at a weddinge. Where as he turned water into wyne whicħ was þe furst myracle þat he wrouȝt in erþe byforn his disciples. [920] Trewe effecte of mariage clenseþ fornicacioñ & replenysseþ holy churcħ in good lynage. ffor as þe ende of mariage as it chaungeþ dedly synne into venial ytwix hem þat bene wedded / and makeþ þe hertys allon of hem þat bene ywedded as wel as the bodies [921] þis is verrey mariage þat is establisshed by god er þat synne bygan. whan naturel lawe was in his riȝt poynt in paradys. And it was ordeyned þat oo man shuld haue but oo woman and oo woman but oo man

¶ Augustinus as seiþe seynt Austyne by mony resons

[922] ffurst for þat mariage is figured bitwix man. and

holy churche. And anoþer is. for þe man is hede of þe womman. Algate by ordynaunce it' shulde be doo soo. [923] ffor if a wo*m*man haue moo men þan oon. þan shuld' she haue moo hedes þa*n* oon. and þat' were and horrible þinge byfore god./ [1]And eke oon wo*m*man ne myȝt' not' plese to mony men at' ones And also þer ne shuld be neuer pees no rest' amonges hem for euereche wold aske his owne þinge [924] . And ferþermore no man shulde knowe his owne engendrure ne who shuld' haue his heritage and þe woman shuld þe lasse be byloued fro þe tyme þat' she were commytte to mony men

[925] ¶ Nowe co*m*meth how þat' a man shuld' bere hy*m* wiþ hys wiff. and/ namely in two þingges þat' is to say in suffrannce and in reuerence and þat' shewed first crist whan he made furst' womman [926] ffor he ne made her nouȝt' of þe hede of Adam. for / she shulde not' haue to grete lordship. [927] ffor þer as þe wo*m*man haþ þe maistrie she makeþ to mochel disaraye þer neden noon ensamples of þis. The exp*er*ience of þis auȝt' suffise [928] ¶ Also certes god ne made not' wo*m*man of þe foote of Adam for she shuld not' be holden to lowe for she can not' pacyently suffre But' god made wo*m*man of the ribbe of Adam for womman shulde be felawe vnto man [929] ¶ Man shulde bere hym to his wiff' in feiþ. in trouþe an in loue. as s̄eiþ seint' paule that' a man shal loue his wiff as crist' loued holy chirch̄ þat' loued it' so wel þat' he dyed for it'. So shal a man for his wiff' if it' were nede ¶ Paulus./

[930] ¶ Now how þat' a wo*m*man shuld' be subiecte to her husbond' þat' t̄elleþ seint' Peter' / [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] [931] and eke as seiþe þe decree. A wo*m*man as longe as she is a wiff she ne haþ noon auctorite to swere ne bere witnesse wiþ-out leue of her husbonde þat' is her lord' it' shuld' be so by reson̄. [932] she shulde eke serue hym in all ¶ Petrus

honeste and bene attempre. of her aray I woot' well þat' þei shulden setten her entent to plese her husbondes but' not' by her queyntise of aray./ [933] Seynt'
¶ Ieronimus Ierom seiþ. þat' wyves þat' bene apparailed' in silk' and in purpure ne mowe not' cloþen hem in Ihesu crist' [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*]
¶ gregorius./ [934] ¶ Seynt' Gregor seiþ eke þat' no wiȝt' sekeþ precious aray but' oonly for veynglorie to bene honoured þe more toforn þe puple [935] ¶ It' is a foly a woman to haue a grete aray outward' and her self be foule inward' [936] ¶ A wiff shuld eke be mesurable in lokynge and in berynge and / in laughinge and discrete in all her wordes and dedys [937] and / abouen alle worldly þingges. She shulde loue her husbonde wiþ al her herte and to hym by trewe of her body [938] [1]So shuld' an husbonde eke by trewe to his wif. ffor siþens þat' al þe body is þe husbondes. soo shuld' her hertes bene oon Or ellis þer is bytwix hem twoo as in þat' no parfite mariage [939] ¶ Than shal a man vnderstond' þat' for iij. þingges a man and his wiff mowen assemblen ¶ The furst' is for engendrure of children to serue god. ffor certes þat' is þe cause fynall of matrimoynye [940] ¶ Anoþer is to ȝeelde eueriche of hem to oþer þe dette of her body. ffor neiþer of hem haþ power of her owne bodye ¶ The iij. is forto eschewe leccherye and vilenye ¶ The iiij. forsoþ is dedly synne./ [941] As to þe furst' it' is meritorie· þe seconnde also for as saiþe þe decree. þat' chaseþ merite of chaastite þat' ȝeldeþ to her husbonde þe dette of her body. ȝe þouȝe it be aȝeinst' her lykinge and þe lust' of her herte [942] ¶ The iij. manere of venial synne. And trewly scarcely may eny of þise be wiþ-outen venyal synne for þe corrupcioñ and for þe delite [943] ¶ The iiij. manere is forto vnderstonde if þei assemble oonly for amerous loue. and for noon of þe forsaide causes but'

forto accomplise þilk brennyng' delite þei recħ neuere hou often · soþly it' is a dedly synne. And ȝit' wiþ sorowe some folk wil peynen hem more to doo þan her appetit' suffiseþ

[944] ¶ The secounde maner of chastite is to be a clene wydowe and to eschewe þe enbrasing' of man and to desire þe enbrasing' of Ihesu crist'. [945] Thise bene þoo þat' han beñ wyues and han forgoon her husbondes And eke wo*m*men þat' han / doon lecherye and bene releued by pen*aun*ce [946] And certes if þat' a wiff coupe kepe her al chaast' by licence of her husbonde so þat' she ner noon occasioñ þat' he a-gilt' it' were to hir' a grete merite [947] Thise maner of wo*m*men þat' obseruen chaastitee most' be clene in herte as wel as in body and in þouȝt' and mesurable in cloþinge and in contyn*aun*ce ¶ Abstynent' in etynge and drynkynge in spekinge and in dede and þan is she þe vesselł of þe boyst' of þe blessed Mawdeleyne þat' fulfilleþ holy churcħ ful of good odure [948] ¶ The iij. maner of chaastite is virgynyte. And it byhoueþ þat' she be holy in hert' and clene of body þan is she spouse to Ihesu crist' and she is þe lif of aungelś. [949] She is þe preysyng' of þis world' And she is as þise marters in regalite [1]she haþ in hure þat' tunge may not' telle [950] Virgynite bare our lorde Ihesu crist' and virgyne was hy*m*self

[951] ¶ Another remedy aȝeinst' lecherye is specialy to wiþdrawe such þingg*es* as ȝeuen occasioñ to þilk vilanye as ease and etynge *and* drinkinge. ffor certes whan þe potte boyleþ strongly þe best' remedy is to wiþdrawe þe fuyre [952] ¶ Scleping' longe in grete quicte is eke a grete norice to leccherie

[953] ¶ Another remedye aȝeinst' lecherie is þat' a wo*m*man or a man eschewe companye of hem by whicħ he douteþ to be tempted. for al be it' soo þat' þe dede be wiþ-stonde ȝit' is þere grete temptacioñ

[954] ¶ Soþly a white waH al-þouȝe it' ne brenne not' fully by stikkynge of a CandeH ȝit' is þe walle blak' of þe leyte [955] ful oft tyme I rede þat' no man trest' in his owne perfeccioñ But' he be strenger þan Sampsoñ. Holyer þan david. wiser þan ¶ Salomon

[956] ¶ Now after þat' I haue declared ȝou as I can of þe vij. dedly synnes and some of her braunches and her remedies, soþly if I couþe I wold telle ȝowe þe teñ Comaundementz. [957] but' so hiȝe a doctrine I lete to devynes. Naþeles I hope to god þei bene touched in þis tretys euereñ of hem alle

¶ De confessione ⁊

¶ Confessioun

[958] NOW for as moche as þe secounde part of penitence stant' in confession of mouþ as I byganne in þe

¶ Augustinus

[first] chapitere I seye Seint' Austyn seiþ. [959] Synne is euery word and euery dede and al þat' men coueiten aȝeinst' þe lawe of Ihesu crist'. And þis is forto synne. in herte in mouþ and in dede be þi .v. wittes þat' bene siȝt' hering' smellynge taasting' or sauouringe and felynge [960] ¶ Now is it' good to vnderstonde þe circumstances þat' aggreggen mochel euery synne./ [961] ¶ Thow shalt' considere what' þou art' þat' dost' þe synne. whedere þou be male or female. ȝong' or olde. gentile or þraH ffre or seruaunte. hool or seke. wedded or syngeH. Ordred or vnordred. wise or fool. clerk' or Seculere. [962] If she be of þi kynrede bodily or goostly or noon. If eny of þi kynrede haue synned wiþ hure or noon. and mony moo/ þingges

[963] ¶ That' other circumstaunce is this. Whedere it' be doon in fornicacioñ or noon. or in aduoutrie. or in incest'. or noon maiden / or noon in maner of homicede or noon horrible grete synne or smale. and how longe þou [1]hast' contynued in synne [964] ¶ The iij. circumstaunce is þe place where þou hast' doon synne whedere in oþer

mennys house or in þine owne. in feeld or in churcħ. or in chirchē hawe In churcħ dedicate or noon [965] For if þe churcħ were halowed and man or wo*m*man spillen her kynde in wiþ þat place by-tweno way of synne or by wikked temptacioñ þe churcħ were enterdited til it were reconsiled by þe bisshope [966] and þe preest shuld be enterdited þat did such a vilany þe teerme of al his liff. he shuld no more synge masse. and if he did he shuld do dedly synne at euery tyme þat he songe masse [967] ¶ The 4. circumstannce is by whichē mediatours as by massagers or for enticement or for consentement to bere company wiþ felawship for mony a wrecch forto bere companye willen goo to þe deuel of helle. [968] ffor þei þat eggen or consenten to þe synne bene partniers of þe synne and of þe dampnacioñ of þe synnere

[969] ¶ The .v. is of how mony tymes þat he haþ synned and / it be in his mynde. and howe oft þat he haþ falle. [970] ffor he þat oft falleþ in synne he despiseþ þe mercy of god *and* encreseþ his synne and is vnkynde to god and he wexeþ þe more feble to wiþstonde synne. and synneþ þe more liȝtlier [971] and þe latter ariseþ. and is þe more eschewe for to schryuen hy*m* and namely to hy*m* þat haþ bene his confessoure. [972] ffor whichē þat folk whan þei falle aȝein in her old folies. ouȝt þei forleten her confessours al vtterly or ellis þei departen her shrift in dyuers place But soþly such departed shrift deserueþ no mercy of god of his synnes. [973] ¶ The sext circumstannce is þis why þat a man synneþ as by whiche temptacioñ And if hy*m* self procure þilk temptacioñ or by excityng of oþer folk. or if þou synne with a wo*m*man by force or by hure owne assent [974] /Or if þe wo*m*man Maugre her hede haþ bene enforsed or noon. þis shal she telle for coueityse or for pouert. And if it were her procurynge or noon and such manere

harnays. [975] ¶ The .7. circumstaunce is in what' manere he haþ doon his synne. or noon or / how þat' he haþ suffred. howe folk han done to her. [976] Of þe same shal men telle pleynly aⱡ circumstannces and whedere he haþ synned wiþ comune bordeⱡ wommen or noon [977] 'or do his synne in holy tymes or non. In fastyng' tymes or non. or be longe from his shrift'. or after his latter schrift' [978] haþ perauenture broken his penaunce enioyned. by whos helpe and whoos counsaile by sorcery or craft' aⱡ þise þingges mosten be tolde. [979] After þat' þei bene grete or smale engreggen þe conscience of man ¶ And eke þe preest' þat' is þi Iuge may þe better be auysed of his Iuggement' in ȝeuyng' of þi penaunce and þat' is after þi contricioñ. [980] ffor vnderstondeþ wel þat' aftere tyme þat' a man hatⱡ defouled his bapteme by synne if he wil come to sauacioñ. ther nys noon oþer way but' by penitence and schrift' and by satisfaccioñ / [981] and namely by þe two if þer be a confessour' to whicⱡ he may schryve hym. And þe iij. if he haue lif to perfourme it'

[982] Than shal man loke and cõnsidere if he wil make a trewe and a profitable confessioñ. Ther most' be 4. condiciõns [983] ¶ ffirst it most' be in sorowful bitternes of herte as seide þe kyng' Ezechieⱡ to god ¶ I wil remembre aⱡ þe ȝeeres of my liff in bitternesse of myn herte [984] ¶ This condycioñ of bitternesse haþ .v. signes. The furst' is þat' confession most' be shamefast' not' forto keueren ne to hiden his synne but' for he haþ agilt' his god and defoiled/ his soule

¶ Augustinus [985] And here of seiþ seynt' Austyne ¶ The herte travailleþ for shame of his synne. And for he hatⱡ grete shamfastnesse he is digne to haue grete mercie [986] whicⱡ was þe confession of þe publycane þat' wold not' heue vp his yen to heuene for he had offended god in heuene. ffor whicⱡ shamefastnesse he

¶ Idem./ had anoon þe mercy of god [987] ¶ And therfore seiþ

seintᵉ Austyne. þatᵉ sucħ shamefastᵉ folk bene nextᵉ forȝeuenes and remissioñ [988] ¶ Thatᵉ oþer signe is humylite of confessiōn / of whicħ seiþ seintᵉ Petre ¶ Vmbleþ ȝou vnder þe myȝtᵉ of god þe hand of god is myȝty in confessioñ for þer-by god forȝeueþ þe synnes. ffor he allon haþ þe power / [989] and þis humilite shal be in hertᵉ and in sygne outwardᵉ ¶ ffor riȝtᵉ as he haþ humilite to god in his herte Riȝtᵉ so shulde he humble his body outwardᵉ to þe preestᵉ þatᵉ sitte in goddes place [990] for whicħ in no manere siþes þatᵉ cristᵉ is souereyne and / [1]þe preestᵉ mene and mediatourᵉ by twix cristᵉ and þe synnerᵉ. and þe synner is þe lastᵉ by way of resoñ [991] þan shuldᵉ notᵉ þe synner sitte as highħ as his confessoure butᵉ knele toforn hym or atᵉ his fete butᵉ if malady distroubed itᵉ. ffor he shal notᵉ take kepe who sitte þer butᵉ in whos place þatᵉ he sitteþ. [992] A man þatᵉ haþ trespased to a lorde and commeþ for to aske mercy and maken his accorde and sette hym downe a-noon by þe lorde men wolden holde hym outrageous and not worþi so sone forto haue remissioñ ne mercy. [993] ¶ The iij. signe is þatᵉ þi shriftᵉ shul be ful of teeres if man may wepe or if man may notᵉ wepe wiþ his bodely eyen./ latᵉ hym wepe in his herte. [994] ffor suche was þe confessioñ of seyntᵉ petre ffor aftere þatᵉ he had forsake Ihesu cristᵉ he wentᵉ outᵉ and wepte ful bitterly [995] ¶ The iiij. signe is þatᵉ he ne lette notᵉ for his / shame to shewen his confessioñ. [996] Sucħ was þe confessioñ of þe maudeleyn þatᵉ sche ne spared for no shame of hem þatᵉ weren atᵉ þeᵉ ffeestᵉ forto go to our lorde Ihesu cristᵉ and byknowe to hym her synne [997] ¶ The .v. signe is þatᵉ a man & a womman be obeysaunte to receyue þe penaunce þatᵉ is hym enioyned. ffor certes Ihesu cristᵉ for þe giltes of oon man was obedientᵉ to his deþe

¶ Petrus

[998] ¶ The secounde condicioñ of verrey confessioñ is þatᵉ itᵉ be hastely doñ. ffor certes if a man had a dedly wounde euer þe lenger þatᵉ he tarieþ to warisshe

¶ 2ª condicio.ſ

him self þe more wold' it' corrupte and hast' hym to his deþe and eke þe wounde wold be þe wors forto hele [999] ¶ And riȝt' so fareþ synne þat' longe tyme is in a man vnschewed [1000] ¶ Certes a man ouȝt' hastely to shewe his synne. for mony causes as for drede of deþe þat commeþ often sodeynly and is in no certeyn what' tyme it' shal be ne in what' place. And eke þe strecchyng' of oo synne draweþ in anoþer [1001] ¶ And eke þe lenger þat' he tarieth: þe ferþer is he from crist'. And if he abide vnto his last' day scarcely may he shryve hym or amende hym of his synnes ne repenten hym for þe greuous maladye of his deth̄. [1002] & for as moche as he haþ not' in his lif herkened Ihesu Crist' whan he haþ spoken vnto hym. he shal crien to our lord' Ihesu crist' at' his last' day. and scarcely wil he harken hym [1003] ¶ Vnder-stonde þat' þis condicioñ moste haue four' þingges [1]thi schrift' most be purueide byforn and avised for wikked hast' dooþ no profite and þat' a man konne shryue hym of his synnes be it' of pride eiþer of Envie and so forþ wiþ þe spices and circumstaunces / [1004] and þat' he haue comprehended / in his mynde þe nombre and þe gretnesse of his synnes and/ how longe þat' he haþ layne in synne [1005] and eke þat' he be contrite of his synnes and in stedfast' purpoos by þe [grace of god] neuere eft' to falle aȝein in synne and eke þat' he drede and countrewaite hym self þat' he flee þe occasions of synne to which̄ he is enclyned [1006] ¶ Also þat' þow shalt' schryve þe of alle þi synnes to oo man and nouȝt' parceH mele to oon man and parsel mele to a noþer man þat' is to vnderstonde in entent' to parten þi confessioñ as for shame or for drede. ffor it' nys but' stronglyng' of þe soule [1007] ffor certes Ihesu crist' is al good in hym is noon inperfeccioñ and þerfore euere he forȝeueþ alle parfitly or ellis neuere a dele [1008] ¶ I say not' if þowe be sygned to þe penytauncere for certeyn synne þat' þou art' bounden to shewe hem aH þe remenaunt' of þi synnes of which̄

þowe hast' be shryuen of þi curate but' it' like þe of þine humilite This is no departing' of shrift' [1009] ne I ne say not' þer as I speke of dyuisioñ of confessioñ þat' if þou haue licence. forto shryue þe to a discrete and honest' preest' and where þe likeþ / and by þe licence eke of þe curate þat' þowe ne maiste wel shryue þe of alle þi synnes [1010] but' lat' no blot be behynde. lat' no synne be vntold' as fer as þou hast' remembraunce [1011] And whan þou shalt' bene shryuen of þi Curate telle hym eke of alle þe synnes þat' þou hast done sipens þou were last' yshriuen as þis is þe wikked entent' of dyuisioñ of shrift'

[1012] ¶ Also þe verrey shrift' askeþ certeyn condicions. ffurst' þat' þou shryue þe by þi free wille not' constreyned ne for shame of folk' ne for maladie or suchñ þingges ffor it' is reson þat' he þat' trespaseþ by his ffree wille / [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] confesse his trespas. [1013] noon oþer man shal telle his synne but' he hym self ne he shal not' nay or denye his synne ne wraþe him aȝeinst' þe preest' for his amonysynge to lete synne [1014] ¶ The seconnde condicioñ is þat' þine shrift' be lawfull. þat' is to say þou þat' shryuest þe and eke þe preest' þat hereþ þi confessioñ bene verrely [1]in þe feiþ of holy churchñ [1015] and þat' a man be not' despeired. of þe mercy of Ihesu Crist' And Caym or Iudas [1016] And eke a [man] mote accuse hym of his owne trespace and nouȝt' anoþer but' he shal blame & witen hym self of his owne malice of his synne and noon oþer. [1017] But' naþeles if anoþer man be enchesoñ or entiser of his synnes Or þat' if þe state of a persone be suchñ thorgh whichñ his synne is a-gregged or ellis þat' he may not' pleynly shryuen hym. but' he telle þe persone þe whichñ he haþ synned wiþe. þan may he telle it' [1018] so þat' his entent' ne be not' to bakbite þe persone but' oonly to declaren his confessioñ.

[1019] ¶ Thowe þe shalt not eke make no lesing in þine confessioñ for humilite *par*auenture to say þat þou hast doon synnes of whicħ þou were
¶ Aug*ustinus*./ neuere gylty [1020] ¶ ffor seint Austyn seiþ if þow be cause of humilite makest lesing of þi self þoughħ þowe ne were nouȝt in synne aforn ȝit art þowe þan in synne þorgħ þi lesynges. [1021] Thow most eke shewe þi synne by þi *pro*pre mouþe but þou be wexe dombe and not by no letter ffor þou þat hast done synne þou shalt haue þe same confess*ir* [1022] ¶ Thow shalt not eke peynt þi confessioñ be faire and subtile wordes to keuere more þi synne ffor þan bygilest þou þi self & nought þe preest. Thow most tel it platly be it neuere so foule ne so horrible [1023] ¶ Thow shalt eke shryue þe to a preest þat is discrete to counsaile þee. and eke þou shalt not shryue þe for veynglorie ne for ypocrecy ne for no cause but ọnly for þe doute of Ihesu crist and þe helþe of þi soule. [1024] Thow shalt not eke renne to þe preest al sodeynly to telle hym liȝtly þi synne as who so telleþ a Iape or a tale but avisely and wiþ grete deuocioñ [1025] & generally shryve þe oft if þou often falle oft arise by confessioñ [1026] And if þow shryue þe ofter þan onys of synne whicħ þou hast be shryuen it is
¶ Aug*ustinus* þe more merite as seiþ seint Austyne. Thow shalt haue þe more lightly relesinge and grace of god boþe of synne and of peyne. [1027] And certes onys a ȝere at þe leest way it is lawful forto bene howseled. ffor soþly onys [a ȝere] al þingges renouellen

De satisfaccione.

[1028] NOw haue I tolde of verrey confessioñ þat is þe Secounde part of penytence

[1029] ¶ The iij. parte of penytence is Satisfaccioñ and þat' stant' generalli in almesse and in bodily peyne. [1030] Nowe bene þere þre manere of Almesse. Contricioñ of hert' wher a man offreþ hym self to god. Anoþer is to haue pite of þe defaute of his neighbours. þe 13 is in 3euyng' of good counsaile and confort' goostly and bodily where men han nede and namely in sustynaunce of mannys foode. [1031] And take kepe þat' a man haþ nede of þise þingges generalli he haþ nede of foode of cloþinge and harborowe. he haþ / nede of charitable counsaillinge and visitynge of prisoñ and / maladie and sepulture of his dede body. [1032] And if þow maist' not' visite þe nedeful wiþ þi persone. visite hym with þi massage & / þi 3iftes [1033] ¶ Thise bene þe generall almasses or werkes of charite of hem þat' han temporell richesses or discrecion of consailling' Of þise werkes shalt' þou here at' þe day of dome ¶ Satisfaccio

[1034] ¶ Thise almesses shuldest' þou doon of þine owne propre þingges and hastely and / prively if þou maist' [1035] But' naþelees if þow maist' not' doon it' prively þou shalt' not' forbere almesse þou3e men it' See. So þat' it' be not' ydo for þonke of þe worlde. but' oonly forto haue þe þonke of oure / lorde Ihesu crist' [1036] ¶ ffor as witnesseþ seint' Mathewe .v°. A. Cite may not' be hid þat' is sette on a mounteyn. ne men lighten not a lanterne and putte it' vnder a busshell. but' men sette it' on a candelstik to lighten þe men in þe hous. [1037] Riȝt' so shal 3oure liȝt' liȝten toforn men þat' þei mowe seen 3oure good werkes and glorifien 3our fadere þat' is in heuene ¶ Matthei. v°.

[1038] ¶ Now as to speken of bodily peyne. It' stont' in preiers. in wakingges and in fastingges and in vertuous

techingges of orisons [1039] ¶ ȝe shul vnderstonde þat' orisons or preiers is / forto seyn a pitous wille of hert' þat' redresseþ in god and expresseþ it' by worde outward' to remooue harmlees. and to han þinges espirituel and durable. and somtyme temporel þingges of whicħ orisons certes þe orison of þe pater noster haþ Ihesu crist' enclosed most' þingges [1040] ¶ Certes it is priuilegged of .3. þingges. in his dignite ffor whicħ it is more digne þan eny oþer preiere for þat' ihesu crist hym self made it'. [1041] and it' is short' for it shuld' be conned more liȝtly and forto wiþholde it' þe more esely in herte and helpen hym self þe ofter wiþ þe orisoñ [1042] and for a man shuld' be þe lasse wery to sey it' / and for a man ne may not' excusen hym to lerne it' it' is so short' and so esy. and for it' comprehendeth in it' self alle good preiers [1043] ¶ The exposicioñ of þis holy preier þat' is so excellent' and digne I bytake to þise maisters of theologie sauf þus moche wil I seyne. þat' whan þou preiest' þat' god / forȝeue þe þi giltes as þou forȝeuest' hem þat' a-gilten þe be ful wel ware þat' þow ne be not' out' of charite [1044] This holy [1]orison amenuseþ eke venyal synne and þerfore it' aperteneth specialy to penitence.

[1045] This preiere most' be trewly saide in verrey feiþ and þat' men prey to god ordynatly & discretely and deuoutly. Alway a man shal putt' his wiłt to be subiecte to þe wille of god [1046] This orison most' eke be saide wiþ gret' humblesse and ful pure honesty and not' to annoyance of eny man or womman. It' most' nedes be contynued with þe werkes of charite [1047] it' availleþ eke aȝeinst' þe vices of þe saule. ffor as seiþ seynt' Ierom ¶ By fastyng' þen saued þe vices of flessh and by preiers þe vices of þe saule

¶ Ieronimus

[1048] ¶ Aftere þis þou shalt' vnderstonde þat' bodily peyne stant' in wakinge. ffor Ihesu crist' seiþ. wakeþ and preieþ þat' ȝe ne entre in wikked

¶ Ihc/

temptaciõns [1049] ¶ ȝe shul vnderstonde þat' fastynge stont' in .3. thyngges. In forberynge of bodily mete and drink and in forberynge of worldly Iolitees. and in forberynge of dedly synne. This is to say þat' a man shal kepe hym / from dedly synne *with* al his myȝt.

[1050] And þow shalt' vnderstonde eke þat' god ordayned fastyngges And to fastyng' appertenetħ four þingges. [1051] largenesse to poor folk'. Gladnes of hert' espirituell nouȝt' to be angred nor anoyed ne to gruch̃ for he fasteth̃ and also resonable houre forto ete by mesure. þat' is to say þat' a man shuld not' eten in vntyme. ne sitte þe lenger at' his table for he fasteþ.

[1052] Than shalt' þou vnderstonde þat' bodily peyne stant'. in disciplyne or techynge. by word' or by // writynge or by ensample Also in weryng' of heires. eiþer of stamyne eiþer of haberion on her naked flessh̃ for cristes sake and such̃ manere penaunces [1053] ¶ But' ware þe wel þat' such̃ manere penaunces ne make not' þine hert' bitter' or angry. anoyed of hym self. ffor better is to cast' away þine heire. þan forto cast' away þe swetnesse of our lord' Ihesu Crist [1054] And þerfore seiþ seint' Poule ¶ Paulus./ ¶ Cloþe ȝou as þei þat' beñ chosen of god in hert' of mysericord'. debonairte. suffrañce and such̃ maner of cloþinge of whiche Ihesu crist' is more apaide þañ of heire or of hawberkes.

[1055] Then is disciplyne eke in knokkynge of þi brest'. in scourgyng' wiþ ȝeerdes. in knelynge in tribulacions [1056] in suffryng' paciently wrongges þat' bene doon to hym. and eke in pacient' suffraunce of maladies or lesyngges. of worldly Cateł of wiff or childe or oþer [1]frendes

[1057] Than shalt' þow vnderstonde whicħ þingges distrowben penaunce as þis is in þre maners. þat' is drede. Shame. and hope. And whanhope þat' is desperacioñ. [1058] And forto speken / furst' of drede for whiche he

weneþ þat' he may suffre no penaunce [1059] þer aȝeinst' is remedye fforto þenk' þat' bodily penaunce. is but' short' and liteH at' þe regarde of þe peyne of helle. þat' is cruel and so longe þat' it lasteþ wiþ-outen ende.

[1060] ¶ Now aȝeinst' þe shame þat' a man haþ to shryuen hym [. . . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [1061] aȝeinst' þe shame shuld a man þenk' þat' by þe way of resoñ þat' he þat' haþ not' bene ashamed. to doo foule þingg*es* Certes hym ouȝt' not' be ashamed to doo fair þinggesand good þinggesand þat'is confessions. [1062] A man shuld' þenk *þat* god seeþ and woote al his þouȝtes and his werkes to hym may no þinge be hidde ne keuered [1063] ¶ Men shuld eke remem*b*re hem of þe shame þat' is to come at' þe day of dome to hem þat' bene nouȝt' penytent' and lif in present' liff. [1064] ffor alle þe creatures in heuene in erþe and in helle shuln seen / apertly al þat' þei hyden in þis world'.

[1065] ¶. Now forto speke of þe hope of hem þat' bene so negligent' and sclowe to shryuen hem it' stant' in two maners. [1066] That' oon is þat he hopeþ to lyve longe and forto purchase mochel Richesse for his delite and þan he wil shryuen hy*m* as he seiþ he may as hym semeþ tymely ynowe come to shrift' [1067] ¶ Anoþer is of þe Surquidrye þat' he haþ in cristes mercye. [1068] And aȝeinst' þe first' he shal þenk that' our liff is in no sikernesse And eke þat' alle þe richesse of þe world' bene in aduenture and passinge as a shadowe on a walle [1069] ¶ And as seiþ seynt' g*regorie* That' it' appertene*þ* to þe grete riȝtwisnesse of god þat' neuer shal þe peyn stynt' of hem þat' neuer nolde wiþdrawe he*m* from synne her þonkes. but' euer contynued þer Inne. ¶ ffor þilk' p*er*petuel wille to done synne shullen þei haue p*er*petuel peyne.

¶ Gregorius ./.

[1070] ¶ Whan-hope is in two maners ¶ þe furst' whan-hope is in þe' mercy of Crist ¶ That' oþer is þat' þei

Or Wanhope, or Despair

þenk þat' þei ne myȝt' not' longe *per*seuere in goodnesse [1071] ¶ The furst' wanhope *com*meþ of þat' he demeþ þat' he hatħ synned so gretly so ofte and so longe liggyng' in synne þat' he shal not' be saued [1072] ¶ Certes aȝeinst' þat' cursed wanhope he shuld þenk þat' þe passioñ of Ihesu crist' is more [1]stronge forto vnbynde þan synne is forto bynde [1073] ¶ And aȝeinst' þe seconnd wanhope he shal þenk' þat' as often as he falleþ he shal arise by penytence. And þouȝe he neuer so long' haue lyen in synne þe mercy of *crist'* is alway redy to receyuen hym to mercy [1074] aȝeinst' þe wanhope þat' he demeþ þat' he shuld not' longe *per*seuere in goodnesse ¶ he shal þenk þat' þe feblenesse of the deuel may no þing' doon büt' men willen suffre hym [1075] And eke he shal haue strength and þe helpe of god and of al holy churche and of þe protection of aungels if him lust'

[1076] ¶ Than shullen men vnderstonde what' is þe fruyte of pen*aun*ce as aftere þe wordes of Ihesu Crist' it' is þe endelees blisse of heuene [1077] þer Ioie haþ no con*trariou*ste of woo ne greu*aun*ce þer alle harmes ben passed of þis present' liff wher as is þe sikernesse fro þe peyn of helle þer as þe blisful company þat' reioysen hem euermoo euery of oþers Ioie [1078] þer as þe body of man þat' whilom was foule and derk' is more cleer þan þe sonne Ther as whilom þe body was seke and frele and feble and morteH is vnmorteH and so stronge and so hool þat' þer may no þinge enpeire it'. [1079] wher as neiþer is hunger prest'. ne cold' but' ẽuery soule repleynshed wiþ þe siȝt of þe pa*r*fit' knowynge of god [1080] This blisful regne may man purchace by pouert' espirituell and þe glorie by lowenesse. þe plente of Ioy by hunger' and prest'. and þe rest' by travaille and þe liff by deeþ and mortificacioñ of synne.

¶ *Verba saluatoris*

To þilk' liff he vs bringe þat' bou3t' vs wiþ his precious blood./ Amen./

¶ Explicit' fabula Rectoris./

Here takeþ þe maker of þis booke his leue:/

[1081] NOwe prey I to hem alle þat' harken þis litel tretise. or rede þat' 3if þer be eny þing' in it' þat likeþ hem þat' þerof þei þonk our lord Ihesu crist' of whom procedeþ al witte and al goodnes. [1082] And 3if þer be eny þing' þat displese hem./ I prey hem also þat' þei arette it' to þe defaute of myne vnkonnynge and not' to my wille þat wold' ful fayn haue seide better 3if þat' I had hade connynge. [1083] ffor our boke seiþ ¶ AH þat' is writen is writen for our doctrine & þat is myñ entent' [1084] [1]Wherfore I biseche 3ou mekely for þe mercy of god þat' 3e prei for me þat' crist' haue mercy on me and for3eue me my geltys [1085] and namely of my translaciõns and enditingges of worldly vanytes þe which I reuoke in my retraccions [1086] As is þe boke of Troiles. The book also of fame. The boke of the xxv. ladies./ The boke of þe duchesse. The boke of seynt' valentynes day of þe parlement' of briddes. The tales of Canterbury þilk þat sownen into synne [1087] The book of þe lyõn and mony oþer bokes 3if þei were in my remembraunce. and mony a songe. And mony a lecherous lay þat' Crist' for his gret' mercy for3eue me þe synne. [1088] ¶ But' of þe translacioñ of Boys de consolacione and oþer bokes of legendys of seyntes and omelies and moralite & deuocioñ [1089] of þat' I þonke our lord Ihesu crist' and his blessed/ modere and alle þe seyntes of heuene [1090] bysechyng' hem þat' þei from hens forþ vnto my lyues ende sende me grace to bywaile my giltes and to stody to þe sauacioñ of my soule. and graunt' me grace of verrey penaunce. con-

fession and satisfaccioñ to doon in þis present' liff' [1091] þorghe þe benigne grace of hym þat' is kyng' of kyngges and preest' of alle preestes þat' bou3t' vs wiþ þe precious blode of his hert' [1092] So þat' I may bene oon of hem at' þe day of dome þat' shal be saued./ Qui cum patre & spiritu sancto vivis & regnas deus &cetera.

Here endeþ þe boke of þe talys of Canterbury compiled by Geffray Chawcer on whoos soule Ihesu crist' haue mercy. || AmeN ||

[*Square painting of the arms of Henry Percy, 4th Earl of Northumberland, K.G., quartering Poynings, Fitz Payn and Bryan.* H *on the right,* P *on the left of the shield, in a Garter with the legend* 'hony . soit' . qui . mal . y . pẽnce..' *A lion, unicorn, &c, in the* 4 *corners.*]

APPENDIX (to Group B, p. 591).

[*Christ Church MS.* 152.] [on leaf 173, back, sign. k 2, back]

¶ Sire Nonnes preest oure hoost seyde a none
y-blessed be thy breth & euery stoone
This was a mery tale of Chaunteclere
But be my trouthe if *thou* were seculere
Thow woldeste bene a tredefoul a right
ffor if thow haue corage as *thou* haste myght
The were nede of hennes as I wene
Ye moo than .vij. tymes seventene
See whiche braunnes hath *this* gentel preeste
So grete a nekke & so large a breeste
He loketh as a Sparhauke with his yen
Hym nedeth nat his colour for to dyen [leaf 174, sign. k 3]
with Brasile ne with Greyne of Portyngale /
Now sire faire falle yow for youre tale
And aftir he with full mery chere
Saide vnto a nother as ye shulle here

Here is ended the Nonnes prestes tale
And folowith the *prologe* of the Maunciples tale

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 26 June, 2018